Advanced Soil Mechanics

Third Edition

Braja M. Das

Advanced Soil Mechanics

Advanced Soil Mechanics

Third edition

Braja M. Das

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
LONDON AND NEW YORK

First published 1983 by Hemisphere Publishing Corporation and McGraw-Hill
Second edition published 1997 by Taylor & Francis

This edition published 2008 by Taylor & Francis
270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016, USA

Simultaneously published in the UK
by Taylor & Francis
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2007.

“To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor & Francis or Routledge’s collection of thousands of eBooks please go to www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk.”

Taylor & Francis is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2008 Braja M. Das

Cover Credit Image:
Courtesy of Subsurface Constructors, Inc., St. Louis, Missouri, U.S.A.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
A catalog record for this book has been requested

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 0-203-93584-5 Master e-book ISBN

ISBN10: 0–415–42026–1 (hbk)
ISBN10: 0–203–93584–5 (ebk)

ISBN13: 978–0–415–42026–6 (hbk)
ISBN13: 978–0–203–93584–2 (ebk)

To our granddaughter, Elizabeth Madison

Contents

1 SOIL AGGREGATE, PLASTICITY, AND CLASSIFICATION 1

2 STRESSES AND STRAINS—ELASTIC EQUILIBRIUM 47

4 PORE WATER PRESSURE DUE TO UNDRAINED LOADING 150

5 PERMEABILITY AND SEEPAGE 170

6 CONSOLIDATION 276

7 SHEAR STRENGTH OF SOILS 373

8 SETTLEMENT OF SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS 477

Tables

Figures

Preface

The first edition of this book was published jointly by Hemisphere Publishing Corporation and McGraw-Hill Book Company of New York with a 1983 copyright. The second edition had a 1997 copyright and was published by Taylor and Francis. This edition essentially is designed for readers at the same level.

Compared to the second edition, following are the major changes.

- Chapter 1 has been renamed as "Soil aggregate, plasticity, and classification." It includes additional discussions on clay minerals, nature of water in clay, repulsive potential and pressure in clay, and weight–volume relationships.
- Chapter 3 has also been renamed as "Stresses and displacements in a soil mass." It includes relationships to evaluate displacements in a semi-infinite elastic medium due to various types of loading in addition to those to estimate stress.
- Chapter 4 on "Pore water pressure due to undrained loading" has additional discussions on the directional variation of pore water pressure parameter A due to anisotropy in cohesive soils.
- Chapter 5 on "Permeability and seepage" has new material to estimate the coefficient of permeability in granular soil using the Kozeny–Carman equation. The topics of electroosmosis and electroosmotic coefficient of permeability have been discussed.
- Solutions for one-dimensional consolidation using viscoelastic model has been presented in Chapter 6 on "Consolidation".
- Chapter 7 on "Shear strength of soils" has more detailed discussions on the effects of temperature, anisotropy, and rate of strain on the undrained shear strength of clay. A new section on creep in soil using the rate-process theory has been added.
- Chapter 8 has been renamed as "Settlement of shallow foundations." More recent theories available in literature on the elastic settlement have been summarized.
- SI units have been used throughout the text, including the problems.

I am indebted to my wife Janice for her help in preparing the revised manuscript. She prepared all the new and revised artwork for this edition. I would also like to thank Tony Moore, Senior Editor, and Eleanor Rivers, Commissioning Editor of Taylor and Francis, for working with me during the entire publication process of this book.

Braja M. Das

Chapter 1

Soil aggregate, plasticity, and classification

1.1 Introduction

Soils are aggregates of mineral particles, and together with air and/or water in the void spaces, they form three-phase systems. A large portion of the earth's surface is covered by soils, and they are widely used as construction and foundation materials. Soil mechanics is the branch of engineering that deals with the engineering properties of soils and their behavior under stress.

This book is divided into eight chapters—"Soil aggregate, plasticity, and classification," "Stresses and strains—elastic equilibrium," "Stresses and displacement in a soil mass," "Pore water pressure due to undrained loading," "Permeability and seepage," "Consolidation," "Shear strength of soils," and "Settlement of foundations."

This chapter is a brief overview of some soil properties and their classification. It is assumed that the reader has been previously exposed to a basic soil mechanics course.

1.2 Soil—separate size limits

A naturally occurring soil sample may have particles of various sizes. Over the years, various agencies have tried to develop the size limits of gravel, sand, silt, and clay. Some of these size limits are shown in Table 1.1.

Referring to Table 1.1, it is important to note that some agencies classify clay as particles smaller than 0.005 mm in size, and others classify it as particles smaller than 0.002 mm in size. However, it needs to be realized that particles defined as clay on the basis of their size are not necessarily clay minerals. Clay particles possess, the tendency to develop plasticity when mixed with water; these are clay minerals. Kaolinite, illite, montmorillonite, vermiculite, and chlorite are examples of some clay minerals.

Table 1.1 Soil—separate size limits

Agency	*Classification*	*Size limits (mm)*
U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA)	Gravel	> 2
	Very coarse sand	2–1
	Coarse sand	1–0.5
	Medium sand	0.5–0.25
	Fine sand	0.25–0.1
	Very fine sand	0.1–0.05
	Silt	0.05–0.002
	Clay	< 0.002
International Society of Soil Mechanics (ISSS)	Gravel	> 2
	Coarse sand	2–0.2
	Fine sand	0.2–0.02
	Silt	0.02–0.002
	Clay	< 0.002
Federal Aviation Agency (FAA)	Gravel	> 2
	Sand	2–0.075
	Silt	0.075–0.005
	Clay	< 0.005
Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT)	Gravel	> 2
	Coarse sand	2–0.6
	Medium sand	0.6–0.2
	Fine sand	0.2–0.06
	Silt	0.06–0.002
	Clay	< 0.002
American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)	Gravel	76.2–2
	Coarse sand	2–0.425
	Fine sand	0.425–0.075
	Silt	0.075–0.002
	Clay	< 0.002
Unified (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, and American Society for Testing and Materials)	Gravel	76.2–4.75
	Coarse sand	4.75–2
	Medium sand	2–0.425
	Fine sand	0.425–0.075
	Silt and clay (fines)	< 0.075

Fine particles of quartz, feldspar, or mica may be present in a soil in the size range defined for clay, but these will not develop plasticity when mixed with water. It appears that is it more appropriate for soil particles with sizes < 2 or $5\,\mu$m as defined under various systems to be called *clay-size particles* rather than *clay*. True clay particles are mostly of colloidal size range ($< 1\,\mu$m), and $2\,\mu$m is probably the upper limit.

1.3 Clay minerals

Clay minerals are complex silicates of aluminum, magnesium, and iron. Two basic crystalline units form the clay minerals: (1) a silicon–oxygen tetrahedron, and (2) an aluminum or magnesium octahedron. A silicon–oxygen tetrahedron unit, shown in Figure 1.1*a*, consists of four oxygen atoms surrounding a silicon atom. The tetrahedron units combine to form a *silica sheet* as shown in Figure 1.2*a*. Note that the three oxygen atoms located at the base of each tetrahedron are shared by neighboring tetrahedra. Each silicon atom with a positive valence of 4 is linked to four oxygen atoms with a total negative valence of 8. However, each oxygen atom at the base of the tetrahedron is linked to two silicon atoms. This leaves one negative valence charge of the top oxygen atom of each tetrahedron to be counterbalanced. Figure 1.1*b* shows an octahedral unit consisting of six hydroxyl units surrounding an aluminum (or a magnesium) atom. The combination of the aluminum octahedral units forms a *gibbsite sheet* (Figure 1.2*b*). If the main metallic atoms in the octahedral units are magnesium, these sheets are referred to as *brucite sheets*. When the silica sheets are stacked over the

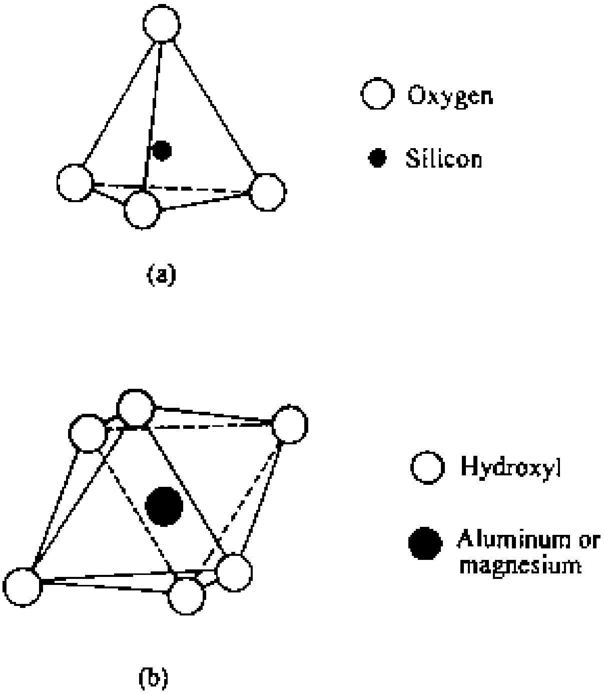


Figure 1.1 (*a*) Silicon–oxygen tetrahedron unit and (*b*) Aluminum or magnesium octahedral unit.

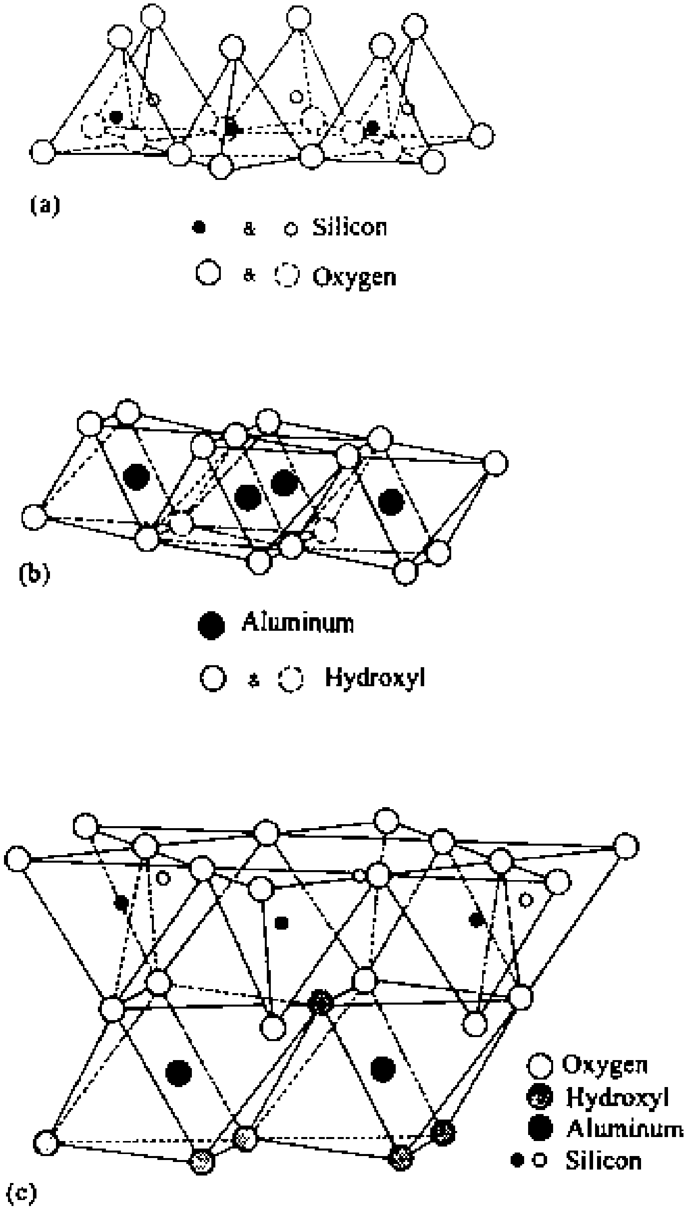


Figure 1.2 (*a*) Silica sheet, (*b*) Gibbsite sheet and (*c*) Silica–gibbsite sheet (after Grim, 1959).

octahedral sheets, the oxygen atoms replace the hydroxyls to satisfy their valence bonds. This is shown in Figure 1.2*c*.

Some clay minerals consist of repeating layers of two-layer sheets. A two-layer sheet is a combination of a silica sheet with a gibbsite sheet, or a combination of a silica sheet with a brucite sheet. The sheets are about 7.2 Å thick. The repeating layers are held together by hydrogen bonding and secondary valence forces. *Kaolinite* is the most important clay mineral belonging to this type (Figure 1.3). Other common clay minerals that fall into this category are *serpentine* and *halloysite*.

The most common clay minerals with three-layer sheets are *illite* and *montmorillonite* (Figure 1.4). A three-layer sheet consists of an octahedral sheet in the middle with one silica sheet at the top and one at the bottom. Repeated layers of these sheets form the clay minerals. *Illite* layers are bonded together by potassium ions. The negative charge to balance the potassium ions comes from the substitution of aluminum for some silicon in the tetrahedral sheets. Substitution of this type by one element for another without changing the crystalline form is known as *isomorphous substitution*. *Montmorillonite* has a similar structure to illite. However, unlike illite there are no potassium ions present, and a large amount of water is attracted into the space between the three-sheet layers.

The surface area of clay particles per unit mass is generally referred to as *specific surface*. The lateral dimensions of kaolinite platelets are about 1000–20,000 Å with thicknesses of 100–1000 Å. Illite particles have lateral dimensions of 1000–5000 Å and thicknesses of 50–500 Å. Similarly, montmorillonite particles have lateral dimensions of 1000–5000 Å with thicknesses

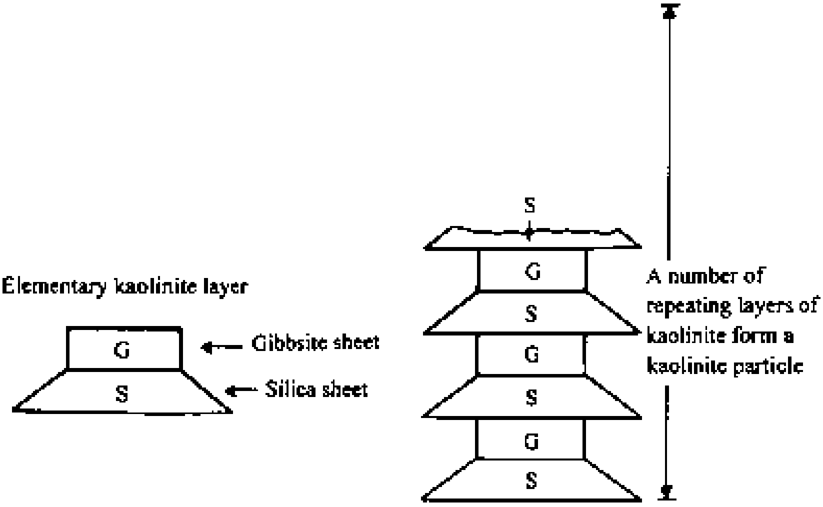


Figure 1.3 Symbolic structure for kaolinite.

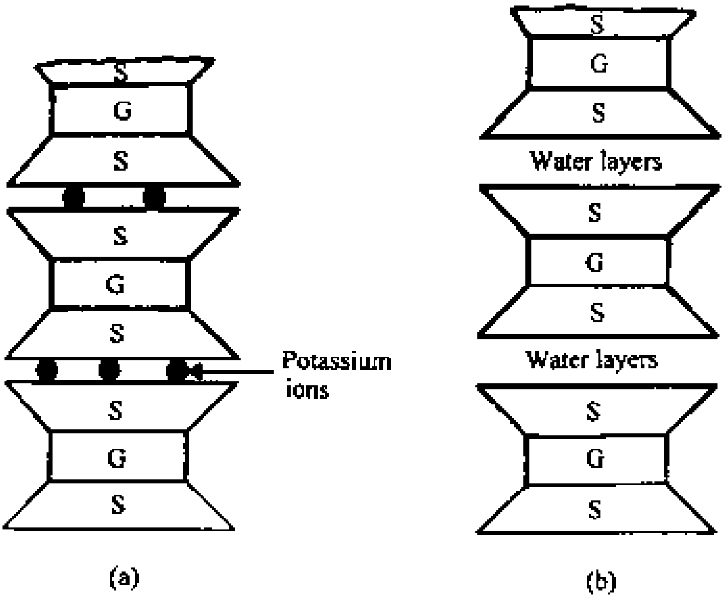


Figure 1.4 Symbolic structures of (*a*) illite and (*b*) montmorillonite.

of 10–50 Å. If we consider several clay samples all having the same mass, the highest surface area will be in the sample in which the particle sizes are the smallest. So it is easy to realize that the specific surface of kaolinite will be small compared to that of montmorillonite. The specific surfaces of kaolinite, illite, and montmorillonite are about 15, 90 and 800 m^2/g, respectively. Table 1.2 lists the specific surfaces of some clay minerals.

Clay particles carry a net negative charge. In an ideal crystal, the positive and negative charges would be balanced. However, isomorphous

Table 1.2 Specific surface area and cation exchange capacity of some clay minerals

Clay mineral	*Specific surface (m^2/g)*	*Cation exchange capacity (me/100 g)*
Kaolinite	10–20	3
Illite	80–100	25
Montmorillonite	800	100
Chlorite	5–50	20
Vermiculite	5–400	150
Halloysite ($4H_2O$)	40	12
Halloysite ($2H_2O$)	40	12

substitution and broken continuity of structures result in a net negative charge at the faces of the clay particles. (There are also some positive charges at the edges of these particles.) To balance the negative charge, the clay particles attract positively charged ions from salts in their pore water. These are referred to as exchangeable ions. Some are more strongly attracted than others, and the cations can be arranged in a series in terms of their affinity for attraction as follows:

$$Al^{3+} > Ca^{2+} > Mg^{2+} > NH_4^+ > K^+ > H^+ > Na^+ > Li^+$$

This series indicates that, for example, Al^{3+} ions can replace Ca^{2+} ions, and Ca^{2+} ions can replace Na^+ ions. The process is called *cation exchange*. For example,

$$Na_{clay} + CaCl_2 \rightarrow Ca_{clay} + NaCl$$

Cation exchange capacity (CEC) of a clay is defined as the amount of exchangeable ions, expressed in milliequivalents, per 100 g of dry clay. Table 1.2 gives the cation exchange capacity of some clays.

1.4 Nature of water in clay

The presence of exchangeable cations on the surface of clay particles was discussed in the preceding section. Some salt precipitates (cations in excess of the exchangeable ions and their associated anions) are also present on the surface of dry clay particles. When water is added to clay, these cations and anions float around the clay particles (Figure 1.5).

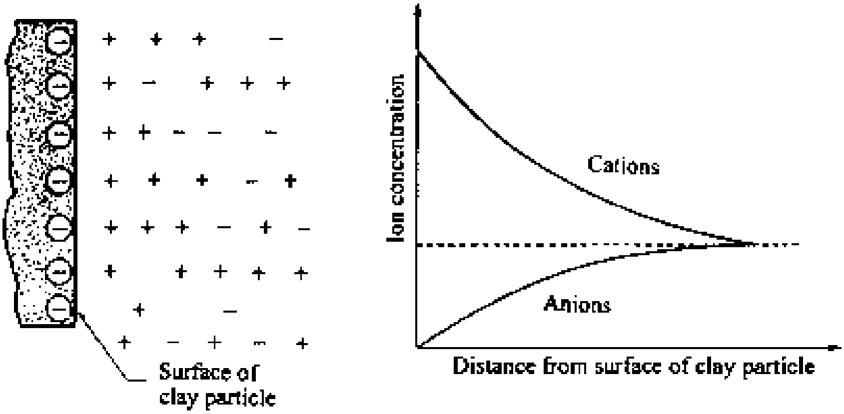


Figure 1.5 Diffuse double layer.

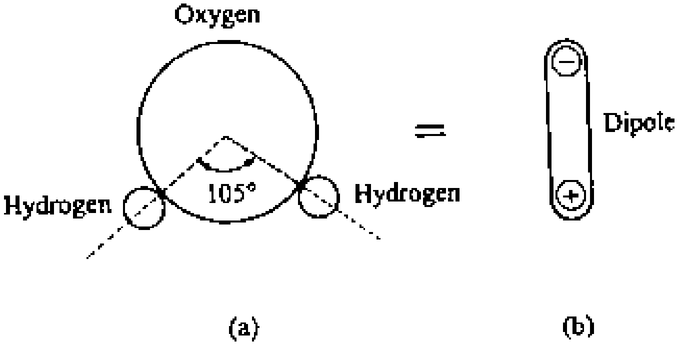


Figure 1.6 Dipolar nature of water.

At this point, it must be pointed out that water molecules are dipolar, since the hydrogen atoms are not symmetrically arranged around the oxygen atoms (Figure 1.6*a*). This means that a molecule of water is like a rod with positive and negative charges at opposite ends (Figure 1.6*b*). There are three general mechanisms by which these dipolar water molecules, or *dipoles*; can be electrically attracted toward the surface of the clay particles (Figure 1.7):

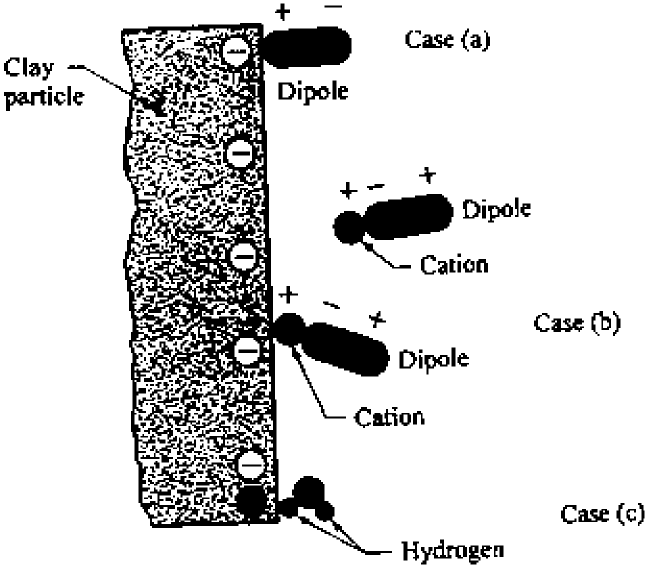


Figure 1.7 Dipolar water molecules in diffuse double layer.

(a) Attraction between the negatively charged faces of clay particles and the positive ends of dipoles.
(b) Attraction between cations in the double layer and the negatively charged ends of dipoles. The cations are in turn attracted by the negatively charged faces of clay particles.
(c) Sharing of the hydrogen atoms in the water molecules by hydrogen bonding between the oxygen atoms in the clay particles and the oxygen atoms in the water molecules.

The electrically attracted water that surrounds the clay particles is known as *double-layer water*. The plastic property of clayey soils is due to the existence of double-layer water. Thicknesses of double-layer water for typical kaolinite and montmorillonite crystals are shown in Figure 1.8. Since

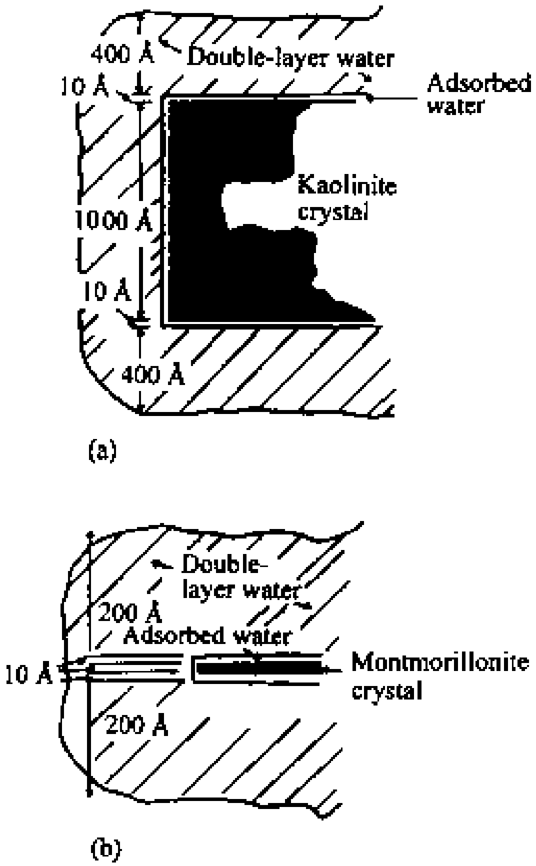


Figure 1.8 Clay water (*a*) typical kaolinite particle, 10,000 by 1000 Å and (*b*) typical montmorillonite particle, 1000 by 10 Å (after Lambe, 1960).

the innermost layer of double-layer water is very strongly held by a clay particle, it is referred to as *adsorbed water*.

1.5 Repulsive potential

The nature of the distribution of ions in the diffuse double layer is shown in Figure 1.5. Several theories have been presented in the past to describe the ion distribution close to a charged surface. Of these, the Gouy–Chapman theory has received the most attention. Let us assume that the ions in the double layers can be treated as point charges, and that the surface of the clay particles is large compared to the thickness of the double layer. According to Boltzmann's theorem, we can write that (Figure 1.9)

$$n_+ = n_{+(0)} \exp \frac{-v_+ e\Phi}{KT} \tag{1.1}$$

$$n_- = n_{-(0)} \exp \frac{-v_- e\Phi}{KT} \tag{1.2}$$

where

n_+ = local concentration of positive ions at a distance x
n_- = local concentration of negative ions at a distance x
$n_{+(0)}, \ n_{-(0)}$ = concentration of positive and negative ions away from clay surface in equilibrium liquid
Φ = average electric potential at a distance x (Figure 1.10) $v_+, \ v_-$ = ionic valences
e = unit electrostatic charge, 4.8×10^{-10} esu
K = Boltzmann's constant, 1.38×10^{-16} erg/K
T = absolute temperature

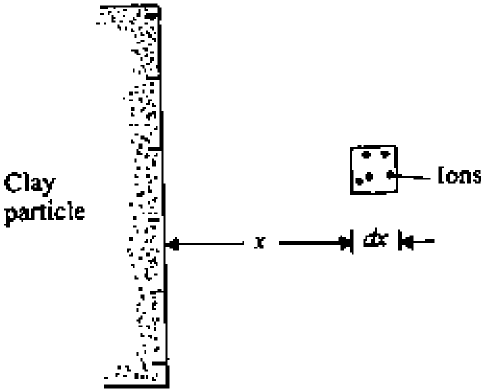


Figure 1.9 Derivation of repulsive potential equation.

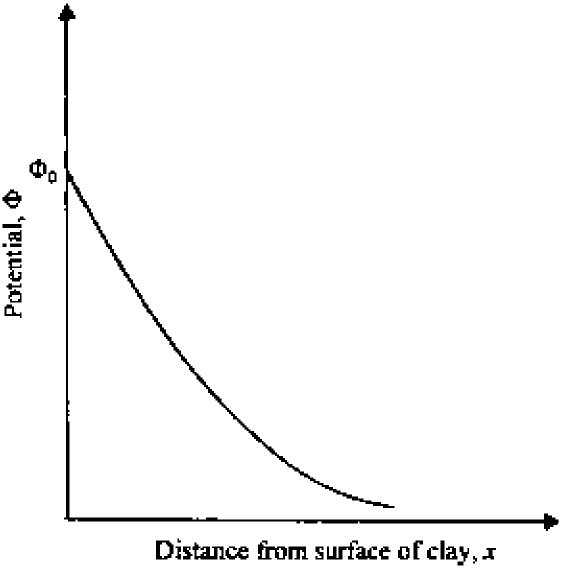


Figure 1.10 Nature of variation of potential Φ with distance from the clay surface.

The charge density ρ at a distance x is given by

$$\rho = v_+ e n_+ - v_- e n_- \tag{1.3}$$

According to Poisson's equation,

$$\frac{d^2\Phi}{dx^2} = \frac{-4\pi\rho}{\lambda} \tag{1.4}$$

where λ is the dielectric constant of the medium.

Assuming $v_+ = v_-$ and $n_{+(0)} = n_{-(0)} = n_0$, and combining Eqs. (1.1)–(1.4), we obtain

$$\frac{d^2\Phi}{dx^2} = \frac{8\pi n_0 ve}{\lambda} \sinh \frac{ve\Phi}{KT} \tag{1.5}$$

It is convenient to rewrite Eq. (1.5) in terms of the following nondimensional quantities:

$$y = \frac{ve\Phi}{KT} \tag{1.6}$$

$$z = \frac{ve\Phi_0}{KT} \tag{1.7}$$

$$\text{and} \qquad \xi = \kappa x \tag{1.8}$$

where Φ_0 is the potential at the surface of the clay particle and

$$\kappa^2 = \frac{8\pi n_0 e^2 v^2}{\lambda KT} \qquad (\text{cm}^{-2}) \tag{1.9}$$

Thus, from Eq. (1.5),

$$\frac{d^2y}{d\xi^2} = \sinh y \tag{1.10}$$

The boundary conditions for solving Eq. (1.10) are:

1. At $\xi = \infty, y = 0$ and $dy/d\xi = 0$.
2. At $\xi = 0, y = z$, i.e., $\Phi = \Phi_0$.

The solution yields the relation

$$e^{y/2} = \frac{(e^{z/2}+1)+(e^{z/2}-1)e^{-\xi}}{(e^{z/2}+1)-(e^{z/2}-1)e^{-\xi}} \tag{1.11}$$

Equation (1.11) gives an approximately exponential decay of potential. The nature of the variation of the nondimensional potential y with the nondimensional distance is given in Figure 1.11.

For a small surface potential (less than 25 mV), we can approximate Eq. (1.5) as

$$\frac{d^2\Phi}{dx^2} = \kappa^2\Phi \tag{1.12}$$

$$\Phi = \Phi_0 e^{-\kappa x} \tag{1.13}$$

Equation (1.13) describes a purely exponential decay of potential. For this condition, the center of gravity of the diffuse charge is located at a distance of $x = 1/\kappa$. The term $1/\kappa$ is generally referred to as the double-layer *thickness*.

There are several factors that will affect the variation of the repulsive potential with distance from the surface of the clay layer. The effect of the cation concentration and ionic valence is shown in Figures 1.12 and 1.13, respectively. For a given value of Φ_0 and x, the repulsive potential Φ decreases with the increase of ion concentration n_0 and ionic valence v.

When clay particles are close and parallel to each other, the nature of variation of the potential will be a shown in Figure 1.14. Note for this case that at $x = 0$, $\Phi = \Phi_0$, and at $x = d$ (midway between the plates), $\Phi = \Phi_\text{d}$ and $d\Phi/dx = 0$. Numerical solutions for the nondimensional potential $y = y_\text{d}$ (i.e., $\Phi = \Phi_\text{d}$) for various values of z and $\xi = \kappa d$ (i.e., $x = d$) are given by Verweg and Overbeek (1948) (see also Figure 1.15).

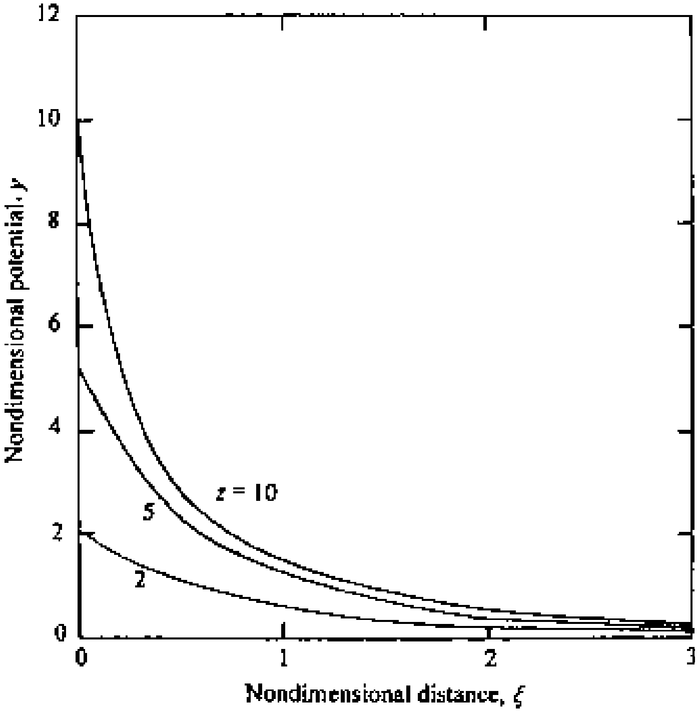


Figure 1.11 Variation of nondimensional potential with nondimensional distance.

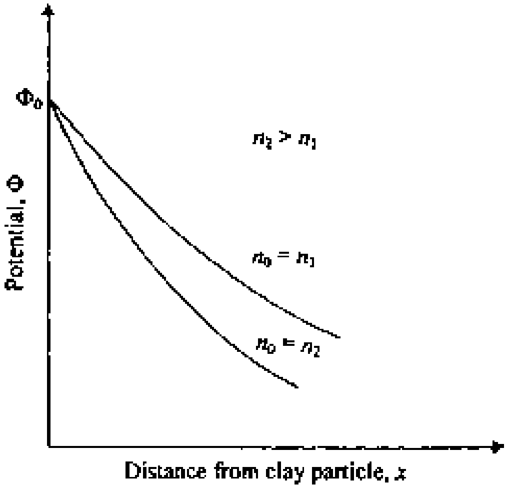


Figure 1.12 Effect of cation concentration on the repulsive potential.

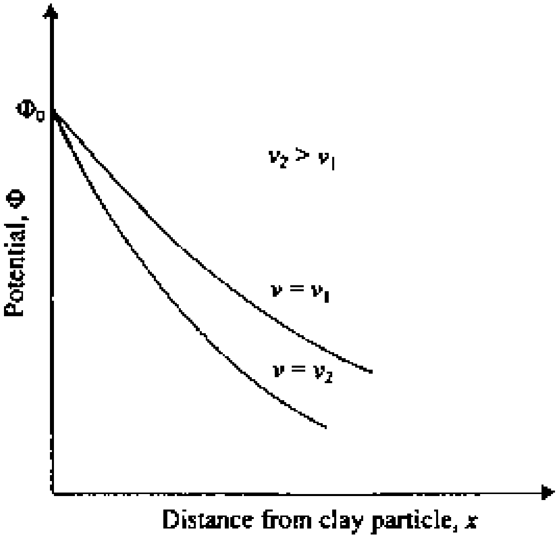


Figure 1.13 Effect of ionic valence on the repulsive potential.

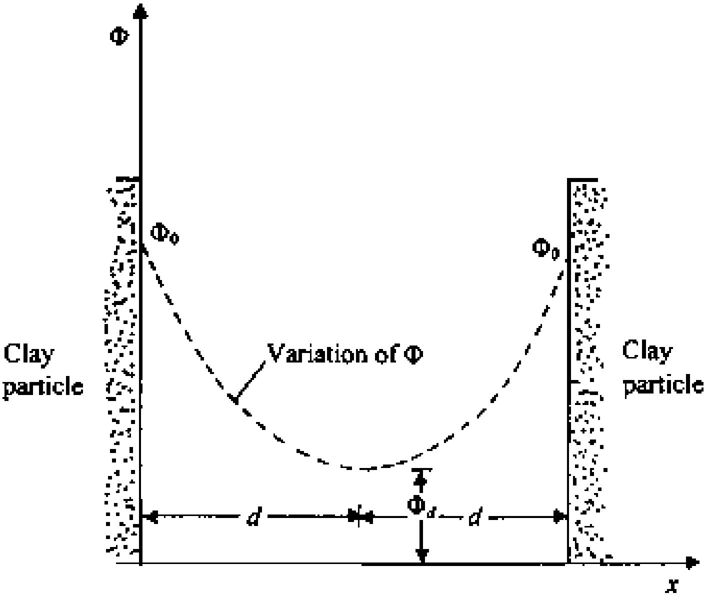


Figure 1.14 Variation of Φ between two parallel clay particles.

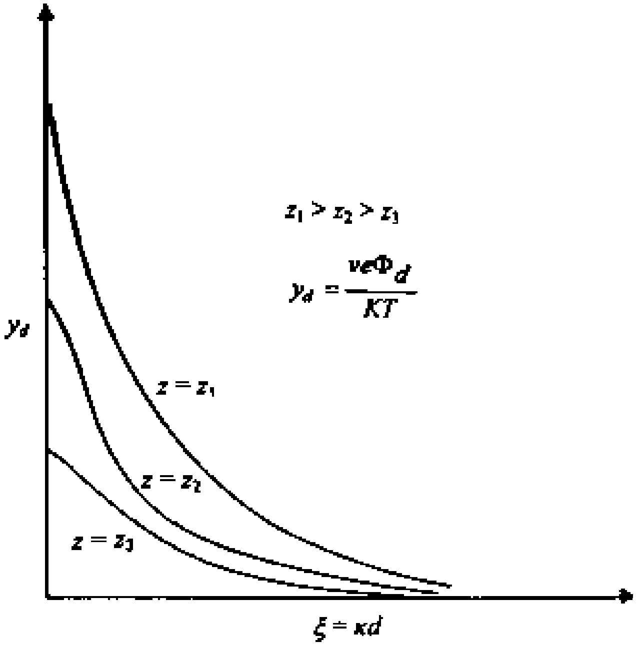


Figure 1.15 Nature of variation of the nondimensional midplane potential for two parallel plates.

1.6 Repulsive pressure

The repulsive pressure midway between two parallel clay plates (Figure 1.16) can be given by the Langmuir equation

$$p = 2n_0KT\left(\cosh\frac{ve\Phi_\mathrm{d}}{KT} - 1\right) \tag{1.14}$$

where p is the repulsive pressure, i.e., the difference between the osmotic pressure midway between the plates in relation to that in the equilibrium solution. Figure 1.17, which is based on the results of Bolt (1956), shows the theoretical and experimental variation of p between two clay particles.

Although the Guoy–Chapman theory has been widely used to explain the behavior of clay, there have been several important objections to this theory. A good review of these objections has been given by Bolt (1955).

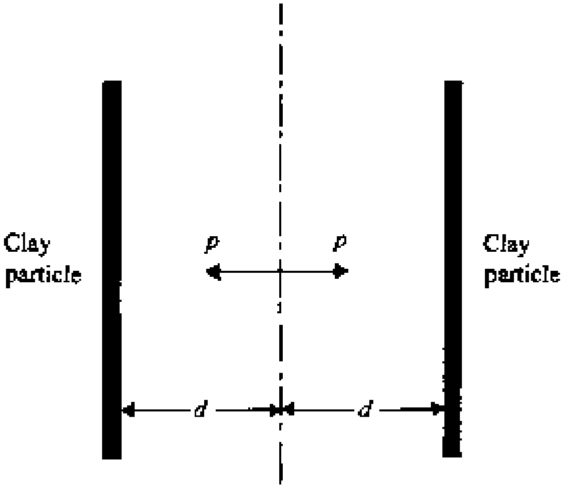


Figure 1.16 Repulsive pressure midway between two parallel clay plates.

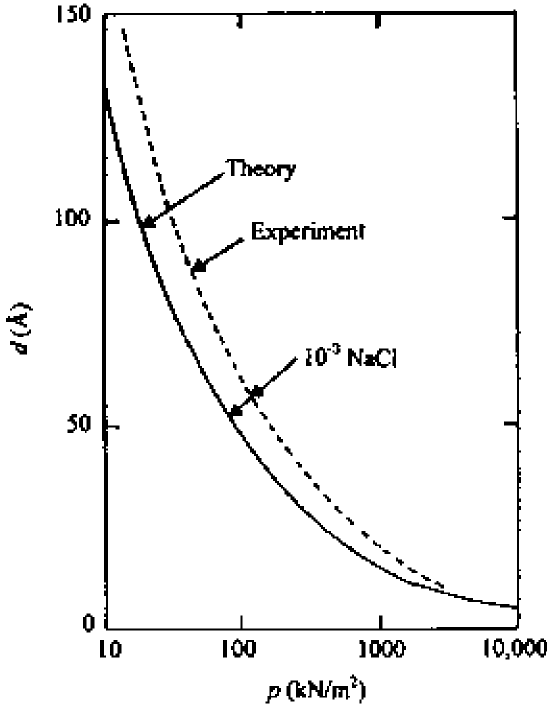


Figure 1.17 Repulsive pressure between sodium montmorillonite clay particles (after Bolt, 1956).

1.7 Flocculation and dispersion of clay particles

In addition to the repulsive force between the clay particles there is an attractive force, which is largely attributed to the Van der Waal's force. This is a secondary bonding force that acts between all adjacent pieces of matter. The force between two flat parallel surfaces varies inversely as $1/x^3$ to $1/x^4$, where x is the distance between the two surfaces. Van der Waal's force is also dependent on the dielectric constant of the medium separating the surfaces. However, if water is the separating medium, substantial changes in the magnitude of the force will not occur with minor changes in the constitution of water.

The behavior of clay particles in a suspension can be qualitatively visualized from our understanding of the attractive and repulsive forces between the particles and with the aid of Figure 1.18. Consider a dilute suspension of clay particles in water. These colloidal clay particles will undergo Brownian movement and, during this random movement, will come close to each other at distances within the range of interparticle forces. The forces of attraction and repulsion between the clay particles vary at different rates with respect

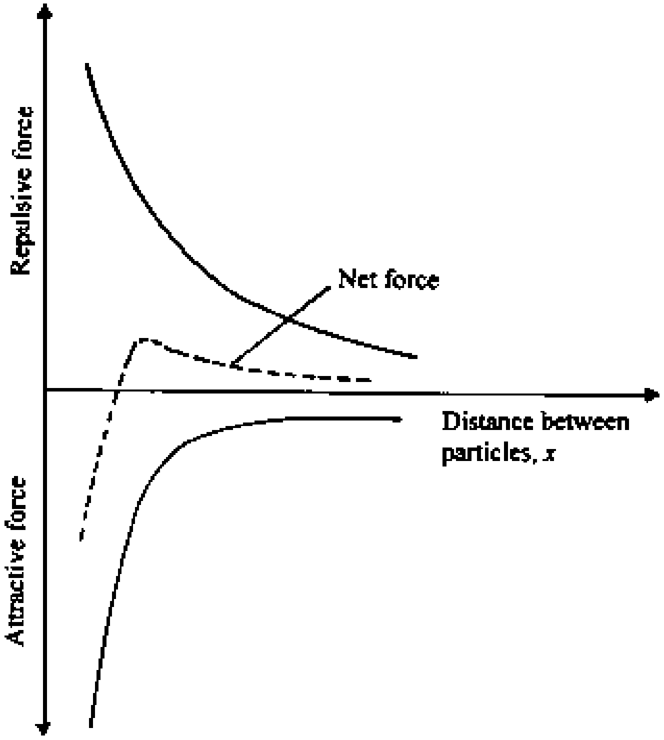


Figure 1.18 Dispersion and flocculation of clay in a suspension.

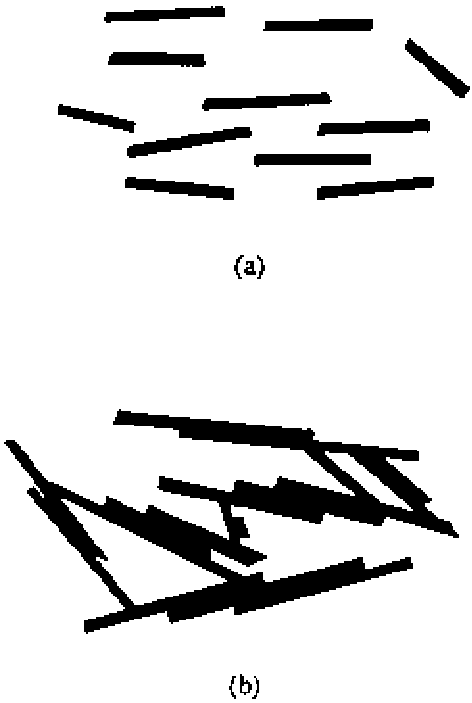


Figure 1.19 (*a*) Dispersion and (*b*) flocculation of clay.

to the distance of separation. The force of repulsion decreases exponentially with distance, whereas the force of attraction decreases as the inverse third or fourth power of distance, as shown in Figure 1.18. Depending on the distance of separation, if the magnitude of the repulsive force is greater than the magnitude of the attractive force, the net result will be repulsion. The clay particles will settle individually and form a dense layer at the bottom; however, they will remain separate from their neighbors (Figure 1.19*a*). This is referred to as the *dispersed state* of the soil. On the contrary, if the net force between the particles is attraction, flocs will be formed and these flocs will settle to the bottom. This is called *flocculated* clay (Figure 1.19*b*).

Salt flocculation and nonsalt flocculation

We saw in Figure 1.12 the effect of salt concentration, n_0, on the repulsive potential of clay particles. High salt concentration will depress the double layer of clay particles and hence the force of repulsion. We noted earlier in this section that the Van der Waal's force largely contributes to the force of attraction between clay particles in suspension. If the clay particles

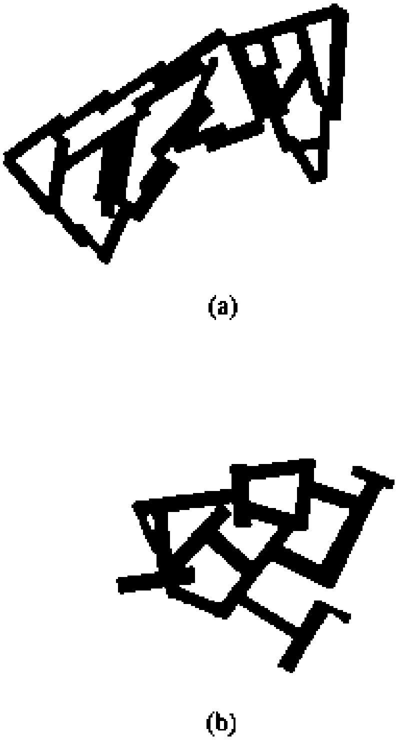


Figure 1.20 (*a*) Salt and (*b*) nonsalt flocculation of clay particles.

are suspended in water with a high salt concentration, the flocs of the clay particles formed by dominant attractive forces will give them mostly an orientation approaching parallelism (face-to-face type). This is called a salt-type flocculation (Figure 1.20*a*).

Another type of force of attraction between the clay particles, which is not taken into account in colloidal theories, is that arising from the electrostatic attraction of the positive charges at the edge of the particles and the negative charges at the face. In a soil–water suspension with low salt concentration, this electrostatic force of attraction may produce a flocculation with an orientation approaching a perpendicular array. This is shown in Figure 1.20*b* and is referred to as nonsalt flocculation.

1.8 Consistency of cohesive soils

The presence of clay minerals in a fine-grained soil will allow it to be remolded in the presence of some moisture without crumbling. If a clay slurry is

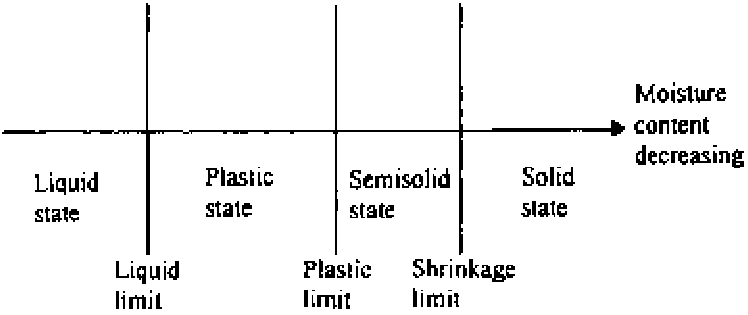


Figure 1.21 Consistency of cohesive soils.

dried, the moisture content will gradually decrease, and the slurry will pass from a liquid state to a plastic state. With further drying, it will change to a semisolid state and finally to a solid state, as shown in Figure 1.21. In 1911, A. Atterberg, a Swedish scientist, developed a method for describing the limit consistency of fine-grained soils on the basis of moisture content. These limits are the *liquid limit*, the *plastic limit*, and the *shrinkage limit*.

The liquid limit is defined as the moisture content, in percent, at which the soil changes from a liquid state to a plastic state. The moisture contents (in percent) at which the soil changes from a plastic to a semisolid state and from a semisolid to a solid state are defined as the plastic limit and the shrinkage limit, respectively. These limits are generally referred to as the *Atterberg limits*. The Atterberg limits of cohesive soil depend on several factors, such as amount and type of clay minerals and type of adsorbed cation.

Liquid limit

Liquid limit of a soil is generally determined by the Standard Casagrande device. A schematic diagram (side view) of a liquid limit device is shown in Figure 1.22*a*. This device consists of a brass cup and a hard rubber base. The brass cup can be dropped onto the base by a cam operated by a crank. To perform the liquid limit test, one must place a soil paste in the cup. A groove is then cut at the center of the soil pat with the standard grooving tool (Figure 1.22*b*). By using the crank-operated cam, the cup is lifted and dropped from a height of 10 mm. The moisture content, in percent, required to close a distance of 12.7 mm along the bottom of the groove (see Figures 1.22*c* and *d*) after 25 blows is defined as the *liquid limit*.

It is difficult to adjust the moisture content in the soil to meet the required 12.7-mm closure of the groove in the soil pat at 25 blows. Hence, at least three tests for the same soil are conducted at varying moisture contents, with the number of blows, N, required to achieve closure varying between 15 and 35. The moisture content of the soil, in percent, and

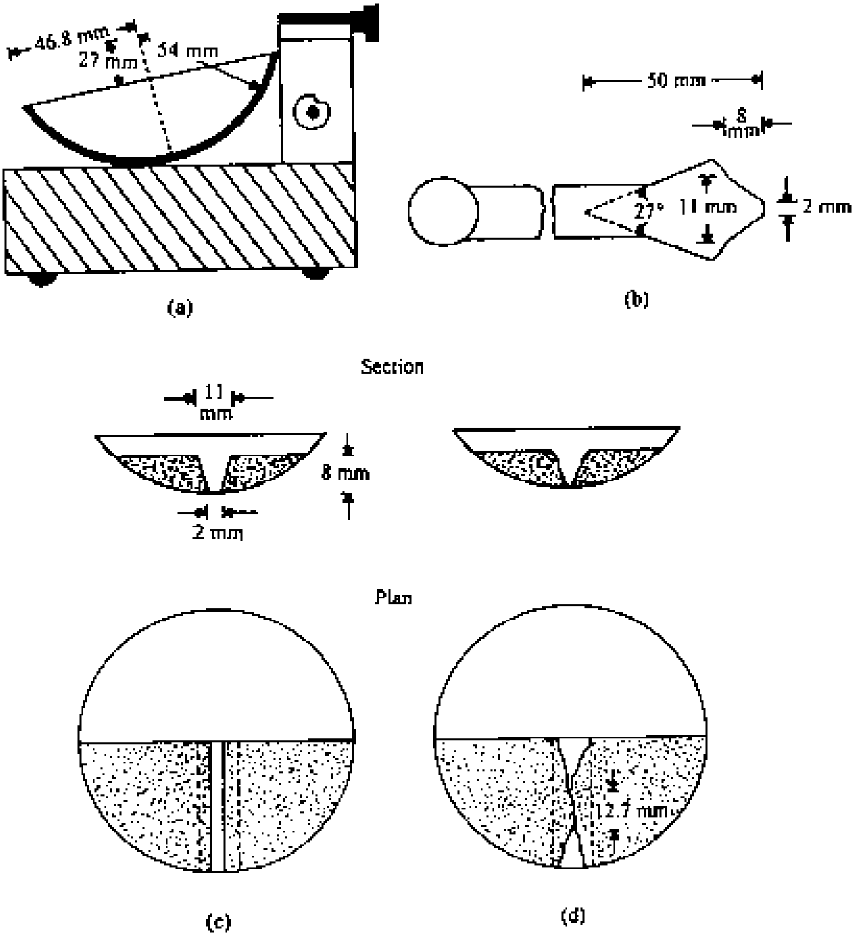


Figure 1.22 Schematic diagram of (*a*) liquid limit device, (*b*) grooving tool, (*c*) soil pat at the beginning of the test and (*d*) soil pat at the end of the test.

the corresponding number of blows are plotted on semilogarithmic graph paper (Figure 1.23). The relationship between moisture content and log N is approximated as a straight line. This line is referred to as the *flow curve*. The moisture content corresponding to $N = 25$, determined from the flow curve, gives the liquid limit of the soil. The slope of the flow line is defined as the *flow index* and may be written as

$$I_F = \frac{w_1 - w_2}{\log\left(\dfrac{N_2}{N_1}\right)} \tag{1.15}$$

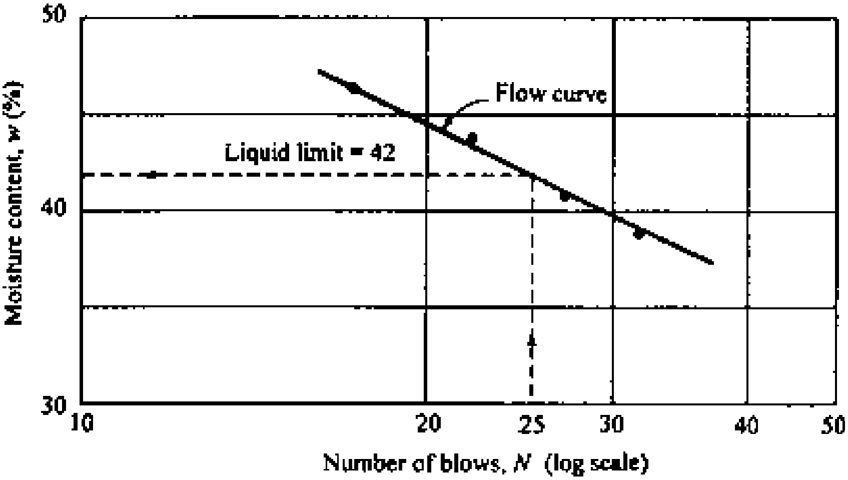


Figure 1.23 Flow curve for determination of liquid limit for a silty clay.

where

I_F = flow index
w_1 = moisture content of soil, in percent, corresponding to N_1 blows
w_2 = moisture content corresponding to N_2 blows

Note that w_2 and w_1 are exchanged to yield a positive value even though the slope of the flow line is negative. Thus, the equation of the flow line can be written in a general form as

$$w = -I_F \log N + C \tag{1.16}$$

where C = a constant.

From the analysis of hundreds of liquid limit tests in 1949, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, at the Waterways Experiment Station in Vicksburg, Mississippi, proposed an empirical equation of the form

$$\mathrm{LL} = w_N \left(\frac{N}{25}\right)^{\tan\beta} \tag{1.17}$$

where

N = number of blows in the liquid limit device for a 12.7-mm groove closure
w_N = corresponding moisture content
$\tan\beta = 0.121$ (but note that $\tan\beta$ is not equal to 0.121 for all soils)

Equation (1.17) generally yields good results for the number of blows between 20 and 30. For routine laboratory tests, it may be used to determine the liquid limit when only one test is run for a soil. This procedure is generally referred to as the *one-point method* and was also adopted by ASTM under designation D-4318. The reason that the one-point method yields fairly good results is that a small range of moisture content is involved when $N = 20$–30.

Another method of determining liquid limit that is popular in Europe and Asia is the *fall cone method* (British Standard—BS 1377). In this test the liquid limit is defined as the moisture content at which a standard cone of apex angle 30° and weight of 0.78 N (80 gf) will penetrate a distance $d = 20\,\text{mm}$ in 5 s when allowed to drop from a position of point contact with the soil surface (Figure 1.24*a*). Due to the difficulty in achieving the liquid limit from a single test, four or more tests can be conducted at various moisture contents to determine the fall cone penetration, d, in 5 s. A semilogarithmic graph can then be plotted with moisture content w versus cone penetration d. The plot results in a straight line. The moisture content corresponding to $d = 20\,\text{mm}$ is the liquid limit (Figure 1.24*b*). From Figure 12.24b, the *flow index* can be defined as

$$I_{\text{FC}} = \frac{w_2(\%) - w_1(\%)}{\log d_2 - \log d_1} \tag{1.18}$$

where w_1, w_2 = moisture contents at cone penetrations of d_1 and d_2, respectively.

Plastic limit

The *plastic limit* is defined as the moist content, in percent, at which the soil crumbles when rolled into threads of 3.2 mm diameter. The plastic limit is the lower limit of the plastic stage of soil. The plastic limit test is simple and is performed by repeated rolling of an ellipsoidal size soil mass by hand on a ground glass plate. The procedure for the plastic limit test is given by ASTM Test Designation D-4318.

As in the case of liquid limit determination, the fall cone method can be used to obtain the plastic limit. This can be achieved by using a cone of similar geometry but with a mass of 2.35 N (240 gf). Three to four tests at varying moist contents of soil are conducted, and the corresponding cone penetrations d are determined. The moisture content corresponding to a cone penetration of $d = 20\,\text{mm}$ is the plastic limit. Figure 1.25 shows the liquid and plastic limit determined by fall cone test for Cambridge Gault clay reported by Wroth and Wood (1978).

The difference between the liquid limit and the plastic limit of a soil is defined as the plasticity index, PI

$$\text{PI} = \text{LL} - \text{PL} \tag{1.19}$$

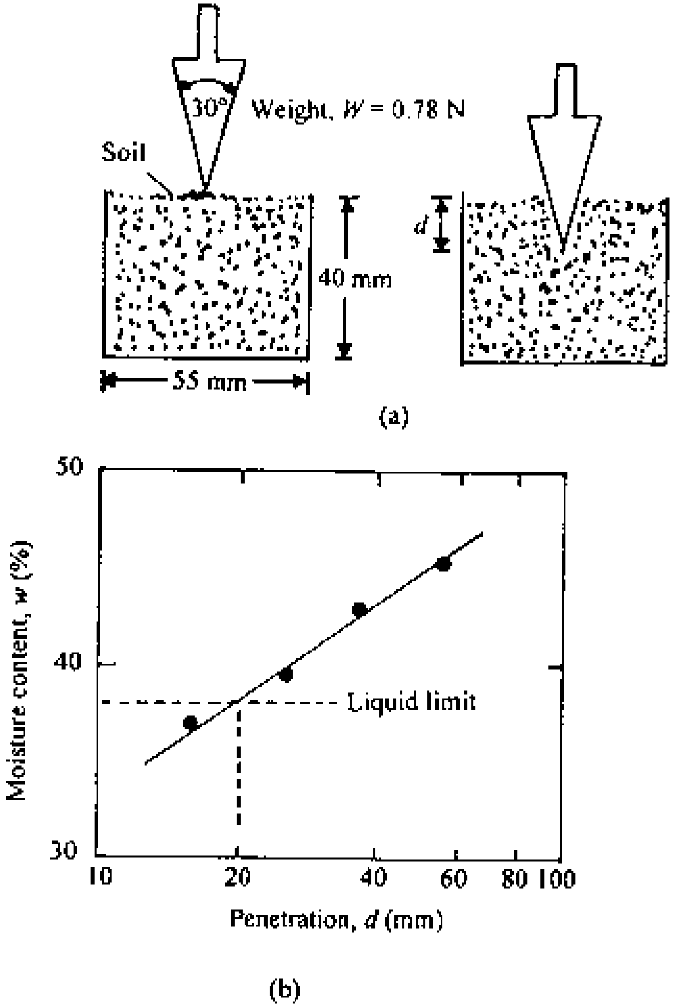


Figure 1.24 (*a*) Fall cone test and (*b*) Plot of moisture content versus cone penetration for determination of liquid limit.

where LL is the liquid limit and PL the plastic limit.

Sridharan *et al.* (1999) showed that the plasticity index can be correlated to the flow index as obtained from the liquid limit tests. According to their study,

$$\mathrm{PI}(\%) = 4.12 I_{\mathrm{F}}(\%) \tag{1.20}$$

and

$$\mathrm{PI}(\%) = 0.74 I_{\mathrm{FC}}(\%) \tag{1.21}$$

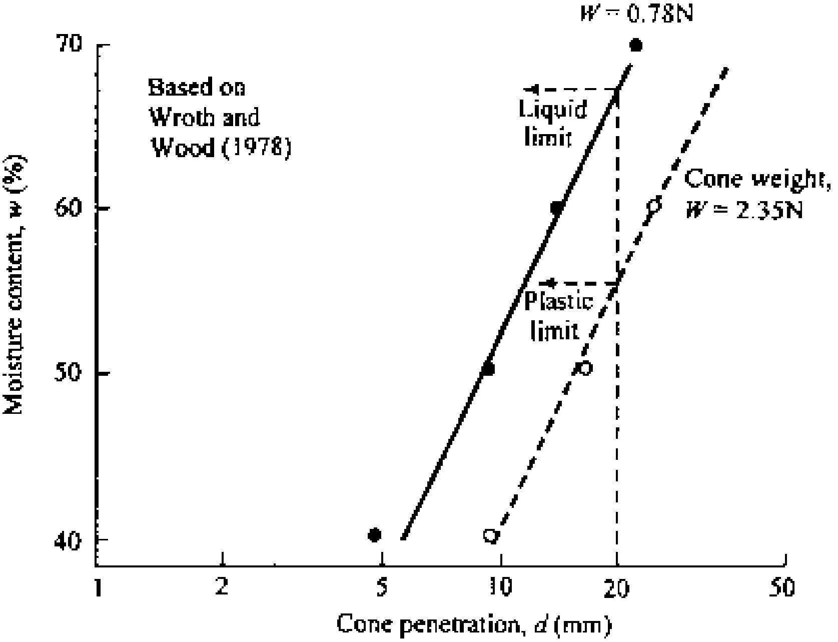


Figure 1.25 Liquid and plastic limits for Cambridge Gault clay determined by fall cone test.

1.9 Liquidity index

The relative consistency of a cohesive soil can be defined by a ratio called the *liquidity index* LI. It is defined as

$$\mathrm{LI} = \frac{w_\mathrm{N} - \mathrm{PL}}{\mathrm{LL} - \mathrm{PL}} = \frac{w_\mathrm{N} - \mathrm{PL}}{\mathrm{PI}} \tag{1.22}$$

where w_N is the natural moisture content. It can be seen from Eq. (1.22) that, if $w_\mathrm{N} = \mathrm{LL}$, then the liquidity index is equal to 1. Again, if $w_\mathrm{N} = \mathrm{PL}$, the liquidity index is equal to 0. Thus, for a natural soil deposit which is in a plastic state (i.e., $\mathrm{LL} \geq w_\mathrm{N} \geq \mathrm{PL}$), the value of the liquidity index varies between 1 and 0. A natural deposit with $w_\mathrm{N} \geq \mathrm{LL}$ will have a liquidity index greater than 1. In an undisturbed state, these soils may be stable; however, a sudden shock may transform them into a liquid state. Such soils are called *sensitive clays*.

1.10 Activity

Since the plastic property of soil is due to the adsorbed water that surrounds the clay particles, we can expect that the type of clay minerals and

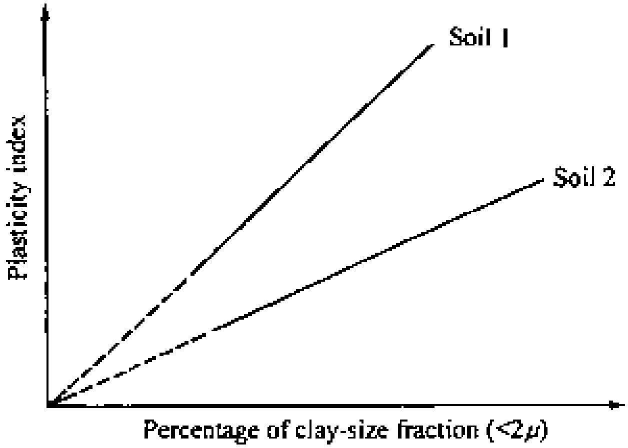


Figure 1.26 Relationship between plasticity index and percentage of clay-size fraction by weight.

their proportional amounts in a soil will affect the liquid and plastic limits. Skempton (1953) observed that the plasticity index of a soil linearly increases with the percent of clay-size fraction (percent finer than 2μ by weight) present in it. This relationship is shown in Figure 1.26. The average lines for all the soils pass through the origin. The correlations of PI with the clay-size fractions for different clays plot separate lines. This is due to the type of clay minerals in each soil. On the basis of these results, Skempton defined a quantity called activity that is the slope of the line correlating PI and percent finer than 2μ. This activity A may be expressed as

$$A = \frac{\text{PI}}{(\text{percentage of clay-size fraction, by weight})} \tag{1.23}$$

Activity is used as an index for identifying the swelling potential of clay soils. Typical values of activities for various clay minerals are given in Table 1.3.

Table 1.3 Activities of clay minerals

Mineral	*Activity (A)*
Smectites	1–7
Illite	0.5–1
Kaolinite	0.5
Halloysite ($4H_2O$)	0.5
Halloysite ($2H_2O$)	0.1
Attapulgite	0.5–1.2
Allophane	0.5–1.2

Seed *et al.* (1964a) studied the plastic property of several artificially prepared mixtures of sand and clay. They concluded that, although the relationship of the plasticity index to the percent of clay-size fraction is linear (as observed by Skempton), it may not always pass through the origin. This is shown in Figure 1.27. Thus, the activity can be redefined as

$$A = \frac{\text{PI}}{\text{percent of clay-size fraction} - C'} \tag{1.24}$$

where C' is a constant for a given soil. For the experimental results shown in Figure 1.27, $C' = 9$.

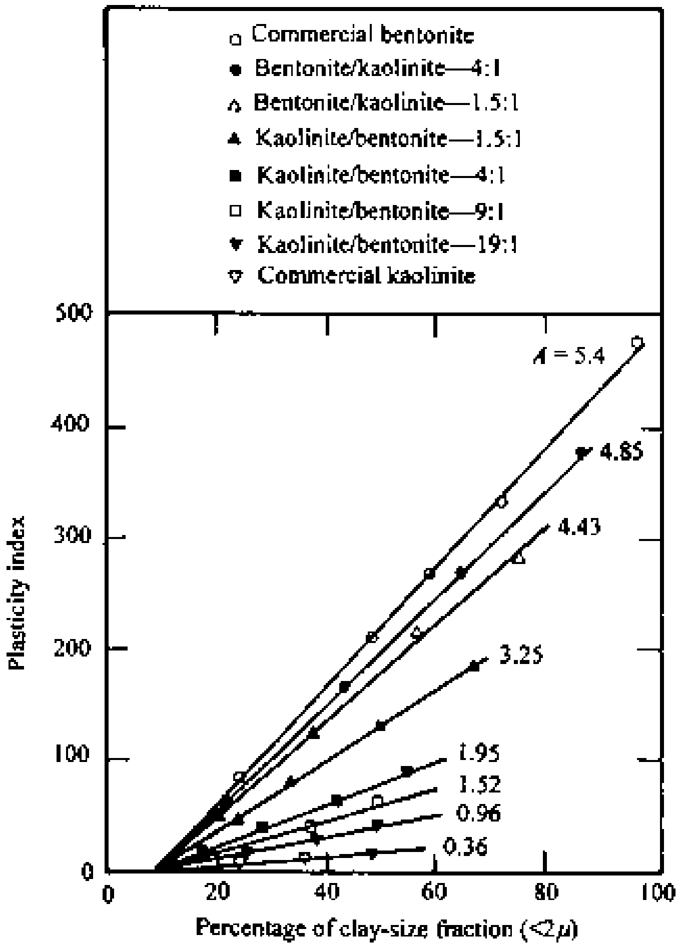


Figure 1.27 Relationship between plasticity index and clay-size fraction by weight for kaolinite/bentonite clay mixtures (after Seed *et al.*, 1964a).

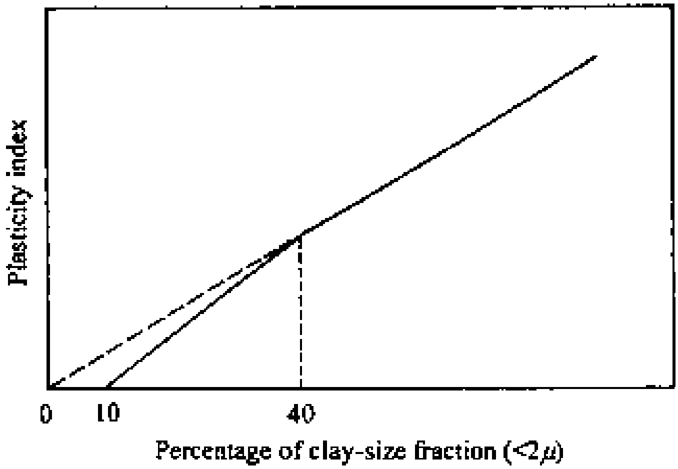


Figure 1.28 Simplified relationship between plasticity index and percentage of clay-size fraction by weight (after Seed *et al.*, 1964b).

Further works of Seed *et al.* (1964b) have shown that the relationship of the plasticity index to the percentage of clay-size fractions present in a soil can be represented by two straight lines. This is shown qualitatively in Figure 1.28. For clay-size fractions greater than 40%, the straight line passes through the origin when it is projected back.

1.11 Grain-size distribution of soil

For a basic understanding of the nature of soil, the distribution of the grain size present in a given soil mass must be known. The grain-size distribution of coarse-grained soils (gravelly and/or sandy) is determined by sieve analysis. Table 1.4 gives the opening size of some U.S. sieves.

The cumulative percent by weight of a soil passing a given sieve is referred to as the *percent finer*. Figure 1.29 shows the results of a sieve analysis for a sandy soil. The grain-size distribution can be used to determine some of the basic soil parameters, such as the effective size, the uniformity coefficient, and the coefficient of gradation.

The *effective size* of a soil is the diameter through which 10% of the total soil mass is passing and is referred to as D_{10}. The *uniformity coefficient* C_u is defined as

$$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} \tag{1.25}$$

where D_{60} is the diameter through which 60% of the total soil mass is passing.

Table 1.4 U.S. standard sieves

Sieve no.	*Opening size (mm)*
3	6.35
4	4.75
6	3.36
8	2.38
10	2.00
16	1.19
20	0.84
30	0.59
40	0.425
50	0.297
60	0.25
70	0.21
100	0.149
140	0.105
200	0.075
270	0.053

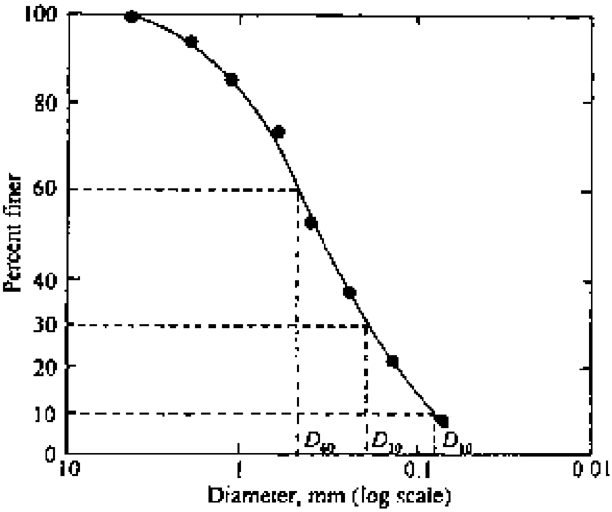


Figure 1.29 Grain-size distribution of a sandy soil.

The *coefficient of gradation* C_c is defined as

$$C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{(D_{60})(D_{10})} \tag{1.26}$$

where D_{30} is the diameter through which 30% of the total soil mass is passing.

A soil is called a *well-graded* soil if the distribution of the grain sizes extends over a rather large range. In that case, the value of the uniformity coefficient is large. Generally, a soil is referred to as well graded if C_u is larger than about 4–6 and C_c is between 1 and 3. When most of the grains in a soil mass are of approximately the same size—i.e., C_u is close to 1—the soil is called *poorly graded*. A soil might have a combination of two or more well-graded soil fractions, and this type of soil is referred to as a *gap-graded* soil.

The sieve analysis technique described above is applicable for soil grains larger than No. 200 (0.075 mm) sieve size. For fine-grained soils the procedure used for determination of the grain-size distribution is hydrometer analysis. This is based on the principle of sedimentation of soil grains.

1.12 Weight–volume relationships

Figure 1.30*a* shows a soil mass that has a total volume V and a total weight W. To develop the weight–volume relationships, the three phases of the soil mass, i.e., soil solids, air, and water, have been separated in Figure 1.30*b*. Note that

$$W = W_s + W_w \tag{1.27}$$

and, also,

$$V = V_s + V_w + V_a \tag{1.28}$$

$$V_v = V_w + V_a \tag{1.29}$$

where

W_s = weight of soil solids
W_w = weight of water
V_s = volume of the soil solids
V_w = volume of water
V_a = volume of air

The weight of air is assumed to be zero. The volume relations commonly used in soil mechanics are void ratio, porosity, and degree of saturation.

Void ratio e is defined as the ratio of the volume of voids to the volume of solids:

$$e = \frac{V_v}{V_s} \tag{1.30}$$

Porosity n is defined as the ratio of the volume of voids to the total volume:

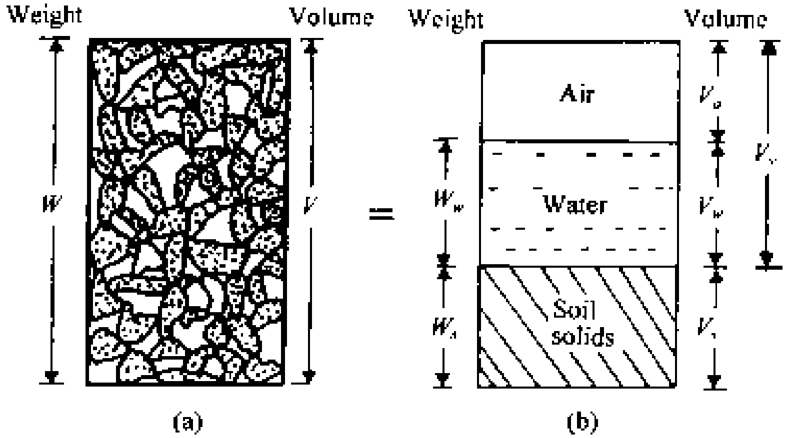


Figure 1.30 Weight–volume relationships for soil aggregate.

$$n = \frac{V_\upsilon}{V} \tag{1.31}$$

Also, $V = V_s + V_u$
and so

$$n = \frac{V_\upsilon}{V_s + V_\upsilon} = \frac{V_\upsilon / V_s}{\dfrac{V_s}{V_s} + \dfrac{V_\upsilon}{V_s}} = \frac{e}{1+e} \tag{1.32}$$

Degree of saturation S_r is the ratio of the volume of water to the volume of voids and is generally expressed as a percentage:

$$S_r(\%) = \frac{V_w}{V_\upsilon} \times 100 \tag{1.33}$$

The weight relations used are moisture content and unit weight. *Moisture content w* is defined as the ratio of the weight of water to the weight of soil solids, generally expressed as a percentage:

$$w(\%) = \frac{W_w}{W_s} \times 100 \tag{1.34}$$

Unit weight γ is the ratio of the total weight to the total volume of the soil aggregate:

$$\gamma = \frac{W}{V} \tag{1.35}$$

This is sometimes referred to as moist unit weight since it includes the weight of water and the soil solids. If the entire void space is filled with water (i.e., $V_a = 0$), it is a saturated soil; Eq. (1.35) will then give use the saturated unit weight γ_{sat}.

The dry unit weight γ_d is defined as the ratio of the weight of soil solids to the total volume:

$$\gamma_d = \frac{W_s}{V} \tag{1.36}$$

Useful weight–volume relations can be developed by considering a soil mass in which the volume of soil solids is unity, as shown in Figure 1.31. Since $V_s = 1$, from the definition of void ratio given in Eq. (1.30) the volume of voids is equal to the void ratio e. The weight of soil solids can be given by

$$W_s = G_s \gamma_w V_s = G_s \gamma_w \qquad (\text{since } V_s = 1)$$

where G_s is the specific gravity of soil solids, and γ_w the unit weight of water (9.81 kN/m^3).

From Eq. (1.34), the weight of water is $W_w = wW_s = wG_s\gamma_w$. So the moist unit weight is

$$\gamma = \frac{W}{V} = \frac{W_s + W_w}{V_s + V_v} = \frac{G_s\gamma_w + wG_s\gamma_w}{1+e} = \frac{G_s\gamma_w(1+w)}{1+e} \tag{1.37}$$

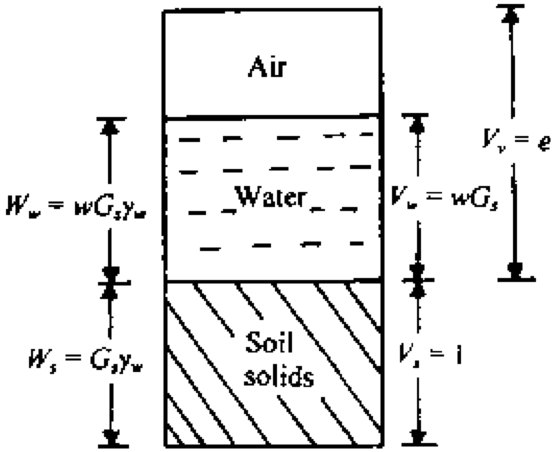


Figure 1.31 Weight–volume relationship for $V_s = 1$.

The dry unit weight can also be determined from Figure 1.31 as

$$\gamma_d = \frac{W_s}{V} = \frac{G_s \gamma_w}{1+e} \tag{1.38}$$

The degree of saturation can be given by

$$S_r = \frac{V_w}{V_v} = \frac{W_w/\gamma_w}{V_v} = \frac{wG_s\gamma_w/\gamma_w}{e} = \frac{wG_s}{e} \tag{1.39}$$

For saturated soils, $S_r = 1$. So, from Eq. (1.39),

$$e = WG_s \tag{1.40}$$

By referring to Figure 1.32, the relation for the unit weight of a saturated soil can be obtained as

$$\gamma_{sat} = \frac{W}{V} = \frac{W_s + W_w}{V} = \frac{G_s\gamma_w + e\gamma_w}{1+e} \tag{1.41}$$

Basic relations for unit weight such as Eqs. (1.37), (1.38), and (1.41) in terms of porosity n can also be derived by considering a soil mass that has a total volume of unity as shown in Figure 1.33. In this case (for $V = 1$), from Eq. (1.31), $V_v = n$. So, $V_s = V - V_v = 1 - n$.

The weight of soil solids is equal to $(1-n)G_s\gamma_w$, and the weight of water $W_w = wW_s = w(1-n)G_s\gamma_w$. Thus the moist unit weight is

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma &= \frac{W}{V} = \frac{W_s + W_w}{V} = \frac{(1-n)G_s\gamma_w + w(1-n)G_s\gamma_w}{1} \\ &= G_s\gamma_w(1-n)(1+w)\end{aligned} \tag{1.42}$$

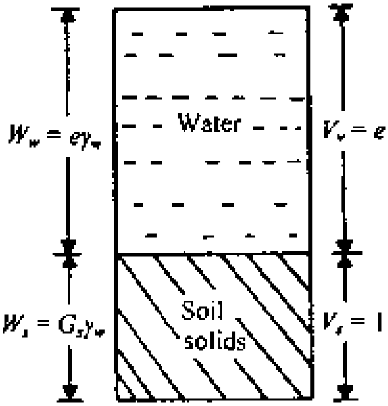


Figure 1.32 Weight–volume relation for saturated soil with $V_s = 1$.

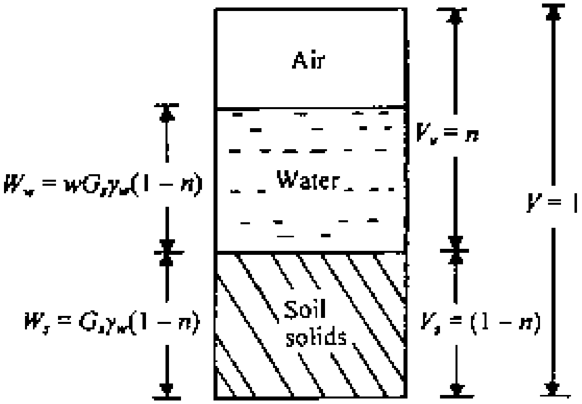


Figure 1.33 Weight–volume relationship for $V = 1$.

The dry unit weight is

$$\gamma_d = \frac{W_s}{V} = (1-n)G_s\gamma_w \tag{1.43}$$

If the soil is saturated (Figure 1.34),

$$\gamma_{sat} = \frac{W_s + W_w}{V} = (1-n)G_s\gamma_w + n\gamma_w = [G_s - n(G_s - 1)]\gamma_w \tag{1.44}$$

Table 1.5 gives some typical values of void ratios and dry unit weights encountered in granular soils.

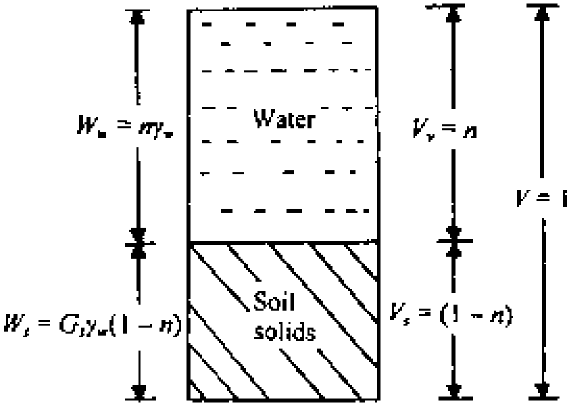


Figure 1.34 Weight–volume relationship for saturated soil with $V = 1$.

Table 1.5 Typical values of void ratios and dry unit weights for granular soils

Soil type	*Void ratio, e*		*Dry unit weight, γ_d*	
	Maximum	*Minimum*	*Minimum (kN/m^3)*	*Maximum (kN/m^3)*
Gravel	0.6	0.3	16	20
Coarse sand	0.75	0.35	15	19
Fine sand	0.85	0.4	14	19
Standard Ottawa sand	0.8	0.5	14	17
Gravelly sand	0.7	0.2	15	22
Silty sand	1	0.4	13	19
Silty sand and gravel	0.85	0.15	14	23

EXAMPLE 1.1

For a soil in natural state, given $e = 0.8$, $w = 24\%$, and $G_s = 2.68$.

(a) Determine the moist unit weight, dry unit weight, and degree of saturation.
(b) If the soil is completely saturated by adding water, what would its moisture content be at that time? Also find the saturated unit weight.

SOLUTION *Part a*: From Eq. (1.37), the moist unit weight is

$$\gamma = \frac{G_s \gamma_w (1 + w)}{1 + e}$$

Since $\gamma_w = 9.81\,\text{kN/m}^3$,

$$\gamma = \frac{(2.68)(9.81)(1 + 0.24)}{1 + 0.8} = 18.11\,\text{kN/m}^3$$

From Eq. (1.38), the dry unit weight is

$$\gamma_d = \frac{G_s \gamma_w}{1 + e} = \frac{(2.68)(9.81)}{1 + 0.8} = 14.61\,\text{kN/m}^3$$

From Eq. (1.39), the degree of saturation is

$$S_r(\%) = \frac{wG_s}{e} \times 100 = \frac{(0.24)(2.68)}{0.8} \times 100 = 80.4\%$$

Part b: From Eq. (1.40), for saturated soils, $e = wG_s$, or

$$w(\%) = \frac{e}{G_s} \times 100 = \frac{0.8}{2.68} \times 100 = 29.85\%$$

From Eq. (1.41), the saturated unit weight is

$$\gamma_{\text{sat}} = \frac{G_s\gamma_w + e\gamma_w}{1+e} = \frac{9.81(2.68+0.8)}{1+0.8} = 18.97\,\text{kN/m}^3$$

1.13 Relative density and relative compaction

Relative density is a term generally used to describe the degree of compaction of coarse-grained soils. Relative density D_r is defined as

$$D_r = \frac{e_{\max} - e}{e_{\max} - e_{\min}} \tag{1.45}$$

where

$e_{\max}$ = maximum possible void ratio
$e_{\min}$ = minimum possible void ratio
e = void ratio in natural state of soil

Equation (1.45) can also be expressed in terms of dry unit weight of the soil:

$$\gamma_d(\max) = \frac{G_s\gamma_w}{1+e_{\min}} \quad \text{or} \quad e_{\min} = \frac{G_s\gamma_w}{\gamma_d(\max)} - 1 \tag{1.46}$$

Similarly,

$$e_{\max} = \frac{G_s\gamma_w}{\gamma_d(\min)} - 1 \tag{1.47}$$

and

$$e = \frac{G_s\gamma_w}{\gamma_d} - 1 \tag{1.48}$$

where $\gamma_d(\max)$, $\gamma_d(\min)$, and γ_d are the maximum, minimum, and natural-state dry unit weights of the soil. Substitution of Eqs. (1.46), (1.47), and (1.48) into Eq. (1.45) yields

$$D_r = \frac{\gamma_d(\max)}{\gamma_d}\,\frac{\gamma_d - \gamma_d(\min)}{\gamma_d(\max) - \gamma_d(\min)} \tag{1.49}$$

Relative density is generally expressed as a percentage. It has been used by several investigators to correlate the angle of friction of soil, the soil liquefication potential, etc.

Another term occasionally used in regard to the degree of compaction of coarse-grained soils is *relative compaction*, R_c, which is defined as

$$R_c = \frac{\gamma_d}{\gamma_{d(\max)}} \tag{1.50a}$$

Comparing Eqs. (1.49) and (1.50a),

$$R_c = \frac{R_o}{1 - D_r(1 - R_o)} \tag{1.50b}$$

where $R_o = \gamma_{d(\min)}/\gamma_{d(\max)}$.

Lee and Singh (1971) reviewed 47 different soils and gave the approximate relation between relative compaction and relative density as

$$R_c = 80 + 0.2D_r \tag{1.50c}$$

where D_r is in percent.

1.14 Effect of roundness and nonplastic fines on $e_{\max}$ and $e_{\min}$ for granular soils

The maximum and minimum void ratios ($e_{\max}$ and $e_{\min}$) described in the preceding section depends on several factors such as the particle size, the roundness of the particles in the soil mass, and the presence of nonplastic fines. Angularity R of a granular soil particle can be defined as

$$R = \frac{\text{Average radius of the corner and edges}}{\text{Radius of the maximum inscribed sphere}} \tag{1.51}$$

Youd (1973) provided relationship between R, the uniformity coefficient C_u, and $e_{\max}$ and $e_{\min}$. These relationship are shown in Figure 1.35. Note that, for a given value of R, the magnitudes of $e_{\max}$ and $e_{\min}$ decrease with the increase in uniformity coefficient. The amount of nonplastic fines present in a given granular soil has a great influence on $e_{\max}$ and $e_{\min}$. Figure 1.36 shows a plot of the variation of $e_{\max}$ and $e_{\min}$ with percentage of nonplastic fines (by volume) for Nevada 50/80 sand (Lade *et al.*, 1998). The ratio of D_{50} (size through which 50% of soil will pass) for the sand to that of nonplastic fines used for the tests shown in Figure 1.36 (i.e., $D_{50\text{-sand}}/D_{50\text{-fine}}$) was 4.2. From this figure it can be seen that, as the percentage of fines by volume increased from zero to about 30%, the magnitudes of $e_{\max}$ and $e_{\min}$ decreased. This is the filling-of-void phase where the fines tend to fill the void spaces between the larger sand particles. There is a transition zone where the percentage of fines is between 30 and 40%. However, when the

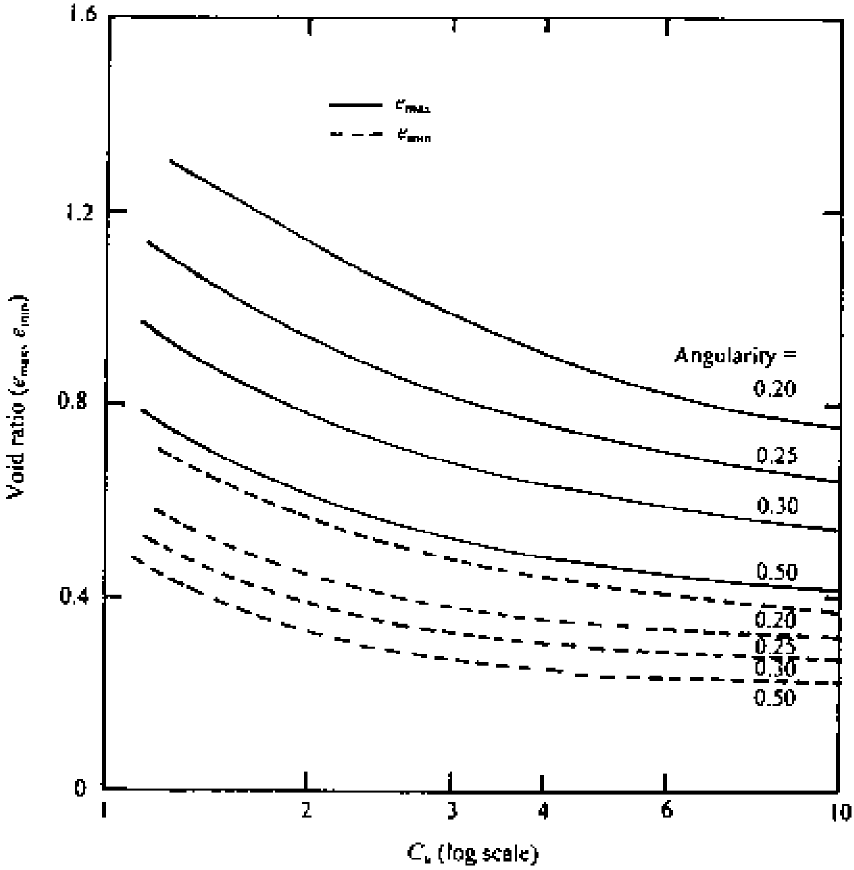


Figure 1.35 Youd's recommended variation of e_{max} and e_{min} with angularity and C_u.

percentage of fines becomes more than about 40%, the magnitudes of e_{max} and e_{min} start increasing. This is the so-called replacement-of-solids phase where the large size particles are pushed out and are gradually replaced by the fines.

Cubrinovski and Ishihara (2002) studied the variation of e_{max} and e_{min} for a very large number of soils. Based on the best-fit linear regression lines, they provided the following relationships:

- Clean sand ($F_c = 0 - 5\%$)

$$e_{max} = 0.072 + 1.53e_{min} \tag{1.52}$$

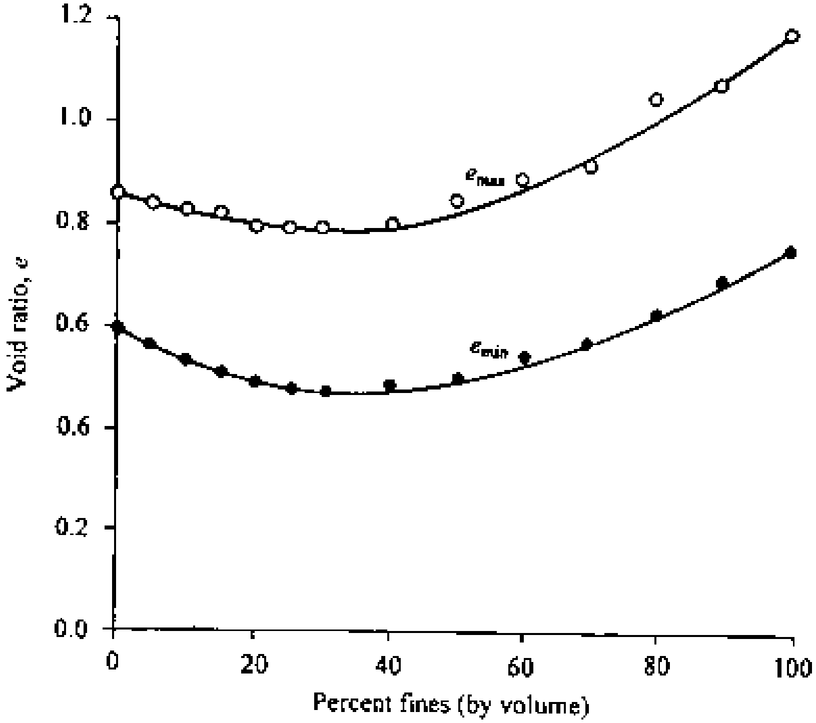


Figure 1.36 Variation of e_{max} and e_{min} (for Nevada 50/80 sand) with percentage of nonplastic fines based on the study of Lade *et al.*, 1998.

- Sand with fines ($5 < F_c \leq 15\%$)

$$e_{max} = 0.25 + 1.37e_{min} \tag{1.53}$$

- Sand with fines and clay ($15 < F_c \leq 30\%$; $P_c = 5$ to 20%)

$$e_{max} = 0.44 + 1.21e_{min} \tag{1.54}$$

- Silty soils ($30 < F_c \leq 70\%$; $P_c = 5$ to 20%)

$$e_{max} = 0.44 + 1.32e_{min} \tag{1.55}$$

where

F_c = fine fraction for which grain size is smaller than 0.075 mm
P_c = clay-size fraction (< 0.005 mm)

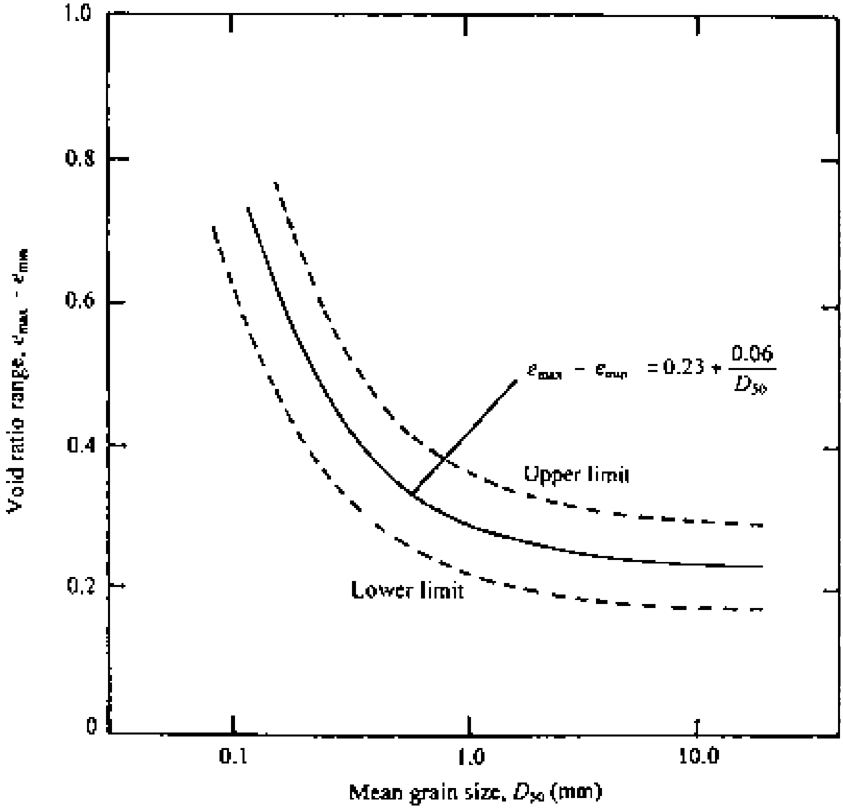


Figure 1.37 Plot of $e_{max} - e_{min}$ versus the mean grain size.

Figure 1.37 shows a plot of $e_{max} - e_{min}$ versus the mean grain size (D_{50}) for a number of soils (Cubrinovski and Ishihara, 1999, 2002). From this figure, the average plot for sandy and gravelly soils can be given by the relationship

$$e_{max} - e_{min} = 0.23 + \frac{0.06}{D_{50}(\text{mm})} \tag{1.56}$$

1.15 Unified soil classification system

Soil classification is the arrangement of soils into various groups or subgroups to provide a common language to express briefly the general usage characteristics without detailed descriptions. At the present time, two major soil classification systems are available for general engineering use. They are the unified system, which is described below, and the AASHTO system. Both systems use simple index properties such as grain-size distribution, liquid limit, and plasticity index of soil.

The unified system of soil classification was originally proposed by A. Casagrande in 1948 and was then revised in 1952 by the Corps of Engineers and the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. In its present form, the system is widely used by various organizations, geotechnical engineers in private consulting business, and building codes.

Initially, there are two major divisions in this system. A soil is classified as a coarse-grained soil (gravelly and sandy) if more than 50% is retained on a No. 200 sieve and as a fine-grained soil (silty and clayey) if 50% or more is passing through a No. 200 sieve. The soil is then further classified by a number of subdivisions, as shown in Table 1.6.

Table 1.6 Unified soil classification system

Major divisions	*Group symbols*	*Typical names*	*Criteria or classification**
Coarse-grained soils ($<$ 50% passing No. 200 sieve)			
Gravels ($<$ 50% of coarse fraction passing No. 4 sieve)			
Gravels with few or no fines	GW	Well-graded gravels; gravel–sand mixtures (few or no fines)	$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} > 4$; $C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{(D_{10})(D_{60})}$ Between 1 and 3
	GP	Poorly graded gravels; gravel–sand mixtures (few or no fines)	Not meeting the two criteria for GW
Gravels with fines	GM	Silty gravels; gravel–sand–silt mixtures	Atterberg limits below *A*-line *or* plasticity index less than 4† (see Figure 1.38)
	GC	Clayey gravels; gravel–sand–clay mixtures	Atterberg limits about *A*-line *with* plasticity index greater than 7† (see Figure 1.38)
Sands ($\geq$ 50% of coarse fraction passing No. 4 sieve)			
Clean sands (few or no fines)	SW	Well-graded sands; gravelly sands (few or no fines)	$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} > 6$; $C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{(D_{10})(D_{60})}$ Between 1 and 3

Table 1.6 (Continued)

Major divisions	*Group symbols*	*Typical names*	*Criteria or classification**
	SP	Poorly graded sands; gravelly sands (few or no fines)	Not meeting the two criteria for SW
Sands with fines (appreciable amount of fines)	SM	Silty sands; sand–silt mixtures	Atterberg limits below *A*-line *or* plasticity index less than 4[†] (see Figure 1.38)
	SC	Clayey sands; sand–clay mixtures	Atterberg limits above *A*-line *with* plasticity index greater than 7[†] (see Figure 1.38)
Fine-grained soils ($\geq$ 50% passing No. 200 sieve)			
Silts and clay (liquid limit less than 50)	ML	Inorganic silts; very fine sands; rock flour; silty or clayey fine sands	See Figure 1.38
	CL	Inorganic clays (low to medium plasticity); gravelly clays; sandy clays; silty clays; lean clays	See Figure 1.38
	OL	Organic silts; organic silty clays (low plasticity)	See Figure 1.38
Silts and clay (liquid limit greater than 50)	MH	Inorganic silts; micaceous or diatomaceous fine sandy or silty soils; elastic silt	See Figure 1.38
	CH	Inorganic clays (high plasticity); fat clays	See Figure 1.38
	OH	Organic clays (medium to high plasticity); organic silts	See Figure 1.38
Highly organic silts	Pt	Peat; mulch; and other highly organic soils	

Group symbols are G. gravel: W. well-graded; S. sand; P. poorly graded; C. clay: H. high plasticity; M. silt: L. low plasticity: O. organic silt or clay: Pt. peat and highly organic soil.

[*] Classification based on percentage of fines: < 5% passing No. 200: GW. GP. SW. SP: > 12% passing No. 200: GM. GC. SM. SC: 5–12% passing No. 200: borderline—dual symbols required such as GW-GM. GW-GC. GP-GM. GP-SC. SW-SM. SW-SC. SP-SM. SP-SC.

[†] Atterberg limits above *A*-line and plasticity index between 4 and 7 are borderline cases. It needs dual symbols (see Figure 1.38).

EXAMPLE 1.2

For a soil specimen, given the following,

passing No. 4 sieve = 92%	passing No. 40 sieve = 78%
passing No. 10 sieve = 81%	passing No. 200 sieve = 65%
liquid limit = 48	plasticity index = 32

classify the soil by the unified classification system.

SOLUTION Since more than 50% is passing through a No. 200 sieve, it is a fine-grained soil, i.e., it could be ML, CL, OL, MH, CH, or OH. Now, if we plot LL = 48 and PI = 32 on the plasticity chart given in Figure 1.38, it falls in the zone CL. So the soil is classified as CL.

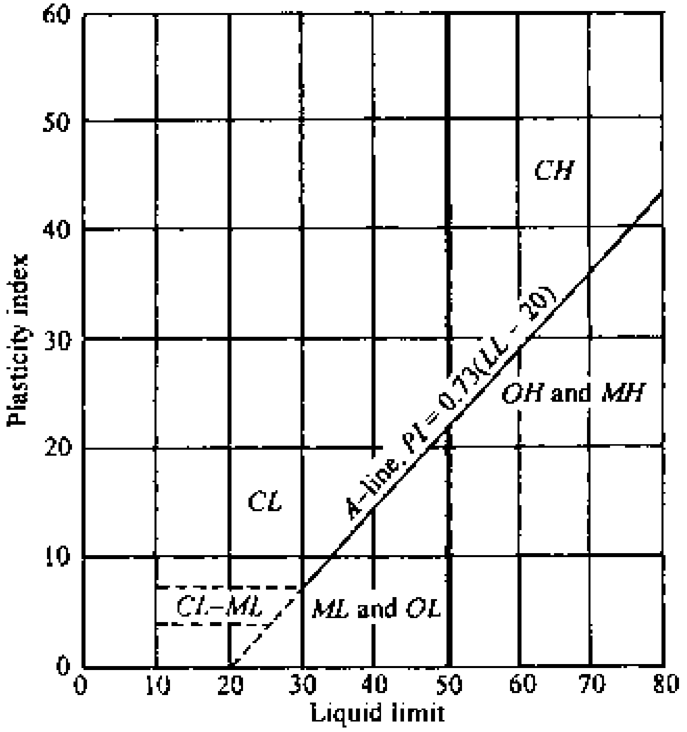


Figure 1.38 Plasticity chart.

PROBLEMS

1.1 For a given soil, the in situ void ratio is 0.72 and $G_s = 2.61$. Calculate the porosity, dry unit weight (kN/m^3), and the saturated unit weight. What would the moist unit weight be when the soil is 60% saturated?

1.2 A saturated clay soil has a moisture content of 40%. Given that $G_s = 2.78$, calculate the dry unit weight and saturated unit weight of the soil. Calculate the porosity of the soil.

1.3 For an undisturbed soil, the total volume is 0.145 m^3, the moist weight is 2.67 kN, the dry weight is 2.32 kN, and the void ratio is 0.6. Calculate the moisture content, dry unit weight, moist unit weight, degree of saturation, porosity, and G_s.

1.4 If a granular soil is compacted to a moist unit weight of 20.45 kN/m^3 at a moisture content of 18%, what is the relative density of the compacted soil, given $e_{\max} = 0.85$, $e_{\min} = 0.42$, and $G_s = 2.65$?

1.5 For Prob. 1.4, what is the relative compaction?

1.6 From the results of a sieve analysis given below, plot a graph for percent finer versus grain size and then determine (a) the effective size, (b) the uniformity coefficient, and (c) the coefficient of gradation.

U.S. sieve No.	*Mass of soil retained on each sieve (g)*
4	12.0
10	48.4
20	92.5
40	156.5
60	201.2
100	106.8
200	162.4
Pan	63.2

Would you consider this to be a well-graded soil?

1.7 The grain-size distribution curve for a soil is given in Figure P1.1. Determine the percent of gravel, sand, silt, and clay present in this sample according to the M.I.T. soil–separate size limits Table 1.1.

1.8 For a natural silty clay, the liquid limit is 55, the plastic limit is 28, and the percent finer than 0.002 mm is 29%. Estimate its activity.

1.9 Classify the following soils according to the unified soil classification system.

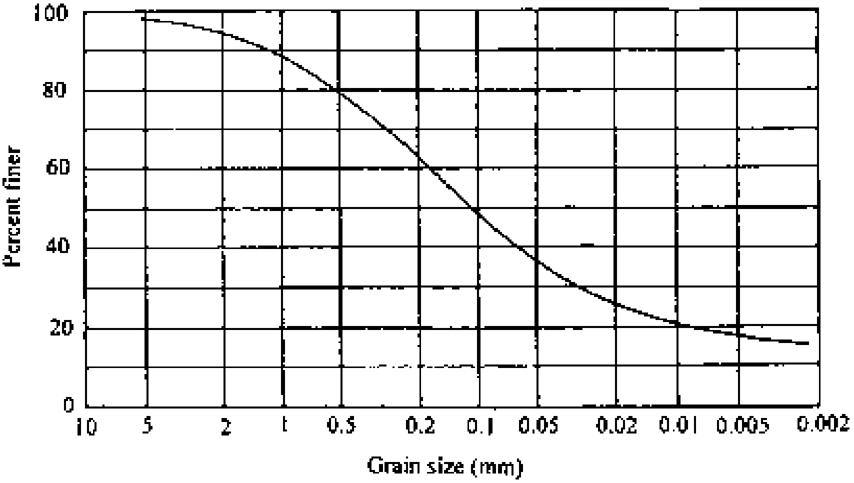


Figure P1.1

Soil	*Percent passing U.S. sieve*							LL	PL
	No. 4	*No. 10*	*No. 20*	*No. 40*	*No. 60*	*No. 100*	*No. 200*		
A	94	63	21	10	7	5	3		NP
B	98	80	65	55	40	35	30	28	18
C	98	86	50	28	18	14	20		NP
D	100	49	40	38	26	18	10		NP
E	80	60	48	31	25	18	8		NP
F	100	100	98	93	88	83	77	63	48

References

American Society for Testing and Materials, *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, sec. 4, vol. 04.08, West Conshohocken, PA, 2006.

Atterberg, A., Uber die Physikalische Bodenuntersuschung und Uber die Plastizitat der Tone, *Int. Mitt. Bodenkunde*, vol. 1, p. 5, 1911.

Bolt, G. H., Analysis of Validity of Gouy-Chapman Theory of the Electric Double Layer, *J. Colloid Sci*, vol. 10, p. 206, 1955.

Bolt, G. H., Physical Chemical Analysis of Compressibility of Pure Clay, *Geotechnique*, vol. 6, p. 86, 1956.

Casagrande, A., Classification and Identification of Soils, *Trans. ASCE*, vol. 113, 1948.

Cubrinovski, M. and K. Ishihara, Empirical Correlation between SPT N-Value and Relative Density for Sandy Soils, *Soils and Foundations*, vol. 39, no. 5, pp. 61–71, 1999.

Cubrinovski, M. and K. Ishihara, Maximum and Minimum Void Ratio Characteristics of Sands, *Soils and Foundations*, vol. 42, no. 6, pp. 65–78, 2002.

Lade, P. V., C. D. Liggio, and J. A. Yamamuro, Effect of Non-Plastic Fines on Minimum and Maximum Void Ratios of Sand, *Geotech. Testing J.*, ASTM, vol. 21, no. 4, pp. 336–347, 1998.

Lambe, T. W., Compacted Clay: Structure, *Trans. ASCE*, vol. 125, pp. 682–717, 1960.

Lee, K. L. and A. Singh, Relative Density and Relative Compaction, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.* vol. 97, no. SM7, pp. 1049–1052, 1971.

Seed, H. B., R. J. Woodward, and R. Lundgren, Clay Minerological Aspects of the Atterberg Limits, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.* vol. 90, no. SM4, pp. 107–131, 1964*a*.

Seed, H. B., R. J. Woodward, and R. Lundgren, Fundamental Aspects of Atterberg Limits, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.* vol. 90, no. SM6, pp. 75–105, 1964*b*.

Skempton, A. W., The Colloidal Activity of Clay, *Proc. 3d Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 1, pp. 57–61, 1953.

Sridharan, A., H. B. Nagaraj, and K. Prakash, Determination of the Plasticity Index from Flow Index, *Geotech. Testing J.*, ASTM, vol. 22, no. 2, pp. 175–181, 1999.

Verweg, E. J. W. and J. Th. G. Overbeek, *Theory of Stability of Lyophobic Collolids*, Elsevier-North Holland, Amsterdam, 1948.

Wroth, C. P. and D. M. Wood, The Correlation of Index Properties with Some Basic Engineering Properties of Soils, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 15, no. 2, pp. 137–145, 1978.

Youd, T. L., Factors Controlling Maximum and Minimum Densities of Sand, *Spec. Tech. Pub. 523*, ASTM, pp. 98–122, 1973.

Chapter 2

Stresses and strains—elastic equilibrium

2.1 Introduction

An important function in the study of soil mechanics is to predict the stresses and strains imposed at a given point in a soil mass due to certain loading conditions. This is necessary to estimate settlement and to conduct stability analysis of earth and earth-retaining structures, as well as to determine stress conditions on underground and earth-retaining structures.

An idealized stress–strain diagram for a material is shown in Figure 2.1. At low stress levels the strain increases linearly with stress (branch *ab*), which is the elastic range of the material. Beyond a certain stress level the material reaches a plastic state, and the strain increases with no further increase in stress (branch *bc*). The theories of stresses and strains presented in this chapter are for the elastic range only. In determining stress and strain in a soil medium, one generally resorts to the principles of the theory of elasticity, although soil in nature is not fully homogeneous, elastic, or isotropic. However, the results derived from the elastic theories can be judiciously applied to the problem of soil mechanics.

2.2 Basic definition and sign conventions for stresses

An elemental soil mass with sides measuring dx, dy, and dz is shown in Figure 2.2. Parameters σ_x, σ_y, and σ_z are the normal stresses acting on the planes normal to the x, y, and z axes, respectively. The normal stresses are considered positive when they are directed onto the surface. Parameters τ_{xy}, τ_{yx}, τ_{yz}, τ_{zy}, τ_{zx}, and τ_{xz} are shear stresses. The notations for the shear stresses follow.

If τ_{ij} is a shear stress, it means the stress is acting on a plane normal to the i axis, and its direction is parallel to the j axis. A shear stress τ_{ij} is considered positive if it is directed in the negative j direction while acting on a plane whose outward normal is the positive i direction. For example,

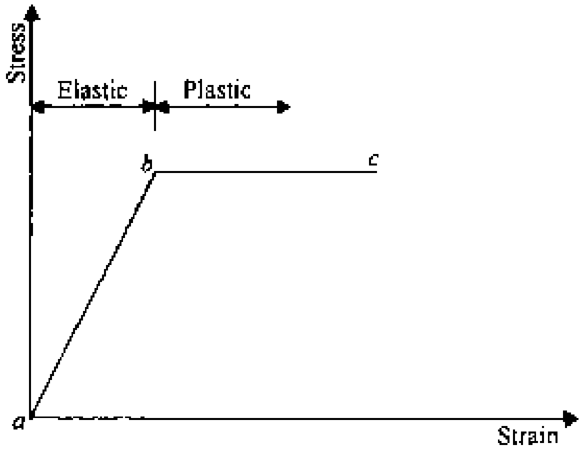


Figure 2.1 Idealized stress–strain diagram.

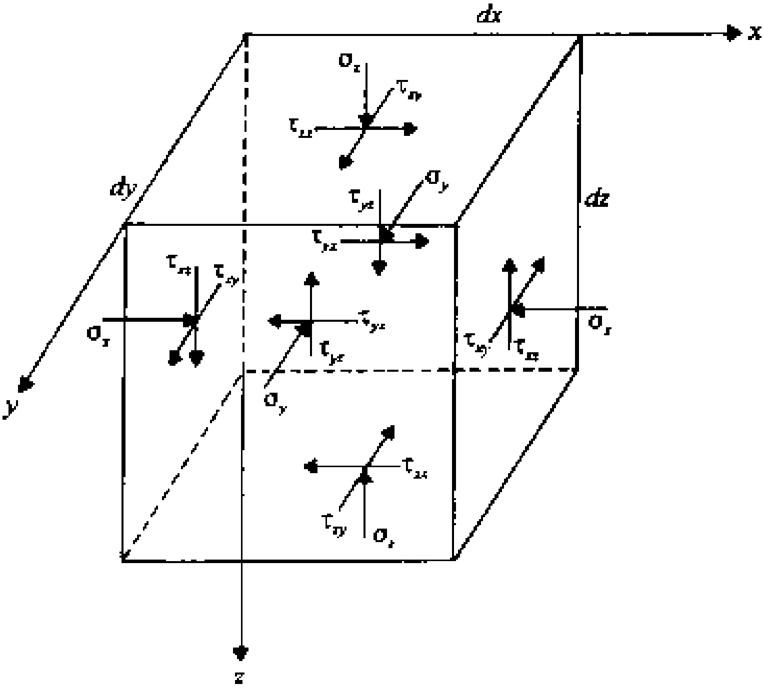


Figure 2.2 Notations for normal and shear stresses in Cartesian coordinate system.

all shear stresses are positive in Figure 2.2. For equilibrium,

$$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{yx} \tag{2.1}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \tau_{zz} \tag{2.2}$$

$$\tau_{yz} = \tau_{zy} \tag{2.3}$$

Figure 2.3 shows the notations for the normal and shear stresses in the polar coordinate system (two-dimensional case). For this case, σ_r and σ_θ are the normal stresses, and $\tau_{r\theta}$ and $\tau_{\theta r}$ are the shear stresses. For equilibrium, $\tau_{r\theta} = \tau_{\theta r}$. Similarly, the notations for stresses in the cylindrical coordinate system are shown in Figure 2.4. Parameters σ_r, σ_θ, and σ_z are the normal stresses, and the shear stresses are $\tau_{r\theta} = \sigma_{\theta r}$, $\sigma_{\theta z} = \sigma_{z\theta}$, and $\tau_{rz} = \tau_{zr}$.

2.3 Equations of static equilibrium

Figure 2.5 shows the stresses acting on an elemental soil mass with sides measuring *dx, dy*, and *dz*. Let γ be the unit weight of the soil. For equilibrium, summing the forces in the x direction,

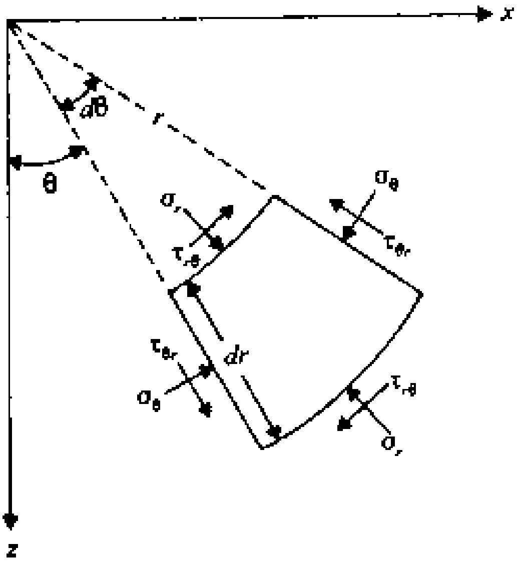


Figure 2.3 Notations for normal and shear stresses in polar coordinate system.

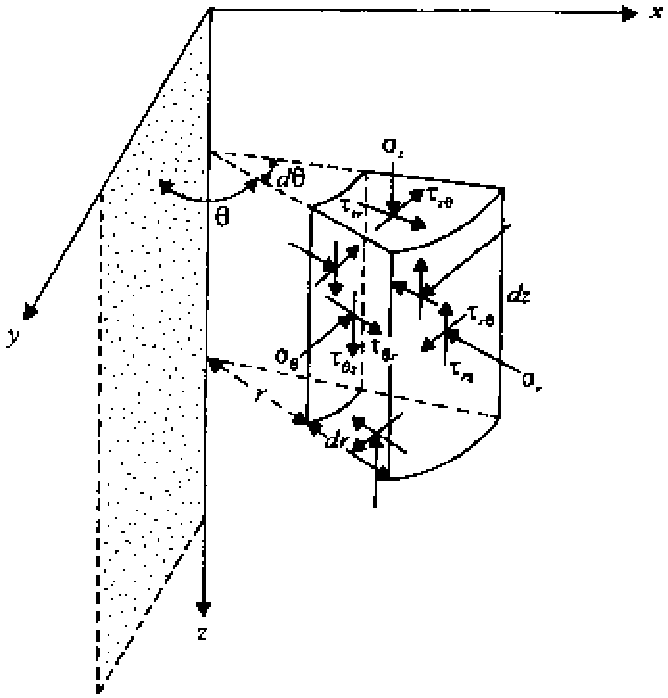


Figure 2.4 Notations for normal and shear stresses in cylindrical coordinates.

$$\sum F_x = \left[\sigma_x - \left(\sigma_x + \frac{\partial \sigma_x}{\partial x} dx\right)\right] dy\ dz + \left[\tau_{zx} - \left(\tau_{zx} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zx}}{\partial z} dz\right)\right] dx\ dy$$
$$+ \left[\tau_{yx} - \left(\tau_{yx} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yx}}{\partial y} dy\right)\right] dx\ dz = 0$$

or

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yx}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zx}}{\partial z} = 0 \tag{2.4}$$

Similarly, along the *y* direction, $\Sigma F_y = 0$, or

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_y}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xy}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zy}}{\partial z} = 0 \tag{2.5}$$

Along the *z* direction,

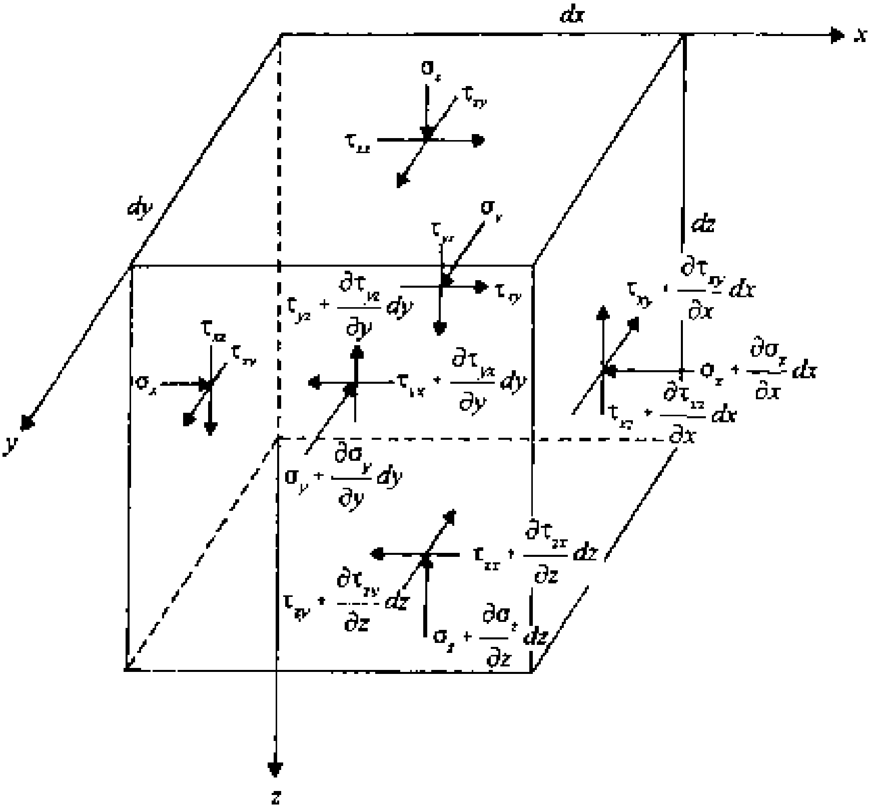


Figure 2.5 Derivation of equations of equilibrium.

$$\sum F_z = \left[\sigma_z - \left(\sigma_z + \frac{\partial\sigma_z}{\partial z}dz\right)\right] dx\ dy + \left[\tau_{xz} - \left(\tau_{xz} + \frac{\partial\tau_{xz}}{\partial x}dx\right)\right] dy\ dz$$
$$+ \left[\tau_{yz} - \left(\tau_{yz} + \frac{\partial\tau_{yz}}{\partial y}dy\right)\right] dx\ dz + \gamma(dx\ dy\ dz) = 0$$

The last term of the preceding equation is the self-weight of the soil mass. Thus

$$\frac{\partial\sigma_z}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial\tau_{xz}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial\tau_{yz}}{\partial y} - \gamma = 0 \tag{2.6}$$

Equations (2.4)–(2.6) are the static equilibrium equations in the Cartesian coordinate system. These equations are written in terms of *total stresses*.

They may, however, be written in terms of *effective stresses* as

$$\sigma_x = \sigma'_x + u = \sigma'_x + \gamma_{\mathrm{w}} h \tag{2.7}$$

where

σ'_x = effective stress
u = pore water pressure
γ_{w} = unit weight of water
h = pressure head

Thus

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_x}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial \sigma'_x}{\partial x} + \gamma_{\mathrm{w}} \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \tag{2.8}$$

Similarly,

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_y}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial \sigma'_y}{\partial y} + \gamma_{\mathrm{w}} \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} \tag{2.9}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_z}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial \sigma'_z}{\partial z} + \gamma_{\mathrm{w}} \frac{\partial h}{\partial z} \tag{2.10}$$

Substitution of the proper terms in Eqs. (2.4)–(2.6) results in

$$\frac{\partial \sigma'_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yx}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zx}}{\partial z} + \gamma_{\mathrm{w}} \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = 0 \tag{2.11}$$

$$\frac{\partial \sigma'_y}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xy}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zy}}{\partial z} + \gamma_{\mathrm{w}} \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} = 0 \tag{2.12}$$

$$\frac{\partial \sigma'_z}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yz}}{\partial y} + \gamma_{\mathrm{w}} \frac{\partial h}{\partial z} - \gamma' = 0 \tag{2.13}$$

where γ' is the effective unit weight of soil. Note that the shear stresses will not be affected by the pore water pressure.

In soil mechanics, a number of problems can be solved by two-dimensional stress analysis. Figure 2.6 shows the cross-section of an elemental soil prism of unit length with the stresses acting on its faces. The static equilibrium equations for this condition can be obtained from Eqs. (2.4), (2.5), and (2.6) by substituting $\tau_{xy} = \tau_{yx} = 0$, $\tau_{yz} = \tau_{zy} = 0$, and $\partial\sigma_y/\partial y = 0$. Note that $\tau_{xz} = \tau_{zx}$. Thus

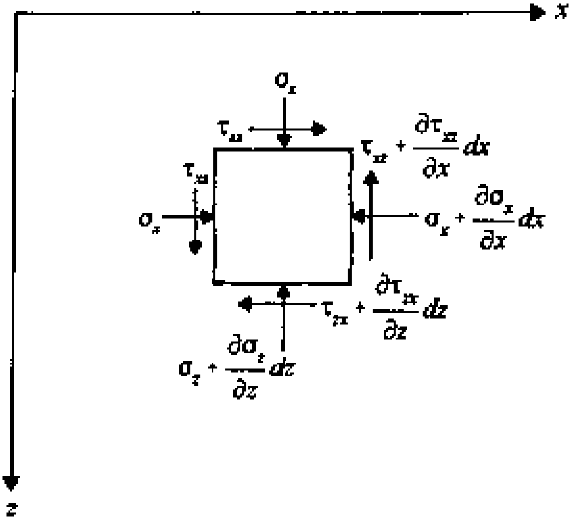


Figure 2.6 Derivation of static equilibrium equation for two-dimensional problem in Cartesian coordinates.

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial z} = 0 \tag{2.14}$$

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_z}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} - \gamma = 0 \tag{2.15}$$

Figure 2.7 shows an elemental soil mass in polar coordinates. Parameters σ_r and σ_θ are the normal components of stress in the radial and tangential directions, and $\tau_{\theta r}$ and $\tau_{r\theta}$ are the shear stresses. In order to obtain the static equations of equilibrium, the forces in the radial and tangential directions need to be considered. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\sum F_r = &\left[\sigma_r r\ d\theta - \left(\sigma_r + \frac{\partial \sigma_r}{\partial r} dr\right)(r + dr)\ d\theta\right]\\ &+ \left[\sigma_\theta\ dr \sin d\theta/2 + \left(\sigma_\theta + \frac{\partial \sigma_\theta}{\partial \theta} d\theta\right) dr \sin d\theta/2\right]\\ &+ \left[\tau_{\theta r}\ dr \cos d\theta/2 - \left(\tau_{\theta r} + \frac{\partial \tau_{\theta r}}{\partial \theta} d\theta\right) dr \cos d\theta/2\right]\\ &+ \gamma\,(r\ d\theta\ dr) \cos\theta = 0\end{aligned}$$

Taking $\sin d\theta/2 \approx d\theta/2$ and $\cos d\theta/2 \approx 1$, neglecting infinitesimally small quantities of higher order, and noting that $\partial(\sigma_r r)/\partial r = r(\partial\sigma_r/\partial r) + \sigma_r$ and $\tau_{\theta r} = \tau_{r\theta}$, the above equation yields

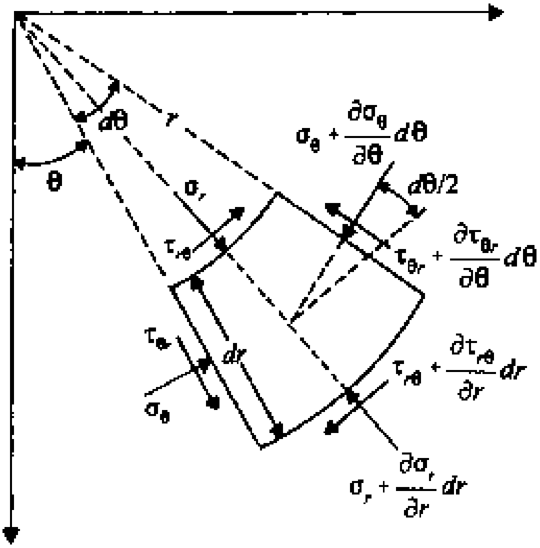


Figure 2.7 Derivation of static equilibrium equation for two-dimensional problem in polar coordinates.

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_r}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \tau_{r\theta}}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\sigma_r - \sigma_\theta}{r} - \gamma \cos\theta = 0 \tag{2.16}$$

Similarly, the static equation of equilibrium obtained by adding the components of forces in the tangential direction is

$$\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \sigma_\theta}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\partial \tau_{r\theta}}{\partial r} + \frac{2\tau_{r\theta}}{r} + \gamma \sin\theta = 0 \tag{2.17}$$

The stresses in the cylindrical coordinate system on a soil element are shown in Figure 2.8. Summing the forces in the radial, tangential, and vertical directions, the following relations are obtained:

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_r}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \tau_{r\theta}}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zr}}{\partial z} + \frac{\sigma_r - \sigma_\theta}{r} = 0 \tag{2.18}$$

$$\frac{\partial \tau_{r\theta}}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \sigma_\theta}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\partial \tau_{\theta z}}{\partial z} + \frac{2\tau_{r\theta}}{r} = 0 \tag{2.19}$$

$$\frac{\partial \tau_{zr}}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \tau_{\theta z}}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\partial \sigma_z}{\partial z} + \frac{\tau_{zr}}{r} - \gamma = 0 \tag{2.20}$$

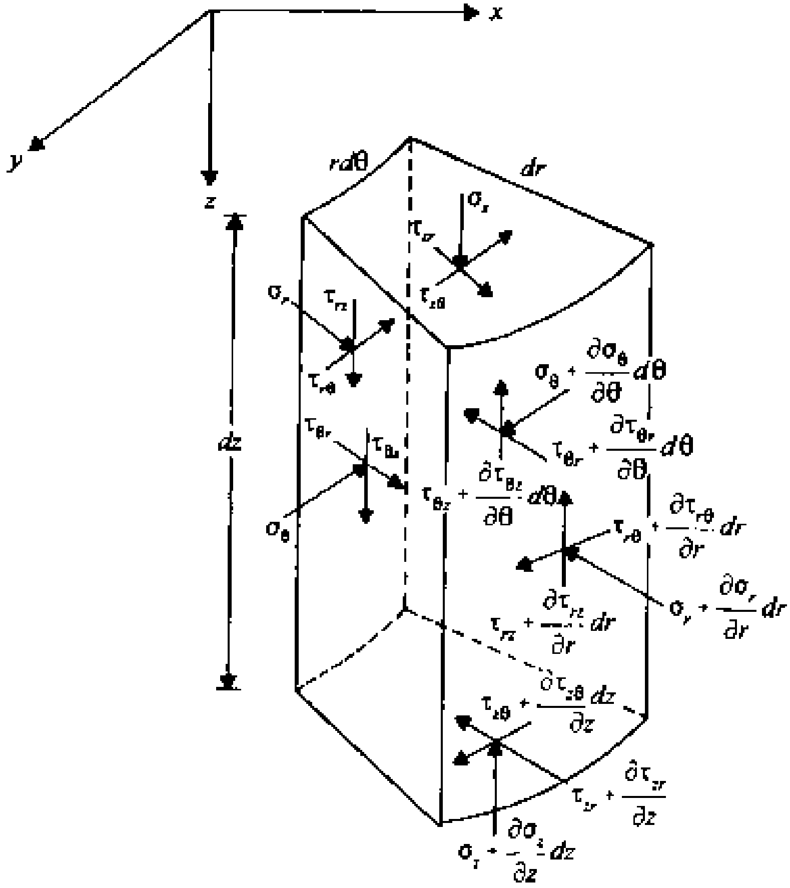


Figure 2.8 Equilibrium equations in cylindrical coordinates.

2.4 Concept of strain

Consider an elemental volume of soil as shown in Figure 2.9*a*. Owing to the application of stresses, point *A* undergoes a displacement such that its components in the *x*, *y*, and *z* directions are *u*, *v*, and *w*, respectively. The adjacent point *B* undergoes displacements of $u+(\partial u/\partial x)\,dx$, $v+(\partial v/\partial x)\,dx$, and $w+(\partial w/\partial x)\,dx$ in the *x*, *y*, and *z* directions, respectively. So the change in the length *AB* in the *x* direction is $u+(\partial u/\partial x)\,dx-u=(\partial u/\partial x)\,dx$. Hence the strain in the *x* direction, ϵ_x, can be given as

$$\in_x = \frac{1}{dx}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx\right) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \tag{2.21}$$

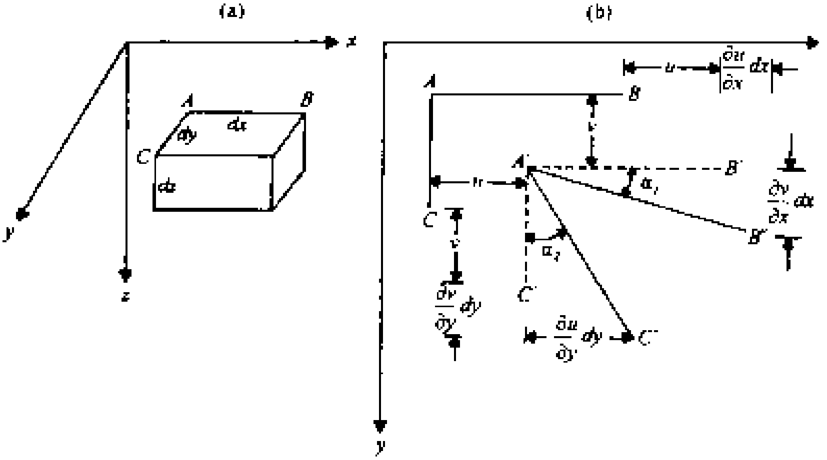


Figure 2.9 Concept of strain.

Similarly, the strains in the y and z directions can be written as

$$\in_y = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \tag{2.22}$$

$$\in_z = \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \tag{2.23}$$

where $\in_y$ and $\in_z$ are the strains in the y and z directions, respectively.

Owing to stress application, sides AB and AC of the element shown in Figure 2.9*a* undergo a rotation as shown in Figure 2.9*b* (see $A'B''$ and $A'C''$). The small change in angle for side AB is α_1, the magnitude of which may be given as $[(\partial v/\partial x)\ dx](1/dx) = \partial v/\partial x$, and the magnitude of the change in angle α_2 for side AC is $[(\partial u/\partial y)\ dy](1/dy) = \partial u/\partial y$. The shear strain γ_{xy} is equal to the sum of the change in angles α_1 and α_2. Therefore

$$\gamma_{xy} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \tag{2.24}$$

Similarly, the shear strains γ_{xz} and γ_{yz} can be derived as

$$\gamma_{xz} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \tag{2.25}$$

and

$$\gamma_{yz} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} \tag{2.26}$$

Generally, in soil mechanics the compressive normal strains are considered positive. For shear strain, if there is an increase in the right angle *BAC* (Figure 2.9*b*), it is considered positive. As shown in Figure 2.9*b*, the shear strains are all negative.

2.5 Hooke's law

The axial strains for an ideal, elastic, isotropic material in terms of the stress components are given by Hooke's law as

$$\in_x = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{E}[\sigma_x - \nu(\sigma_y + \sigma_z)] \tag{2.27}$$

$$\in_y = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} = \frac{1}{E}[\sigma_y - \nu(\sigma_x + \sigma_z)] \tag{2.28}$$

and

$$\in_z = \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} = \frac{1}{E}[\sigma_z - \nu(\sigma_x + \sigma_y)] \tag{2.29}$$

where E is Young's modulus and ν Poisson's ratio.

From the relations given by Eqs. (2.27), (2.28), and (2.29), the stress components can be expressed as

$$\sigma_x = \frac{\nu E}{(1+\nu)(1-2\nu)}\left(\in_x + \in_y + \in_z\right) + \frac{E}{1+\nu}\in_x \tag{2.30}$$

$$\sigma_y = \frac{\nu E}{(1+\nu)(1-2\nu)}\left(\in_x + \in_y + \in_z\right) + \frac{E}{1+\nu}\in_y \tag{2.31}$$

$$\sigma_z = \frac{\nu E}{(1+\nu)(1-2\nu)}\left(\in_x + \in_y + \in_z\right) + \frac{E}{1+\nu}\in_z \tag{2.32}$$

The shear strains in terms of the stress components are

$$\gamma_{xy} = \frac{\tau_{xy}}{G} \tag{2.33}$$

$$\gamma_{xz} = \frac{\tau_{xz}}{G} \tag{2.34}$$

and

$$\gamma_{yz} = \frac{\tau_{yz}}{G} \tag{2.35}$$

where shear modulus,

$$G = \frac{E}{2(1+\nu)} \tag{2.36}$$

2.6 Plane strain problems

A state of stress generally encountered in many problems in soil mechanics is the plane strain condition. Long retaining walls and strip foundations are examples where plane strain conditions are encountered. Referring to Figure 2.10, for the strip foundation, the strain in the y direction is zero (i.e., $\in_y = 0$). The stresses at all sections in the xz plane are the same, and the shear stresses on these sections are zero (i.e., $\tau_{yx} = \tau_{xy} = 0$ and $\tau_{yz} = \tau_{zy} = 0$). Thus, from Eq. (2.28),

$$\in_y = 0 = \frac{1}{E}[\sigma_y - \nu(\sigma_x + \sigma_z)]$$

$$\sigma_y = \nu(\sigma_x + \sigma_z) \tag{2.37}$$

Substituting Eq. (2.37) into Eqs. (2.27) and (2.29)

$$\in_x = \frac{1-\nu^2}{E}\left[\sigma_x - \frac{\nu}{1-\nu}\sigma_z\right] \tag{2.38}$$

and

$$\in_z = \frac{1-\nu^2}{E}\left[\sigma_z - \frac{\nu}{1-\nu}\sigma_x\right] \tag{2.39}$$

Since $\tau_{xy} = 0$ and $\tau_{yz} = 0$,

$$\gamma_{xy} = 0 \qquad \gamma_{yz} = 0 \tag{2.40}$$

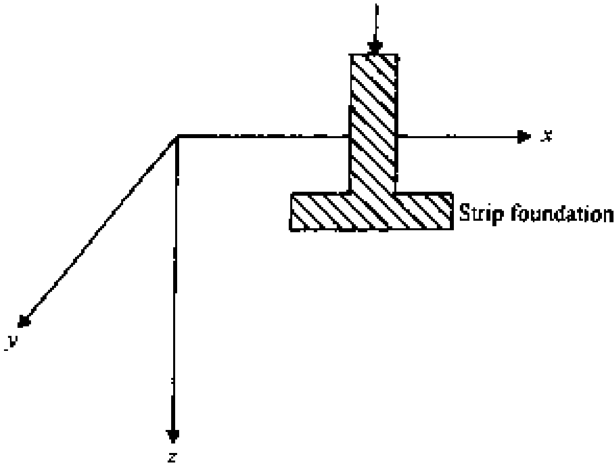


Figure 2.10 Strip foundation—plane strain problem.

and

$$\gamma_{xz} = \frac{\tau_{xz}}{G} \tag{2.41}$$

Compatibility equation

The three strain components given by Eqs. (2.38), (2.39), and (2.41) are functions of the displacements u and w and are not independent of each other. Hence a relation should exist such that the strain components give single-valued continuous solutions. It can be obtained as follows. From Eq. (2.21), $\in_x = \partial u/\partial x$. Differentiating twice with respect to z,

$$\frac{\partial^2 \in_x}{\partial z^2} = \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x\, \partial z^2} \tag{2.42}$$

From Eq. (2.23), $\in_z = \partial w/\partial z$. Differentiating twice with respect to x,

$$\frac{\partial^2 \in_z}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^3 w}{\partial z\, \partial x^2} \tag{2.43}$$

Similarly, differentiating γ_{xz} [Eq. (2.25)] with respect to x and z,

$$\frac{\partial^2 \gamma_{xz}}{\partial x\, \partial z} = \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x\, \partial z^2} + \frac{\partial^3 w}{\partial x^2\, \partial z} \tag{2.44}$$

Combining Eqs. (2.42), (2.43), and (2.44), we obtain

$$\frac{\partial^2 \in_x}{\partial z^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \in_z}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2 \gamma_{xz}}{\partial x\, \partial z} \tag{2.45}$$

Equation (2.45) is the compatibility equation in terms of strain components. Compatibility equations in terms of the stress components can also be derived. Let $E' = E/1 - \nu^2$ and $\nu' = \nu/1 - \nu$. So, from Eq. (2.38), $\in_x = 1/E'(\sigma_x - \nu'\sigma_z)$. Hence

$$\frac{\partial^2 \in_x}{\partial z^2} = \frac{1}{E'}\left(\frac{\partial^2 \sigma_x}{\partial z^2} - \nu'\frac{\partial^2 \sigma_z}{\partial z^2}\right) \tag{2.46}$$

Similarly, from Eq. (2.39), $\in_z = 1/E'(\sigma_z - \nu'\sigma_x)$. Thus

$$\frac{\partial^2 \in_z}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{E'}\left(\frac{\partial^2 \sigma_z}{\partial x^2} - \nu'\frac{\partial^2 \sigma_x}{\partial x^2}\right) \tag{2.47}$$

Again, from Eq. (2.41),

$$\gamma_{xz} = \frac{\tau_{xz}}{G} = \frac{2(1+\nu)}{E}\tau_{xz} = \frac{2(1+\nu')}{E'}\tau_{xz} \tag{2.48}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 \gamma_{xz}}{\partial x\, \partial z} = \frac{2(1+\nu')}{E'}\frac{\partial^2 \tau_{xz}}{\partial x\, \partial z}$$

Substitution of Eqs. (2.46), (2.47), and (2.48) into Eq. (2.45) yields

$$\frac{\partial^2 \sigma_x}{\partial z^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \sigma_z}{\partial x^2} - v'\left(\frac{\partial^2 \sigma_z}{\partial z^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \sigma_x}{\partial x^2}\right) = 2(1+v')\frac{\partial^2 \tau_{xz}}{\partial x\, \partial z} \tag{2.49}$$

From Eqs. (2.14) and (2.15),

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial \sigma_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial z}\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(\frac{\partial \sigma_z}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} - \gamma\right) = 0$$

or

$$2\frac{\partial^2 \tau_{xz}}{\partial x\, \partial z} = -\left(\frac{\partial^2 \sigma_x}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \sigma_z}{\partial z^2}\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(\gamma) \tag{2.50}$$

Combining Eqs. (2.49) and (2.50),

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}\right)(\sigma_x + \sigma_z) = (1+\nu')\frac{\partial}{\partial z}(\gamma)$$

For weightless materials, or for a constant unit weight γ, the above equation becomes

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}\right)(\sigma_x + \sigma_z) = 0 \tag{2.51}$$

Equation (2.51) is the *compatibility equation* in terms of stress.

Stress function

For the plane strain condition, in order to determine the stress at a given point due to a given load, the problem reduces to solving the equations of equilibrium together with the compatibility equation [Eq. (2.51)] and the boundary conditions. For a weight-less medium (i.e., $\gamma = 0$) the equations of equilibrium are

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial z} = 0 \tag{2.14$'$}$$

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_z}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} = 0 \tag{2.15$'$}$$

The usual method of solving these problems is to introduce a stress function referred to as *Airy's stress function*. The stress function ϕ in terms of x and z should be such that

$$\sigma_x = \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial z^2} \tag{2.52}$$

$$\sigma_z = \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} \tag{2.53}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = -\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x \, \partial z} \tag{2.54}$$

The above equations will satisfy the equilibrium equations. When Eqs. (2.52)–(2.54) are substituted into Eq. (2.51), we get

$$\frac{\partial^4 \phi}{\partial x^4} + 2\frac{\partial^4 \phi}{\partial x^2 \, \partial z^2} + \frac{\partial^4 \phi}{\partial z^4} = 0 \tag{2.55}$$

So, the problem reduces to finding a function ϕ in terms of x and z such that it will satisfy Eq. (2.55) and the boundary conditions.

Compatibility equation in polar coordinates

For solving plane strain problems in polar coordinates, assuming the soil to be weightless (i.e., $\gamma = 0$), the equations of equilibrium are [from Eqs. (2.16) and (2.17)]

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_r}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \tau_{r\theta}}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\sigma_r - \sigma_\theta}{r} = 0$$

$$\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \sigma_\theta}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\partial \tau_{r\theta}}{\partial r} + \frac{2\tau_{r\theta}}{r} = 0$$

The compatibility equation in terms of stresses can be given by

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta^2}\right)(\sigma_r + \sigma_\theta) = 0 \tag{2.56}$$

The Airy stress function ϕ should be such that

$$\sigma_r = \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \theta^2} \tag{2.57}$$

$$\sigma_\theta = \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial r^2} \tag{2.58}$$

$$\tau_{r\theta} = \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \theta} - \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial r \, \partial \theta} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \theta}\right) \tag{2.59}$$

The above equations satisfy the equilibrium equations. The compatibility equation in terms of stress function is

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}+\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}+\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2}\right)\left(\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial r^2}+\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial r}+\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial\theta^2}\right)=0 \tag{2.60}$$

Similar to Eq. (2.37), for the plane strain condition,

$$\sigma_y=\nu(\sigma_r+\sigma_\theta)$$

Example 2.1

The stress at any point inside a semi-infinite medium due to a line load of intensity q per unit length (Figure 2.11) can be given by a stress function

$$\phi = Ax\tan^{-1}(z/x)$$

where A is a constant. This equation satisfies the compatibility equation [Eq. (2.55)]. (*a*) Find σ_x, σ_z, σ_y, and τ_{xz}. (*b*) Applying proper boundary conditions, find A.

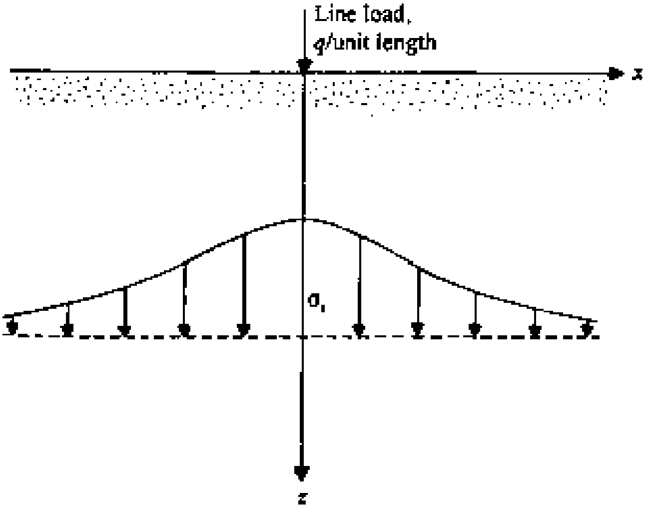


Figure 2.11 Stress at a point due to a line load.

SOLUTION *Part a*:

$$\phi = Ax\tan^{-1}(z/x)$$

The relations for σ_x, σ_z, and τ_{xz} are given in Eqs. (2.52), (2.53), and (2.54).

$$\sigma_x = \frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial z^2}$$

$$\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial z} = Ax\frac{1}{1+(z/x)^2}\frac{1}{x} = \frac{A}{1+(z/x)^2}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial z^2} = -\frac{2Azx^2}{(x^2+z^2)^2}$$

$$\sigma_z = \frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x^2}$$

$$\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial x} = A\ \tan^{-1}\frac{z}{x} - \frac{Az}{[1+(z/x)^2]x} = A\ \tan^{-1}\frac{z}{x} - \frac{Axz}{(x^2+z^2)}$$

$$\sigma_z = \frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x^2} = -\frac{A}{1+(z/x)^2}\frac{z}{x^2} - \frac{Az}{x^2+z^2} + \frac{2Ax^2z}{(x^2+z^2)^2}$$

$$= -\frac{Az}{x^2+z^2} - \frac{Az}{x^2+z^2} + \frac{2Ax^2z}{(x^2+z^2)^2} = -\frac{2Az^3}{(x^2+z^2)^2}$$

$$\tau_{zx} = -\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x\ \partial z}$$

$$\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial x} = A\tan^{-1}\frac{z}{x} - \frac{Axz}{(x^2+z^2)}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x\ \partial z} = \frac{A}{1+(z/x)^2}\frac{1}{x} - \frac{Ax}{x^2+z^2} + \frac{2Axz^2}{(x^2+z^2)^2}$$

or

$$\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x\ \partial z} = \frac{2Axz^2}{(x^2+z^2)^2}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = -\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x\ \partial z} = -\frac{2Axz^2}{(x^2+z^2)^2}$$

$$\sigma_y = \nu(\sigma_x+\sigma_z) = \nu\left[-\frac{2Azx^2}{(x^2+z^2)^2} - \frac{2Az^3}{(x^2+z^2)^2}\right]$$

$$= -\frac{2Az\nu}{(x^2+z^2)^2}(x^2+z^2) = -\frac{2Az\nu}{(x^2+z^2)}$$

Part b: Consider a unit length along the y direction. We can write

$$q = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} (\sigma_z)(1)(dx) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} -\frac{2Az^3}{(x^2+z^2)^2} dx$$

$$= -\frac{2Az^3}{2z^2}\left(\frac{x}{x^2+z^2} + \int \frac{dx}{x^2+z^2}\right)_{-\infty}^{+\infty}$$

$$= -Az\left(\frac{x}{x^2+z^2} + \frac{1}{z}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{z}\right)_{-\infty}^{+\infty} = -A(\pi/2+\pi/2) = -A\pi$$

$$A = -\frac{q}{\pi}$$

So

$$\sigma_x = \frac{2qx^2z}{\pi(x^2+z^2)^2} \qquad \sigma_z = \frac{2qz^3}{\pi(x^2+z^2)^2} \qquad \tau_{xz} = \frac{2qxz^2}{\pi(x^2+z^2)^2}$$

We can see that at $z = 0$ (i.e., at the surface) and for any value of $x \neq 0$, σ_x, σ_z, and τ_{xz} are equal to zero.

2.7 Equations of compatibility for three-dimensional problems

For three-dimensional problems in the Cartesian coordinate system as shown in Figure 2.2, the *compatibility equations in terms of stresses* are (assuming the body force to be zero or constant)

$$\nabla^2\sigma_x + \frac{1}{1+\nu}\frac{\partial^2\Theta}{\partial x^2} = 0 \tag{2.61}$$

$$\nabla^2\sigma_y + \frac{1}{1+\nu}\frac{\partial^2\Theta}{\partial y^2} = 0 \tag{2.62}$$

$$\nabla^2\sigma_z + \frac{1}{1+\nu}\frac{\partial^2\Theta}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{2.63}$$

$$\nabla^2\tau_{xy} + \frac{1}{1+\nu}\frac{\partial^2\Theta}{\partial x\,\partial y} = 0 \tag{2.64}$$

$$\nabla^2\tau_{yz} + \frac{1}{1+\nu}\frac{\partial^2\Theta}{\partial y\,\partial z} = 0 \tag{2.65}$$

$$\nabla^2\tau_{xz} + \frac{1}{1+\nu}\frac{\partial^2\Theta}{\partial x\,\partial z} = 0 \tag{2.66}$$

where

$$\nabla^2 = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}$$

and

$$\Theta = \sigma_x + \sigma_y + \sigma_z$$

The compatibility equations in terms of stresses for the cylindrical coordinate system (Figure 2.4) are as follows (for constant or zero body force):

$$\nabla^2 \sigma_z + \frac{1}{1+\nu} \frac{\partial^2 \Theta}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{2.67}$$

$$\nabla^2 \sigma_r + \frac{1}{1+\nu} \frac{\partial^2 \Theta}{\partial r^2} - \frac{4}{r^2} \frac{\partial \tau_{r\theta}}{\partial \theta} + \frac{2}{r^2}(\sigma_\theta + \sigma_r) = 0 \tag{2.68}$$

$$\nabla^2 \sigma_\theta + \frac{1}{1+\nu} \left(\frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial^2 \Theta}{\partial \theta^2} \right) + \frac{4}{r^2} \frac{\partial \tau_{r\theta}}{\partial \theta} - \frac{2}{r^2}(\sigma_\theta + \sigma_r) = 0 \tag{2.69}$$

$$\nabla^2 \tau_{rz} + \frac{1}{1+\nu} \frac{\partial^2 \Theta}{\partial r \, \partial z} - \frac{\tau_{rz}}{r^2} - \frac{2}{r^2} \frac{\partial \tau_{\theta z}}{\partial \theta} = 0 \tag{2.70}$$

$$\nabla^2 \tau_{r\theta} + \frac{1}{1+\nu} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left(\frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial \theta} \right) - \frac{4}{r^2} \tau_{r\theta} - \frac{2}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(\sigma_\theta - \sigma_r) = 0 \tag{2.71}$$

$$\nabla^2 \tau_{z\theta} + \frac{1}{1+\nu} \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial^2 \Theta}{\partial \theta \, \partial z} + \frac{2}{r} \frac{\partial \tau_{rz}}{\partial \theta} - \frac{\tau_{z\theta}}{r^2} = 0 \tag{2.72}$$

2.8 Stresses on an inclined plane and principal stresses for plane strain problems

The fundamentals of plane strain problems is explained in Sec. 2.5. For these problems, the strain in the y direction is zero (i.e., $\tau_{yx} = \tau_{xy} = 0$; $\tau_{yz} = \tau_{zy} = 0$) and σ_y is constant for all sections in the plane.

If the stresses at a point in a soil mass [i.e., σ_x, σ_y, σ_z, $\tau_{xz}(= \tau_{zx})$] are known (as shown in Figure 2.12*a*), the normal stress σ and the shear stress τ on an inclined plane BC can be determined by considering a soil prism of unit length in the direction of the y axis. Summing the components of all forces in the n direction (Figure 2.12*b*) gives

$$\sum F_n = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma \; dA = {} & (\sigma_x \cos\theta)(dA \; \cos\theta) + (\sigma_z \sin\theta)(dA \; \sin\theta) \\ & + (\tau_{xz} \sin\theta)(dA \; \cos\theta) + (\tau_{xz} \; \cos\theta)(dA \; \sin\theta)\end{aligned}$$

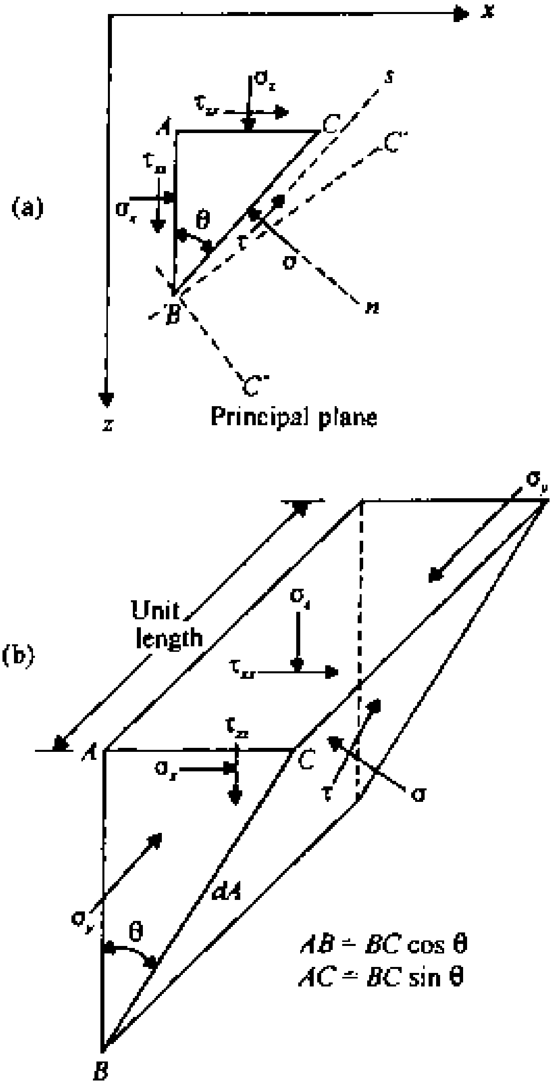


Figure 2.12 Stresses on an inclined plane for plane strain case.

where *dA* is the area of the inclined face of the prism. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma &= \sigma_x \cos^2\theta + \sigma_z \sin^2\theta + 2\tau_{xz}\sin\theta\cos\theta \\ &= \left(\frac{\sigma_x+\sigma_z}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{\sigma_x-\sigma_z}{2}\right)\cos 2\theta + \tau_{xz}\sin 2\theta \end{aligned} \tag{2.73}$$

Similarly, summing the forces in the s direction gives

$$\begin{aligned}
&\sum F_s = 0 \\
&\quad \tau\ dA = -(\sigma_x \sin\theta)\,(dA\ cos\ \theta) + (\sigma_z \cos\theta)(dA\ \ \sin\theta) \\
&\qquad\qquad + (\tau_{xz}\cos\theta)(dA\cos\theta) - (\tau_{xz}\sin\theta)(dA\sin\theta) \\
&\tau = -\sigma_x \sin\theta\cos\theta + \sigma_z \sin\theta\cos\theta + \tau_{xz}(\cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta) \\
&\quad = \tau_{xz}\cos 2\theta - \left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right)\sin 2\theta \qquad (2.74)
\end{aligned}$$

Note that σ_y has no contribution to σ or τ.

Transformation of stress components from polar to Cartesian coordinate system

In some instances, it is helpful to know the relations for transformation of stress components in the polar coordinate system to the Cartesian coordinate system. This can be done by a principle similar to that demonstrated above for finding the stresses on an inclined plane. Comparing Figures 2.12 and 2.13, it is obvious that we can substitute σ_r for σ_z, σ_θ for σ_x, and $\tau_{r\theta}$ for τ_{xz} in Eqs. (2.73) and (2.74) to obtain σ_x and τ_{xz} as shown in Figure 2.13. So

$$\sigma_x = \sigma_r \sin^2\theta + \sigma_\theta \cos^2\theta + 2\tau_{r\theta}\sin\theta\cos\theta \qquad (2.75)$$

$$\tau_{xz} = -\sigma_\theta \sin\theta\cos\theta + \sigma_r \sin\theta\cos\theta + \tau_{r\theta}(\cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta) \qquad (2.76)$$

Similarly, it can be shown that

$$\sigma_z = \sigma_r \cos^2\theta + \sigma_\theta \sin^2\theta - 2\tau_{r\theta}\sin\theta\cos\theta \qquad (2.77)$$

Principal stress

A plane is defined as a *principal plane* if the shear stress acting on it is zero. This means that the only stress acting on it is a normal stress. The normal stress on a principal plane is referred to as the *principal stress*. In a plane strain case, σ_y is a principal stress, and the xz plane is a principal plane. The orientation of the other two principal planes can be determined by considering Eq. (2.74). On an inclined plane, if the shear stress is zero, it follows that

$$\tau_{xz}\cos 2\theta = \left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right)\sin 2\theta$$

$$\tan\ 2\theta = \frac{2\tau_{xz}}{\sigma_x - \sigma_z} \qquad (2.78)$$

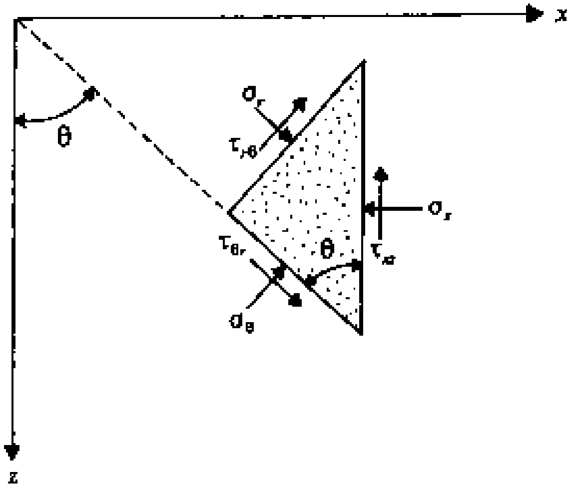


Figure 2.13 Transformation of stress components from polar to Cartesian coordinate system.

From Eq. (2.78), it can be seen that there are two values of θ at right angles to each other that will satisfy the relation. These are the directions of the two principal planes BC' and BC'' as shown in Figure 2.12. Note that there are now three principal planes that are at right angles to each other. Besides σ_y, the expressions for the two other principal stresses can be obtained by substituting Eq. (2.78) into Eq. (2.73), which gives

$$\sigma_{\mathrm{p(1)}} = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_z}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xz}^2} \tag{2.79}$$

$$\sigma_{\mathrm{p(3)}} = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_z}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xz}^2} \tag{2.80}$$

where $\sigma_{\mathrm{p(1)}}$ and $\sigma_{\mathrm{p(3)}}$ are the principal stresses. Also

$$\sigma_{\mathrm{p(1)}} + \sigma_{\mathrm{p(3)}} = \sigma_x + \sigma_z \tag{2.81}$$

Comparing the magnitude of the principal stresses, $\sigma_{\mathrm{p(1)}} > \sigma_y = \sigma_{\mathrm{p(2)}} > \sigma_{\mathrm{p(3)}}$. Thus $\sigma_{\mathrm{p(1)}}$, $\sigma_{\mathrm{p(2)}}$, and $\sigma_{\mathrm{p(3)}}$ are referred to as the major, intermediate, and minor principal stresses. From Eqs. (2.37) and (2.81), it follows that

$$\sigma_y = \nu[\sigma_{\mathrm{p(1)}} + \sigma_{\mathrm{p(3)}}] \tag{2.82}$$

Mohr's circle for stresses

The shear and normal stresses on an inclined plane (Figure 2.12) can also be determined graphically by using Mohr's circle. The procedure to construct Mohr's circle is explained below.

The sign convention for normal stress is positive for compression and negative for tension. The shear stress on a given plane is positive if it tends to produce a clockwise rotation about a point outside the soil element, and it is negative if it tends to produce a counterclockwise rotation about a point outside the element (Figure 2.14). Referring to plane *AB* in Figure 2.12*a*, the normal stress is $+\sigma_x$ and the shear stress is $+\tau_{xz}$. Similarly, on plane *AC*, the stresses are $+\sigma_z$ and $-\tau_{xz}$. The stresses on plane *AB* and *AC* can be plotted on a graph with normal stresses along the abcissa and shear stresses along the ordinate. Points *B* and *C* in Figure 2.15 refer to the stress conditions on planes *AB* and *AC*, respectively. Now, if points *B* and *C* are joined by a straight line, it will intersect the normal stress axis at O'. With O' as the center and $O'B$ as the radius, if a circle BP_1CP_3 is drawn, it will be Mohr's circle. The radius of Mohr's circle is

$$O'B = \sqrt{O'D^2 + BD^2} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xz}^2} \tag{2.83}$$

Any radial line in Mohr's circle represents a given plane, and the coordinates of the points of intersection of the radial line and the circumference

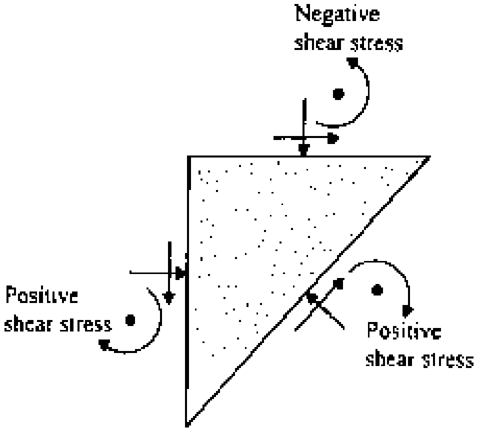


Figure 2.14 Sign convention for shear stress used for the construction of Mohr's circle.

of Mohr's circle give the stress condition on that plane. For example, let us find the stresses on plane *BC*. If we start from plane *AB* and move an angle θ in the clockwise direction in Figure 2.12, we reach plane *BC*. In Mohr's circle in Figure 2.15 the radial line *O′B* represents the plane *AB*. We move an angle 2θ in the clockwise direction to reach point *F*. Now the radial line *O′F* in Figure 2.15 represents plane *BC* in Figure 2.12. The coordinates of point *F* will give us the stresses on the plane *BC*.

Note that the ordinates of points P_1 and P_3 are zero, which means that $O'P_1$ and $O'P_3$ represent the major and minor principal planes, and $OP_1 = \sigma_{\mathrm{p}(1)}$ and $OP_3 = \sigma_{\mathrm{p}(3)}$:

$$\sigma_{\mathrm{p}(1)} = OP_1 = OO' + O'P_1 = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_z}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xz}^2}$$

$$\sigma_{\mathrm{p}(3)} = OP_3 = OO' - O'P_3 = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_z}{2} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xz}^2}$$

The above two relations are the same as Eqs. (2.79) and (2.80). Also note that the principal plane $O'P_1$ in Mohr's circle can be reached by moving clockwise from *O′B* through angle $BO'P_1 = \tan^{-1}[2\tau_{xz}/(\sigma_x - \sigma_z)]$. The other principal plane $O'P_3$ can be reached by moving through angle $180° + \tan^{-1}[2\tau_{xz}/(\sigma_x - \sigma_z)]$ in the clockwise direction from *O′B*. So, in Figure 2.12,

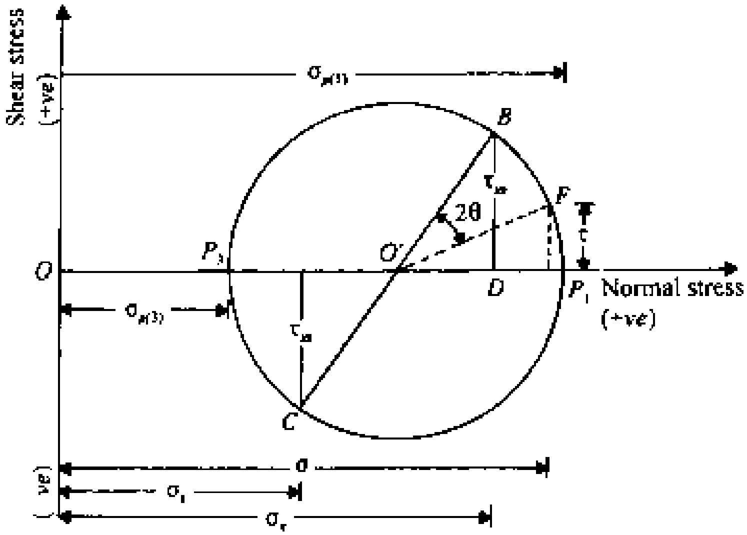


Figure 2.15 Mohr's circle.

if we move from plane *AB* through angle (1/2) $\tan^{-1}[2\tau_{xz}/(\sigma_x - \sigma_z)]$, we will reach plane *BC*′, on which the principal stress $\sigma_{p(1)}$ acts. Similarly, moving clockwise from plane *AB* through angle $1/2\{180° + \tan^{-1}[2\tau_{xz}/(\sigma_x - \sigma_z)]\} = 90° + (1/2)\tan^{-1}[2\tau_{xz}/(\sigma_x - \sigma_z)]$ in Figure 2.12, we reach plane *BC*″, on which the principal stress $\sigma_{p(3)}$ acts. These are the same conclusions as derived from Eq. (2.78).

Pole method for finding stresses on an inclined plane

A pole is a unique point located on the circumference of Mohr's circle. If a line is drawn through the pole parallel to a given plane, the point of intersection of this line and Mohr's circle will give the stresses on the plane. The procedure for finding the pole is shown in Figure 2.16.

Figure 2.16*a* shows the same stress element as Figure 2.12. The corresponding Mohr's circle is given in Figure 2.16*b*. Point *B* on Mohr's circle represents the stress conditions on plane *AB* (Figure 2.16*a*). If a line is drawn through *B* parallel to *AB*, it will intersect Mohr's circle at *P*. Point *P* is the pole for Mohr's circle. We could also have found pole *P* by drawing a line through *C* parallel to plane *AC*. To find the stresses on plane *BC*, we draw a line through *P* parallel to *BC*. It will intersect Mohr's circle at *F*, and the coordinates of point *F* will give the normal and shear stresses on plane *AB*.

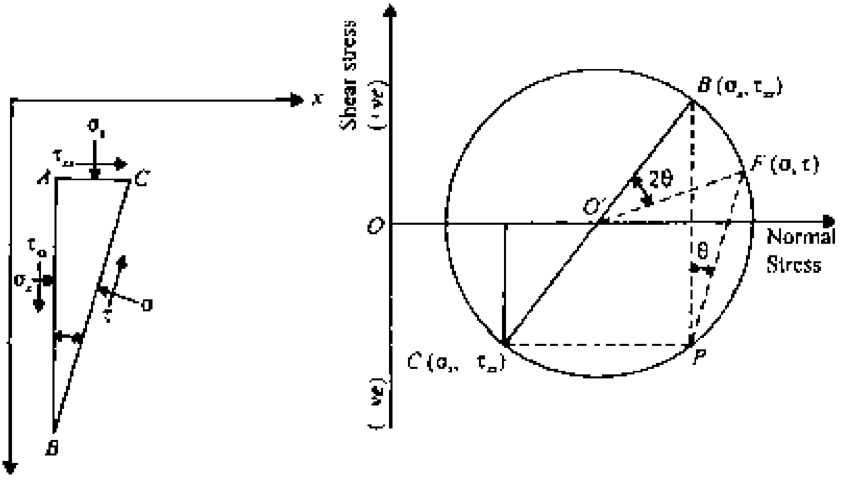


Figure 2.16 Pole method of finding stresses on an inclined plane.

EXAMPLE 2.2

The stresses at a point in a soil mass are shown in Figure 2.17 (plane strain case). Determine the principal stresses and show their directions. Use $v = 0.35$.

SOLUTION Based on the sign conventions explained in Sec. 2.2,

$$\sigma_z = +100\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}, \qquad \sigma_x = +50\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}, \qquad \text{and } \tau_{xz} = -25\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\sigma_\mathrm{p} = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_z}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xz}^2}$$

$$= \frac{50+100}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{50-100}{2}\right)^2 + (-25)^2} = (75 \pm 35.36)\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\sigma_{\mathrm{p}(1)} = 110.36\,\mathrm{kN/m^2} \qquad \sigma_{\mathrm{p}(3)} = 39.64\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\sigma_{\mathrm{p}(2)} = v[\sigma_{\mathrm{p}(1)} + \sigma_{\mathrm{p}(3)}] = (0.35)(110.36 + 39.34) = 52.5\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

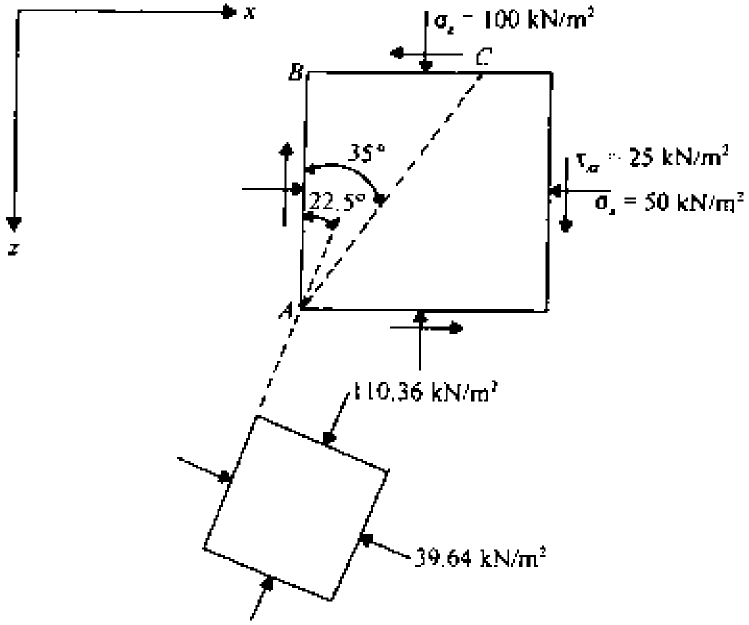


Figure 2.17 Determination of principal stresses at a point.

From Eq. (2.78),

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2\tau_{xz}}{\sigma_x - \sigma_z} = \frac{(2)(-25)}{(50-100)} = 1$$

$$2\theta = \tan^{-1}(1) = 45^\circ \text{ and } 225^\circ \quad \text{so} \quad \theta = 22.5^\circ \text{ and } 112.5^\circ$$

Parameter $\sigma_{p(2)}$ is acting on the xz plane. The directions of $\sigma_{p(1)}$ and $\sigma_{p(3)}$ are shown in Figure 2.17.

EXAMPLE 2.3

Refer to Example 2.2.

(*a*) Determine the magnitudes of $\sigma_{p(1)}$ and $\sigma_{p(3)}$ by using Mohr's circle.
(*b*) Determine the magnitudes of the normal and shear stresses on plane *AC* shown in Figure 2.17.

SOLUTION *Part a*: For Mohr's circle, on plane *AB*, $\sigma_x = 50\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and $\tau_{xz} = -25\,\text{kN/m}^2$. On plane *BC*, $\sigma_z = +100\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and $+25\,\text{kN/m}^2$. For the stresses, Mohr's circle is plotted in Figure 2.18. The radius of the circle is

$$O'H = \sqrt{(O'I)^2 + (HI)^2} = \sqrt{25^2 + 25^2} = 35.36\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\sigma_{p(1)} = OO' + O'P_1 = 75 + 35.36 = 110.36\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\sigma_{p(3)} = OO' - O'P_1 = 75 - 35.36 = 39.64\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

The angle $GO'P_3 = 2\theta = \tan^{-1}(JG/O'J) = \tan^{-1}(25/25) = 45^\circ$. So we move an angle $\theta = 22.5^\circ$ clockwise from plane *AB* to reach the minor principal plane, and an angle $\theta = 22.5 + 90 = 112.5^\circ$ clockwise from plane *AB* to reach the major principal plane. The orientation of the major and minor principal stresses is shown in Figure 2.17.

Part b: Plane *AC* makes an angle 35°, measured clockwise, with plane *AB*. If we move through an angle of $(2)(35^\circ) = 70^\circ$ from the radial line $O'G$ (Figure 2.18), we reach the radial line $O'K$. The coordinates of *K* will give the normal and shear stresses on plane *AC*. So

$$\tau = O'K \sin 25^\circ = 35.36 \sin 25^\circ = 14.94\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\sigma = OO' - O'K \cos 25^\circ = 75 - 35.36 \cos 25^\circ = 42.95\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

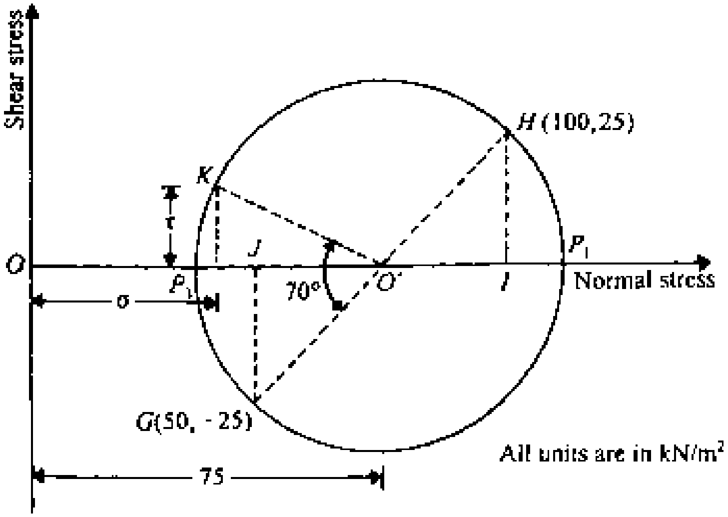


Figure 2.18 Mohr's circle for stress determination.

Note: This could also be solved using Eqs. (2.73) and (2.74):

$$\tau = \tau_{xz} \cos 2\theta - \left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right) \sin 2\theta$$

where $\tau_{xz} = -25\,\text{kN/m}^2$, $\theta = 35°$, $\sigma_x = +50\,\text{kN/m}^2$, and $\sigma_z = +100\,\text{kN/m}^2$ (watch the sign conventions). So

$$\tau = -25 \cos 70 - \left(\frac{50 - 100}{2}\right) \sin 70 = -8.55 - (-23.49)$$

$$= 14.94\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\sigma = \left(\frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_z}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_z}{2}\right) \cos 2\theta + \tau_{xz} \sin 2\theta$$

$$= \left(\frac{50 + 100}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{50 - 100}{2}\right) \cos 70 + (-25) \sin 70$$

$$= 75 - 8.55 - 23.49 = 42.96\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

2.9 Strains on an inclined plane and principal strain for plane strain problems

Consider an elemental soil prism *ABDC* of unit length along the *y* direction (Figure 2.19). The lengths of the prism along the *x* and *z* directions are $AB = dx$ and $AC = dz$, respectively. When subjected to stresses, the soil prism is deformed and displaced. The length in the *y* direction still remains unity. $A'B''D''C''$ is the deformed shape of the prism in the displaced position. If the normal strain on an inclined plane *AD* making an angle θ with the *x* axis is equal to ∈,

$$A'D'' = AD(1+\in) = dl(1+\in) \tag{2.84}$$

where $AD = dl$.

Note that the angle $B''AC''$ is equal to $(\pi/2 - \gamma_{xz})$. So the angle $A'C''D''$ is equal to $(\pi/2 + \gamma_{xz})$. Now

$$(A'D'')^2 = (A'C'')^2 + (C''D'')^2 - 2(A'C'')(C''D'')\cos(\pi/2 + \gamma_{xz}) \tag{2.85}$$

$$A'C'' = AC(1+\in_z) = dz(1+\in_z) = dl(\sin\theta)(1+\in_z) \tag{2.86}$$

$$C''D'' = A'B'' = dx(1+\in_x) = dl(\cos\theta)(1+\in_x) \tag{2.87}$$

Substitution of Eqs. (2.84), (2.86), and (2.87) into Eq. (2.85) gives

$$\begin{aligned}(1+\in)^2(dl)^2 &= [dl(\sin\theta)(1+\in_z)]^2 + [dl(\cos\theta)(1+\in_x)]^2 \\ &\quad + 2(dl)^2(\sin\theta)(\cos\theta)(1+\in_x)(1+\in_z)\sin\gamma_{xz}\end{aligned} \tag{2.88}$$

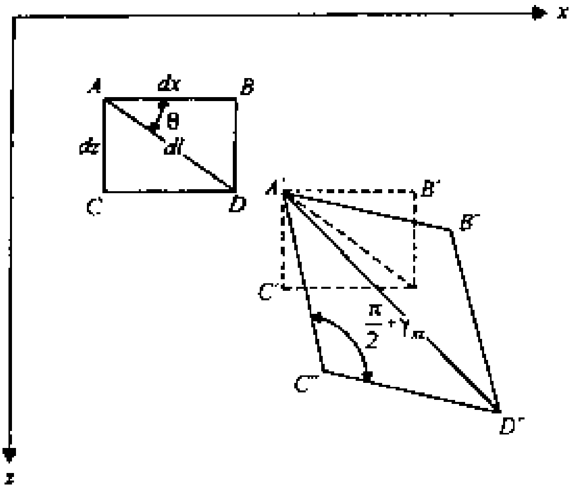


Figure 2.19 Normal and shear strains on an inclined plane (plane strain case).

Taking $\sin \gamma_{xz} \approx \gamma_{xz}$ and neglecting the higher order terms of strain such as $\in^2,\ \in_x^2,\ \in_z^2,\ \in_x\gamma_{xz},\ \in_z\gamma_{xz},\ \in_x\in_z\ \gamma_{xz}$, Eq. (2.88) can be simplified to

$$1+2\in = (1+2\in_z)\sin^2\theta + (1+2\in_x)\cos^2\theta + 2\gamma_{xz}\sin\theta\cos\theta$$

$$\in = \in_x\cos^2\theta + \in_z\sin^2\theta + \frac{\gamma_{xz}}{2}\sin 2\theta \tag{2.89}$$

or

$$\in = \frac{\in_x + \in_z}{2} + \frac{\in_x - \in_z}{2}\cos 2\theta + \frac{\gamma_{xz}}{2}\sin 2\theta \tag{2.90}$$

Similarly, the shear strain on plane *AD* can be derived as

$$\gamma = \gamma_{xz}\cos 2\theta - (\in_x - \in_z)\sin 2\theta \tag{2.91}$$

Comparing Eqs. (2.90) and (2.91) with Eqs. (2.73) and (2.74), it appears that they are similar except for a factor of 1/2 in the last terms of the equations.

The principal strains can be derived by substituting zero for shear strain in Eq. (2.91). Thus

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{\gamma_{xz}}{\in_x - \in_y} \tag{2.92}$$

There are two values of θ that will satisfy the above relation. Thus from Eqs. (2.90) and (2.92), we obtain

$$\in_{\mathrm{p}} = \frac{\in_x + \in_z}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{\in_x - \in_z}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\gamma_{xz}}{2}\right)^2} \tag{2.93}$$

where $\in_{\mathrm{p}}$= principal strain. Also note that Eq. (2.93) is similar to Eqs. (2.79) and (2.80).

2.10 Stress components on an inclined plane, principal stress, and octahedral stresses—three-dimensional case

Stress on an inclined plane

Figure 2.20 shows a tetrahedron *AOBC*. The face *AOB* is on the *xy* plane with stresses, $\sigma_z,\ \tau_{zy}$, and τ_{zx} acting on it. The face *AOC* is on the *yz* plane subjected to stresses $\sigma_x,\ \tau_{xy}$, and τ_{xz}. Similarly, the face *BOC* is on the *xz* plane with stresses $\sigma_y,\ \tau_{yx}$, and τ_{yz}. Let it be required to find the *x, y*, and *z* components of the stresses acting on the inclined plane *ABC*.

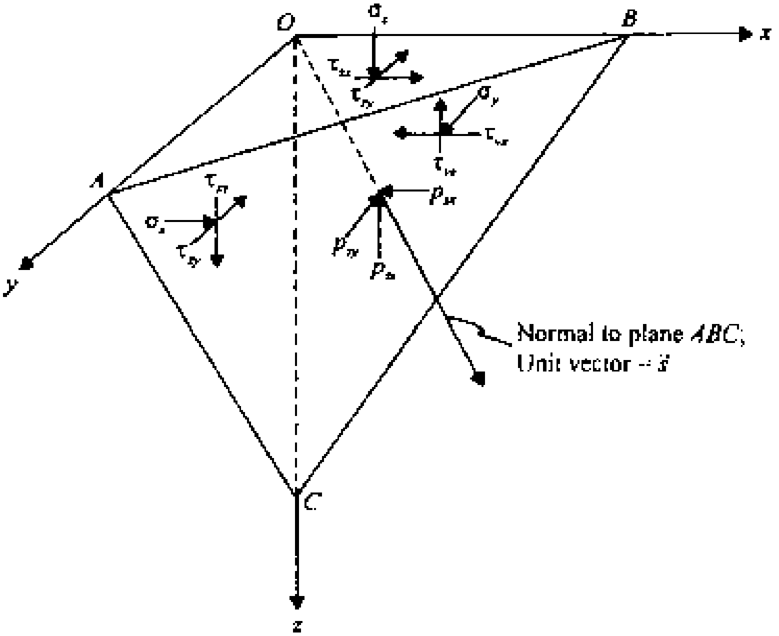


Figure 2.20 Stresses on an inclined plane—three-dimensional case.

Let **i**, **j**, and **k** be the unit vectors in the x, y, and z directions, and let **s** be the unit vector in the direction perpendicular to the inclined plane ABC:

$$\mathbf{s} = \cos(s, x)\mathbf{i} + \cos(s, y)\mathbf{j} + \cos(s, z)\mathbf{k} \tag{2.94}$$

If the area of ABC is dA, then the area of AOC can be given as $dA(\mathbf{s}\cdot\mathbf{i}) = dA\cos(s,\ x)$. Similarly, the area of $BOC = dA(\mathbf{s}\cdot\mathbf{j}) = dA\cos(s,\ y)$, and the area of $AOB = dA(\mathbf{s}\cdot\mathbf{k}) = dA\cos(s,\ z)$.

For equilibrium, summing the forces in the x direction, $\Sigma F_x = 0$:

$$p_{sx}\ dA = [\sigma_x \cos(s, x) + \tau_{yx}\cos(s, y) + \tau_{zx}\cos(s, z)]dA$$

or

$$p_{sx} = \sigma_x \cos(s, x) + \tau_{yx}\cos(s, y) + \tau_{zx}\cos(s, z) \tag{2.95}$$

where p_{sx} is the stress component on plane ABC in the x direction.

Similarly, summing the forces in the y and z directions,

$$p_{sy} = \tau_{xy}\cos(s, x) + \sigma_y \cos(s, y) + \tau_{zy}\cos(s, z) \tag{2.96}$$

$$p_{sz} = \tau_{xz}\cos(s, x) + \tau_{yz}\cos(s, y) + \sigma_z \cos(s, z) \tag{2.97}$$

where p_{sy} and p_{sz} are the stress components on plane ABC in the y and z directions, respectively. Equations (2.95), (2.96), and (2.97) can be expressed in matrix form as

$$\begin{vmatrix} p_{sx} \\ p_{sy} \\ p_{sz} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \sigma_x & \tau_{yx} & \tau_{zx} \\ \tau_{xy} & \sigma_y & \tau_{zy} \\ \tau_{xz} & \tau_{yz} & \sigma_z \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} \cos(s,\ x) \\ \cos(s,\ y) \\ \cos(s,\ z) \end{vmatrix} \tag{2.98}$$

The normal stress on plane ABC can now be determined as

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma &= p_{sx}\cos(s,\ x) + p_{sy}\cos(s,\ y) + p_{sz}\cos(s,\ z) \\ &= \sigma_x \cos^2(s,\ x) + \sigma_y \cos^2(s,\ y) + \sigma_z \cos^2(s,\ z) + 2\tau_{xy}\cos(s,\ x)\ \cos(s,\ y) \\ &\quad + 2\tau_{yz}\cos(s,\ y)\cos(s,\ z) + 2\tau_{zx}\cos(s,\ x)\cos(s,\ z) \end{aligned} \tag{2.99}$$

The shear stress τ on the plane can be given as

$$\tau = \sqrt{(p_{sx}^2 + p_{sy}^2 + p_{sz}^2) - \sigma^2} \tag{2.100}$$

Transformation of axes

Let the stresses in a soil mass in the Cartesian coordinate system be given. If the stress components in a new set of orthogonal axes (x_1, y_1, z_1) as shown in Figure 2.21 are required, they can be determined in the following manner. The direction cosines of the x_1, y_1, and z_1 axes with respect to the x, y, and z axes are shown:

	x	y	z
x_1	l_1	m_1	n_1
y_1	l_2	m_2	n_2
z_1	l_3	m_3	n_3

Following the procedure adopted to obtain Eq. (2.98), we can write

$$\begin{vmatrix} p_{x_1x} \\ p_{x_1y} \\ p_{x_1z} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \sigma_x & \tau_{yx} & \tau_{zx} \\ \tau_{xy} & \sigma_y & \tau_{zy} \\ \tau_{xz} & \tau_{yz} & \sigma_z \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} l_1 \\ m_1 \\ n_1 \end{vmatrix} \tag{2.101}$$

where p_{x_1x}, p_{x_1y}, and p_{x_1z} are stresses parallel to the x, y, and z axes and are acting on the plane perpendicular to the x_1 axis (i.e., y_1z_1 plane).

We can now take the components of p_{x_1x}, p_{x_1y}, and p_{x_1z} to determine the normal and shear stresses on the y_1z_1 plane, or

$$\sigma_{x_1} = l_1 p_{x_1x} + m_1 p_{x_1y} + n_1 p_{x_1z}$$

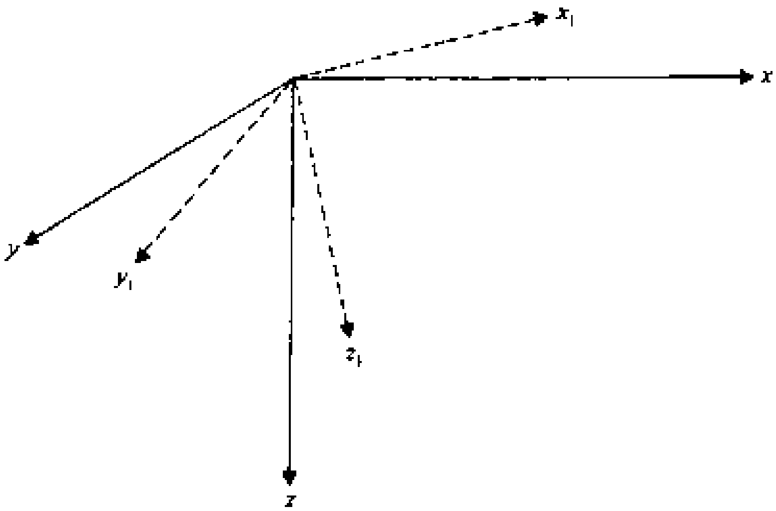


Figure 2.21 Transformation of stresses to a new set of orthogonal axes.

$$\tau_{x_1y_1} = l_2p_{x_1x} + m_2p_{x_1y} + n_2p_{x_1z}$$

$$\tau_{x_1z_1} = l_3p_{x_1x} + m_3p_{x_1y} + n_3p_{x_1z}$$

In a matrix form, the above three equations may be expressed as

$$\begin{vmatrix} \sigma_{x_1} \\ \tau_{x_1y_1} \\ \tau_{x_1z_1} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} l_1 \; m_1 \; n_1 \\ l_2 \; m_2 \; n_2 \\ l_3 \; m_3 \; n_3 \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} p_{x_1x} \\ p_{x_1y} \\ p_{x_1z} \end{vmatrix} \tag{2.102}$$

In a similar manner, the normal and shear stresses on the x_1z_1 plane (i.e., σ_{y_1}, $\tau_{y_1x_1}$, and $\tau_{y_1z_1}$) and on the x_1y_1 plane (i.e., σ_{z_1}, $\tau_{z_1x_1}$, and $\tau_{z_1y_1}$) can be determined. Combining these terms, we can express the stresses in the new set of orthogonal axes in a matrix form. Thus

$$\begin{vmatrix} \sigma_{x_1} & \tau_{y_1x_1} & \tau_{z_1x_1} \\ \tau_{x_1y_1} & \sigma_{y_1} & \tau_{z_1y_1} \\ \tau_{x_1z_1} & \tau_{y_1z_1} & \sigma_{z_1} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} l_1 \; m_1 \; n_1 \\ l_2 \; m_2 \; n_2 \\ l_3 \; m_2 \; n_2 \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} \sigma_x & \tau_{yx} & \tau_{zx} \\ \tau_{xy} & \sigma_y & \tau_{zy} \\ \tau_{xz} & \tau_{yz} & \sigma_z \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} l_1 & l_2 & l_3 \\ m_1 & m_2 & m_3 \\ n_1 & n_2 & n_3 \end{vmatrix} \tag{2.103}$$

Note: $\tau_{xy} = \tau_{yx}$, $\tau_{zy} = \tau_{yz}$, and $\tau_{zx} = \tau_{xz}$.

Solution of Eq. (2.103) gives the following relations:

$$\sigma_{x_1} = l_1^2\sigma_x + m_1^2\sigma_y + n_1^2\sigma_z + 2m_1n_1\tau_{yz} + 2n_1l_1\tau_{zx} + 2l_1m_1\tau_{xy} \tag{2.104}$$

$$\sigma_{y_1} = l_2^2\sigma_x + m_2^2\sigma_y + n_2^2\sigma_z + 2m_2n_2\tau_{yz} + 2n_2l_2\tau_{zx} + 2l_2m_2\tau_{xy} \tag{2.105}$$

$$\sigma_{z_1} = l_3^2\sigma_x + m_3^2\sigma_y + n_3^2\sigma_z + 2m_3n_3\tau_{yz} + 2n_3l_3\tau_{zx} + 2l_3m_3\tau_{xy} \tag{2.106}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_{x_1y_1} = \tau_{y_1x_1} &= l_1l_2\sigma_x + m_1m_2\sigma_y + n_1n_2\sigma_z + (m_1n_2 + m_2n_1)\tau_{yz} \\ &\quad + (n_1l_2 + n_2l_1)\tau_{zx} + (l_1m_2 + l_2m_1)\tau_{xy}\end{aligned} \tag{2.107}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_{x_1z_1} = \tau_{z_1x_1} &= l_1l_3\sigma_x + m_1m_3\sigma_y + n_1n_3\sigma_z + (m_1n_3 + m_3n_1)\tau_{yz} \\ &\quad + (n_1l_3 + n_3l_1)\tau_{zx} + (l_1m_3 + l_3m_1)\tau_{xy}\end{aligned} \tag{2.108}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_{y_1z_1} = \tau_{z_1y_1} &= l_2l_3\sigma_x + m_2m_3\sigma_y + n_2n_3\sigma_z + (m_2n_3 + m_3n_2)\tau_{yz} \\ &\quad + (n_2l_3 + n_3l_2)\tau_{zx} + (l_2m_3 + l_3m_2)\tau_{xy}\end{aligned} \tag{2.109}$$

Principal stresses

The preceding procedure allows the determination of the stresses on any plane from the known stresses based on a set of orthogonal axes. As discussed above, a plane is defined as a principal plane if the shear stresses acting on it are zero, which means that the only stress acting on it is a normal stress. This normal stress on a principal plane is referred to as a *principal stress*. In order to determine the principal stresses, refer to Figure 2.20, in which *x, y*, and *z* are a set of orthogonal axes. Let the stresses on planes *OAC, BOC*, and *AOB* be known, and let *ABC* be a principal plane. The direction cosines of the normal drawn to this plane are *l, m*, and *n* with respect to the *x, y*, and *z* axes, respectively. Note that

$$l^2 + m^2 + n^2 = 1 \tag{2.110}$$

If *ABC* is a principal plane, then the only stress acting on it will be a normal stress σ_p. The *x, y*, and *z* components of σ_p are $\sigma_\text{p}l$, $\sigma_\text{p}m$, and $\sigma_\text{p}n$. Referring to Eqs. (2.95), (2.96), and (2.97), we can write

$$\sigma_\text{p}l = \sigma_x l + \tau_{yx}m + \tau_{zx}n$$

or

$$(\sigma_x - \sigma_p)l + \tau_{yx}m + \tau_{zx}n = 0 \tag{2.111}$$

Similarly,

$$\tau_{xy}l + (\sigma_y - \sigma_\text{p})m + \tau_{zy}n = 0 \tag{2.112}$$

$$\tau_{xz}l + \tau_{yz}m + (\sigma_z - \sigma_\text{p})n = 0 \tag{2.113}$$

From Eqs. (2.110)–(2.113), we note that *l, m*, and *n* cannot all be equal to zero at the same time. So,

$$\begin{vmatrix} (\sigma_x - \sigma_{\mathrm{p}}) & \tau_{yx} & \tau_{zx} \\ \tau_{xy} & (\sigma_y - \sigma_{\mathrm{p}}) & \tau_{zy} \\ \tau_{xz} & \tau_{yz} & (\sigma_z - \sigma_{\mathrm{p}}) \end{vmatrix} = 0 \tag{2.114}$$

or

$$\sigma_{\mathrm{p}}^3 - I_1\sigma_{\mathrm{p}}^2 + I_2\sigma_{\mathrm{p}} - I_3 = 0 \tag{2.115}$$

where

$$I_1 = \sigma_x + \sigma_y + \sigma_z \tag{2.116}$$

$$I_2 = \sigma_x\sigma_y + \sigma_y\sigma_z + \sigma_x\sigma_z - \tau_{xy}^2 - \tau_{yz}^2 - \tau_{xz}^2 \tag{2.117}$$

$$I_3 = \sigma_x\sigma_y\sigma_z + 2\tau_{xy}\tau_{yz}\tau_{xz} - \sigma_x\tau_{yz}^2 - \sigma_y\tau_{xz}^2 - \sigma_z\tau_{xy}^2 \tag{2.118}$$

I_1, I_2, and I_3 defined in Eqs. (2.116), (2.117), and (2.118) are independent of direction cosines and hence independent of the choice of axes. So they are referred to as stress invariants.

Solution of Eq. (2.115) gives three real values of σ_{p}. So there are three principal planes and they are mutually perpendicular to each other. The directions of these planes can be determined by substituting each σ_{p} in Eqs. (2.111), (2.112), and (2.113) and solving for l, m, and n, and observing the direction cosine condition for $l^2 + m^2 + n^2 = 1$. Note that these values for l, m, and n are the direction cosines for the normal drawn to the plane on which σ_{p} is acting. The maximum, intermediate, and minimum values of $\sigma_{\mathrm{p}(i)}$ are referred to as the major principal stress, intermediate principal stress, and minor principal stress, respectively.

Octahedral stresses

The octahedral stresses at a point are the normal and shear stresses acting on the planes of an imaginary octahedron surrounding that point. The normals to these planes have direction cosines of $\pm 1\sqrt{3}$ with respect to the direction of the principal stresses (Figure 2.22). The axes marked 1, 2, and 3 are the directions of the principal stresses $\sigma_{\mathrm{p}(1)}$, $\sigma_{\mathrm{p}(2)}$, and $\sigma_{\mathrm{p}(3)}$. The expressions for the octahedral normal stress σ_{oct} can be obtained using Eqs. (2.95), (2.96), (2.97), and (2.99). Now compare planes *ABC* in Figures 2.20 and 2.22. For the octahedral plane *ABC* in Figure 2.22,

$$p_{s1} = \sigma_{\mathrm{p}(1)} l \tag{2.119}$$

$$p_{s2} = \sigma_{\mathrm{p}(2)} m \tag{2.120}$$

$$p_{s3} = \sigma_{\mathrm{p}(3)} n \tag{2.121}$$

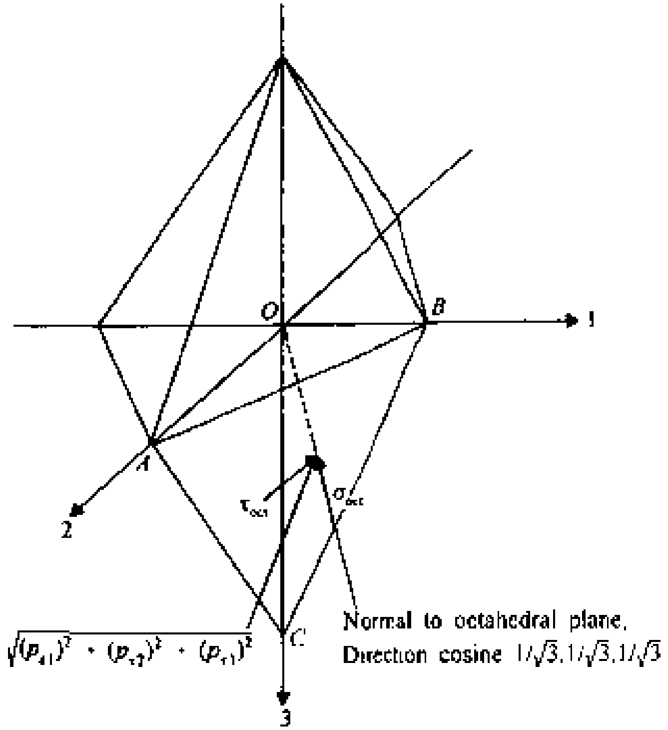


Figure 2.22 Octahedral stress.

where p_{s1}, p_{s2}, and p_{s3} are stresses acting on plane *ABC* parallel to the principal stress axes 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Parameters *l, m*, and *n* are the direction cosines of the normal drawn to the octahedral plane and are all equal to $1/\sqrt{3}$. Thus from Eq. (2.99),

$$\sigma_{\text{oct}} = l_1^2\sigma_{\text{p(1)}} + m_1^2\sigma_{\text{p(2)}} + n_1^2\sigma_{\text{p(3)}}$$
$$= \frac{1}{3}[(\sigma_{\text{p(1)}} + \sigma_{\text{p(2)}} + \sigma_{\text{p(3)}}] \tag{2.122}$$

The shear stress on the octahedral plane is

$$\tau_{\text{oct}} = \sqrt{[(p_{s1})^2 + (p_{s2})^2 + (p_{s3})^2] - \sigma_{\text{oct}}^2} \tag{2.123}$$

where τ_{oct} is the octahedral shear stress, or

$$\tau_{\text{oct}} = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{[\sigma_{\text{p(1)}} - \sigma_{\text{p(2)}}]^2 + [\sigma_{\text{p(2)}} - \sigma_{\text{p(3)}}]^2 + [\sigma_{\text{p(3)}} - \sigma_{\text{p(1)}}]^2} \tag{2.124}$$

The octahedral normal and shear stress expressions can also be derived as a function of the stress components for any set of orthogonal axes x, y, z. From Eq. (2.116),

$$I_1 = \text{const} = \sigma_x + \sigma_y + \sigma_z = \sigma_{\text{p}(1)} + \sigma_{\text{p}(2)} + \sigma_{\text{p}(3)} \tag{2.125}$$

So

$$\sigma_{\text{oct}} = \frac{1}{3}[\sigma_{\text{p}(1)} + \sigma_{\text{p}(2)} + \sigma_{\text{p}(3)}] = \frac{1}{3}(\sigma_x + \sigma_y + \sigma_z) \tag{2.126}$$

Similarly, from Eq. (2.117),

$$\begin{aligned} I_2 &= \text{const} = (\sigma_x\sigma_y + \sigma_y\sigma_z + \sigma_z\sigma_x) - \tau_{xy}^2 - \tau_{yz}^2 - \tau_{xz}^2 \\ &= \sigma_{\text{p}(1)}\sigma_{\text{p}(2)} + \sigma_{\text{p}(2)}\sigma_{\text{p}(3)} + \sigma_{\text{p}(3)}\sigma_{\text{p}(1)} \end{aligned} \tag{2.127}$$

Combining Eqs. (2.124), (2.125), and (2.127) gives

$$\tau_{\text{oct}} = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{(\sigma_x - \sigma_y)^2 + (\sigma_y - \sigma_z)^2 + (\sigma_z - \sigma_x)^2 + 6\tau_{xy}^2 + 6\tau_{yz}^2 + 6\tau_{xz}^2} \tag{2.128}$$

EXAMPLE 2.4

The stresses at a point in a soil mass are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_x &= 50\,\text{kN/m}^2 & \tau_{xy} &= 30\,\text{kN/m}^2 \\ \sigma_y &= 40\,\text{kN/m}^2 & \tau_{yz} &= 25\,\text{kN/m}^2 \\ \sigma_z &= 80\,\text{kN/m}^2 & \tau_{xz} &= 25\,\text{kN/m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Determine the normal and shear stresses on a plane with direction cosines $l = 2/3$, $m = 2/3$, and $n = 1/3$.

SOLUTION From Eq. (2.98),

$$\begin{vmatrix} p_{sx} \\ p_{sy} \\ p_{sz} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \sigma_x & \tau_{xy} & \tau_{xz} \\ \tau_{xy} & \sigma_y & \tau_{yz} \\ \tau_{xz} & \tau_{yz} & \sigma_z \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} l \\ m \\ n \end{vmatrix}$$

The normal stress on the inclined plane [Eq. (2.99)] is

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma &= p_{sx}l + p_{sy}m + p_{sz}n \\ &= \sigma_x l^2 + \sigma_y m^2 + \sigma_z n^2 + 2\tau_{xy}lm + 2\tau_{yz}mn + 2\tau_{xz}ln \end{aligned}$$

$$= 50(2/3)^2 + 40(2/3)^2 + 80(1/3)^2 + 2(30)(2/3)(2/3)$$

$$+ 2(25)(2/3)(1/3) + 2(25)(2/3)(1/3) = 97.78\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$p_{sx} = \sigma_x l + \tau_{xy} m + \tau_{xz} n = 50(2/3) + 30(2/3) + 25(1/3)$$

$$= 33.33 + 20 + 8.33 = 61.66\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$p_{sy} = \tau_{xy} l + \sigma_y m + \tau_{yz} n = 30(2/3) + 40(2/3) + 25(1/3)$$

$$= 20 + 26.67 + 8.33 = 55\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$p_{sz} = \tau_{xz} l + \tau_{yz} m + \sigma_z n = 25(2/3) + 25(2/3) + 80(1/3)$$

$$= 16.67 + 16.67 + 26.67 = 60.01\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

The resultant stress is

$$p = \sqrt{p_{sx}^2 + p_{sy}^2 + p_{sz}^2} = \sqrt{61.66^2 + 55^2 + 60.01^2} = 102.2\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

The shear stress on the plane is

$$\tau = \sqrt{p^2 - \sigma^2} = \sqrt{102.2^2 - 97.78^2} = 29.73\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

EXAMPLE 2.5

At a point in a soil mass, the stresses are as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \sigma_x = 25\,\text{kN/m}^2 & \tau_{xy} = 30\,\text{kN/m}^2 \\ \sigma_y = 40\,\text{kN/m}^2 & \tau_{yz} = -6\,\text{kN/m}^2 \\ \sigma_z = 17\,\text{kN/m}^2 & \tau_{xz} = -10\,\text{kN/m}^2 \end{array}$$

Determine the principal stresses and also the octahedral normal and shear stresses.

SOLUTION From Eq. (2.114),

$$\begin{vmatrix} (\sigma_x - \sigma_p) & \tau_{yx} & \tau_{zx} \\ \tau_{xy} & (\sigma_y - \sigma_p) & \tau_{zy} \\ \tau_{xz} & \tau_{yz} & (\sigma_z - \sigma_p) \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} (25 - \sigma_\text{p}) & 30 & -10 \\ 30 & (40 - \sigma_\text{p}) & -6 \\ -10 & -6 & (17 - \sigma_\text{p}) \end{vmatrix} = \sigma_\text{p}^3 - 82\sigma_\text{p}^2 + 1069\sigma_\text{p} - 800 = 0$$

The three roots of the equation are

$$\sigma_{p(1)} = 65.9\,\text{kN/m}^2$$
$$\sigma_{p(2)} = 15.7\,\text{kN/m}^2$$
$$\sigma_{p(3)} = 0.4\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_{oct} &= \frac{1}{3}[\sigma_{p(1)} + \sigma_{p(2)} + \sigma_{p(3)}]\\ &= \frac{1}{3}(65.9 + 15.7 + 0.4) = 27.33\,\text{kN/m}^2\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_{oct} &= \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{[\sigma_{p(1)} - \sigma_{p(2)}]^2 + [\sigma_{p(2)} - \sigma_{p(3)}]^2 + [\sigma_{p(3)} - \sigma_{p(1)}]^2}\\ &= \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{(65.9 - 15.7)^2 + (15.7 - 0.4)^2 + (0.4 - 65.9)^2} = 27.97\,\text{kN/m}^2\end{aligned}$$

2.11 Strain components on an inclined plane, principal strain, and octahedral strain—three-dimensional case

We have seen the analogy between the stress and strain equations derived in Secs. 2.7 and 2.8 for plane strain case. Referring to Figure 2.20, let the strain components at a point in a soil mass be represented by $\in_x$, $\in_y$, $\in_z$, γ_{xy}, γ_{yz}, and γ_{zx}. The normal strain on plane *ABC* (the normal to plane *ABC* has direction cosines of *l, m* and *n*) can be given by

$$\in = l^2 \in_x + m^2 \in_y + n^2 \in_z + lm\gamma_{xy} + mn\gamma_{yz} + ln\gamma_{zx} \tag{2.129}$$

This equation is similar in form to Eq. (2.99) derived for normal stress. When we replace $\in_x$, $\in_y$, $\in_z$, $\gamma_{xy}/2$, $\gamma_{yz}/2$, and $\gamma_{zx}/2$, respectively, for σ_x, σ_y, σ_z, τ_{xy}, τ_{yz}, and τ_{zx} in Eq. (2.99), Eq. (2.129) is obtained.

If the strain components at a point in the Cartesian coordinate system (Figure 2.21) are known, the components in a new set of orthogonal axes can be given by [similar to Eq. (2.103)]

$$\begin{vmatrix} \in_{x_1} & \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{x_1y_1} & \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{x_1z_1} \\ \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{x_1y_1} & \in_{y_1} & \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{y_1z_1} \\ \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{x_1z_1} & \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{y_1z_1} & \in_{z_1} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} l_1 & m_1 & n_1 \\ l_2 & m_2 & n_2 \\ l_3 & m_3 & n_3 \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} \in_x & \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{xy} & \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{xz} \\ \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{xy} & \in_y & \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{yz} \\ \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{xz} & \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{yz} & \in_z \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} l_1 & l_2 & l_3 \\ m_1 & m_2 & m_3 \\ n_1 & m_2 & n_3 \end{vmatrix} \tag{2.130}$$

The equations for principal strains at a point can also be written in a form similar to that given for stress [Eq. (2.115)] as

$$\in_p^3 - J_1 \in_p^2 + J_2 \in_p - J_3 = 0 \tag{2.131}$$

where

$\in_{\mathrm{p}}$= principal strain

$$J_1 = \in_x + \in_y + \in_z \tag{2.132}$$

$$J_2 = \in_x \in_y + \in_y \in_z + \in_z \in_x - \left(\frac{\gamma_{xy}}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{\gamma_{yz}}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{\gamma_{zx}}{2}\right)^2 \tag{2.133}$$

$$J_3 = \in_x \in_y \in_z + \frac{\gamma_{xy}\gamma_{yz}\gamma_{zx}}{4} - \in_x\left(\frac{\gamma_{yz}}{2}\right)^2 - \in_y\left(\frac{\gamma_{xz}}{2}\right)^2 - \in_z\left(\frac{\gamma_{xy}}{2}\right)^2 \tag{2.134}$$

J_1, J_2, and J_3 are the strain invariants and are not functions of the direction cosines.

The normal and shear strain relations for the octahedral planes are

$$\in_{\mathrm{oct}} = \frac{1}{3}[\in_{\mathrm{p}(1)} + \in_{\mathrm{p}(2)} + \in_{\mathrm{p}(3)}] \tag{2.135}$$

$$\gamma_{\mathrm{oct}} = \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{[\in_{\mathrm{p}(1)} - \in_{\mathrm{p}(2)}]^2 + [\in_{\mathrm{p}(2)} - \in_{\mathrm{p}(3)}]^2 + [\in_{\mathrm{p}(3)} - \in_{\mathrm{p}(1)}]^2} \tag{2.136}$$

where

$\in_{\mathrm{oct}}$= octahedral normal strain
γ_{oct} = octahedral shear strain
$\in_{\mathrm{p}(1)}$, $\in_{\mathrm{p}(2)}$, $\in_{\mathrm{p}(3)}$= major, intermediate, and minor principal strains, respectively

Equations (2.135) and (2.136) are similar to the octahedral normal and shear stress relations given by Eqs. (2.126) and (2.128).

Chapter 3

Stresses and displacements in a soil mass

3.1 Introduction

Estimation of the increase in stress at various points and associate displacement caused in a soil mass due to external loading using the theory of elasticity is an important component in the safe design of the foundations of structures. The ideal assumption of the theory of elasticity, namely that the medium is homogeneous, elastic, and isotropic, is not quite true for most natural soil profiles. It does, however, provide a close estimation for geotechnical engineers and, using proper safety factors, safe designs can be developed.

This chapter deals with problems involving stresses and displacements induced by various types of loading. The expressions for stresses and displacements are obtained on the assumption that soil is a perfectly elastic material. Problems relating to plastic equilibrium are not treated in this chapter.

The chapter is divided into two major sections: two-dimensional (plane strain) problems and three-dimensional problems.

TWO-DIMENSIONAL PROBLEMS

3.2 Vertical line load on the surface

Figure 3.1 shows the case where a line load of q per unit length is applied at the surface of a homogeneous, elastic, and isotropic soil mass. The stresses at a point P defined by r and θ can be determined by using the stress function

$$\phi = \frac{q}{\pi} r\theta \sin\theta \tag{3.1}$$

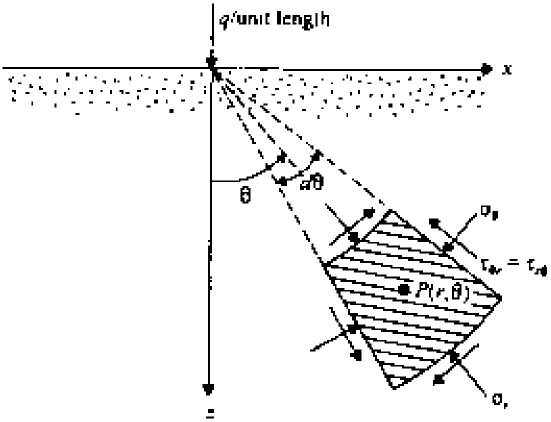


Figure 3.1 Vertical line load on the surface of a semi-infinite mass.

In the polar coordinate system, the expressions for the stresses are as follows:

$$\sigma_r = \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \theta^2} \tag{2.57$'$}$$

$$\sigma_\theta = \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial r^2} \tag{2.58$'$}$$

and $$\tau_{r\theta} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \theta}\right) \tag{2.59$'$}$$

Substituting the values of ϕ in the above equations, we get

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_r &= \frac{1}{r}\left(\frac{q}{\pi}\theta \sin\theta\right) + \frac{1}{r^2}\left(\frac{q}{\pi} r\cos\theta + \frac{q}{\pi} r\cos\theta - \frac{q}{\pi} r\theta \sin\theta\right) \\ &= \frac{2q}{\pi r}\cos\theta \end{aligned} \tag{3.2}$$

Similarly,

$$\sigma_\theta = 0 \tag{3.3}$$

and

$$\tau_{r\theta} = 0 \tag{3.4}$$

The stress function assumed in Eq. (3.1) will satisfy the *compatibility equation*

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}+\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}+\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta^2}\right)\left(\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial r^2}+\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial r}+\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \theta^2}\right)=0 \tag{2.60'}$$

Also, it can be seen that the stresses obtained in Eqs. (3.2)–(3.4) satisfy the boundary conditions. For $\theta = 90^\circ$ and $r > 0$, $\sigma_r = 0$, and at $r = 0$, σ_r is theoretically equal to infinity, which signifies that plastic flow will occur locally. Note that σ_r and σ_θ are the major and minor principal stresses at point P.

Using the above expressions for σ_r, σ_θ, and $\tau_{r\theta}$, we can derive the stresses in the rectangular coordinate system (Figure 3.2):

$$\sigma_z = \sigma_r \cos^2\theta + \sigma_\theta \sin^2\theta - 2\tau_{r\theta}\sin\theta\cos\theta = \frac{2q}{\pi r}\cos^3\theta \tag{2.77'}$$

$$= \frac{2q}{\pi\sqrt{x^2+z^2}}\left(\frac{z}{\sqrt{x^2+z^2}}\right)^3 = \frac{2qz^3}{\pi(x^2+z^2)^2} \tag{3.5}$$

Similarly,

$$\sigma_x = \sigma_r \sin^2\theta + \sigma_\theta \cos^2\theta + 2\tau_{r\theta}\sin\theta\cos\theta \tag{2.75'}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{2qx^2z}{\pi(x^2+z^2)^2} \tag{3.6}$$

and

$$\tau_{xz} = -\sigma_\theta \sin\theta\cos\theta + \sigma_r \sin\theta\cos\theta + \tau_{r\theta}\left(\cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta\right) \tag{2.76'}$$

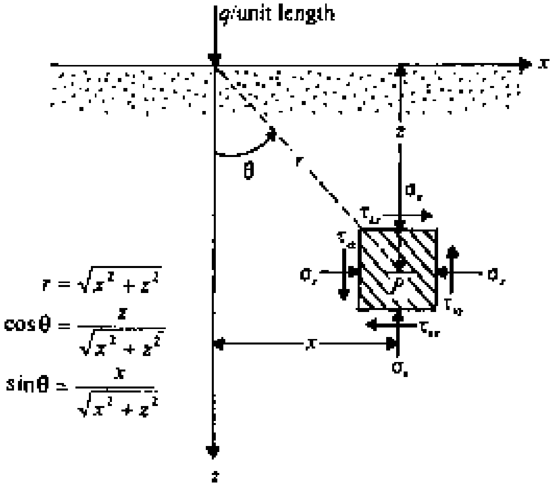


Figure 3.2 Stresses due to a vertical line load in rectangular coordinates.

Table 3.1 Values of $\sigma_z/(q/z)$, $\sigma_x/(q/z)$, and $\tau_{xz}/(q/z)$ [Eqs. (3.5)–(3.7)]

x/z	$\sigma_z/(q/z)$	$\sigma_x/(q/z)$	$\tau_{xz}/(q/z)$
0	0.637	0	0
0.1	0.624	0.006	0.062
0.2	0.589	0.024	0.118
0.3	0.536	0.048	0.161
0.4	0.473	0.076	0.189
0.5	0.407	0.102	0.204
0.6	0.344	0.124	0.207
0.7	0.287	0.141	0.201
0.8	0.237	0.151	0.189
0.9	0.194	0.157	0.175
1.0	0.159	0.159	0.159
1.5	0.060	0.136	0.090
2.0	0.025	0.102	0.051
3.0	0.006	0.057	0.019

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{2qxz^2}{\pi(x^2+z^2)^2} \tag{3.7}$$

For the plane strain case,

$$\sigma_y = \nu(\sigma_x + \sigma_z) \tag{3.8}$$

The values for σ_x, σ_z, and τ_{xz} in a nondimensional form are given in Table 3.1.

***Displacement on the surface* (z = 0)**

By relating displacements to stresses via strain, the vertical displacement w at the *surface* (i. e., $z = 0$) can be obtained as

$$w = \frac{2}{\pi}\frac{1-\nu^2}{E} q \ln|x| + C \tag{3.9}$$

where

E = modulus of elasticity
ν = Poisson's ratio
C = a constant

The magnitude of the constant can be determined if the vertical displacement at a point is specified.

EXAMPLE 3.1

For the point *A* in Figure 3.3, calculate the increase of vertical stress σ_z due to the two line loads.

SOLUTION The increase of vertical stress at *A* due to the line load $q_1 = 20\,\text{kN/m}$ is

$$\frac{x}{z} = \frac{2\text{m}}{2\text{m}} = 1$$

From Table 3.1, for $x/z = 1$, $\sigma_z/(q/z) = 0.159$. So,

$$\sigma_{z(1)} = 0.159\left(\frac{q_1}{z}\right) = 0.159\left(\frac{20}{2}\right) = 1.59\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

The increase of vertical stress at *A* due to the line load $q_2 = 30$ kN/m is

$$\frac{x}{z} = \frac{6\text{m}}{2\text{m}} = 3$$

From Table 3.1, for $x/z = 3$, $\sigma_z/(q/z) = 0.006$. Thus

$$\sigma_{z(2)} = 0.006\left(\frac{q_2}{z}\right) = 0.006\left(\frac{30}{2}\right) = 0.09\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

So, the total increase of vertical stress is

$$\sigma_z = \sigma_{z(1)} + \sigma_{z(2)} = 1.59 + 0.09 = 1.68\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

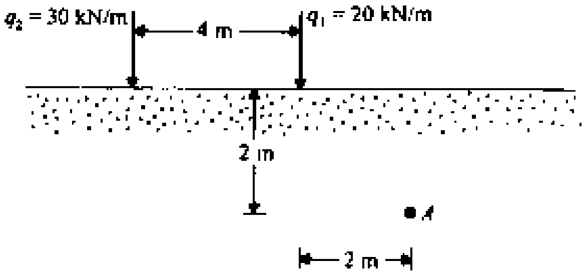


Figure 3.3 Two line loads acting on the surface.

3.3 Vertical line load on the surface of a finite layer

Equations (3.5)–(3.7) were derived with the assumption that the homogeneous soil mass extends to a great depth. However, in many practical cases, a stiff layer such as rock or highly incompressible material may be encountered at a shallow depth (Figure 3.4). At the interface of the top soil layer and the lower incompressible layer, the shear stresses will modify the pattern of stress distribution. Poulos (1966) and Poulos and Davis (1974) expressed the vertical stress σ_z and vertical displacement at the surface (w at $z = 0$) in the following form

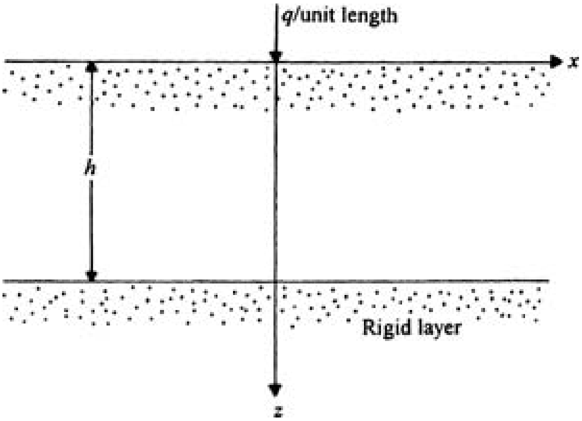


Figure 3.4 Vertical line load on a finite elastic layer.

Table 3.2 Variation of I_1 ($v = 0$)

x/h	z/h				
	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0
0	9.891	5.157	3.641	2.980	2.634
0.1	5.946	4.516	3.443	2.885	2.573
0.2	2.341	3.251	2.948	2.627	2.400
0.3	0.918	2.099	2.335	2.261	2.144
0.4	0.407	1.301	1.751	1.857	1.840
0.5	0.205	0.803	1.265	1.465	1.525
0.6	0.110	0.497	0.889	1.117	1.223
0.8	0.032	0.185	0.408	0.592	0.721
1.0	0.000	0.045	0.144	0.254	0.357
1.5	−0.019	−0.035	−0.033	−0.018	0.010
2.0	−0.013	−0.025	−0.035	−0.041	−0.042
4.0	0.009	0.009	0.008	0.007	0.006
8.0	0.002	0.002	0.002	0.002	0.002

Table 3.3 Variation of I_2 ($v = 0$)

x/h	I_2
0.1	3.756
0.2	2.461
0.3	1.730
0.4	1.244
0.5	0.896
0.6	0.643
0.7	0.453
0.8	0.313
1.0	0.126
1.5	−0.012
2.0	−0.017
4.0	−0.002
8.0	0

$$\sigma_z = \frac{q}{\pi h} I_1 \tag{3.10}$$

$$w_{z=0} = \frac{q}{\pi E} I_2 \tag{3.11}$$

where I_1 and I_2 are influence values.

I_1 is a function of z/h, x/h, and v. Similarly, I_2 is a function of x/h and v. The variations of I_1 and I_2 are given in Tables 3.2 and 3.3, respectively for $v = 0$.

3.4 Vertical line load inside a semi-infinite mass

Equations (3.5)–(3.7) were also developed on the basis of the assumption that the line load is applied on the surface of a semi-infinite mass. However, in some cases, the line load may be embedded. Melan (1932) gave the solution of stresses at a point P due to a vertical line load of q per unit length applied inside a semi-infinite mass (at point A, Figure 3.5). The final equations are given below:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_z =& \frac{q}{\pi}\left(\frac{1}{2(1-\nu)}\left\{\frac{(z-d)^3}{r_1^4} + \frac{(z+d)[(z+d)^2+2dz]}{r_2^4} - \frac{8dz(d+z)x^2}{r_2^6}\right\}\right.\\ &\left. + \frac{1-2\nu}{4(1-\nu)}\left(\frac{z-d}{r_1^2} + \frac{3z+d}{r_2^4} - \frac{4zx^2}{r_2^4}\right)\right)\end{aligned} \tag{3.12}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_x =& \frac{q}{\pi}\left\{\frac{1}{2(1-\nu)}\left[\frac{(z-d)x^2}{r_1^4} + \frac{(z+d)(x^2+2d^2)-2dx^2}{r_2^4} + \frac{8dz(d+z)x^2}{r_2^6}\right]\right.\\ &\left. + \frac{1-2\nu}{4(1-\nu)}\left(\frac{d-z}{r_1^2} + \frac{z+3d}{r_2^2} + \frac{4zx^2}{r_2^4}\right)\right\}\end{aligned} \tag{3.13}$$

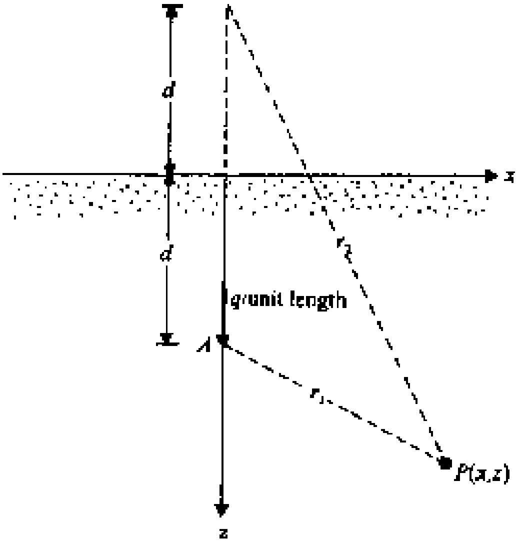


Figure 3.5 Vertical line load inside a semi-infinite mass.

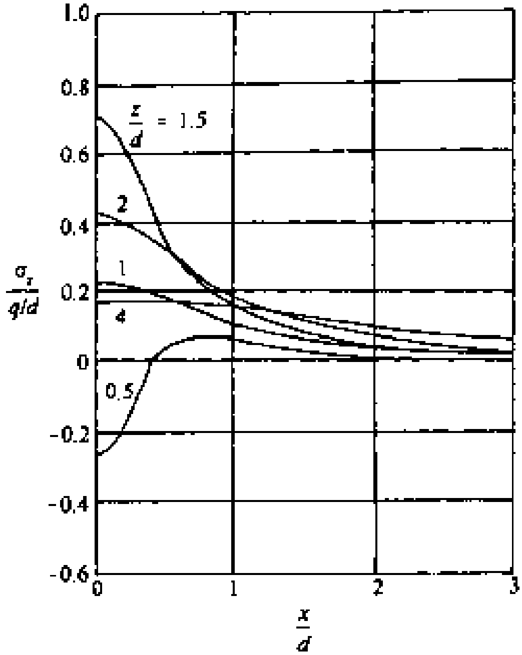


Figure 3.6 Plot of $\sigma_z/(q/d)$ versus x/d for various values of z/d [Eq. (3.12)].

$$\tau_{xz}=\frac{qx}{\pi}\left\{\frac{1}{2(1-\nu)}+\left[\frac{(z-d)^2}{r_1^4}+\frac{z^2-2dz-d^2}{r_2^4}+\frac{8dz(d+z)^2}{r_2^6}\right]\right.$$
$$\left.+\frac{1-2\nu}{4(1-\nu)}\left[\frac{1}{r_1^2}-\frac{1}{r_2^2}+\frac{4z(d+z)}{r_2^4}\right]\right\} \tag{3.14}$$

Figure 3.6 shows a plot of $\sigma_z/(q/d)$ based on Eq. (3.12).

3.5 Horizontal line load on the surface

The stresses due to a horizontal line load of q per unit length (Figure 3.7) can be evaluated by a stress function of the form

$$\phi=\frac{q}{\pi}r\theta\cos\theta \tag{3.15}$$

Proceeding in a similar manner to that shown in Sec. 3.2 for the case of vertical line load, we obtain

$$\sigma_r=\frac{2q}{\pi r}\sin\theta \tag{3.16}$$

$$\sigma_\theta=0 \tag{3.17}$$

$$\tau_{r\theta}=0 \tag{3.18}$$

In the rectangular coordinate system,

$$\sigma_z=\frac{2q}{\pi}\frac{xz^2}{(x^2+z^2)^2} \tag{3.19}$$

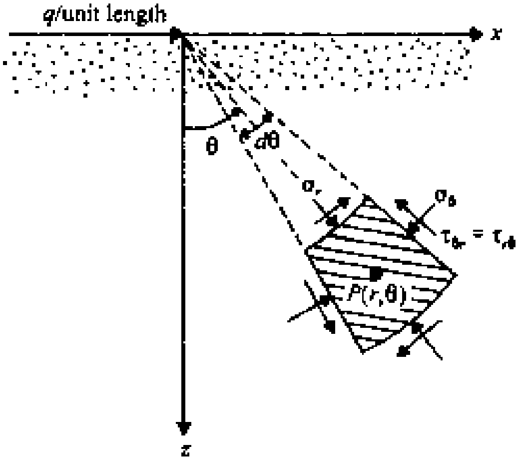


Figure 3.7 Horizontal line load on the surface of a semi-infinite mass.

Table 3.4 Values of $\sigma_z/(q/z)$, $\sigma_x/(q/z)$, and $\tau_{xz}/(q/z)$ [Eqs. (3.19)–(3.21)]

x/z	$\sigma_z/(q/z)$	$\sigma_x/(q/z)$	$\tau_{xz}/(q/z)$
0	0	0	0
0.1	0.062	0.0006	0.006
0.2	0.118	0.0049	0.024
0.3	0.161	0.0145	0.048
0.4	0.189	0.0303	0.076
0.5	0.204	0.0509	0.102
0.6	0.207	0.0743	0.124
0.7	0.201	0.0984	0.141
0.8	0.189	0.1212	0.151
0.9	0.175	0.1417	0.157
1.0	0.159	0.1591	0.159
1.5	0.090	0.2034	0.136
2.0	0.051	0.2037	0.102
3.0	0.019	0.1719	0.057

$$\sigma_x = \frac{2q}{\pi}\frac{x^3}{(x^2+z^2)^2} \tag{3.20}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{2q}{\pi}\frac{x^2 z}{(x^2+z^2)^2} \tag{3.21}$$

For the plane strain case, $\sigma_y = \nu(\sigma_x + \sigma_z)$.

Some values of σ_x, σ_z, and τ_{xz} in a nondimensional form are given in Table 3.4.

3.6 Horizontal line load inside a semi-infinite mass

If the horizontal line load acts inside a semi-infinite mass as shown in Figure 3.8, Melan's solutions for stresses may be given as follows:

$$\sigma_z = \frac{qx}{\pi}\left\{\frac{1}{2(1-\nu)}\left[\frac{(z-d)^2}{r_1^4} - \frac{d^2-z^2+6dz}{r_2^4} + \frac{8dz\,x^2}{r_2^6}\right] - \frac{1-2\nu}{4(1-\nu)}\left[\frac{1}{r_1^2} - \frac{1}{r_2^2} - \frac{4z(d+z)}{r_2^4}\right]\right\} \tag{3.22}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{qx}{\pi}\left\{\frac{1}{2(1-\nu)}\left[\frac{x^2}{r_1^4} + \frac{x^2+8dz+6d^2}{r_2^4} + \frac{8dz(d+z)^2}{r_2^6}\right] + \frac{1-2\nu}{4(1-\nu)}\left[\frac{1}{r_1^2} + \frac{3}{r_2^2} - \frac{4z(d+z)}{r_2^4}\right]\right\} \tag{3.23}$$

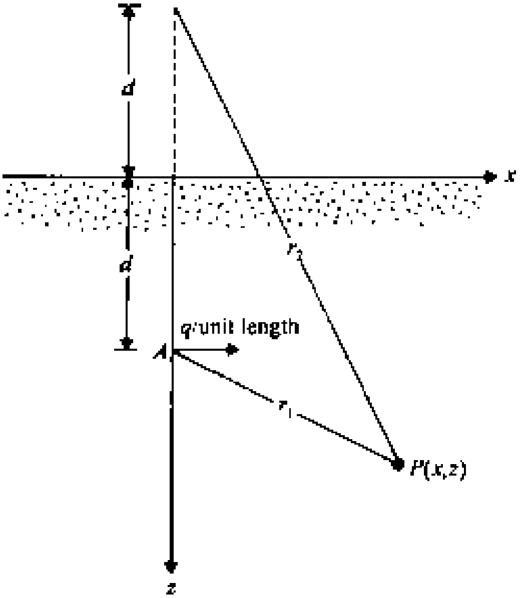


Figure 3.8 Horizontal line load inside a semi-infinite mass.

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{q}{\pi}\left\{\frac{1}{2(1-\nu)}\left[\frac{(z-d)x^2}{r_1^4} + \frac{(2dz+x^2)(d+z)}{r_2^4} - \frac{8dz(d+z)x^2}{r_2^6}\right] + \frac{1-2\nu}{4(1-\nu)}\left[\frac{z-d}{r_1^2} + \frac{3z+d}{r_2^2} - \frac{4z(d+z)^2}{r_2^4}\right]\right\} \qquad (3.24)$$

3.7 Uniform vertical loading on an infinite strip on the surface

Figure 3.9 shows the case where a uniform vertical load of q per unit area is acting on a flexible infinite strip on the surface of a semi-infinite elastic mass. To obtain the stresses at a point $P(x, z)$, we can consider an elementary strip of width ds located at a distance s from the centerline of the load. The load per unit length of this elementary strip is $q \cdot ds$, and it can be approximated as a line load.

The increase of vertical stress, σ_z, at P due to the elementary strip loading can be obtained by substituting $x - s$ for x and $q \cdot ds$ for q in Eq. (3.5), or

$$d\sigma_z = \frac{2q\ ds}{\pi}\frac{z^3}{[(x-s)^2+z^2]^2} \qquad (3.25)$$

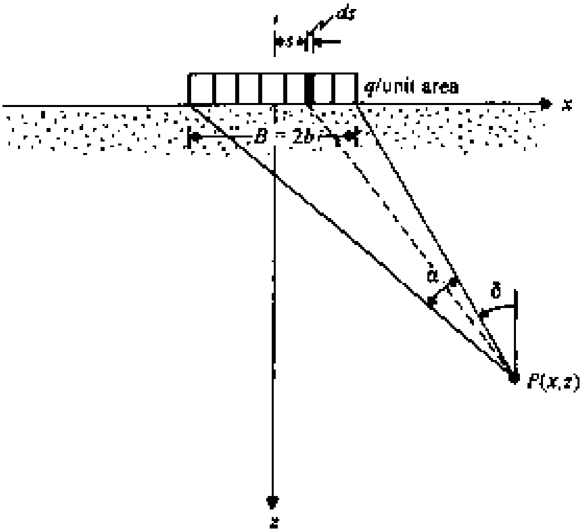


Figure 3.9 Uniform vertical loading on an infinite strip.

The total increase of vertical stress, σ_z, at P due to the loaded strip can be determined by integrating Eq. (3.25) with limits of $s = b$ to $s = -b$; so,

$$\sigma_z = \int d\sigma_z = \frac{2q}{\pi} \int_{-b}^{+b} \frac{z^3}{[(x-s)^2 + z^2]^2} ds$$
$$= \frac{q}{\pi} \left[\tan^{-1} \frac{z}{x-b} - \tan^{-1} \frac{z}{x+b} - \frac{2bz(x^2 - z^2 - b^2)}{(x^2 + z^2 - b^2)^2 + 4b^2z^2} \right] \tag{3.26}$$

In a similar manner, referring to Eqs. (3.6) and (3.7),

$$\sigma_x = \int d\sigma_x = \frac{2q}{\pi} \int_{-b}^{+b} \frac{(x-s)^2 z}{[(x-s)^2 + z^2]^2} ds$$
$$= \frac{q}{\pi} \left[\tan^{-1} \frac{z}{x-b} - \tan^{-1} \frac{z}{x+b} + \frac{2bz(x^2 - z^2 - b^2)}{(x^2 + z^2 - b^2)^2 + 4b^2z^2} \right] \tag{3.27}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{2q}{\pi} \int_{-b}^{+b} \frac{(x-s)\, z^2}{[(x-s)^2 + z^2]^2} ds = \frac{4bqxz^2}{\pi[(x^2 + z^2 - b^2)^2 + 4b^2z^2]} \tag{3.28}$$

The expressions for σ_z, σ_x, and τ_{xz} given in Eqs. (3.26)–(3.28) can be presented in a simplified form:

$$\sigma_z = \frac{q}{\pi}[\alpha + \sin\alpha \cos(\alpha + 2\delta)] \tag{3.29}$$

Table 3.5 Values of σ_z/q [Eq. (3.26)]

z/b	*x/b*										
	0.0	*0.1*	*0.2*	*0.3*	*0.4*	*0.5*	*0.6*	*0.7*	*0.8*	*0.9*	*1.0*
0.00	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	0.000
0.10	1.000	1.000	0.999	0.999	0.999	0.998	0.997	0.993	0.980	0.909	0.500
0.20	0.997	0.997	0.996	0.995	0.992	0.988	0.979	0.959	0.909	0.775	0.500
0.30	0.990	0.989	0.987	0.984	0.978	0.967	0.947	0.908	0.833	0.697	0.499
0.40	0.977	0.976	0.973	0.966	0.955	0.937	0.906	0.855	0.773	0.651	0.498
0.50	0.959	0.958	0.953	0.943	0.927	0.902	0.864	0.808	0.727	0.620	0.497
0.60	0.937	0.935	0.928	0.915	0.896	0.866	0.825	0.767	0.691	0.598	0.495
0.70	0.910	0.908	0.899	0.885	0.863	0.831	0.788	0.732	0.662	0.581	0.492
0.80	0.881	0.878	0.869	0.853	0.829	0.797	0.755	0.701	0.638	0.566	0.489
0.90	0.850	0.847	0.837	0.821	0.797	0.765	0.724	0.675	0.617	0.552	0.485
1.00	0.818	0.815	0.805	0.789	0.766	0.735	0.696	0.650	0.598	0.540	0.480
1.10	0.787	0.783	0.774	0.758	0.735	0.706	0.670	0.628	0.580	0.529	0.474
1.20	0.755	0.752	0.743	0.728	0.707	0.679	0.646	0.607	0.564	0.517	0.468
1.30	0.725	0.722	0.714	0.699	0.679	0.654	0.623	0.588	0.548	0.506	0.462
1.40	0.696	0.693	0.685	0.672	0.653	0.630	0.602	0.569	0.534	0.495	0.455
1.50	0.668	0.666	0.658	0.646	0.629	0.607	0.581	0.552	0.519	0.484	0.448
1.60	0.642	0.639	0.633	0.621	0.605	0.586	0.562	0.535	0.506	0.474	0.440
1.70	0.617	0.615	0.608	0.598	0.583	0.565	0.544	0.519	0.492	0.463	0.433
1.80	0.593	0.591	0.585	0.576	0.563	0.546	0.526	0.504	0.479	0.453	0.425
1.90	0.571	0.569	0.564	0.555	0.543	0.528	0.510	0.489	0.467	0.443	0.417
2.00	0.550	0.548	0.543	0.535	0.524	0.510	0.494	0.475	0.455	0.433	0.409
2.10	0.530	0.529	0.524	0.517	0.507	0.494	0.479	0.462	0.443	0.423	0.401
2.20	0.511	0.510	0.506	0.499	0.490	0.479	0.465	0.449	0.432	0.413	0.393
2.30	0.494	0.493	0.489	0.483	0.474	0.464	0.451	0.437	0.421	0.404	0.385
2.40	0.477	0.476	0.473	0.467	0.460	0.450	0.438	0.425	0.410	0.395	0.378
2.50	0.462	0.461	0.458	0.452	0.445	0.436	0.426	0.414	0.400	0.386	0.370
2.60	0.447	0.446	0.443	0.439	0.432	0.424	0.414	0.403	0.390	0.377	0.363
2.70	0.433	0.432	0.430	0.425	0.419	0.412	0.403	0.393	0.381	0.369	0.355
2.80	0.420	0.419	0.417	0.413	0.407	0.400	0.392	0.383	0.372	0.360	0.348
2.90	0.408	0.407	0.405	0.401	0.396	0.389	0.382	0.373	0.363	0.352	0.341
3.00	0.396	0.395	0.393	0.390	0.385	0.379	0.372	0.364	0.355	0.345	0.334
3.10	0.385	0.384	0.382	0.379	0.375	0.369	0.363	0.355	0.347	0.337	0.327
3.20	0.374	0.373	0.372	0.369	0.365	0.360	0.354	0.347	0.339	0.330	0.321
3.30	0.364	0.363	0.362	0.359	0.355	0.351	0.345	0.339	0.331	0.323	0.315
3.40	0.354	0.354	0.352	0.350	0.346	0.342	0.337	0.331	0.324	0.316	0.308
3.50	0.345	0.345	0.343	0.341	0.338	0.334	0.329	0.323	0.317	0.310	0.302
3.60	0.337	0.336	0.335	0.333	0.330	0.326	0.321	0.316	0.310	0.304	0.297
3.70	0.328	0.328	0.327	0.325	0.322	0.318	0.314	0.309	0.304	0.298	0.291
3.80	0.320	0.320	0.319	0.317	0.315	0.311	0.307	0.303	0.297	0.292	0.285
3.90	0.313	0.313	0.312	0.310	0.307	0.304	0.301	0.296	0.291	0.286	0.280
4.00	0.306	0.305	0.304	0.303	0.301	0.298	0.294	0.290	0.285	0.280	0.275
4.10	0.299	0.299	0.298	0.296	0.294	0.291	0.288	0.284	0.280	0.275	0.270
4.20	0.292	0.292	0.291	0.290	0.288	0.285	0.282	0.278	0.274	0.270	0.265
4.30	0.286	0.286	0.285	0.283	0.282	0.279	0.276	0.273	0.269	0.265	0.260
4.40	0.280	0.280	0.279	0.278	0.276	0.274	0.271	0.268	0.264	0.260	0.256
4.50	0.274	0.274	0.273	0.272	0.270	0.268	0.266	0.263	0.259	0.255	0.251
4.60	0.268	0.268	0.268	0.266	0.265	0.263	0.260	0.258	0.254	0.251	0.247
4.70	0.263	0.263	0.262	0.261	0.260	0.258	0.255	0.253	0.250	0.246	0.243
4.80	0.258	0.258	0.257	0.256	0.255	0.253	0.251	0.248	0.245	0.242	0.239
4.90	0.253	0.253	0.252	0.251	0.250	0.248	0.246	0.244	0.241	0.238	0.235
5.00	0.248	0.248	0.247	0.246	0.245	0.244	0.242	0.239	0.237	0.234	0.231

Table 3.5 (Continued)

z/b	*x/b*									
	1.1	*1.2*	*1.3*	*1.4*	*1.5*	*1.6*	*1.7*	*1.8*	*1.9*	*2.0*
0.00	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
0.10	0.091	0.020	0.007	0.003	0.002	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000
0.20	0.225	0.091	0.040	0.020	0.011	0.007	0.004	0.003	0.002	0.002
0.30	0.301	0.165	0.090	0.052	0.031	0.020	0.013	0.009	0.007	0.005
0.40	0.346	0.224	0.141	0.090	0.059	0.040	0.027	0.020	0.014	0.011
0.50	0.373	0.267	0.185	0.128	0.089	0.063	0.046	0.034	0.025	0.019
0.60	0.391	0.298	0.222	0.163	0.120	0.088	0.066	0.050	0.038	0.030
0.70	0.403	0.321	0.250	0.193	0.148	0.113	0.087	0.068	0.053	0.042
0.80	0.411	0.338	0.273	0.218	0.173	0.137	0.108	0.086	0.069	0.056
0.90	0.416	0.351	0.291	0.239	0.195	0.158	0.128	0.104	0.085	0.070
1.00	0.419	0.360	0.305	0.256	0.214	0.177	0.147	0.122	0.101	0.084
1.10	0.420	0.366	0.316	0.271	0.230	0.194	0.164	0.138	0.116	0.098
1.20	0.419	0.371	0.325	0.282	0.243	0.209	0.178	0.152	0.130	0.111
1.30	0.417	0.373	0.331	0.291	0.254	0.221	0.191	0.166	0.143	0.123
1.40	0.414	0.374	0.335	0.298	0.263	0.232	0.203	0.177	0.155	0.135
1.50	0.411	0.374	0.338	0.303	0.271	0.240	0.213	0.188	0.165	0.146
1.60	0.407	0.373	0.339	0.307	0.276	0.248	0.221	0.197	0.175	0.155
1.70	0.402	0.370	0.339	0.309	0.281	0.254	0.228	0.205	0.183	0.164
1.80	0.396	0.368	0.339	0.311	0.284	0.258	0.234	0.212	0.191	0.172
1.90	0.391	0.364	0.338	0.312	0.286	0.262	0.239	0.217	0.197	0.179
2.00	0.385	0.360	0.336	0.311	0.288	0.265	0.243	0.222	0.203	0.185
2.10	0.379	0.356	0.333	0.311	0.288	0.267	0.246	0.226	0.208	0.190
2.20	0.373	0.352	0.330	0.309	0.288	0.268	0.248	0.229	0.212	0.195
2.30	0.366	0.347	0.327	0.307	0.288	0.268	0.250	0.232	0.215	0.199
2.40	0.360	0.342	0.323	0.305	0.287	0.268	0.251	0.234	0.217	0.202
2.50	0.354	0.337	0.320	0.302	0.285	0.268	0.251	0.235	0.220	0.205
2.60	0.347	0.332	0.316	0.299	0.283	0.267	0.251	0.236	0.221	0.207
2.70	0.341	0.327	0.312	0.296	0.281	0.266	0.251	0.236	0.222	0.208
2.80	0.335	0.321	0.307	0.293	0.279	0.265	0.250	0.236	0.223	0.210
2.90	0.329	0.316	0.303	0.290	0.276	0.263	0.249	0.236	0.223	0.211
3.00	0.323	0.311	0.299	0.286	0.274	0.261	0.248	0.236	0.223	0.211
3.10	0.317	0.306	0.294	0.283	0.271	0.259	0.247	0.235	0.223	0.212
3.20	0.311	0.301	0.290	0.279	0.268	0.256	0.245	0.234	0.223	0.212
3.30	0.305	0.296	0.286	0.275	0.265	0.254	0.243	0.232	0.222	0.211
3.40	0.300	0.291	0.281	0.271	0.261	0.251	0.241	0.231	0.221	0.211
3.50	0.294	0.286	0.277	0.268	0.258	0.249	0.239	0.229	0.220	0.210
3.60	0.289	0.281	0.273	0.264	0.255	0.246	0.237	0.228	0.218	0.209
3.70	0.284	0.276	0.268	0.260	0.252	0.243	0.235	0.226	0.217	0.208
3.80	0.279	0.272	0.264	0.256	0.249	0.240	0.232	0.224	0.216	0.207
3.90	0.274	0.267	0.260	0.253	0.245	0.238	0.230	0.222	0.214	0.206
4.00	0.269	0.263	0.256	0.249	0.242	0.235	0.227	0.220	0.212	0.205
4.10	0.264	0.258	0.252	0.246	0.239	0.232	0.225	0.218	0.211	0.203
4.20	0.260	0.254	0.248	0.242	0.236	0.229	0.222	0.216	0.209	0.202
4.30	0.255	0.250	0.244	0.239	0.233	0.226	0.220	0.213	0.207	0.200
4.40	0.251	0.246	0.241	0.235	0.229	0.224	0.217	0.211	0.205	0.199
4.50	0.247	0.242	0.237	0.232	0.226	0.221	0.215	0.209	0.203	0.197
4.60	0.243	0.238	0.234	0.229	0.223	0.218	0.212	0.207	0.201	0.195
4.70	0.239	0.235	0.230	0.225	0.220	0.215	0.210	0.205	0.199	0.194
4.80	0.235	0.231	0.227	0.222	0.217	0.213	0.208	0.202	0.197	0.192
4.90	0.231	0.227	0.223	0.219	0.215	0.210	0.205	0.200	0.195	0.190
5.00	0.227	0.224	0.220	0.216	0.212	0.207	0.203	0.198	0.193	0.188

Table 3.6 Values of σ_x/q [Eq. (3.27)]

z/b	*x/b*					
	0	*0.5*	*1.0*	*1.5*	*2.0*	*2.5*
0	1.000	1.000	0	0	0	0
0.5	0.450	0.392	0.347	0.285	0.171	0.110
1.0	0.182	0.186	0.225	0.214	0.202	0.162
1.5	0.080	0.099	0.142	0.181	0.185	0.165
2.0	0.041	0.054	0.091	0.127	0.146	0.145
2.5	0.230	0.033	0.060	0.089	0.126	0.121

Table 3.7 Values of τ_{xz}/q [Eq. (3.28)]

z/b	*x/b*					
	0	*0.5*	*1.0*	*1.5*	*2.0*	*2.5*
0	—	—	—	—	—	—
0.5	—	0.127	0.300	0.147	0.055	0.025
1.0	—	0.159	0.255	0.210	0.131	0.074
1.5	—	0.128	0.204	0.202	0.157	0.110
2.0	—	0.096	0.159	0.175	0.157	0.126
2.5	—	0.072	0.124	0.147	0.144	0.127

$$\sigma_x = \frac{q}{\pi}[\alpha - \sin\alpha\cos(\alpha + 2\delta)] \tag{3.30}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{q}{\pi}[\sin\alpha\sin(\alpha + 2\delta)] \tag{3.31}$$

where α and δ are the angles shown in Figure 3.9.

Table 3.5, 3.6, and 3.7 give the values of σ_z/q, σ_x/q, τ_{xz}/q for various values of x/b and z/b.

Vertical displacement at the surface ($\mathbf{z = 0}$)

The vertical surface displacement *relative* to the center of the strip load can be expressed as

$$w_{z=0}(x) - w_{z=0}(x=0) = \frac{2q(1-v^2)}{\pi E}\left\{\begin{array}{l}(x-b)\ln|x-b| - \\ (x+b)\ln|x+b| + 2b\ln b\end{array}\right\} \tag{3.32}$$

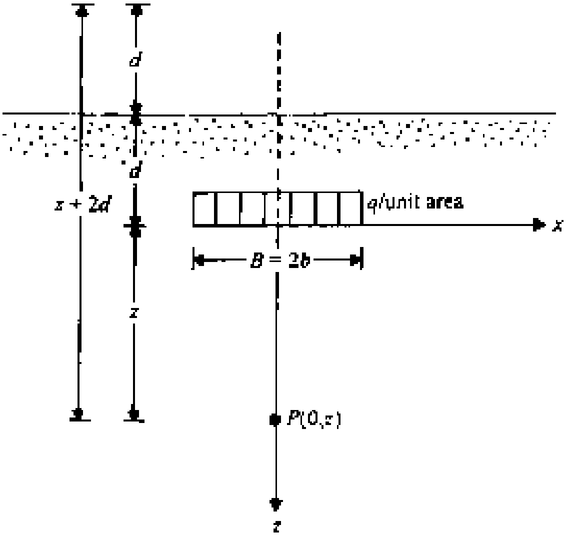


Figure 3.10 Strip load inside a semi-infinite mass.

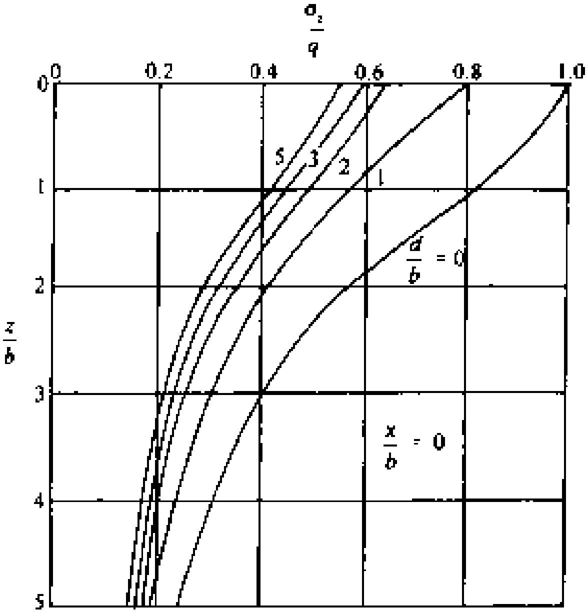


Figure 3.11 Plot of σ_z/q versus z/b [Eq. (3.33)].

3.8 Uniform strip load inside a semi-infinite mass

Strip loads can be located inside a semi-infinite mass as shown in Figure 3.10. The distribution of vertical stress σ_z due to this type of loading can be determined by integration of Melan's solution [Eq. (3.8)]. This has been given by Kezdi and Rethati (1988). The magnitude of σ_z *along the centerline of the load* (i.e., $x = 0$) can be given as

$$\sigma_z = \frac{q}{\pi}\left\{\frac{b(z+2d)}{(z+2d)^2+b^2} + \tan^{-1}\frac{b}{z+2d} + \frac{bz}{z^2+b^2}\right.$$
$$+\tan^{-1}\frac{b}{z} - \frac{\nu-1}{2\nu}(z+2d)\left[\frac{b}{(z+2d)^2+b^2} - \frac{b}{z^2+b^2}\right]$$
$$\left.+\frac{\nu+1}{2\nu}\frac{2(z+2d)\,db\,(z+d)}{(z^2+b^2)^2}\right\}(\text{for } x=0) \tag{3.33}$$

Figure 3.11 shows the influence of d/b on the variation of σ_z/q.

3.9 Uniform horizontal loading on an infinite strip on the surface

If a uniform horizontal load is applied on an infinite strip of width $2b$ as shown in Figure 3.12, the stresses at a point inside the semi-infinite mass can be determined by using a similar procedure of superposition as outlined in Sec. 3.7 for vertical loading. For an elementary strip of width ds, the load per unit length is $q \cdot ds$. Approximating this as a line load, we can substitute $q \cdot ds$ for q and $x - s$ for x in Eqs. (3.19)–(3.21). Thus,

$$\sigma_z = \int d\sigma_z = \frac{2q}{\pi}\int_{s=-b}^{s=+b}\frac{(x-s)z^2}{[(x-s)^2+z^2]^2}ds$$
$$= \frac{4bqxz^2}{\pi[(x^2+z^2-b^2)^2+4b^2z^2]} \tag{3.34}$$

$$\sigma_x = \int d\sigma_x = \frac{2q}{\pi}\int_{s=-b}^{s=+b}\frac{(x-s)^3}{[(x-s)^2+z^2]^2}ds$$
$$= \frac{q}{\pi}\left[2.303\log\frac{(x+b)^2+z^2}{(x-b)^2+z^2} - \frac{4bxz^2}{(x^2+z^2-b^2)^2+4b^2z^2}\right] \tag{3.35}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \int d\tau_{xz} = \frac{2q}{\pi}\int_{s=-b}^{s=+b}\frac{(x-s)^2z}{[(x-s)^2+z^2]^2}ds$$
$$= \frac{q}{\pi}\left[\tan^{-1}\frac{z}{x-b} - \tan^{-1}\frac{z}{x+b} + \frac{2bz(x^2-z^2-b^2)}{(x^2+z^2-b^2)^2+4b^2z^2}\right] \tag{3.36}$$

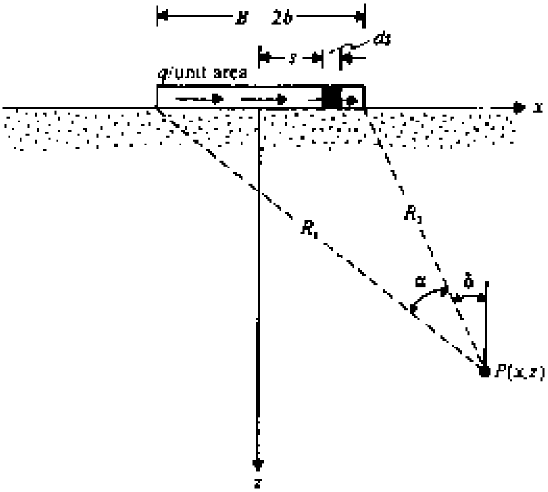


Figure 3.12 Uniform horizontal loading on an infinite strip.

The expressions for stresses given by Eqs. (3.34)–(3.36) may also be simplified as follows:

$$\sigma_z = \frac{q}{\pi}[\sin\alpha\sin(\alpha+2\delta)] \tag{3.37}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{q}{\pi}\left[2.303\log\frac{R_1^2}{R_2^2} - \sin\alpha\sin(\alpha+2\delta)\right] \tag{3.38}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{q}{\pi}[\alpha - \sin\alpha\cos(\alpha+2\delta)] \tag{3.39}$$

where R_1, R_2, α, and δ are as defined in Figure 3.12.

The variations of σ_z, σ_x, and τ_{xz} in a nondimensional form are given in Tables 3.8, 3.9, and 3.10.

Table 3.8 Values of σ_z/q [Eq. (3.34)]

z/b	*x/b*					
	0	*0.5*	*1.0*	*1.5*	*2.0*	*2.5*
0	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.5	–	0.127	0.300	0.147	0.055	0.025
1.0	–	0.159	0.255	0.210	0.131	0.074
1.5	–	0.128	0.204	0.202	0.157	0.110
2.0	–	0.096	0.159	0.175	0.157	0.126
2.5	–	0.072	0.124	0.147	0.144	0.127

Table 3.9 Values of σ_x/q [Eq. (3.35)]

x/b	*z/b*																		
	0	*0.1*	*0.2*	*0.3*	*0.4*	*0.5*	*0.6*	*0.7*	*1.0*	*1.5*	*2.0*	*2.5*	*3.0*	*3.5*	*4.0*	*4.5*	*5.0*	*5.5*	*6.0*
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.1	0.1287	0.1252	0.1180	0.1073	0.0946	0.0814	0.0687	0.0572	0.0317	0.0121	0.0051	0.0024	0.0013	0.0007	0.0004	0.0003	0.0002	0.00013	0.0001
0.25	0.3253	0.3181	0.2982	0.2693	0.2357	0.2014	0.1692	0.2404	0.0780	0.0301	0.0129	0.0062	0.0033	0.00019	0.0012	0.0007	0.0005	0.00034	0.00025
0.5	0.6995	0.6776	0.6195	0.5421	0.4608	0.3851	0.3188	0.2629	0.1475	0.0598	0.0269	0.0134	0.0073	0.0042	0.0026	0.0017	0.00114	0.00079	0.00057
0.75	1.2390	1.1496	0.9655	0.7855	0.6379	0.5210	0.4283	0.3541	0.2058	0.0899	0.0429	0.0223	0.0124	0.0074	0.0046	0.0030	0.00205	0.00144	0.00104
1.0	–	1.5908	1.1541	0.9037	0.7312	0.6024	0.5020	0.4217	0.2577	0.1215	0.0615	0.0333	0.0191	0.0116	0.0074	0.0049	0.00335	0.00236	0.00171
1.25	1.3990	1.3091	1.1223	0.9384	0.7856	0.6623	0.5624	0.4804	0.3074	0.1548	0.0825	0.0464	0.0275	0.0170	0.0110	0.0074	0.00510	0.00363	0.00265
1.5	1.0248	1.0011	0.9377	0.8517	0.7591	0.6697	0.5881	0.5157	0.3489	0.1874	0.1049	0.0613	0.0373	0.0236	0.0155	0.0105	0.00736	0.00528	0.00387
1.75	0.8273	0.8170	0.7876	0.7437	0.6904	0.6328	0.5749	0.5190	0.3750	0.2162	0.1271	0.0770	0.0483	0.0313	0.0209	0.0144	0.01013	0.00732	0.00541
2.0	0.6995	0.6939	0.6776	0.6521	0.6195	0.5821	0.5421	0.5012	0.3851	0.2386	0.1475	0.0928	0.0598	0.0396	0.0269	0.0188	0.01339	0.00976	0.00727
2.5	0.5395	0.5372	0.5304	0.5194	0.5047	0.4869	0.4667	0.4446	0.3735	0.2627	0.1788	0.1211	0.0826	0.0572	0.0403	0.0289	0.02112	0.01569	0.01185
3.0	0.4414	0.4402	0.4366	0.4303	0.4229	0.4132	0.4017	0.3889	0.3447	0.2658	0.1962	0.1421	0.1024	0.0741	0.0541	0.0400	0.02993	0.02269	0.01742
4.0	0.3253	0.3248	0.3235	0.3212	0.3181	0.3143	0.3096	0.3042	0.2846	0.2443	0.2014	0.1616	0.1276	0.0999	0.0780	0.0601	0.04789	0.03781	0.03006
5.0	0.2582	0.2580	0.2573	0.2562	0.2547	0.2527	0.2504	0.2477	0.2375	0.2151	0.1888	0.1618	0.1362	0.1132	0.0934	0.0767	0.06285	0.05156	0.04239
6.0	0.2142	0.2141	0.2137	0.2131	0.2123	0.2112	0.2098	0.2083	0.2023	0.1888	0.1712	0.1538	0.1352	0.1173	0.1008	0.0861	0.07320	0.06207	0.05259

Table 3.10 Values of τ_{xz}/q [Eq. (3.36)]

z/b	*x/b*					
	0	*0.5*	*1.0*	*1.5*	*2.0*	*2.5*
0	1.000	1.000	0	0	0	0
0.5	0.450	0.392	0.347	0.285	0.171	0.110
1.0	0.182	0.186	0.225	0.214	0.202	0.162
1.5	0.080	0.099	0.142	0.181	0.185	0.165
2.0	0.041	0.054	0.091	0.127	0.146	0.145
2.5	0.230	0.033	0.060	0.089	0.126	0.121

Horizontal displacement at the surface (z = 0)

The horizontal displacement u at a point on the surface ($z = 0$) relative to the center of the strip loading is of the form

$$u_{z=0}(x) - u_{z=0}(x=0) = \frac{2q(1-\nu^2)}{\pi E}\left\{\begin{array}{l}(x-b)\ln|x-b|- \\ (x+b)\ln|x+b| + 2b\ln b\end{array}\right\} \tag{3.40}$$

3.10 Triangular normal loading on an infinite strip on the surface

Figure 3.13 shows a vertical loading on an infinite strip of width $2b$. The load increases from zero to q across the width. For an elementary strip of width ds, the load per unit length can be given as $(q/2b)s \cdot ds$. Approximating this as a line load, we can substitute $(q/2b)s \cdot ds$ for q and $x - s$ for x in Eqs. (3.5)–(3.7) to determine the stresses at a point (x, z) inside the semi-infinite mass. Thus

$$\sigma_z = \int d\sigma_z = \left(\frac{1}{2b}\right)\left(\frac{2q}{\pi}\right)\int_{s=0}^{s=2b} \frac{z^3 s\ ds}{[(x-s)^2 + z^2]^2}$$

$$= \frac{q}{2\pi}\left(\frac{x}{b}\alpha - \sin 2\delta\right) \tag{3.41}$$

$$\sigma_x = \int d\sigma_x = \left(\frac{1}{2b}\right)\left(\frac{2q}{\pi}\right)\int_{0}^{2b} \frac{(x-s)^2 zs\ ds}{[(x-s)^2 + z^2]^2}$$

$$= \frac{q}{2\pi}\left(\frac{x}{b}\alpha - 2.303\frac{z}{b}\log\frac{R_1^2}{R_2^2} + \sin 2\delta\right) \tag{3.42}$$

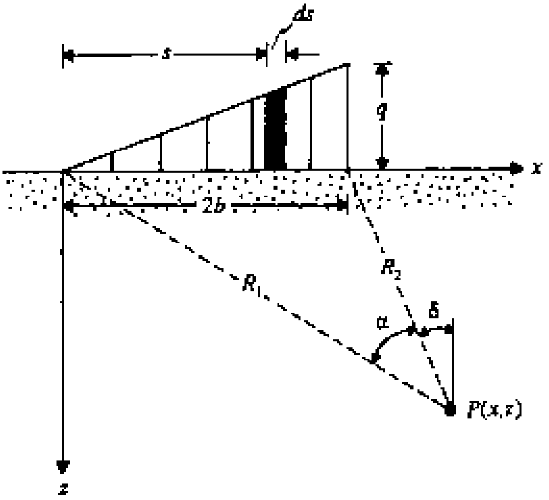


Figure 3.13 Linearly increasing vertical loading on an infinite strip.

$$\tau_{xz} = \int d\tau_{xz} = \left(\frac{1}{2b}\right)\left(\frac{2q}{\pi}\right)\int_0^{2b} \frac{(x-s)z^2\ ds}{[(x-s)^2+z^2]^2}$$
$$= \frac{q}{2\pi} = \left(1+\cos 2\delta - \frac{z}{b}\alpha\right) \tag{3.43}$$

In the rectangular coordinate system, Eqs. (3.41)–(3.43) can be expressed as follows:

$$\sigma_z = \frac{xq}{2\pi b}\left[\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{x}\right)-\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{x-2b}\right)\right]-\frac{qz}{\pi}\frac{x-2b}{(x-2b)^2+z^2} \tag{3.44}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{zq}{2\pi b}\left[\ln\frac{(x-2b)^2+z^2}{x^2+z^2}\right]-\frac{xq}{2\pi b}\left[\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{x+2b}\right)-\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{x}\right)\right]$$
$$+\frac{qz}{\pi}\left[\frac{x-2b}{(x-2b)^2+z^2}\right] \tag{3.45}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{qz^2}{\pi(x-2b)^2+z^2}+\frac{qz}{2\pi b}\left[\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{x-2b}\right)-\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{x}\right)\right] \tag{3.46}$$

Nondimensional values of σ_z [Eq. (3.41)] are given in Table 3.11.

Table 3.11 Values of σ_z/q [Eq. (3.41)]

x/b	*z/b*								
	0	*0.5*	*1.0*	*1.5*	*2.0*	*2.5*	*3.0*	*4.0*	*5.0*
−3	0	0.0003	0.0018	0.00054	0.0107	0.0170	0.0235	0.0347	0.0422
−2	0	0.0008	0.0053	0.0140	0.0249	0.0356	0.0448	0.0567	0.0616
−1	0	0.0041	0.0217	0.0447	0.0643	0.0777	0.0854	0.0894	0.0858
0	0	0.0748	0.1273	0.1528	0.1592	0.1553	0.1469	0.1273	0.1098
1	0.5	0.4797	0.4092	0.3341	0.2749	0.2309	0.1979	0.1735	0.1241
2	0.5	0.4220	0.3524	0.2952	0.2500	0.2148	0.1872	0.1476	0.1211
3	0	0.0152	0.0622	0.1010	0.1206	0.1268	0.1258	0.1154	0.1026
4	0	0.0019	0.0119	0.0285	0.0457	0.0596	0.0691	0.0775	0.0776
5	0	0.0005	0.0035	0.0097	0.0182	0.0274	0.0358	0.0482	0.0546

Vertical deflection at the surface

For this condition, the vertical deflection at the surface ($z = 0$) can be expressed as

$$w_{z=0} = \left(\frac{q}{b\pi}\right)\left(\frac{1-v^2}{E}\right)\left[2b^2 \ln|2b-x| - \frac{x^2}{2}\ln\left|\frac{2b-x}{x}\right| - b(b+x)\right] \tag{3.47}$$

3.11 Vertical stress in a semi-infinite mass due to embankment loading

In several practical cases, it is necessary to determine the increase of vertical stress in a soil mass due to embankment loading. This can be done by the method of superposition as shown in Figure 3.14 and described below.

The stress at A due to the embankment loading as shown in Figure 3.14*a* is equal to the stress at A due to the loading shown in Figure 3.14*b* minus the stress at A due to the loading shown in Figure 3.14*c*.

Referring to Eq. (3.41), the vertical stress at A due to the loading shown in Figure 3.14*b* is

$$\frac{q+(b/a)q}{\pi}(\alpha_1+\alpha_2)$$

Similarly, the stress at A due to the loading shown in Figure 3.14*c* is

$$\left(\frac{b}{a}q\right)\frac{1}{\pi}\alpha_2$$

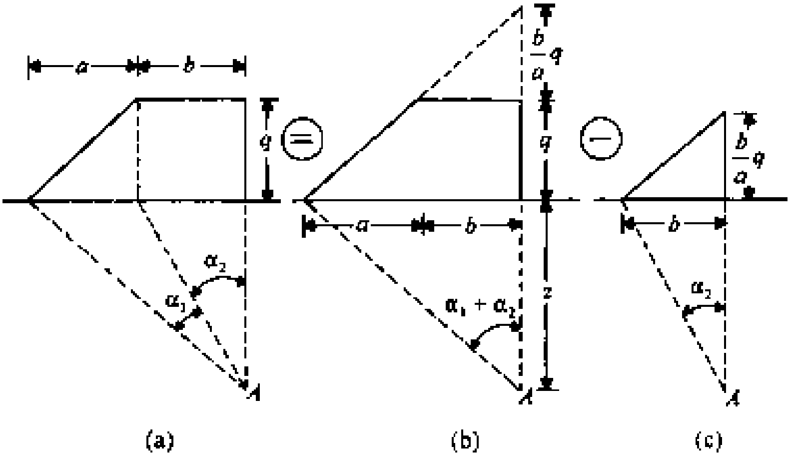


Figure 3.14 Vertical stress due to embankment loading.

Thus the stress at A due to embankment loading (Figure 3.14*a*) is

$$\sigma_z = \frac{q}{\pi}\left[\left(\frac{a+b}{a}\right)(\alpha_1+\alpha_2) - \frac{b}{a}\alpha_2\right]$$

or

$$\sigma_z = I_3 q \tag{3.48}$$

where I_3 is the influence factor,

$$I_3 = \frac{1}{\pi}\left[\left(\frac{a+b}{a}\right)(\alpha_1+\alpha_2) - \frac{b}{a}\alpha_2\right] = \frac{1}{\pi}f\left(\frac{a}{z}, \frac{b}{z}\right)$$

The values of the influence factor for various a/z and b/z are given in Figure 3.15.

EXAMPLE 3.2

A 5-m-high embankment is to be constructed as shown in Figure 3.16. If the unit weight of compacted soil is 18.5 kN/m^3, calculate the vertical stress due solely to the embankment at A, B, and C.

SOLUTION *Vertical stress at A*: $q = \gamma H = 18.5 \times 5 = 92.5$ kN/m^2 using the method of superposition and referring to Figure 3.17*a*

$$\sigma_{zA} = \sigma_{z(1)} + \sigma_{z(2)}$$

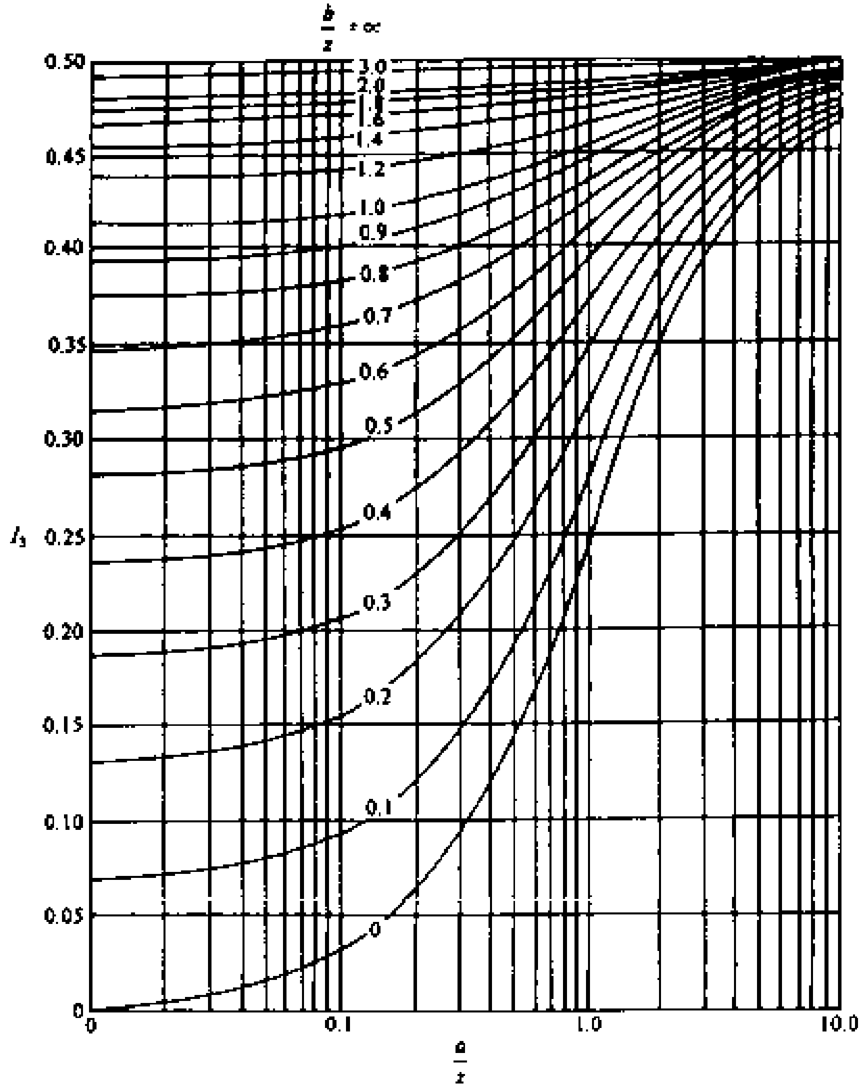


Figure 3.15 Influence factors for embankment load (after Osterberg, 1957).

For the left-hand section, $b/z = 2.5/5 = 0.5$ and $a/z = 5/5 = 1$. From Figure 3.15, $I_3 = 0.396$. For the right-hand section, $b/z = 7.5/5 = 1.5$ and $a/z = 5/5 = 1$. From Figure 3.15, $I_3 = 0.477$. So

$$\sigma_{zA} = (0.396 + 0.477)(92.5) = 80.75 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

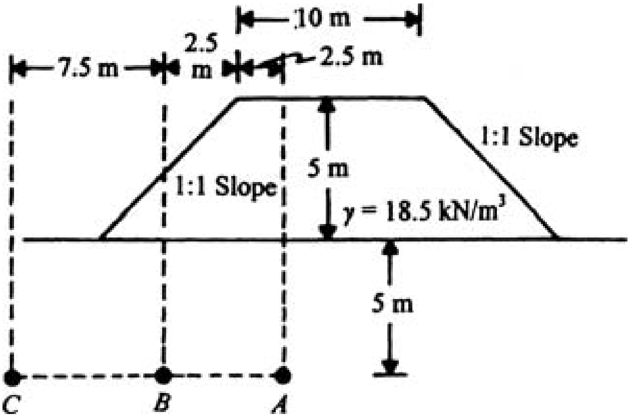


Figure 3.16 Stress increase due to embankment loading (Not to scale).

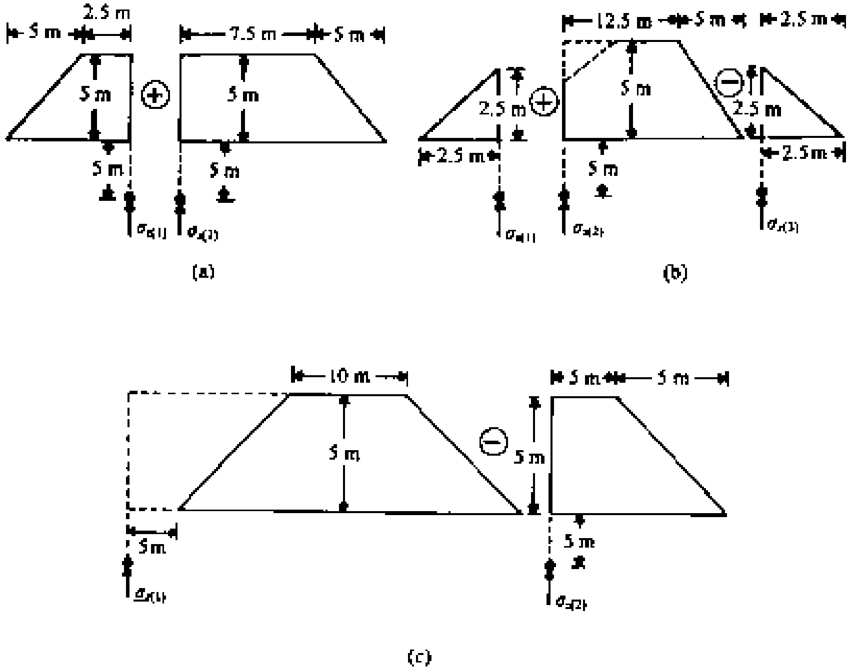


Figure 3.17 Calculation of stress increase at *A*, *B*, and *C* (Not to scale).

Vertical stress at B: Using Figure 3.17*b*

$$\sigma_{zB} = \sigma_{z(1)} + \sigma_{z(2)} - \sigma_{z(3)}$$

For the left-hand section, $b/z = 0/10 = 0$, $a/z = 2.5/5 = 0.5$. So, from Figure 3.15, $I_3 = 0.14$. For the middle section, $b/z = 12.5/5 = 2.5$, $a/z = 5/5 = 1$. Hence $I_3 = 0.493$. For the right-hand section, $I_3 = 0.14$ (same as the left-hand section). So

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_{zB} &= (0.14)(18.5 \times 2.5) + (0.493)(18.5 \times 5) - (0.14)(18.5 \times 2.5) \\ &= (0.493)(92.5) = 45.5 \text{ kN/m}^2\end{aligned}$$

Vertical stress at C: Referring to Figure 3.17*c*

$$\sigma_{zC} = \sigma_{z(1)} - \sigma_{z(2)}$$

For the left-hand section, $b/z = 20/5 = 4$, $a/z = 5/5 = 1$. So $I_3 = 0.498$. For the right-hand section, $b/z = 5/5 = 1$, $a/z = 5/5 = 1$. So $I_3 = 0.456$. Hence

$$\sigma_{zC} = (0.498 - 0.456)(92.5) = 3.89 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

THREE-DIMENSIONAL PROBLEMS

3.12 Stresses due to a vertical point load on the surface

Boussinesq (1883) solved the problem for stresses inside a semi-infinite mass due to a point load acting on the surface. In rectangular coordinates, the stresses may be expressed as follows (Figure 3.18):

$$\sigma_z = \frac{3Qz^2}{2\pi R^5} \tag{3.49}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\left\{\frac{x^2 z}{R^5} + \frac{1-2\nu}{3}\left[\frac{1}{R(R+z)} - \frac{(2R+z)x^2}{R^3(R+z)^2} - \frac{z}{R^3}\right]\right\} \tag{3.50}$$

$$\sigma_y = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\left\{\frac{y^2 z}{R^5} + \frac{1-2\nu}{3}\left[\frac{1}{R(R+z)} - \frac{(2R+z)y^2}{R^3(R+z)^2} - \frac{z}{R^3}\right]\right\} \tag{3.51}$$

$$\tau_{xy} = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\left[\frac{xyz}{R^5} + \frac{1-2\nu}{3}\frac{(2R+z)xy}{R^3(R+z)^2}\right] \tag{3.52}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\frac{xz^2}{R^5} \tag{3.53}$$

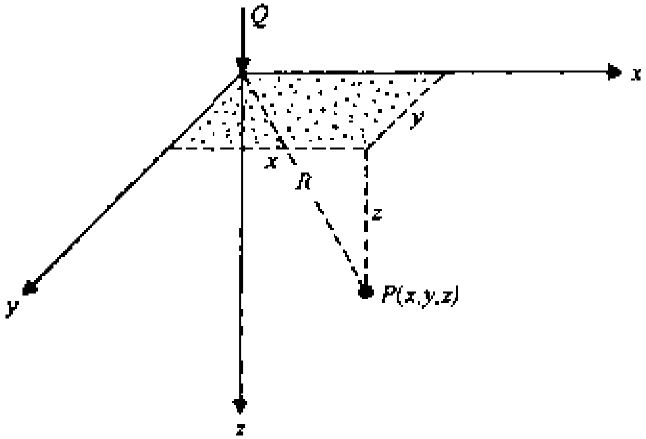


Figure 3.18 Concentrated point load on the surface (rectangular coordinates).

$$\tau_{yz} = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\frac{yz^2}{R^5} \tag{3.54}$$

where

$Q =$ point load
$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$
$R = \sqrt{z^2 + r^2}$
$v =$ Poisson's ratio

In cylindrical coordinates, the stresses may be expressed as follows (Figure 3.19):

$$\sigma_z = \frac{3Qz^3}{2\pi R^5} \tag{3.55}$$

$$\sigma_r = \frac{Q}{2\pi}\left[\frac{3zr^2}{R^5} - \frac{1-2v}{R(R+z)}\right] \tag{3.56}$$

$$\sigma_\theta = \frac{Q}{2\pi}(1-2v)\left[\frac{1}{R(R+z)} - \frac{z}{R^3}\right] \tag{3.57}$$

$$\tau_{rz} = \frac{3Qrz^2}{2\pi R^5} \tag{3.58}$$

Equation (3.49) [or (3.55)] can be expressed as

$$\sigma_z = I_4\frac{Q}{z^2} \tag{3.59}$$

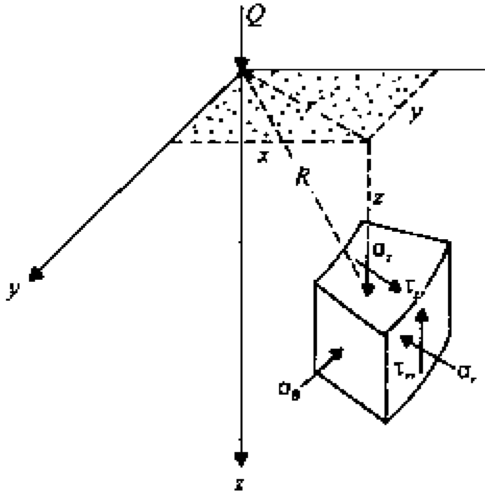


Figure 3.19 Concentrated point load (vertical) on the surface (cylindrical coordinates).

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_4 &= \text{nondimensional influence factor} \\
&= \frac{3}{2\pi}\left[1+\left(\frac{r}{z}\right)^2\right]^{-5/2} \qquad (3.60)
\end{aligned}
$$

Table 3.12 gives the values of I_4 for various values of r/z.

Table 3.12 Values of I_4 [Eq. (3.60)]

r/z	I_4
0	0.4775
0.2	0.4329
0.4	0.3294
0.6	0.2214
0.8	0.1386
1.0	0.0844
1.2	0.0513
1.4	0.0317
1.6	0.0200
1.8	0.0129
2.0	0.0085
2.5	0.0034

3.13 Deflection due to a concentrated point load at the surface

The deflections at a point due to a concentrated point load located at the surface are as follows (Figure 3.18).

$$u = \int \varepsilon_x dx = \frac{Q(1+v)}{2\pi E}\left[\frac{xz}{R^3} - \frac{(1-2v)x}{R(R+z)}\right] \tag{3.61}$$

$$v = \int \varepsilon_y dy = \frac{Q(1+v)}{2\pi E}\left[\frac{yz}{R^3} - \frac{(1-2v)y}{R(R+z)}\right] \tag{3.62}$$

$$w = \int \varepsilon_z dz = \frac{1}{E}[\sigma_z - v(\sigma_y + \sigma_\theta)] = \frac{Q(1+v)}{2\pi E}\left[\frac{z^2}{R^3} - \frac{2(1-v)}{R}\right] \tag{3.63}$$

3.14 Horizontal point load on the surface

Figure 3.20 shows a horizontal point load Q acting on the surface of a semi-infinite mass. This is generally referred to as Cerutti's problem. The stresses at a point $P(x, y, z)$ are as follows:

$$\sigma_z = \frac{3Qxz^2}{2\pi R^5} \tag{3.64}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{Q}{2\pi}\frac{x}{R^3}\left\{\frac{3x^2}{R^2} - (1-2v) + \frac{(1-2v)R^2}{(R+z)^2}\left[3 - \frac{x^2(3R+z)}{R^2(R+z)}\right]\right\} \tag{3.65}$$

$$\sigma_y = \frac{Q}{2\pi}\frac{x}{R^3}\left\{\frac{3y^2}{R^2} - (1-2v) + \frac{(1-2v)R^2}{(R+z)^2}\left[3 - \frac{y^2(3R+z)}{R^2(R+z)}\right]\right\} \tag{3.66}$$

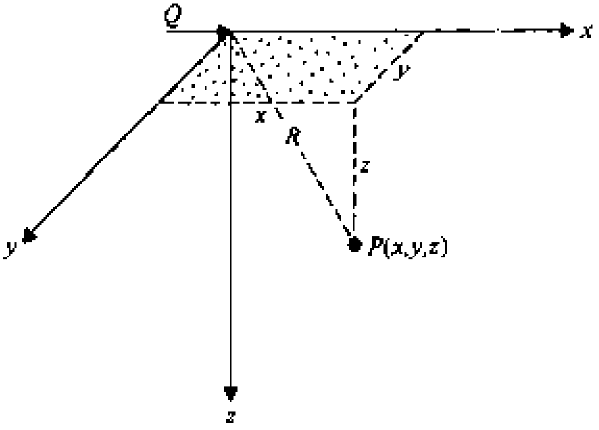


Figure 3.20 Horizontal point load on the surface.

$$\tau_{xy} = \frac{Q}{2\pi}\frac{y}{R^3}\left\{\frac{3x^2}{R^2} + \frac{(1-2v)R^2}{(R+z)^2}\left[1 - \frac{x^2(3R+z)}{R^2(R+z)}\right]\right\} \tag{3.67}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\frac{x^2 z}{R^5} \tag{3.68}$$

$$\tau_{yz} = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\frac{xyz}{R^5} \tag{3.69}$$

Also, the displacements at point P can be given as:

$$u = \frac{Q}{2\pi}\frac{(1+v)}{E}\frac{1}{R}\left[\frac{x^2}{R^2} + 1 + \frac{(1-2v)R}{(R+z)}\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{R(R+z)}\right)\right] \tag{3.70}$$

$$v = \frac{Q}{2\pi}\frac{(1+v)}{E}\frac{xy}{R^3}\left[1 - \frac{(1-2v)R^2}{(R+z)^2}\right] \tag{3.71}$$

$$w = \frac{Q}{2\pi}\frac{(1+v)}{E}\frac{x}{R^2}\left[\frac{z}{R} + \frac{(1-2v)R}{(R+z)}\right] \tag{3.72}$$

3.15 Stresses below a circularly loaded flexible area (uniform vertical load)

Integration of the Boussinesq equation given in Sec. 3.12 can be adopted to obtain the stresses below the center of a circularly loaded flexible area. Figure 3.21 shows a circular area of radius b being subjected to a uniform load of q per unit area. Consider an elementary area dA. The load over the area is equal to $q \cdot dA$, and this can be treated as a point load. To determine the vertical stress due to the elementary load at a point P, we can substitute $q \cdot dA$ for Q and $\sqrt{r^2+z^2}$ for R in Eq. (3.49). Thus

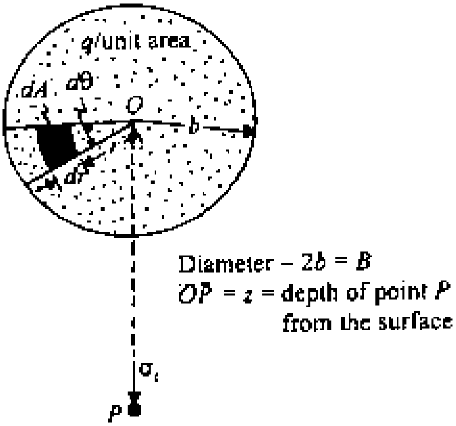


Figure 3.21 Stresses below the center of a circularly loaded area due to uniform vertical load.

$$d\sigma_z = \frac{(3q\ dA)z^3}{2\pi(r^2+z^2)^{5/2}} \tag{3.73}$$

Since $dA = rd\theta\ dr$, the vertical stress at P due to the entire loaded area may now be obtained by substituting for dA in Eq. (3.73) and then integrating:

$$\sigma_z = \int_{\theta=0}^{\theta=2\pi} \int_{r=0}^{r=b} \frac{3q}{2\pi} \frac{z^3 r\ d\theta\ dr}{(r^2+z^2)^{5/2}} = q\left[1 - \frac{z^3}{(b^2+z^2)^{3/2}}\right] \tag{3.74}$$

Proceeding in a similar manner, we can also determine σ_r and σ_θ at point P as

$$\sigma_r = \sigma_\theta = \frac{q}{2}\left[1 + 2\nu - \frac{2(1+\nu)z}{(b^2+z^2)^{1/2}} + \frac{z^3}{(b^2+z^2)^{3/2}}\right] \tag{3.75}$$

A detailed tabulation of stresses below a uniformly loaded flexible circular area was given by Ahlvin and Ulery (1962). Referring to Figure 3.22, the stresses at point P may be given by

$$\sigma_z = q(A' + B') \tag{3.76}$$

$$\sigma_r = q[2\nu A' + C + (1-2\nu)F] \tag{3.77}$$

$$\sigma_\theta = q[2\nu A' - D + (1-2\nu)E] \tag{3.78}$$

$$\tau_{rz} = \tau_{zr} = qG \tag{3.79}$$

where A', B', C, D, E, F, and G are functions of s/b and z/b; the values of these are given in Tables 3.13–3.19.

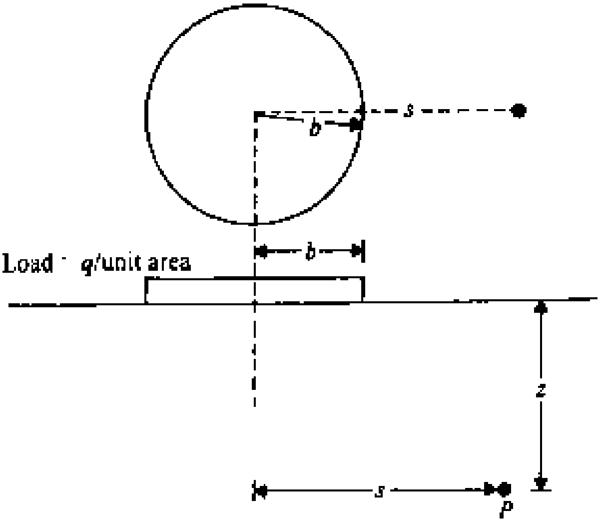


Figure 3.22 Stresses at any point below a circularly loaded area.

Table 3.13 Function *A′*

z/b	s/b																	
	0	*0.2*	*0.4*	*0.6*	*0.8*	*1*	*1.2*	*1.5*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*10*	*12*	*14*
0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	.5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.1	.90050	.89748	.88679	.86126	.78797	.43015	.09645	.02787	.00856	.00211	.00084	.00042						
0.2	.80388	.79824	.77884	.73483	.63014	.38269	.15433	.05251	.01680	.00419	.00167	.00083	.00048	.00030	.00020			
0.3	.71265	.70518	.68316	.62690	.52081	.34375	.17964	.07199	.02440	.00622	.00250							
0.4	.62861	.62015	.59241	.53767	.44329	.31048	.18709	.08593	.03118									
0.5	.55279	.54403	.51622	.46448	.38390	.28156	.18556	.09499	.03701	.01013	.00407	.00209	.00118	.00071	.00053	.00025	.00014	.00009
0.6	.48550	.47691	.45078	.40427	.33676	.25588	.17952	.10010										
0.7	.42654	.41874	.39491	.35428	.29833	.21727	.17124	.10228	.04558									
0.8	.37531	.36832	.34729	.31243	.26581	.21297	.16206	.10236										
0.9	.33104	.32492	.30669	.27707	.23832	.19488	.15253	.10094										
1	.29289	.28763	.27005	.24697	.21468	.17868	.14329	.09849	.05185	.01742	.00761	.00393	.00226	.00143	.00097	.00050	.00029	.00018
1.2	.23178	.22795	.21662	.19890	.17626	.15101	.12570	.09192	.05260	.01935	.00871	.00459	.00269	.00171	.00115			
1.5	.16795	.16552	.15877	.14804	.13436	.11892	.10296	.08048	.05116	.02142	.01013	.00548	.00325	.00210	.00141	.00073	.00043	.00027
2	.10557	.10453	.10140	.09647	.09011	.08269	.07471	.06275	.04496	.02221	.01160	.00659	.00399	.00264	.00180	.00094	.00056	.00036
2.5	.07152	.07098	.06947	.06698	.06373	.05974	.05555	.04880	.03787	.02143	.01221	.00732	.00463	.00308	.00214	.00115	.00068	.00043
3	.05132	.05101	.05022	.04886	.04707	.04487	.04241	.03839	.03150	.01980	.01220	.00770	.00505	.00346	.00242	.00132	.00079	.00051
4	.02986	.02976	.02907	.02802	.02832	.02749	.02651	.02490	.02193	.01592	.01109	.00768	.00536	.00384	.00282	.00160	.00099	.00065
5	.01942	.01938				.01835			.01573	.01249	.00949	.00708	.00527	.00394	.00298	.00179	.00113	.00075
6	.01361					.01307			.01168	.00983	.00795	.00628	.00492	.00384	.00299	.00188	.00124	.00084
7	.01005					.00976			.00894	.00784	.00661	.00548	.00445	.00360	.00291	.00193	.00130	.00091
8	.00772					.00755			.00703	.00635	.00554	.00472	.00398	.00332	.00276	.00189	.00134	.00094
9	.00612					.00600			.00566	.00520	.00466	.00409	.00353	.00301	.00256	.00184	.00133	.00096
10								.00477	.00465	.00438	.00397	.00352	.00326	.00273	.00241			

After Ahlvin and Ulery (1962).

Table 3.14 Function B'

z/b	*s/b*																	
	0	*0.2*	*0.4*	*0.6*	*0.8*	*1*	*1.2*	*1.5*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*10*	*12*	*14*
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.1	.09852	.10140	.11138	.13424	.18796	.05388	−.07899	−.02672	−.00845	−.00210	−.00084	−.00042						
0.2	.18857	.19306	.20772	.23524	.25983	.08513	−.07759	−.04448	−.01593	−.00412	−.00166	−.00083	−.00024	−.00015	−.00010			
0.3	.26362	.26787	.28018	.29483	.27257	.10757	−.04316	−.04999	−.02166	−.00599	−.00245							
0.4	.32016	.32259	.32748	.32273	.26925	.12404	−.00766	−.04535	−.02522									
0.5	.35777	.35752	.35323	.33106	.26236	.13591	.02165	−.03455	−.02651	−.00991	−.00388	−.00199	−.00116	−.00073	−.00049	−.00025	−.00014	−.00009
0.6	.37831	.37531	.36308	.32822	.25411	.14440	.04457	−.02101										
0.7	.38487	.37962	.36072	.31929	.24638	.14986	.06209	−.00702	−.02329									
0.8	.38091	.37408	.35133	.30699	.23779	.15292	.07530	.00614										
0.9	.36962	.36275	.33734	.29299	.22891	.15404	.08507	.01795										
1	.35355	.34553	.32075	.27819	.21978	.15355	.09210	.02814	−.01005	−.01115	−.00608	−.00344	−.00210	−.00135	−.00092	−.00048	−.00028	−.00018
1.2	.31485	.30730	.28481	.24836	.20113	.14915	.10002	.04378	.00023	−.00995	−.00632	−.00378	−.00236	−.00156	−.00107			
1.5	.25602	.25025	.23338	.20694	.17368	.13732	.10193	.05745	.01385	−.00669	−.00600	−.00401	−.00265	−.00181	−.00126	−.00068	−.00040	−.00026
2	.17889	.18144	.16644	.15198	.13375	.11331	.09254	.06371	.02836	.00028	−.00410	−.00371	−.00278	−.00202	−.00148	−.00084	−.00050	−.00033
2.5	.12807	.12633	.12126	.11327	.10298	.09130	.07869	.06022	.03429	.00661	−.00130	−.00271	−.00250	−.00201	−.00156	−.00094	−.00059	−.00039
3	.09487	.09394	.09099	.08635	.08033	.07325	.06551	.05354	.03511	.01112	.00157	−.00134	−.00192	−.00179	−.00151	−.00099	−.00065	−.00046
4	.05707	.05666	.05562	.05383	.05145	.04773	.04532	.03995	.03066	.01515	.00595	.00155	−.00029	−.00094	−.00109	−.00094	−.00068	−.00050
5	.03772	.03760				.03384			.02474	.01522	.00810	.00371	.00132	.00013	−.00043	−.00070	−.00061	−.00049
6	.02666					.02468			.01968	.01380	.00867	.00496	.00254	.00110	.00028	−.00037	−.00047	−.00045
7	.01980					.01868			.01577	.01204	.00842	.00547	.00332	.00185	.00093	−.00002	−.00029	−.00037
8	.01526					.01459			.01279	.01034	.00779	.00554	.00372	.00236	.00141	.00035	−.00008	−.00025
9	.01212					.01170			.01054	.00888	.00705	.00533	.00386	.00265	.00178	.00066	.00012	−.00012
10								.00924	.00879	.00764	.00631	.00501	.00382	.00281	.00199			

After Ahlvin and Ulery (1962).

Table 3.15 Function *C*

z/b	*s/b*																	
	0	*0.2*	*0.4*	*0.6*	*0.8*	*1*	*1.2*	*1.5*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*10*	*12*	*14*
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.1	−.04926	−.05142	−.05903	−.07708	−.12108	.02247	.12007	.04475	.01536	.00403	.00164	.00082						
0.2	−.09429	−.09775	−.10872	−.12977	−.14552	.02419	.14896	.07892	.02951	.00796	.00325	.00164	.00094	.00059	.00039			
0.3	−.13181	−.13484	−.14415	−.15023	−.12990	.01988	.13394	.09816	.04148	.01169	.00483							
0.4	−.16008	−.16188	−.16519	−.15985	−.11168	.01292	.11014	.10422	.05067									
0.5	−.17889	−.17835	−.17497	−.15625	−.09833	.00483	.08730	.10125	.05690	.01824	.00778	.00399	.00231	.00146	.00098	.00050	.00029	.00018
0.6	−.18915	−.18664	−.17336	−.14934	−.08967	−.00304	.06731	.09313										
0.7	−.19244	−.18831	−.17393	−.14147	−.08409	−.01061	.05028	.08253	.06129									
0.8	−.19046	−.18481	−.16784	−.13393	−.08066	−.01744	.03582	.07114										
0.9	−.18481	−.17841	−.16024	−.12664	−.07828	−.02337	.02359	.05993										
1	−.17678	−.17050	−.15188	−.11995	−.07634	−.02843	.01331	.04939	.05429	.02726	.01333	.00726	.00433	.00278	.00188	.00098	.00057	.00036
1.2	−.15742	−.15117	−.13467	−.10763	−.07289	−.03575	−.00245	.03107	.04552	.02791	.01467	.00824	.00501	.00324	.00221			
1.5	−.12801	−.12277	−.11101	−.09145	−.06711	−.04124	−.01702	.01088	.03154	.02652	.01570	.00933	.00585	.00386	.00266	.00141	.00083	.00039
2	−.08944	−.08491	−.07976	−.06925	−.05560	−.04144	−.02687	−.00782	.01267	.02070	.01527	.01013	.00321	.00462	.00327	.00179	.00107	.00069
2.5	−.06403	−.06068	−.05839	−.05259	−.04522	−.03605	−.02800	−.01536	.00103	.01384	.01314	.00987	.00707	.00506	.00369	.00209	.00128	.00083
3	−.04744	−.04560	−.04339	−.04089	−.03642	−.03130	−.02587	−.01748	−.00528	.00792	.01030	.00888	.00689	.00520	.00392	.00232	.00145	.00096
4	−.02854	−.02737	−.02562	−.02585	−.02421	−.02112	−.01964	−.01586	−.00956	.00038	.00492	.00602	.00561	.00476	.00389	.00254	.00168	.00115
5	−.01886	−.01810				−.01568			−.00939	−.00293	−.00128	.00329	.00391	.00380	.00341	.00250	.00177	.00127
6	−.01333					−.01118			−.00819	−.00405	−.00079	.00129	.00234	.00272	.00272	.00227	.00173	.00130
7	−.00990					−.00902			−.00678	−.00417	−.00180	−.00004	.00113	.00174	.00200	.00193	.00161	.00128
8	−.00763					−.00699			−.00552	−.00393	−.00225	−.00077	.00029	.00096	.00134	.00157	.00143	.00120
9	−.00607					−.00423			−.00452	−.00353	−.00235	−.00118	−.00027	.00037	.00082	.00124	.00122	.00110
10								−.00381	−.00373	−.00314	−.00233	−.00137	−.00063	.00030	.00040			

After Ahlvin and Ulery (1962).

Table 3.16 Function *D*

z/b	*s/b*																	
	0	*0.2*	*0.4*	*0.6*	*0.8*	*1*	*1.2*	*1.5*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*10*	*12*	*14*
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.1	.04926	.04998	.05235	.05716	.06687	.07635	.04108	.01803	.00691	.00193	.00080	.00041						
0.2	.09429	.09552	.09900	.10546	.11431	.10932	.07139	.03444	.01359	.00384	.00159	.00081	.00047	.00029	.00020			
0.3	.13181	.13305	.14051	.14062	.14267	.12745	.09078	.04817	.01982	.00927	.00238							
0.4	.16008	.16070	.16229	.16288	.15756	.13696	.10248	.05887	.02545									
0.5	.17889	.17917	.17826	.17481	.16403	.14074	.10894	.06670	.03039	.00921	.00390	.00200	.00116	.00073	.00049	.00025	.00015	.00009
0.6	.18915	.18867	.18573	.17887	.16489	.14137	.11186	.07212										
0.7	.19244	.19132	.18679	.17782	.16229	.13926	.11237	.07551	.03801									
0.8	.19046	.18927	.18348	.17306	.15714	.13548	.11115	.07728										
0.9	.18481	.18349	.17709	.16635	.15063	.13067	.10866	.07788										
1	.17678	.17503	.16886	.15824	.14344	.12513	.10540	.07753	.04456	.01611	.00725	.00382	.00224	.00142	.00096	.00050	.00029	.00018
1.2	.15742	.15618	.15014	.14073	.12823	.11340	.09757	.07484	.04575	.01796	.00835	.00446	.00264	.00169	.00114			
1.5	.12801	.12754	.12237	.11549	.10657	.09608	.08491	.06833	.04539	.01983	.00970	.00532	.00320	.00205	.00140	.00073	.00043	.00027
2	.08944	.09080	.08668	.08273	.07814	.07187	.06566	.05589	.04103	.02098	.01117	.00643	.00398	.00260	.00179	.00095	.00056	.00036
2.5	.06403	.06565	.06284	.06068	.05777	.05525	.05069	.04486	.03532	.02045	.01183	.00717	.00457	.00306	.00213	.00115	.00068	.00044
3	.04744	.04834	.04760	.04548	.04391	.04195	.03963	.03606	.02983	.01904	.01187	.00755	.00497	.00341	.00242	.00133	.00080	.00052
4	.02854	.02928	.02996	.02798	.02724	.02661	.02568	.02408	.02110	.01552	.01087	.00757	.00533	.00382	.00280	.00160	.00100	.00065
5	.01886	.01950				.01816			.01535	.01230	.00939	.00700	.00523	.00392	.00299	.00180	.00114	.00077
6	.01333					.01351			.01149	.00976	.00788	.00625	.00488	.00381	.00301	.00190	.00124	.00086
7	.00990					.00966			.00899	.00787	.00662	.00542	.00445	.00360	.00292	.00192	.00130	.00092
8	.00763					.00759			.00727	.00641	.00554	.00477	.00402	.00332	.00275	.00192	.00131	.00096
9	.00607					.00746			.00601	.00533	.00470	.00415	.00358	.00303	.00260	.00187	.00133	.00099
10								.00542	.00506	.00450	.00398	.00364	.00319	.00278	.00239			

After Ahlvin and Ulery (1962).

Table 3.17 Function *E*

z/b	s/b																	
	0	*0.2*	*0.4*	*0.6*	*0.8*	*1*	*1.2*	*1.5*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*10*	*12*	*14*
0	.5	.5	.5	.5	.5	.5	.34722	.22222	.12500	.05556	.03125	.02000	.01389	.01020	.00781	.00500	.00347	.00255
0.1	.45025	.449494	.44698	.44173	.43008	.39198	.30445	.20399	.11806	.05362	.03045	.01959						
0.2	.40194	.400434	.39591	.38660	.36798	.32802	.26598	.18633	.11121	.05170	.02965	.01919	.01342	.00991	.00762			
0.3	.35633	.35428	.33809	.33674	.31578	.28003	.23311	.16967	.10450	.04979	.02886							
0.4	.31431	.31214	.30541	.29298	.27243	.24200	.20526	.15428	.09801									
0.5	.27639	.27407	.26732	.25511	.23639	.21119	.18168	.14028	.09180	.04608	.02727	.01800	.01272	.00946	.00734	.00475	.00332	.00246
0.6	.24275	.24247	.23411	.22289	.20634	.18520	.16155	.12759										
0.7	.21327	.21112	.20535	.19525	.18093	.16356	.14421	.11620	.08027									
0.8	.18765	.18550	.18049	.17190	.15977	.14523	.12928	.10602										
0.9	.16552	.16337	.15921	.15179	.14168	.12954	.11634	.09686										
1	.14645	.14483	.14610	.13472	.12618	.11611	.10510	.08865	.06552	.03736	.02352	.01602	.01157	.00874	.00683	.00450	.00318	.00237
1.2	.11589	.11435	.11201	.10741	.10140	.09431	.08657	.07476	.05728	.03425	.02208	.01527	.01113	.00847	.00664			
1.5	.08398	.08356	.08159	.07885	.07517	.07088	.06611	.05871	.04703	.03003	.02008	.01419	.01049	.00806	.00636	.00425	.00304	.00228
2	.05279	.05105	.05146	.05034	.04850	.04675	.04442	.04078	.03454	.02410	.01706	.01248	.00943	.00738	.00590	.00401	.00290	.00219
2.5	.03576	.03426	.03489	.03435	.03360	.03211	.03150	.02953	.02599	.01945	.01447	.01096	.00850	.00674	.00546	.00378	.00276	.00210
3	.02566	.02519	.02470	.02491	.02444	.02389	.02330	.02216	.02007	.01585	.01230	.00962	.00763	.00617	.00505	.00355	.00263	.00201
4	.01493	.01452	.01495	.01526	.01446	.01418	.01395	.01356	.01281	.01084	.00900	.00742	.00612	.00511	.00431	.00313	.00237	.00185
5	.00971	.00927				.00929			.00873	.00774	.00673	.00579	.00495	.00425	.00364	.00275	.00213	.00168
6	.00680					.00632			.00629	.00574	.00517	.00457	.00404	.00354	.00309	.00241	.00192	.00154
7	.00503					.00493			.00466	.00438	.00404	.00370	.00330	.00296	.00264	.00213	.00172	.00140
8	.00386					.00377			.00354	.00344	.00325	.00297	.00273	.00250	.00228	.00185	.00155	.00127
9	.00306					.00227			.00275	.00273	.00264	.00246	.00229	.00212	.00194	.00163	.00139	.00116
10								.00210	.00220	.00225	.00221	.00203	.00200	.00181	.00171			

After Ahlvin and Ulery (1962).

Table 3.18 Function *F*

z/b	*s/b*																	
	0	*0.2*	*0.4*	*0.6*	*0.8*	*1*	*1.2*	*1.5*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*10*	*12*	*14*
0	.5	.5	.5	.5	.5	0	−.34722	−.22222	−.12500	−.05556	−.03125	−.02000	−.01389	−.01020	−.00781	−.00500	−.00347	−.00255
0.1	.45025	.44794	.43981	.41954	.35789	.03817	−.20800	−.17612	−.10950	−.05151	−.02961	−.01917						
0.2	.40194	.39781	.38294	.34823	.26215	.05466	−.11165	−.13381	−.09441	−.04750	−.02798	−.01835	−.01295	−.00961	−.00742			
0.3	.35633	.35094	.34508	.29016	.20503	.06372	−.05346	−.09768	−.08010	−.04356	−.02636							
0.4	.31431	.30801	.28681	.24469	.17086	.06848	−.01818	−.06835	−.06684									
0.5	.27639	.26997	.24890	.20937	.14752	.07037	.00388	−.04529	−.05479	−.03595	−.02320	−.01590	−.01154	−.00875	−.00681	−.00450	−.00318	−.00237
0.6	.24275	.23444	.21667	.18138	.13042	.07068	.01797	−.02749										
0.7	.21327	.20762	.18956	.15903	.11740	.06963	.02704	−.01392	−.03469									
0.8	.18765	.18287	.16679	.14053	.10604	.06774	.03277	−.00365										
0.9	.16552	.16158	.14747	.12528	.09664	.06533	.03619	.00408										
1	.14645	.14280	.12395	.11225	.08850	.06256	.03819	.00984	−.01367	−.01994	−.01591	−.01209	−.00931	−.00731	−.00587	−.00400	−.00289	−.00219
1.2	.11589	.11360	.10460	.09449	.07486	.05670	.03913	.01716	−.00452	−.01491	−.01337	−.01068	−.00844	−.00676	−.00550			
1.5	.08398	.08196	.07719	.06918	.05919	.04804	.03686	.02177	.00413	−.00879	−.00995	−.00870	−.00723	−.00596	−.00495	−.00353	−.00261	−.00201
2	.05279	.05348	.04994	.04614	.04162	.03593	.03029	.02197	.01043	−.00189	−.00546	−.00589	−.00544	−.00474	−.00410	−.00307	−.00233	−.00183
2.5	.03576	.03673	.03459	.03263	.03014	.02762	.02406	.01927	.01188	.00198	−.00226	−.00364	−.00386	−.00366	−.00332	−.00263	−.00208	−.00166
3	.02566	.02586	.02255	.02395	.02263	.02097	.01911	−.01623	.01144	.00396	−.00010	−.00192	−.00258	−.00271	−.00263	−.00223	−.00183	−.00150
4	.01493	.01536	.01412	.01259	.01386	.01331	.01256	.01134	.00912	.00508	.00209	.00026	−.00076	−.00127	−.00148	−.00153	−.00137	−.00120
5	.00971	.01011				.00905			.00700	.00475	.00277	.00129	.00031	−.00030	−.00066	−.00096	−.00099	−.00093
6	.00680					.00675			.00538	.00409	.00278	.00170	.00088	.00030	−.00010	−.00053	−.00066	−.00070
7	.00503					.00483			.00428	.00346	.00258	.00178	.00114	.00064	.00027	−.00020	−.00041	−.00049
8	.00386					.00380			.00350	.00291	.00229	.00174	.00125	.00082	.00048	.00003	−.00020	−.00033
9	.00306					.00374			.00291	.00247	.00203	.00163	.00124	.00089	.00062	.00020	−.00005	−.00019
10								.00267	.00246	.00213	.00176	.00149	.00126	.00092	.00070			

After Ahlvin and Ulery (1962).

Table 3.19 Function *G*

z/b	*s/b*																	
	0	*0.2*	*0.4*	*0.6*	*0.8*	*1*	*1.2*	*1.5*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*10*	*12*	*14*
0	0	0	0	0	0	.31831	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.1	0	.00315	.00802	.01951	.06682	.31405	.05555	.00865	.00159	.00023	.00007	.00003						
0.2	0	.01163	.02877	.06441	.16214	.30474	.13592	.03060	.00614	.00091	.00026	.00010	.00005	.00003	.00002			
0.3	0	.02301	.05475	.11072	.21465	.29228	.18216	.05747	.01302	.00201	.00059							
0.4	0	.03460	.07883	.14477	.23442	.27779	.20195	.08233	.02138									
0.5	0	.04429	.09618	.16426	.23652	.26216	.20731	.10185	.03033	.00528	.00158	.00063	.00030	.00016	.00009	.00004	.00002	.00001
0.6	0	.04966	.10729	.17192	.22949	.24574	.20496	.11541										
0.7	0	.05484	.11256	.17126	.21772	.22924	.19840	.12373	.04718									
0.8	0	.05590	.11225	.16534	.20381	.21295	.18953	.12855										
0.9	0	.05496	.10856	.15628	.18904	.19712	.17945	.28881										
1	0	.05266	.10274	.14566	.17419	.18198	.16884	.12745	.06434	.01646	.00555	.00233	.00113	.00062	.00036	.00015	.00007	.00004
1.2	0	.04585	.08831	.12323	.14615	.15408	.14755	.12038	.06967	.02077	.00743	.00320	.00159	.00087	.00051			
1.5	0	.03483	.06688	.09293	.11071	.11904	.11830	.10477	.07075	.02599	.01021	.00460	.00233	.00130	.00078	.00033	.00016	.00009
2	0	.02102	.04069	.05721	.06948	.07738	.08067	.07804	.06275	.03062	.01409	.00692	.00369	.00212	.00129	.00055	.00027	.00015
2.5	0	.01293	.02534	.03611	.04484	.05119	.05509	.05668	.05117	.03099	.01650	.00886	.00499	.00296	.00185	.00082	.00041	.00023
3	0	.00840	.01638	.02376	.02994	.03485	.03843	.04124	.04039	.02886	.01745	.01022	.00610	.00376	.00241	.00110	.00057	.00032
4	0	.00382	.00772	.01149	.01480	.01764	.02004	.02271	.02475	.02215	.01639	.01118	.00745	.00499	.00340	.00167	.00090	.00052
5	0	.00214				.00992		.01343	.01551	.01601	.01364	.01105	.00782	.00560	.00404	.00216	.00122	.00073
6	0					.00602		.00845	.01014	.01148	.01082	.00917	.00733	.00567	.00432	.00243	.00150	.00092
7	0					.00396			.00687	.00830	.00842	.00770	.00656	.00539	.00432	.00272	.00171	.00110
8	0					.00270			.00481	.00612	.00656	.00631	.00568	.00492	.00413	.00278	.00185	.00124
9	0					.00177			.00347	.00459	.00513	.00515	.00485	.00438	.00381	.00274	.00192	.00133
10	0							.00199	.00258	.00351	.00407	.00420	.00411	.00382	.00346			

After Ahlvin and Ulery (1962).

Note that σ_θ is a principal stress, due to symmetry. The remaining two principal stresses can be determined as

$$\sigma_P = \frac{(\sigma_z + \sigma_r) \pm \sqrt{(\sigma_z - \sigma_r)^2 + (2\tau_{rz})^2}}{2} \tag{3.80}$$

EXAMPLE 3.3

Refer to Figure 3.22. Given that $q = 100\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$, $B = 5\,\mathrm{m}$, and $v = 0.45$, determine the principal stresses at a point defined by $s = 3.75\,\mathrm{m}$ and $z = 5\,\mathrm{m}$.

SOLUTION $s/b = 3.75/2.5 = 1.5$; $z/b = 5/2.5 = 2$. From Tables 3.13–3.19,

$$\begin{array}{ll} A' = 0.06275 & E = 0.04078 \\ B' = 0.06371 & F = 0.02197 \\ C = -0.00782 & G = 0.07804 \\ D = 0.05589 & \end{array}$$

So,

$$\sigma_z = q(A' + B') = 100(0.06275 + 0.06371) = 12.65\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\sigma_\theta = q[2\nu A' - D + (1 - 2\nu)E]$$

$$= 100[2(0.45)(0.06275) - 0.05589 + [1 - (2)(0.45)]0.04078]$$

$$= 0.466\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\sigma_r = q[2\nu A' + C + (1 - 2\nu)F]$$

$$= 100[0.9(0.06275) - 0.00782 + 0.1(0.02197)] = 5.09\ \mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\tau_{rz} = qG = (100)(0.07804) = 7.8\ \mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\sigma_\theta = 0.466\,\mathrm{kN/m^2} = \sigma_2 \qquad \text{(intermediate principal stress)}$$

$$\sigma_P = \frac{(12.65 + 5.09) \pm \sqrt{(12.65 - 5.09)^2 + (2 \times 7.8)^2}}{2}$$

$$= \frac{17.74 \pm 17.34}{2}$$

$$\sigma_{P(1)} = 17.54\,\mathrm{kN/m^2} \text{ (major principal stress)}$$

$$\sigma_{P(3)} = 0.2\,\mathrm{kN/m^2} \text{ (minor principal stress)}$$

3.16 Vertical displacement due to uniformly loaded circular area at the surface

The vertical displacement due to a uniformly loaded circular area (Figure 3.23) can be determined by using the same procedure we used above for a point load, which involves determination of the strain $\in_z$ from the equation

$$\in_z = \frac{1}{E}[\sigma_z - \nu(\sigma_r + \sigma_\theta)] \tag{3.81}$$

and determination of the settlement by integration with respect to z.

The relations for σ_z, σ_r, and σ_θ are given in Eqs. (3.76)–(3.78). Substitution of the relations for σ_z, σ_r, and σ_θ in the preceding equation for strain and simplification gives (Ahlvin and Ulery, 1962)

$$\in_z = q\frac{1-v}{E}[(1-2v)A' + B'] \tag{3.82}$$

where q is the load per unit area. A' and B' are nondimensional and are functions of z/b and s/b; their values are given in Tables 3.13 and 3.14.

The vertical deflection at a depth z can be obtained by integration of Eq. (3.82) as

$$w = q\frac{1+v}{E}b\left[\frac{z}{b}I_5 + (1-v)I_6\right] \tag{3.83}$$

where $I_5 = A'$ (Table 3.13) and b is the radius of the circular loaded area. The numerical values of I_6 (which is a function of z/b and s/b) are given in Table 3.20.

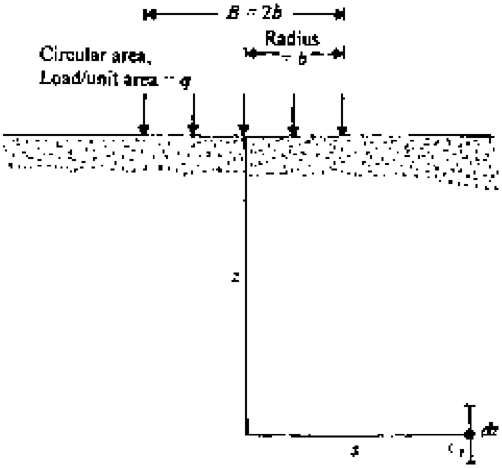


Figure 3.23 Elastic settlement due to a uniformly loaded circular area.

Table 3.20 Values of I_6

z/b	s/b																	
	0	*0.2*	*0.4*	*0.6*	*0.8*	*1*	*1.2*	*1.5*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*10*	*12*	*14*
0	2.0	1.97987	1.91751	1.80575	1.62553	1.27319	.93676	.71185	.51671	.33815	.25200	.20045	.16626	.14315	.12576	.09918	.08346	.07023
0.1	1.80998	1.79018	1.72886	1.61961	1.44711	1.18107	.92670	.70888	.51627	.33794	.25184	.20081						
0.2	1.63961	1.62068	1.56242	1.46001	1.30614	1.09996	.90098	.70074	.51382	.33726	.25162	.20072	.16688	.14288	.12512			
0.3	1.48806	1.47044	1.40979	1.32442	1.19210	1.02740	.86726	.68823	.50966	.33638	.25124							
0.4	1.35407	1.33802	1.28963	1.20822	1.09555	.96202	.83042	.67238	.50412									
0.5	1.23607	1.22176	1.17894	1.10830	1.01312	.90298	.79308	.65429	.49728	.33293	.24996	.19982	.16668	.14273	.12493	.09996	.08295	.07123
0.6	1.13238	1.11998	1.08350	1.02154	.94120	.84917	.75653	.63469										
0.7	1.04131	1.03037	.99794	.91049	.87742	.80030	.72143	.61442	.48061									
0.8	.96125	.95175	.92386	.87928	.82136	.75571	.68809	.59398										
0.9	.89072	.88251	.85856	.82616	.77950	.71495	.65677	.57361										
1	.82843	.85005	.80465	.76809	.72587	.67769	.62701	.55364	.45122	.31877	.24386	.19673	.16516	.14182	.12394	.09952	.08292	.07104
1.2	.72410	.71882	.70370	.67937	.64814	.61187	.57329	.51552	.43013	.31162	.24070	.19520	.16369	.14099	.12350			
1.5	.60555	.60233	.57246	.57633	.55559	.53138	.50496	.46379	.39872	.29945	.23495	.19053	.16199	.14058	.12281	.09876	.08270	.07064
2	.47214	.47022	.44512	.45656	.44502	.43202	.41702	.39242	.35054	.27740	.22418	.18618	.15846	.13762	.12124	.09792	.08196	.07026
2.5	.38518	.38403	.38098	.37608	.36940	.36155	.35243	.33698	.30913	.25550	.21208	.17898	.15395	.13463	.11928	.09700	.08115	.06980
3	.32457	.32403	.32184	.31887	.31464	.30969	.30381	.29364	.27453	.23487	.19977	.17154	.14919	.13119	.11694	.09558	.080610.6897	
4	.24620	.24588	.24820	.25128	.24168	.23932	.23668	.23164	.22188	.19908	.17640	.15596	.13864	.12396	.11172	.09300	.07864	.06848
5	.19805	.19785				.19455			.18450	.17080	.15575	.14130	.12785	.11615	.10585	.08915	.07675	.06695
6	.16554					.16326			.15750	.14868	.13842	.12792	.11778	.10836	.09990	.08562	.07452	.06522
7	.14217					.14077			.13699	.13097	.12404	.11620	.10843	.10101	.09387	.08197	.07210	.06377
8	.12448					.12352			.12112	.11680	.11176	.10600	.09976	.09400	.08848	.07800	.06928	.06200
9	.11079					.10989			.10854	.10548	.10161	.09702	.09234	.08784	.08298	.07407	.06678	.05976
10								.09900	.09820	.09510	.09290	.08980	.08300	.08180	.07710			

After Ahlvin and Ulery (1962).

From Eq. (3.83) it follows that the settlement at the surface (i.e., at $z = 0$) is

$$w_{(z=0)} = qb\frac{1 - v^2}{E}I_6 \tag{3.84}$$

EXAMPLE 3.4

Consider a uniformly loaded flexible circular area on the surface of a sand layer 9 m thick as shown in Figure 3.24. The circular area has a diameter of 3 m. Also given: $q = 100\,\text{kN/m}^2$; for sand, $E = 21{,}000\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and $v = 0.3$.

(a) Use Eq. (3.83) and determine the deflection of the center of the circular area ($z = 0$).

(b) Divide the sand layer into these layers of equal thickness of 3 m each. Use Eq. (3.82) to determine the deflection at the center of the circular area.

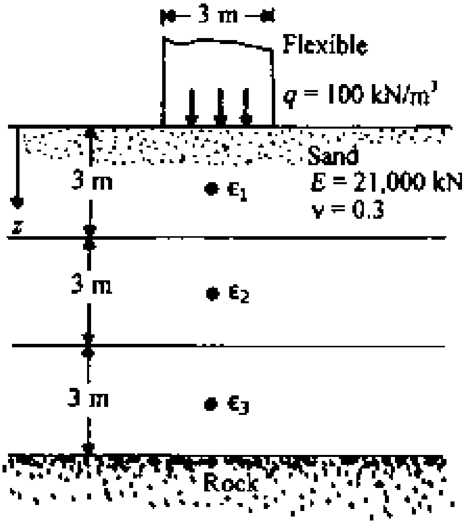


Figure 3.24 Elastic settlement calculation for layer of finite thickness.

SOLUTION *Part a*: From Eq. (3.83)

$$w = \frac{q(1+v)}{E} b\left[\frac{z}{b} I_5 + (1-v) I_6\right]$$

$$w_{\text{net}} = w_{(z=0,\, s=0)} - w_{(z=9\text{m},\, s=0)}$$

For $z/b = 0$ and $s/b = 0$, $I_5 = 1$ and $I_6 = 2$; so

$$w_{(z=0,\, s=0)} = \frac{100(1+0.3)}{21{,}000}(1.5)[(1-0.3)2] = 0.013\,\text{m} = 13\,\text{mm}$$

For $z/b = 9/1.5 = 6$ and $s/b = 0$, $I_5 = 0.01361$ and $I_6 = 0.16554$; so,

$$w_{(z=9m,\, s=0)} = \frac{100(1+0.3)(1.5)}{21{,}000}[6(0.01361) + (1-0.3)0.16554]$$
$$= 0.00183\,\text{m} = 1.83\,\text{mm}$$

Hence $w_{\text{net}} = 13 - 1.83 = 11.17\,\text{mm}$.

Part b: From Eq. (3.82),

$$\in_z = \frac{q(1+\nu)}{E}[(1-2v)A' + B']$$

Layer 1: From Tables 3.13 and 3.14, for $z/b = 1.5/1.5 = 1$ and $s/b = 0$, $A' = 0.29289$ and $B' = 0.35355$:

$$\in_{z(1)} = \frac{100(1+0.3)}{21,000}[(1-0.6)(0.29289) + 0.35355] = 0.00291$$

Layer 2: For $z/b = 4.5/1.5 = 3$ and $s/b = 0$, $A' = 0.05132$ and $B' = 0.09487$:

$$\in_{z(2)} = \frac{100(1+0.3)}{21,000}[(1-0.6)(0.05132) + 0.09487] = 0.00071$$

Layer 3: For $z/b = 7.5/1.5 = 5$ and $s/b = 0$, $A' = 0.01942$ and $B' = 0.03772$:

$$\in_{z(3)} = \frac{100(1+0.3)}{21,000}[(1-0.6)(0.01942) + 0.03772] = 0.00028$$

The final stages in the calculation are tabulated below.

Layer i	Layer thickness Δz_i (m)	Strain at the center of the layer $\in_{z(i)}$	$\in_{z(i)} \Delta z_i$ (m)
1	3	0.00291	0.00873
2	3	0.00071	0.00213
3	3	0.00028	0.00084
			$\Sigma 0.0117$ m $= 11.7$ mm

3.17 Vertical stress below a rectangular loaded area on the surface

The stress at a point P at a depth z below the corner of a uniformly loaded (vertical) flexible rectangular area (Figure 3.25) can be determined by integration of Boussinesq's equations given in Sec. 3.12. The vertical load over the elementary area $dx \cdot dy$ may be treated as a point load of magnitude $q \cdot dx \cdot dy$. The vertical stress at P due to this elementary load can be evaluated with the aid of Eq. (3.49):

$$d\sigma_z = \frac{3q\ dx\ dy\ z^3}{2\pi(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{5/2}}$$

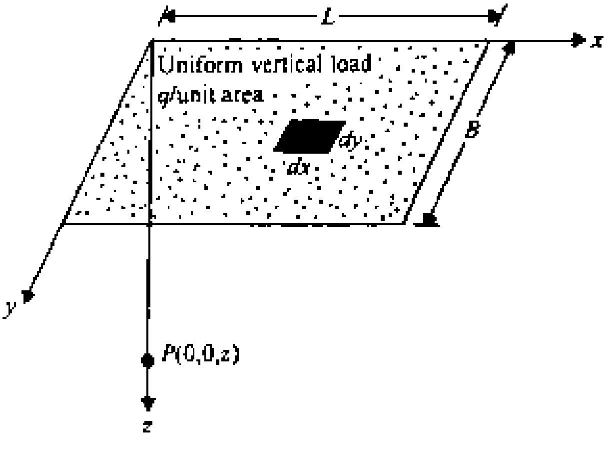


Figure 3.25 Vertical stress below the corner of a uniformly loaded (normal) rectangular area.

The total increase of vertical stress at P due to the entire loaded area may be determined by integration of the above equation with horizontal limits of $x = 0$ to $x = L$ and $y = 0$ to $y = B$. Newmark (1935) gave the results of the integration in the following form:

$$\sigma_z = qI_7 \tag{3.85}$$

$$I_7 = \frac{1}{4\pi}\left[\frac{2mn(m^2+n^2+1)^{1/2}}{m^2+n^2+m^2n^2+1}\,\frac{m^2+n^2+2}{m^2+n^2+1} + \tan^{-1}\frac{2mn(m^2+n^2+1)^{1/2}}{m^2+n^2-m^2n^2+1}\right] \tag{3.86}$$

where $m = B/z$ and $n = L/z$.

The values of I_7 for various values of m and n are given in a graphical form in Figure 3.26, and also in Table 3.21.

For equations concerning the determination of σ_x, σ_y, τ_{xz}, τ_{yz}, and τ_{xy}, the reader is referred to the works of Holl (1940) and Giroud (1970).

The use of Figure 3.26 for determination of the vertical stress at any point below a rectangular loaded area is shown in Example 3.5.

In most cases, the vertical stress below the center of a rectangular area is of importance. This can be given by the relationship

$$\Delta\sigma = q\, I_8$$

where
$$I_8 = \frac{2}{\pi}\left[\frac{m_1'n_1'}{\sqrt{1+m_1'^2+n_1'^2}}\,\frac{1+m_1'^2+2n_1'^2}{(1+n_1'^2)(m_1'^2+n_1'^2)} + \sin^{-1}\frac{m_1'}{\sqrt{m_1'^2+n_1'^2}\sqrt{1+n_1'^2}}\right] \tag{3.87}$$

$$m_1' = \frac{L}{B} \tag{3.88}$$

$$n_1' = \frac{z}{\left(\frac{B}{2}\right)} \tag{3.89}$$

The variation of I_8 with m_1 and n_1 is given in Table 3.22.

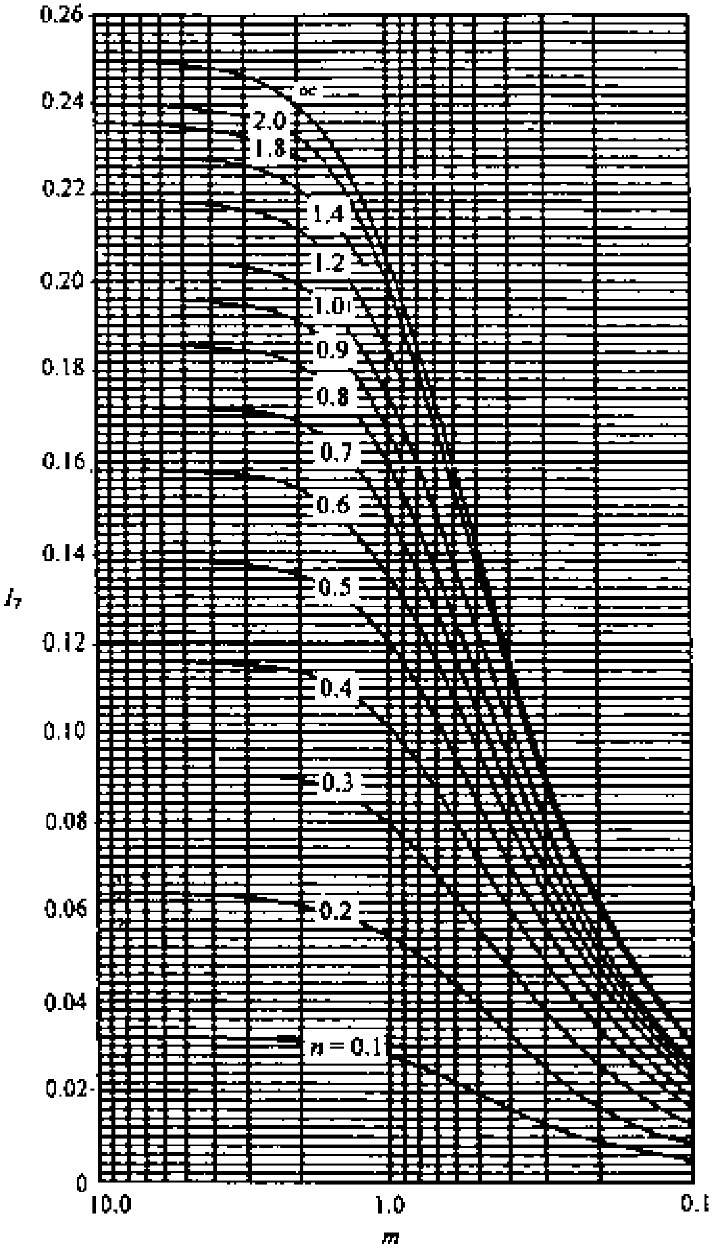


Figure 3.26 Variation of I_7 with m and n.

Table 3.21 Variation of I_7 with *m* and *n*

n	***m***																			
	0.1	*0.2*	*0.3*	*0.4*	*0.5*	*0.6*	*0.7*	*0.8*	*0.9*	*1.0*	*1.2*	*1.4*	*1.6*	*1.8*	*2.0*	*2.5*	*3.0*	*4.0*	*5.0*	*6.0*
0.1	0.0047	0.0092	0.0132	0.0168	0.0198	0.0222	0.0242	0.0258	0.0270	0.0279	0.0293	0.0301	0.0306	0.0309	0.0311	0.0314	0.0315	0.0316	0.0316	0.0316
0.2	0.0092	0.0179	0.0259	0.0328	0.0387	0.0435	0.0474	0.0504	0.0528	0.0547	0.0573	0.0589	0.0599	0.0606	0.0610	0.0616	0.0618	0.0619	0.0620	0.0620
0.3	0.0132	0.0259	0.0374	0.0474	0.0559	0.0629	0.0686	0.0731	0.0766	0.0794	0.0832	0.0856	0.0871	0.0880	0.0887	0.0895	0.0898	0.0901	0.0901	0.0902
0.4	0.0168	0.0328	0.0474	0.0602	0.0711	0.0801	0.0873	0.0931	0.0977	0.1013	0.1063	0.1094	0.1114	0.1126	0.1134	0.1145	0.1150	0.1153	0.1154	0.1154
0.5	0.0198	0.0387	0.0559	0.0711	0.0840	0.0947	0.1034	0.1104	0.1158	0.1202	0.1263	0.1300	0.1324	0.1340	0.1350	0.1363	0.1368	0.1372	0.1374	0.1374
0.6	0.0222	0.0435	0.0629	0.0801	0.0947	0.1069	0.1168	0.1247	0.1311	0.1361	0.1431	0.1475	0.1503	0.1521	0.1533	0.1548	0.1555	0.1560	0.1561	0.1562
0.7	0.0242	0.0474	0.0686	0.0873	0.1034	0.1169	0.1277	0.1365	0.1436	0.1491	0.1570	0.1620	0.1652	0.1672	0.1686	0.1704	0.1711	0.1717	0.1719	0.1719
0.8	0.0258	0.0504	0.0731	0.0931	0.1104	0.1247	0.1365	0.1461	0.1537	0.1598	0.1684	0.1739	0.1774	0.1797	0.1812	0.1832	0.1841	0.1847	0.1849	0.1850
0.9	0.0270	0.0528	0.0766	0.0977	0.1158	0.1311	0.1436	0.1537	0.1619	0.1684	0.1777	0.1836	0.1874	0.1899	0.1915	0.1938	0.1947	0.1954	0.1956	0.1957
1.0	0.0279	0.0547	0.0794	0.1013	0.1202	0.1361	0.1491	0.1598	0.1684	0.1752	0.1851	0.1914	0.1955	0.1981	0.1999	0.2024	0.2034	0.2042	0.2044	0.2045
1.2	0.0293	0.0573	0.0832	0.1063	0.1263	0.1431	0.1570	0.1684	0.1777	0.1851	0.1958	0.2028	0.2073	0.2103	0.2124	0.2151	0.2163	0.2172	0.2175	0.2176
1.4	0.0301	0.0589	0.0856	0.1094	0.1300	0.1475	0.1620	0.1739	0.1836	0.1914	0.2028	0.2102	0.2151	0.2184	0.2206	0.2236	0.2250	0.2260	0.2263	0.2264
1.6	0.0306	0.0599	0.0871	0.1114	0.1324	0.1503	0.1652	0.1774	0.1874	0.1955	0.2073	0.2151	0.2203	0.2237	0.2261	0.2294	0.2309	0.2320	0.2323	0.2325
1.8	0.0309	0.0606	0.0880	0.1126	0.1340	0.1521	0.1672	0.1797	0.1899	0.1981	0.2103	0.2183	0.2237	0.2274	0.2299	0.2333	0.2350	0.2362	0.2366	0.2367
2.0	0.0311	0.0610	0.0887	0.1134	0.1350	0.1533	0.1686	0.1812	0.1915	0.1999	0.2124	0.2206	0.2261	0.2299	0.2325	0.2361	0.2378	0.2391	0.2395	0.2397
2.5	0.0314	0.0616	0.0895	0.1145	0.1363	0.1548	0.1704	0.1832	0.1938	0.2024	0.2151	0.2236	0.2294	0.2333	0.2361	0.2401	0.2420	0.2434	0.2439	0.2441
3.0	0.0315	0.0618	0.0898	0.1150	0.1368	0.1555	0.1711	0.1841	0.1947	0.2034	0.2163	0.2250	0.2309	0.2350	0.2378	0.2420	0.2439	0.2455	0.2461	0.2463
4.0	0.0316	0.0619	0.0901	0.1153	0.1372	0.1560	0.1717	0.1847	0.1954	0.2042	0.2172	0.2260	0.2320	0.2362	0.2391	0.2434	0.2455	0.2472	0.2479	0.2481
5.0	0.0316	0.0620	0.0901	0.1154	0.1374	0.1561	0.1719	0.1849	0.1956	0.2044	0.2175	0.2263	0.2324	0.2366	0.2395	0.2439	0.2460	0.2479	0.2486	0.2489
6.0	0.0316	0.0620	0.0902	0.1154	0.1374	0.1562	0.1719	0.1850	0.1957	0.2045	0.2176	0.2264	0.2325	0.2367	0.2397	0.2441	0.2463	0.2482	0.2489	0.2492

Table 3.22 Variation of I_8 with m'_1 and n'_1

n'_i	m'_1									
	1	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*9*	*10*
0.20	0.994	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997
0.40	0.960	0.976	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977
0.60	0.892	0.932	0.936	0.936	0.937	0.937	0.937	0.937	0.937	0.937
0.80	0.800	0.870	0.878	0.880	0.881	0.881	0.881	0.881	0.881	0.881
1.00	0.701	0.800	0.814	0.817	0.818	0.818	0.818	0.818	0.818	0.818
1.20	0.606	0.727	0.748	0.753	0.754	0.755	0.755	0.755	0.755	0.755
1.40	0.522	0.658	0.685	0.692	0.694	0.695	0.695	0.696	0.696	0.696
1.60	0.449	0.593	0.627	0.636	0.639	0.640	0.641	0.641	0.641	0.642
1.80	0.388	0.534	0.573	0.585	0.590	0.591	0.592	0.592	0.593	0.593
2.00	0.336	0.481	0.525	0.540	0.545	0.547	0.548	0.549	0.549	0.549
3.00	0.179	0.293	0.348	0.373	0.384	0.389	0.392	0.393	0.394	0.395
4.00	0.108	0.190	0.241	0.269	0.285	0.293	0.298	0.301	0.302	0.303
5.00	0.072	0.131	0.174	0.202	0.219	0.229	0.236	0.240	0.242	0.244
6.00	0.051	0.095	0.130	0.155	0.172	0.184	0.192	0.197	0.200	0.202
7.00	0.038	0.072	0.100	0.122	0.139	0.150	0.158	0.164	0.168	0.171
8.00	0.029	0.056	0.079	0.098	0.113	0.125	0.133	0.139	0.144	0.147
9.00	0.023	0.045	0.064	0.081	0.094	0.105	0.113	0.119	0.124	0.128
10.00	0.019	0.037	0.053	0.067	0.079	0.089	0.097	0.103	0.108	0.112

EXAMPLE 3.5

A distributed load of 50 kN/m^2 is acting on the flexible rectangular area 6×3 m as shown in Figure 3.27. Determine the vertical stress at point *A*, which is located at a depth of 3 m below the ground surface.

SOLUTION The total increase of stress at *A* may be evaluated by summing the stresses contributed by the four rectangular loaded areas shown in Figure 3.26. Thus

$$\sigma_z = q(I_{7(1)} + I_{7(2)} + I_{7(3)} + I_{7(4)})$$

$$n_{(1)} = \frac{L_1}{z} = \frac{4.5}{3} = 1.5 \qquad m_{(1)} = \frac{B_1}{z} = \frac{1.5}{3} = 0.5$$

From Figure 3.26, $I_{7(1)} = 0.131$. Similarly,

$$n_{(2)} = \frac{L_2}{z} = \frac{1.5}{3} = 0.5 \qquad m_{(2)} = \frac{B_2}{z} = 0.5 \qquad I_{7(2)} = 0.084$$

$$n_{(3)} = 1.5 \quad m_{(3)} = 0.5 \qquad I_{7(3)} = 0.131$$

$$n_{(4)} = 0.5 \quad m_{(4)} = 0.5 \qquad I_{7(4)} = 0.085$$

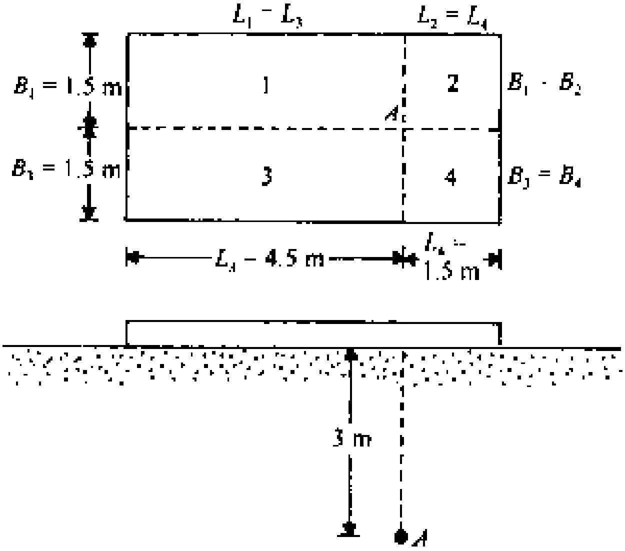


Figure 3.27 Distributed load on a flexible rectangular area.

So,

$$\sigma_z = 50(0.131 + 0.084 + 0.131 + 0.084 = 21.5\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

3.18 Deflection due to a uniformly loaded flexible rectangular area

The elastic deformation in the vertical direction at the corner of a uniformly loaded rectangular area of size $L \times B$ (Figure 3.25) can be obtained by proper integration of the expression for strain. The deflection at a depth z below the corner of the rectangular area can be expressed in the form (Harr, 1966)

$$w(\text{corner}) = \frac{qB}{2E}(1-v^2)\left[I_9 - \left(\frac{1-2v}{1-v}\right)I_{10}\right] \tag{3.90}$$

where
$$I_9 = \frac{1}{\pi}\left[\ln\left(\frac{\sqrt{1+m_1^2+n_1^2}+m_1}{\sqrt{1+m_1^2+n_1^2}-m_1}\right) + m_1 \ln\left(\frac{\sqrt{1+m_1^2+n_1^2}+1}{\sqrt{1+m_1^2+n_1^2}-1}\right)\right] \tag{3.91}$$

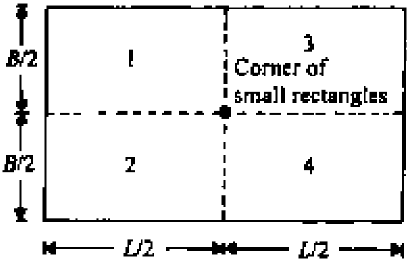


Figure 3.28 Determination of settlement at the center of a rectangular area of dimensions $L \times B$.

$$I_{10} = \frac{n_1}{\pi} \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{m_1}{n_1\sqrt{1+m_1^2+n_1^2}}\right) \tag{3.92}$$

$$m_1 = \frac{L}{B} \tag{3.93}$$

$$n_1 = \frac{z}{B} \tag{3.94}$$

Values of I_9 and I_{10} are given in Tables 3.23 and 3.24.

For surface deflection at the corner of a rectangular area, we can substitute $z/B = n_1 = 0$ in Eq. (3.90) and make the necessary calculations; thus

$$w(\text{corner}) = \frac{qB}{2E}(1-v^2)I_9 \tag{3.95}$$

The deflection at the surface for the center of a rectangular area (Figure 3.28) can be found by adding the deflection for the corner of four rectangular areas of dimension $L/2 \times B/2$. Thus, from Eq. (3.90),

$$w(\text{center}) = 4\left[\frac{q(B/2)}{2E}\right](1-\nu^2)I_9 = \frac{qB}{E}(1-\nu^2)I_9 \tag{3.96}$$

3.19 Stresses in a layered medium

In the preceding sections, we discussed the stresses inside a homogeneous elastic medium due to various loading conditions. In actual cases of soil deposits it is possible to encounter layered soils, each with a different modulus of elasticity. A case of practical importance is that of a stiff soil layer on top of a softer layer, as shown in Figure 3.29*a*. For a given loading condition, the effect of the stiff layer will be to reduce the stress concentration in the lower layer. Burmister (1943) worked on such problems

Table 3.23 Variation of I_9

n_1	*Value of m_1*									
	1	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*9*	*10*
0.00	1.122	1.532	1.783	1.964	2.105	2.220	2.318	2.403	2.477	2.544
0.25	1.095	1.510	1.763	1.944	2.085	2.200	2.298	2.383	2.458	2.525
0.50	1.025	1.452	1.708	1.890	2.032	2.148	2.246	2.331	2.406	2.473
0.75	0.933	1.371	1.632	1.816	1.959	2.076	2.174	2.259	2.334	2.401
1.00	0.838	1.282	1.547	1.734	1.878	1.995	2.094	2.179	2.255	2.322
1.25	0.751	1.192	1.461	1.650	1.796	1.914	2.013	2.099	2.175	2.242
1.50	0.674	1.106	1.378	1.570	1.717	1.836	1.936	2.022	2.098	2.166
1.75	0.608	1.026	1.299	1.493	1.641	1.762	1.862	1.949	2.025	2.093
2.00	0.552	0.954	1.226	1.421	1.571	1.692	1.794	1.881	1.958	2.026
2.25	0.504	0.888	1.158	1.354	1.505	1.627	1.730	1.817	1.894	1.963
2.50	0.463	0.829	1.095	1.291	1.444	1.567	1.670	1.758	1.836	1.904
2.75	0.427	0.776	1.037	1.233	1.386	1.510	1.613	1.702	1.780	1.850
3.00	0.396	0.728	0.984	1.179	1.332	1.457	1.561	1.650	1.729	1.798
3.25	0.369	0.686	0.935	1.128	1.281	1.406	1.511	1.601	1.680	1.750
3.50	0.346	0.647	0.889	1.081	1.234	1.359	1.465	1.555	1.634	1.705
3.75	0.325	0.612	0.848	1.037	1.189	1.315	1.421	1.511	1.591	1.662
4.00	0.306	0.580	0.809	0.995	1.147	1.273	1.379	1.470	1.550	1.621
4.25	0.289	0.551	0.774	0.957	1.107	1.233	1.339	1.431	1.511	1.582
4.50	0.274	0.525	0.741	0.921	1.070	1.195	1.301	1.393	1.474	1.545
4.75	0.260	0.501	0.710	0.887	1.034	1.159	1.265	1.358	1.438	1.510
5.00	0.248	0.479	0.682	0.855	1.001	1.125	1.231	1.323	1.404	1.477
5.25	0.237	0.458	0.655	0.825	0.969	1.093	1.199	1.291	1.372	1.444
5.50	0.227	0.440	0.631	0.797	0.939	1.062	1.167	1.260	1.341	1.413
5.75	0.217	0.422	0.608	0.770	0.911	1.032	1.137	1.230	1.311	1.384
6.00	0.208	0.406	0.586	0.745	0.884	1.004	1.109	1.201	1.282	1.355
6.25	0.200	0.391	0.566	0.722	0.858	0.977	1.082	1.173	1.255	1.328
6.50	0.193	0.377	0.547	0.699	0.834	0.952	1.055	1.147	1.228	1.301
6.75	0.186	0.364	0.529	0.678	0.810	0.927	1.030	1.121	1.203	1.275
7.00	0.179	0.352	0.513	0.658	0.788	0.904	1.006	1.097	1.178	1.251
7.25	0.173	0.341	0.497	0.639	0.767	0.881	0.983	1.073	1.154	1.227
7.50	0.168	0.330	0.482	0.621	0.747	0.860	0.960	1.050	1.131	1.204
7.75	0.162	0.320	0.468	0.604	0.728	0.839	0.939	1.028	1.109	1.181
8.00	0.158	0.310	0.455	0.588	0.710	0.820	0.918	1.007	1.087	1.160
8.25	0.153	0.301	0.442	0.573	0.692	0.801	0.899	0.987	1.066	1.139
8.50	0.148	0.293	0.430	0.558	0.676	0.783	0.879	0.967	1.046	1.118
8.75	0.144	0.285	0.419	0.544	0.660	0.765	0.861	0.948	1.027	1.099
9.00	0.140	0.277	0.408	0.531	0.644	0.748	0.843	0.930	1.008	1.080
9.25	0.137	0.270	0.398	0.518	0.630	0.732	0.826	0.912	0.990	1.061
9.50	0.133	0.263	0.388	0.506	0.616	0.717	0.810	0.895	0.972	1.043
9.75	0.130	0.257	0.379	0.494	0.602	0.702	0.794	0.878	0.955	1.026
10.00	0.126	0.251	0.370	0.483	0.589	0.688	0.778	0.862	0.938	1.009

Table 3.24 Variation of I_{10}

n_1	*Value of* m_1									
	1	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*9*	*10*
0.25	0.098	0.103	0.104	0.105	0.105	0.105	0.105	0.105	0.105	0.105
0.50	0.148	0.167	0.172	0.174	0.175	0.175	0.175	0.176	0.176	0.176
0.75	0.166	0.202	0.212	0.216	0.218	0.219	0.220	0.220	0.220	0.220
1.00	0.167	0.218	0.234	0.241	0.244	0.246	0.247	0.248	0.248	0.248
1.25	0.160	0.222	0.245	0.254	0.259	0.262	0.264	0.265	0.265	0.266
1.50	0.149	0.220	0.248	0.261	0.267	0.271	0.274	0.275	0.276	0.277
1.75	0.139	0.213	0.247	0.263	0.271	0.277	0.280	0.282	0.283	0.284
2.00	0.128	0.205	0.243	0.262	0.273	0.279	0.283	0.286	0.288	0.289
2.25	0.119	0.196	0.237	0.259	0.272	0.279	0.284	0.288	0.290	0.292
2.50	0.110	0.186	0.230	0.255	0.269	0.278	0.284	0.288	0.291	0.293
2.75	0.102	0.177	0.223	0.250	0.266	0.277	0.283	0.288	0.291	0.294
3.00	0.096	0.168	0.215	0.244	0.262	0.274	0.282	0.287	0.291	0.294
3.25	0.090	0.160	0.208	0.238	0.258	0.271	0.279	0.285	0.290	0.293
3.50	0.084	0.152	0.200	0.232	0.253	0.267	0.277	0.283	0.288	0.292
3.75	0.079	0.145	0.193	0.226	0.248	0.263	0.273	0.281	0.287	0.291
4.00	0.075	0.138	0.186	0.219	0.243	0.259	0.270	0.278	0.285	0.289
4.25	0.071	0.132	0.179	0.213	0.237	0.254	0.267	0.276	0.282	0.287
4.50	0.067	0.126	0.173	0.207	0.232	0.250	0.263	0.272	0.280	0.285
4.75	0.064	0.121	0.167	0.201	0.227	0.245	0.259	0.269	0.277	0.283
5.00	0.061	0.116	0.161	0.195	0.221	0.241	0.255	0.266	0.274	0.281
5.25	0.059	0.111	0.155	0.190	0.216	0.236	0.251	0.263	0.271	0.278
5.50	0.056	0.107	0.150	0.185	0.211	0.232	0.247	0.259	0.268	0.276
5.75	0.054	0.103	0.145	0.179	0.206	0.227	0.243	0.255	0.265	0.273
6.00	0.052	0.099	0.141	0.174	0.201	0.223	0.239	0.252	0.262	0.270
6.25	0.050	0.096	0.136	0.170	0.197	0.218	0.235	0.248	0.259	0.267
6.50	0.048	0.093	0.132	0.165	0.192	0.214	0.231	0.245	0.256	0.265
6.75	0.046	0.089	0.128	0.161	0.188	0.210	0.227	0.241	0.252	0.262
7.00	0.045	0.087	0.124	0.156	0.183	0.205	0.223	0.238	0.249	0.259
7.25	0.043	0.084	0.121	0.152	0.179	0.201	0.219	0.234	0.246	0.256
7.50	0.042	0.081	0.117	0.149	0.175	0.197	0.216	0.231	0.243	0.253
7.75	0.040	0.079	0.114	0.145	0.171	0.193	0.212	0.227	0.240	0.250
8.00	0.039	0.077	0.111	0.141	0.168	0.190	0.208	0.224	0.236	0.247
8.25	0.038	0.074	0.108	0.138	0.164	0.186	0.205	0.220	0.233	0.244
8.50	0.037	0.072	0.105	0.135	0.160	0.182	0.201	0.217	0.230	0.241
8.75	0.036	0.070	0.103	0.132	0.157	0.179	0.198	0.214	0.227	0.238
9.00	0.035	0.069	0.100	0.129	0.154	0.176	0.194	0.210	0.224	0.235
9.25	0.034	0.067	0.098	0.126	0.151	0.172	0.191	0.207	0.221	0.233
9.50	0.033	0.065	0.095	0.123	0.147	0.169	0.188	0.204	0.218	0.230
9.75	0.032	0.064	0.093	0.120	0.145	0.166	0.185	0.201	0.215	0.227
10.00	0.032	0.062	0.091	0.118	0.142	0.163	0.182	0.198	0.212	0.224

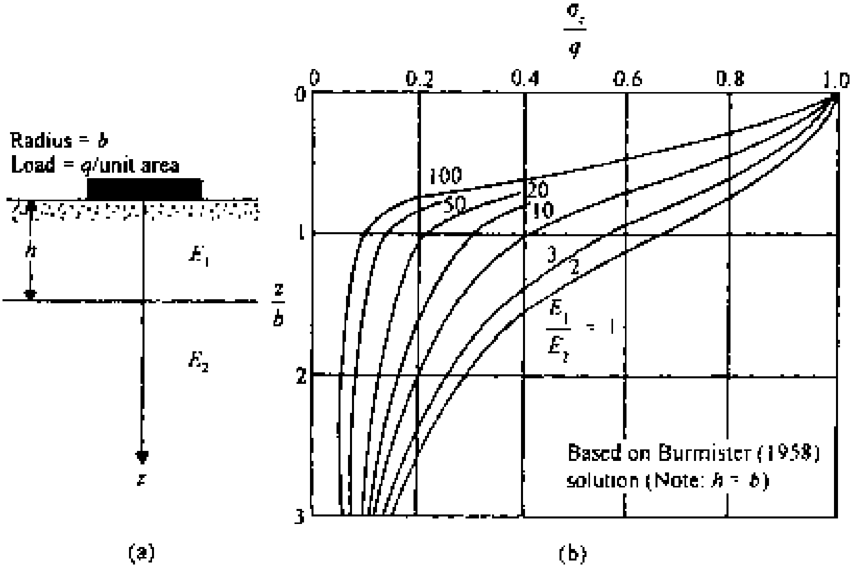


Figure 3.29 (*a*) Uniformly loaded circular area in a two-layered soil $E_1 > E_2$ and (*b*) Vertical stress below the centerline of a uniformly loaded circular area.

involving two- and three-layer flexible systems. This was later developed by Fox (1948), Burmister (1958), Jones (1962), and Peattie (1962).

The effect of the reduction of stress concentration due to the presence of a stiff top layer is demonstrated in Figure 3.29*b*. Consider a flexible circular area of radius b subjected to a loading of q per unit area at the surface of a two-layered system. E_1 and E_2 are the moduli of elasticity of the top and the bottom layer, respectively, with $E_1 > E_2$; and h is the thickness of the top layer. For $h = b$, the elasticity solution for the vertical stress σ_z at various depths below the center of the loaded area can be obtained from Figure 3.29*b*. The curves of σ_z/q against z/b for $E_1/E_2 = 1$ give the simple Boussinesq case, which is obtained by solving Eq. (3.74). However, for $E_1/E_2 > 1$, the value of σ_z/q for a given z/b decreases with the increase of E_1/E_2. It must be pointed out that in obtaining these results it is assumed that there is *no slippage at the interface*.

The study of the stresses in a flexible layered system is of importance in highway pavement design.

3.20 Vertical stress at the interface of a three-layer flexible system

Jones (1962) gave solutions for the determination of vertical stress σ_z at the interfaces of three-layered systems below the center of a uniformly

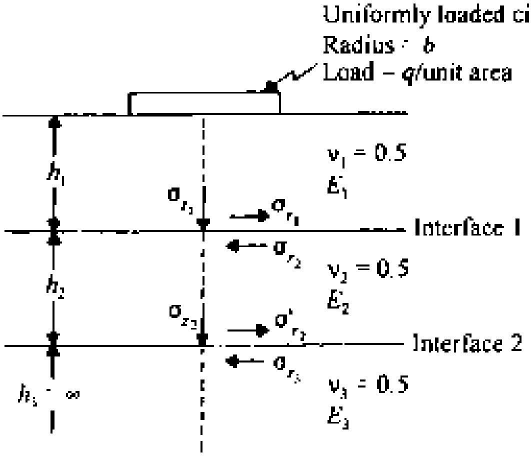


Figure 3.30 Uniformly loaded circular area on a three-layered medium.

loaded flexible area (Figure 3.30). These solutions are presented in a nondimensional form in the appendix. In preparing these appendix tables, the following parameters were used:

$$k_1 = \frac{E_1}{E_2} \tag{3.97}$$

$$k_2 = \frac{E_2}{E_3} \tag{3.98}$$

$$a_1 = \frac{b}{h_2} \tag{3.99}$$

$$H = \frac{h_1}{h_2} \tag{3.100}$$

EXAMPLE 3.6

Refer to Figure 3.31. Given $q = 100\,\text{kN/m}^2$, $b = 0.61\,\text{m}$, $h_1 = 1.52\,\text{m}$, $h_2 = 3.05\,\text{m}$, $E_1 = 10.35\,\text{MN/m}^2$, $E_2 = 6.9\,\text{MN/m}^2$, $E_3 = 1.725\,\text{MN/m}^2$, determine σ_{z1}.

SOLUTION

$$k_1 = \frac{E_1}{E_2} = \frac{10.35}{6.9} = 1.5 \qquad k_2 = \frac{E_2}{E_3} = \frac{6.9}{1.725} = 4$$

$$a_1 = \frac{b}{h_2} = \frac{0.61}{3.05} = 0.2 \qquad H = \frac{h_1}{h_2} = \frac{1.52}{3.05} = 0.5$$

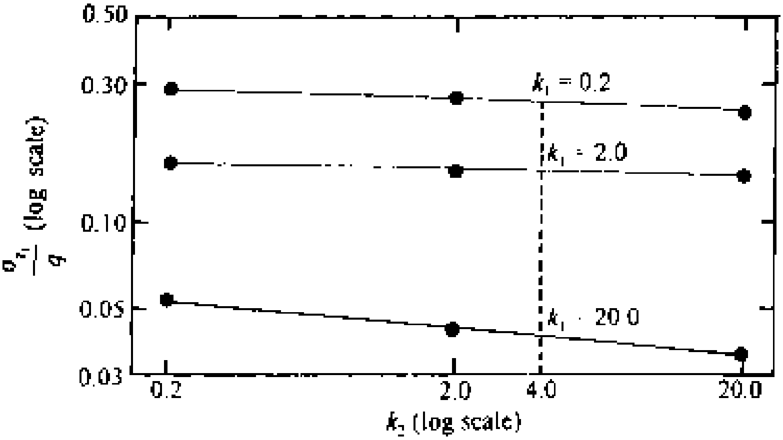


Figure 3.31 Plot of σ_{z_1}/q against k_2.

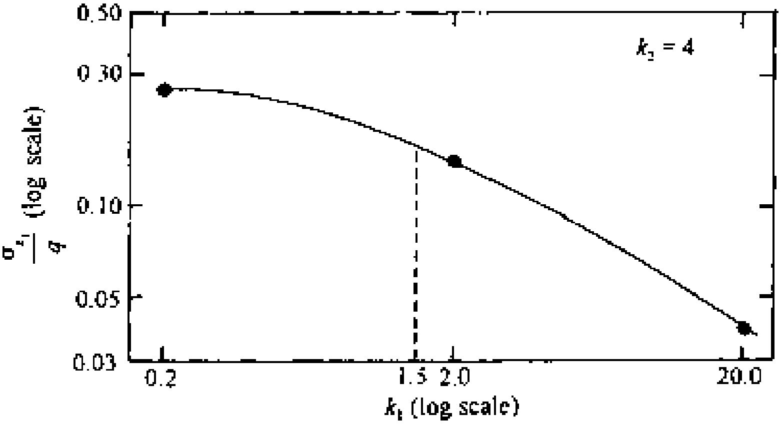


Figure 3.32 Plot of σ_{z_1}/q against $k_1 (k_2 = 4)$.

Using the above parameters and the tables for σ_{z_1}/q, the following table is prepared:

k_1	σ_{z_1}/q		
	$k_2 = 0.2$	$k_2 = 2.0$	$k_2 = 20.0$
0.2	0.272	0.27	0.268
2.0	0.16	0.153	0.15
20.0	0.051	0.042	0.036

Based on the results of the above table, a graph of σ_{z_1}/q against k_2 for various values of k_1 is plotted (Figure 3.31). For this problem, $k_2 = 4$. So the values of σ_{z_1}/q for $k_2 = 4$ and $k_1 = 0.2$, 2.0, and 20 are obtained from Figure 3.31 and then plotted as in Figure 3.32. From this graph, $\sigma_{z_1}/q = 0.16$ for $k_1 = 1.5$. Thus

$$\sigma_{z_1} = 100(0.16) = 16\text{kN/w}^2$$

3.21 Distribution of contact stress over footings

In calculating vertical stress, we generally assume that the foundation of a structure is flexible. In practice, this is not the case; no foundation is perfectly flexible, nor is it infinitely rigid. The actual nature of the distribution of contact stress will depend on the elastic properties of the foundation and the soil on which the foundation is resting.

Borowicka (1936, 1938) analyzed the problem of distribution of contact stress over uniformly loaded strip and circular rigid foundations resting on a semi-infinite elastic mass. The shearing stress at the base of the foundation was assumed to be zero. The analysis shows that the distribution of contact stress is dependent on a nondimensional factor K_r of the form

$$K_r = \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{1-v_\text{s}^2}{1-v_\text{f}^2}\right)\left(\frac{E_\text{f}}{E_\text{s}}\right)\left(\frac{T}{b}\right)^3 \tag{3.101}$$

where

v_s = Poisson's ratio for soil
v_f = Poisson's ratio for foundation material
E_f, E_s = Young's modulus of foundation material and soil, respectively
$$b = \begin{cases}\text{half-width for strip foundation}\\ \text{radius for circular foundation}\end{cases}$$
T = thickness of foundation

Figure 3.33 shows the distribution of contact stress for a circular foundation. Note that $K_r = 0$ indicates a perfectly flexible foundation, and $K_r = \infty$ means a perfectly rigid foundation.

Foundations of clay

When a flexible foundation resting on a saturated clay ($\phi = 0$) is loaded with a uniformly distributed load (q/unit area), it will deform and take a bowl

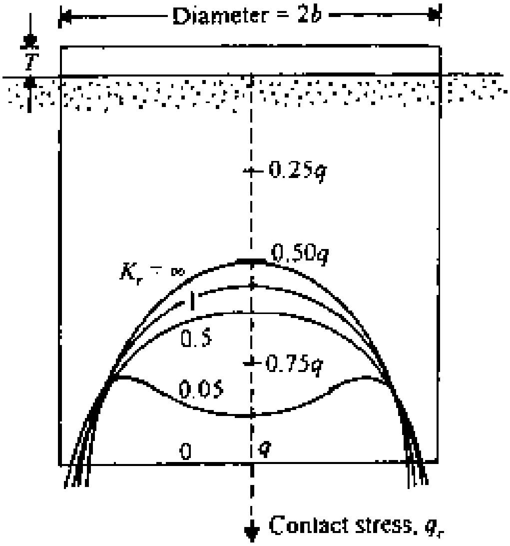


Figure 3.33 Contact stress over a rigid circular foundation resting on an elastic medium.

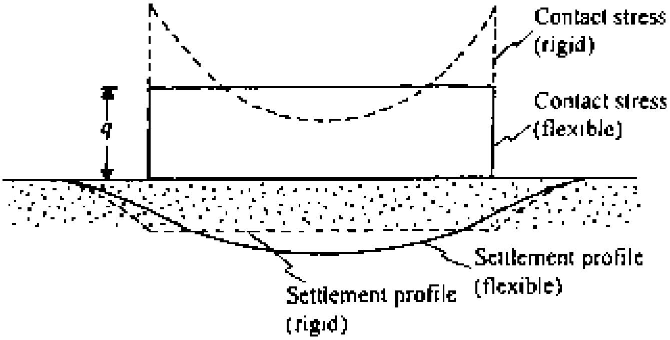


Figure 3.34 Contact pressure and settlement profiles for foundations on clay.

shape (Figure 3.34). Maximum deflection will be at the center; however, the contact stress over the footing will be uniform (q per unit area).

A rigid foundation resting on the same clay will show a uniform settlement (Figure 3.34). The contact stress distribution will take a form such as that shown in Figure 3.33, with only one exception: the stress at the edges of the footing cannot be infinity. Soil is not an infinitely elastic material; beyond a certain limiting stress [$q_{c(\max)}$], plastic flow will begin.

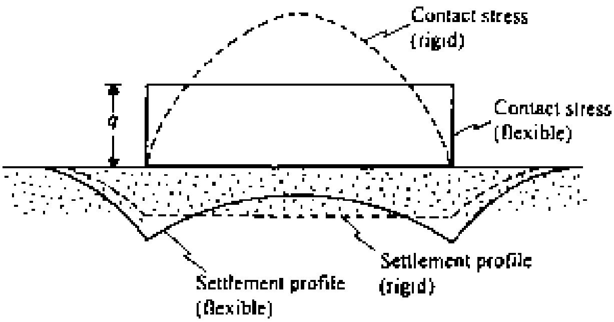


Figure 3.35 Contact pressure and settlement profiles for foundations on sand.

Foundations on sand

For a flexible foundation resting on a cohesionless soil, the distribution of contact pressure will be uniform (Figure 3.35). However, the edges of the foundation will undergo a larger settlement than the center. This occurs because the soil located at the edge of the foundation lacks lateral-confining pressure and hence possesses less strength. The lower strength of the soil at the edge of the foundation will result in larger settlement.

A rigid foundation resting on a sand layer will settle uniformly. The contact pressure on the foundation will increase from zero at the edge to a maximum at the center, as shown in Figure 3.35.

3.22 Reliability of stress calculation using the theory of elasticity

Only a limited number of attempts have been made so far to compare theoretical results for stress distribution with the stresses observed under field conditions. The latter, of course, requires elaborate field instrumentation. However, from the results available at present, fairly good agreement is shown between theoretical considerations and field conditions, especially in the case of vertical stress. In any case, a variation of about 20–30% between the theory and field conditions may be expected.

PROBLEMS

3.1 A line load of q per unit length is applied at the ground surface as shown in Figure 3.1. Given $q = 44\,\text{kN/m}$,

- (*a*) Plot the variations of σ_z, σ_x, and τ_{xz} against x from $x = +6\,\text{m}$ to $x = -6\,\text{m}$ for $z = 2.4\,\text{m}$.
- (*b*) Plot the variation of σ_z with z (from $z = 0\,\text{m}$ to $z = 6\,\text{m}$) for $x = 1.5\,\text{m}$.

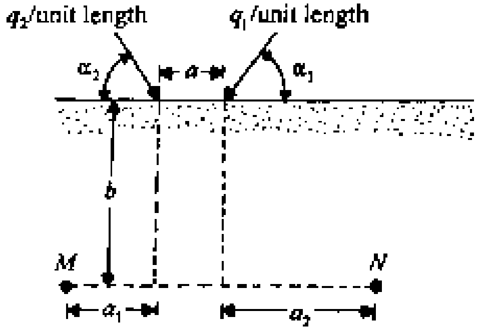


Figure P3.1

3.2 Refer to Figure 3.8. Assume that $q = 45\,\text{kN/m}$.

- (*a*) If $z = 5\,\text{m}$, plot the variation of σ_z, σ_x, and τ_{xz} against x for the range $x = \pm 10\,\text{m}$.
- (*b*) Plot the variation of σ_z with z for the range $z = 0\text{–}10\,\text{m}$ (for $x = 0\,\text{m}$).
- (*c*) Plot the variation of σ_z with z for the range $z = 0\text{–}10\,\text{m}$ (for $x = 5\,\text{m}$).

3.3 Refer to Figure 3.1. Given that $q = 51\,\text{kN/m}$, $\nu = 0.35$, and $z = 1.5\,\text{m}$, calculate the major, intermediate, and minor principal stresses at $x = 0$, 1.5, 3, 4.5 and 6 m.

3.4 Refer to Figure P3.1. Given that $\alpha_1 = 90°$, $\alpha_2 = 90°$, $a = 1.5\,\text{m}$, $a_1 = 3\,\text{m}$, $a_2 = 3\,\text{m}$, $b = 1.5\,\text{m}$, $q_1 = 36\,\text{kN/m}$, and $q_2 = 50\,\text{kN/m}$, determine σ_z at M and N.

3.5 Refer to Figure P3.1. Given that $\alpha_1 = 30°$, $\alpha_2 = 45°$, $a = 2\,\text{m}$, $a_1 = 3\,\text{m}$, $a_2 = 5\,\text{m}$, $b = 2\,\text{m}$, $q_1 = 40\,\text{kN/m}$, and $q_2 = 30\,\text{kN/m}$, determine σ_z at M and N.

3.6 For the infinite strip load shown in Figure 3.9, given $B = 4\,\text{m}$, $q = 105\,\text{kN/m}^2$, and $\nu = 0.3$, draw the variation of σ_x, σ_z, τ_{xz}, $\sigma_{p(1)}$ (maximum principal stress), $\sigma_{p(2)}$ (intermediate principal stress), and $\sigma_{p(3)}$ (minimum principal stress) with x (from $x = 0$ to $+8\,\text{m}$) at $z = 3\,\text{m}$.

3.7 An embankment is shown in Figure P3.2. Given that $B = 5\,\text{m}$, $H = 5\,\text{m}$, $m = 1.5$, $z = 3\,\text{m}$, $a = 3\,\text{m}$, $b = 4\,\text{m}$, and $\gamma = 18\,\text{kN/m}^3$, determine the vertical stresses at *A, B, C, D*, and *E*.

3.8 Refer to Figure 3.22. Given that $\nu = 0.35$, $q = 135\,\text{kN/m}^2$, $b = 1.5\,\text{m}$, and $s = 0.75\,\text{m}$, determine the principal stress at $z = 0.75\,\text{m}$.

3.9 Figure P3.3 shows the plan of a loaded area on the surface of a clay layer. The uniformly distributed vertical loads on the area are also shown. Determine the vertical stress increase at *A* and *B* due to the loaded area. *A* and *B* are located at a depth of 3 m below the ground surface.

3.10 The plan of a rectangular loaded area on the surface of a silty clay layer is shown in Figure P3.4. The uniformly distributed vertical load on the rectangular area is 165 kN/m^2. Determine the vertical stresses due to a loaded area at *A, B, C*, and *D*. All points are located at a depth of 1.5 m below the ground surface.

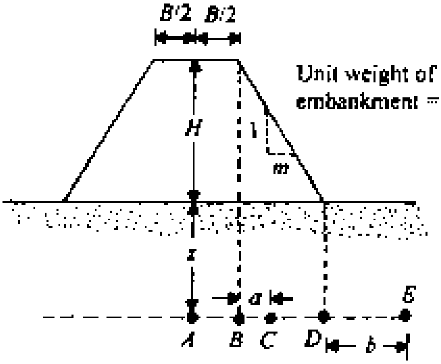


Figure P3.2

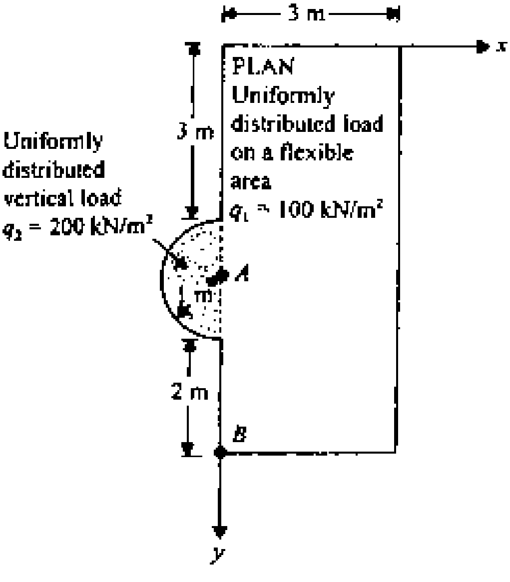


Figure P3.3

3.11 An oil storage tank that is circular in plan is to be constructed over a layer of sand, as shown in Figure P3.5. Calculate the following settlements due to the uniformly distributed load q of the storage tank:

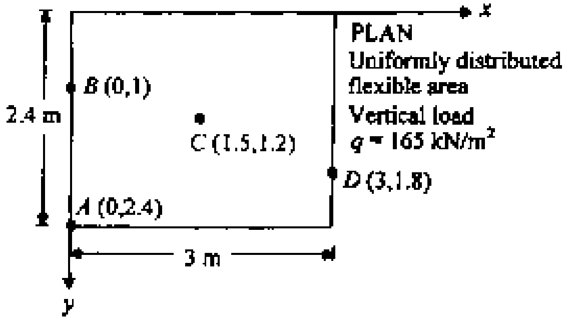


Figure P3.4

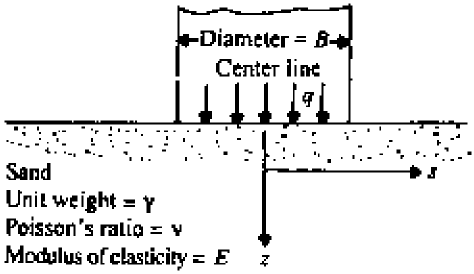


Figure P3.5

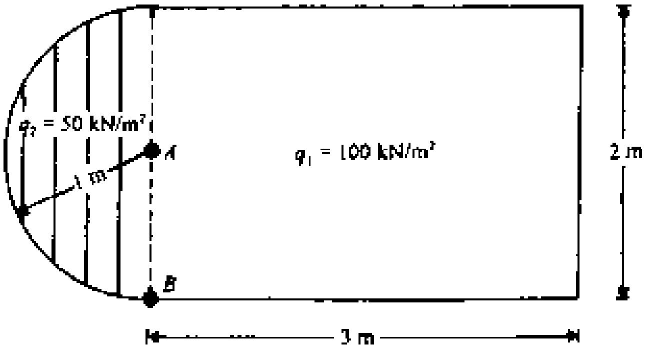


Figure P3.6

(*a*) The elastic settlement below the center of the tank at $z = 0$ and 3 m.
(*b*) The elastic settlement at (*i*) $z = 1.5\,\text{m}$, $s = 0$; (*ii*) $z = 1.5\,\text{m}$, $s = 3\,\text{m}$. Assume that $\upsilon = 0.3$, $E = 36\,\text{MN/m}^2$, $B = 6\,\text{m}$, and $q = 145\,\text{kN/m}^2$

3.12 The plan of a loaded flexible area is shown in Figure P3.6. If load is applied on the ground surface of a thick deposit of sand ($\upsilon = 0.25$), calculate the surface elastic settlement at *A* and *B* in terms of *E*.

References

Ahlvin, R. G. and H. H. Ulery, Tabulated Values for Determining the Complete Pattern of Stresses, Strains and Deflections Beneath a Uniform Load on a Homogeneous Half Space, *Bull. 342*, Highway Research Record, pp. 1–13, 1962.

Borowicka, H., Influence of Rigidity of a Circular Foundation Slab on the Distribution of Pressures over the Contact Surface, *Proc. 1st Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 2, pp. 144–149, 1936.

Borowicka, H., The Distribution of Pressure Under a Uniformly Loaded Elastic Strip Resting on Elastic-Isotropic Ground, *2nd Congr. Intl. Assoc. Bridge Struct. Eng., Berlin, Final Report*, vol. 8, no. 3, 1938.

Boussinesq, J., *Application des Potentials a L'Etude de L'Equilibre et due Mouvement des Solides Elastiques*, Gauthier-Villars, Paris, 1883.

Burmister, D. M., The Theory of Stresses and Displacements in Layer Systems and Application to Design of Airport Runways, *Proc. Hwy. Res. Bd.*, vol. 23, p. 126, 1943.

Burmister, D. M., Evaluation of Pavement Systems of the WASHO Road Testing Layered System Methods, *Bull. 177*, Highway Research Board, 1958.

Fox, L., Computation of Traffic Stresses in a Simple Road Structure, *Proc. 2nd Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 2, pp. 236–246, 1948.

Giroud, J. P., Stresses Under Linearly Loaded Rectangular Area, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 98, no. SM1, pp. 263–268, 1970.

Harr, M. E., *Foundations of Theoretical Soil Mechanics*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1966.

Holl, D. L., Stress Transmissions on Earth, *Proc. Hwy. Res. Bd.*, vol. 20, pp. 709–722, 1940.

Jones, A., Tables of Stresses in Three-Layer Elastic Systems, *Bull. 342*, Highway Research Board, pp. 176–214, 1962.

Kezdi, A. and L. Rethati, *Handbook of Soil Mechanics*, vol. 3, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 1988.

Melan, E., Der Spanningzustand der durch eine Einzelkraft im Innern beanspruchten Halbschiebe, *Z. Angew. Math. Mech*, vol. 12, 1932.

Newmark, N. M., Simplified Computation of Vertical Pressures in Elastic Foundations, *Circ. 24*, University of Illinois Engineering Experiment Station, 1935.

Osterberg, J. O., Influence Values for Vertical Stresses in Semi-infinite Mass Due to Embankment Loading, *Proc. 4th Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 1, p. 393, 1957.

Peattie, K. R., Stresses and Strain Factors for Three-Layer Systems, *Bull. 342*, Highway Research Board, pp. 215–253, 1962.

Poulos, H. G., Stresses and Displacements in an Elastic Layer Underlain by a Rough Rigid Base, *Civ. Eng., Res. Rep. No. R63*, University of Sydney, Australia, 1966.

Poulos, H. G. and E. H. Davis, *Elastic Solutions for Soil and Rock Mechanics*, Wiley, 1974.

Chapter 4

Pore water pressure due to undrained loading

4.1 Introduction

In 1925, Terzaghi suggested the principles of *effective stress* for a saturated soil, according to which the *total vertical stress* σ at a point O (Figure 4.1) can be given as

$$\sigma = \sigma' + u \tag{4.1}$$

where $\sigma = h_1\gamma + h_2\gamma_{\text{sat}}$ (4.2)

σ' = effective stress

u = pore water pressure $= h_2\gamma_{\text{w}}$ (4.3)

γ_{w} = unit weight of water

Combining Eqs. (4.1)–(4.3) gives

$$\sigma' = \sigma - u = (h_1\gamma + h_2\gamma_{\text{sat}}) - h_2\gamma_{\text{w}} = h_1\gamma + h_2\gamma' \tag{4.4}$$

where γ' is the effective unit weight of soil $= \gamma_{\text{sat}} - \gamma_{\text{w}'}$

In general, if the normal total stresses at a point in a soil mass are σ_1, σ_2, and σ_3 (Figure 4.2), the effective stresses can be given as follows:

Direction 1: $\sigma'_1 = \sigma_1 - u$
Direction 2: $\sigma'_2 = \sigma_2 - u$
Direction 3: $\sigma'_3 = \sigma_3 - u$

where σ'_1, σ'_2, and σ'_3 are the effective stresses and u is the pore water pressure, $h\gamma'_{\text{w}}$.

A knowledge of the increase of pore water pressure in soils due to various loading conditions without drainage is important in both theoretical and applied soil mechanics. If a load is applied very slowly on a soil such that sufficient time is allowed for pore water to drain out, there will be practically no increase of pore water pressure. However, when a soil is subjected to rapid loading and if the coefficient of permeability is small (e.g., as in the case of clay), there will be insufficient time for drainage of pore water. This

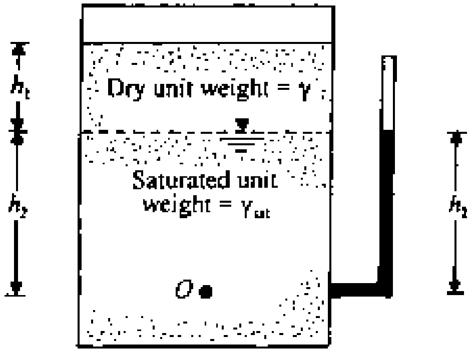


Figure 4.1 Definition of effective stress.

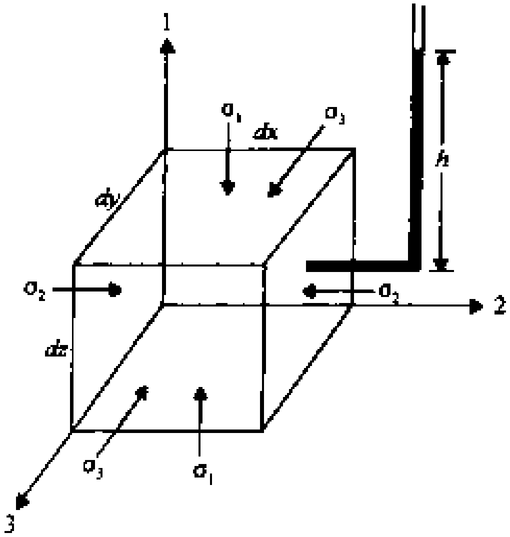


Figure 4.2 Normal total stresses in a soil mass.

will lead to an increase of the excess hydrostatic pressure. In this chapter, mathematical formulations for the excess pore water pressure for various types of undrained loading will be developed.

4.2 Pore water pressure developed due to isotropic stress application

Figure 4.3 shows an isotropic *saturated* soil element subjected to an isotropic stress increase of magnitude $\Delta\sigma$. If drainage from the soil is not allowed, the pore water pressure will increase by Δu.

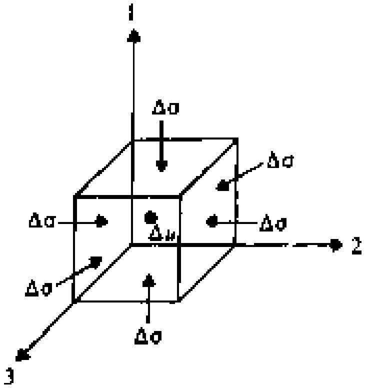


Figure 4.3 Soil element under isotropic stress application.

The increase of pore water pressure will cause a change in volume of the pore fluid by an amount ΔV_p. This can be expressed as

$$\Delta V_p = nV_o C_p \Delta u \tag{4.5}$$

where

n = porosity
C_p = compressibility of pore water
V_o = original volume of soil element

The effective stress increase in all directions of the element is $\Delta\sigma' = \Delta\sigma - \Delta u$. The change in volume of the soil skeleton due to the effective stress increase can be given by

$$\Delta V = 3C_c V_o \Delta\sigma' = 3C_c V_o(\Delta\sigma - \Delta u) \tag{4.6}$$

In Eq. (4.6), C_c is the compressibility of the soil skeleton obtained from laboratory compression results under uniaxial loading with zero excess pore water pressure, as shown in Figure 4.4. It should be noted that compression, i.e., a reduction of volume, is taken as positive.

Since the change in volume of the pore fluid, ΔV_p, is equal to the change in the volume of the soil skeleton, ΔV, we obtain from Eqs. (4.5) and (4.6)

$$nV_o C_p \Delta u = 3C_c V_o(\Delta\sigma - \Delta u)$$

and hence

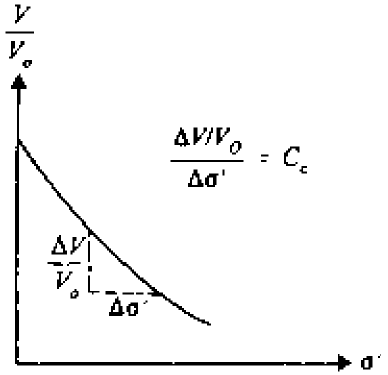


Figure 4.4 Definition of C_c: volume change due to uniaxial stress application with zero excess pore water pressure. (*Note*: V is the volume of the soil element at any given value of σ'.)

$$\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta\sigma} = B = \frac{1}{1+n(C_p/3C_c)} \tag{4.7}$$

where B is the pore pressure parameter (Skempton, 1954).

If the pore fluid is water,

$$C_p = C_w = \text{compressibility of water}$$

and

$$3C_c = C_{sk} = \frac{3(1-v)}{E}$$

where E and $v =$ Young's modulus and Poisson's ratio with respect to changes in effective stress. Hence

$$B = \frac{1}{1+n\left(\frac{C_w}{C_{sk}}\right)} \tag{4.8}$$

4.3 Pore water pressure parameter *B*

Black and Lee (1973) provided the theoretical values of B for various types of soil at complete or near complete saturation. A summary of the soil types and their parameters and the B values at saturation that were considered by Black and Lee is given in Table 4.1.

Figure 4.5 shows the theoretical variation of B parameters for the soils described in Table 4.1 with the degree of saturation. It is obvious from this figure that, for stiffer soils, the B value rapidly decreases with the degree of saturation. This is consistent with the experimental values for several soils shown in Figure 4.6.

Table 4.1 Soils considered by Black and Lee (1973) for evaluation of *B*

Soil type	*Description*	*Void ratio*	C_{sk}	*B at 100% saturation*
Soft soil	Normally consolidated clay	≈2	$\approx 0.145 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}^2/\text{kN}$	0.9998
Medium soil	Compacted silts and clays and lightly overconsolidated clay	≈0.6	$\approx 0.145 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^2/\text{kN}$	0.9988
Stiff soil	Overconsolidated stiff clays, average sand of most densities	≈0.6	$\approx 0.145 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^2/\text{kN}$	0.9877
Very stiff soil	Dense sands and stiff clays, particularly at high confining pressure	≈0.4	$\approx 0.145 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2/\text{kN}$	0.9130

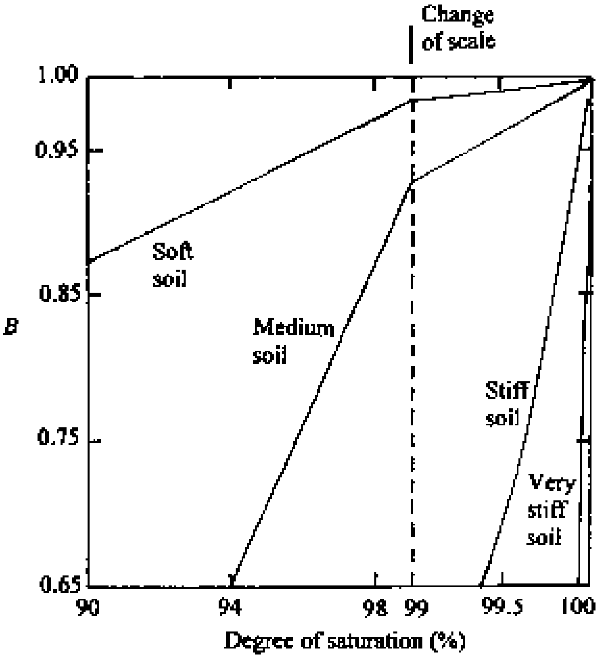


Figure 4.5 Theoretical variation of *B* with degree of saturation for soils described in Table 4.1 (*Note*: Back pressure = 207 kN/m², $\Delta\sigma = 138\ \text{kN/m}^2$).

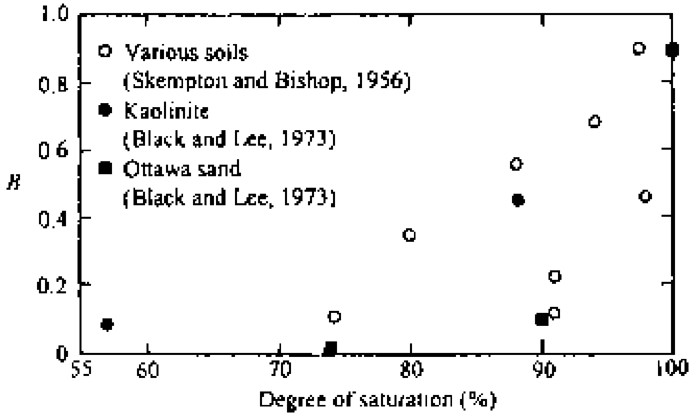


Figure 4.6 Variation of *B* with degree of saturation.

As noted in Table 4.1, the B value is also dependent on the effective isotropic consolidation stress (σ') of the soil. An example of such behavior in saturated varved Fort William clay as reported by Eigenbrod and Burak (1990) is shown in Figure 4.7. The decrease in the B value with an increase in σ' is primarily due to the increase in skeletal stiffness (i.e., C_{sk}).

Hence, in general, for soft soils at saturation or near saturation, $B \approx 1$.

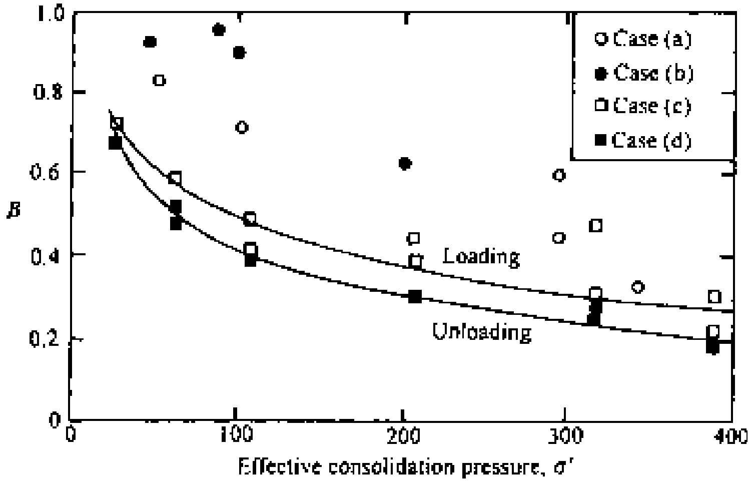


Figure 4.7 Dependence of *B* values on level of isotropic consolidation stress (varved clay) for (*a*) regular triaxial specimens before shearing, (*b*) regular triaxial specimens after shearing, (*c*) special series of *B* tests on one single specimen in loading, and (*d*) special series of *B* tests on one single specimen in unloading (after Eigenbrod and Burak, 1990).

4.4 Pore water pressure due to uniaxial loading

A saturated soil element under a uniaxial stress increment is shown in Figure 4.8. Let the increase of pore water pressure be equal to Δu. As explained in the previous section, the change in the volume of the pore water is

$$\Delta V_{\mathrm{p}} = nV_{\mathrm{o}}C_{\mathrm{p}}\Delta u$$

The increases of the effective stresses on the soil element in Figure 4.7 are

Direction 1: $\Delta\sigma' = \Delta\sigma - \Delta u$
Direction 2: $\Delta\sigma' = 0 - \Delta u = -\Delta u$
Direction 3: $\Delta\sigma' = 0 - \Delta u = -\Delta u$

This will result in a change in the volume of the soil skeleton, which may be written as

$$\Delta V = C_{\mathrm{c}}V_{\mathrm{o}}(\Delta\sigma - \Delta u) + C_{\mathrm{e}}V_{\mathrm{o}}(-\Delta u) + C_{\mathrm{e}}V_{\mathrm{o}}(-\Delta u) \tag{4.9}$$

where C_{e} is the coefficient of the volume expansibility (Figure 4.9). Since $\Delta V_{\mathrm{p}} = \Delta V$,

$$nV_{\mathrm{o}}C_{\mathrm{p}}\Delta u = C_{\mathrm{c}}V_{\mathrm{o}}(\Delta\sigma - \Delta u) - 2C_{\mathrm{e}}V_{\mathrm{o}}\Delta u$$

or

$$\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta\sigma} = A = \frac{C_{\mathrm{c}}}{nC_{\mathrm{p}} + C_{\mathrm{c}} + 2C_{\mathrm{e}}} \tag{4.10}$$

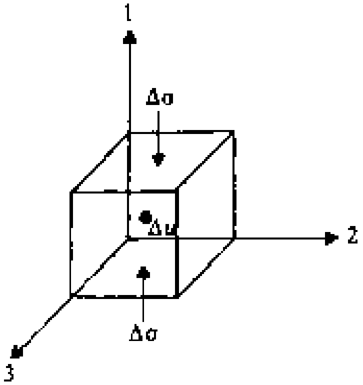


Figure 4.8 Saturated soil element under uniaxial stress increment.

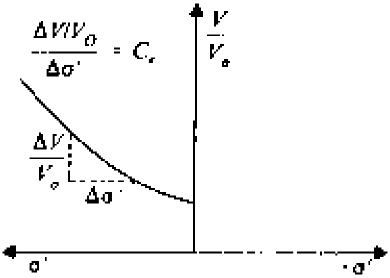


Figure 4.9 Definition of C_e: coefficient of volume expansion under uniaxial loading.

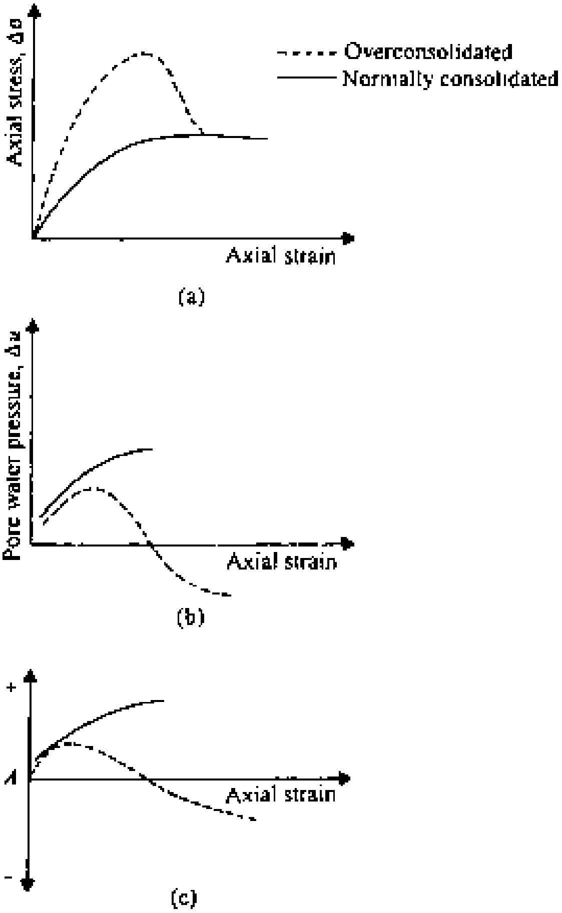


Figure 4.10 Variation of $\Delta\sigma$, Δu, and A for a consolidated drained triaxial test in clay.

where A is the pore pressure parameter (Skempton, 1954).

If we assume that the soil element is elastic, then $C_c = C_e$, or

$$A = \frac{1}{n\left(\frac{C_p}{C_c}\right) + 3} \tag{4.11}$$

Again, as pointed out previously, C_p is much smaller than C_c. So $C_p/C_c \approx 0$, which gives $A = 1/3$. However, in reality, this is not the case, i.e., soil is not a perfectly elastic material, and the actual value of A varies widely.

The magnitude of A for a given soil is not a constant and depends on the stress level. If a consolidated drained triaxial test is conducted on a saturated clay soil, the general nature of variation of $\Delta\sigma$, Δu, and $A = \Delta u/\Delta\sigma$ with axial strain will be as shown in Figure 4.10. For highly overconsolidated clay soils, the magnitude of A at failure (i.e., A_f) may be negative. Table 4.2 gives the typical values of A at failure ($= A_f$) for some normally consolidated clay soils. Figure 4.11 shows the variation of A_f with overconsolidation ratio for Weald clay. Table 4.3 gives the typical range of A values at failure for various soils.

Table 4.2 Values of A_f for normally consolidated clays

Clay	*Type*	*Liquid limit*	*Plasticity index*	*Sensitivity*	A_f
Natural soils					
Toyen	Marine	47	25	8	1.50
		47	25	8	1.48
Drammen	Marine	36	16	4	1.2
		36	16	4	2.4
Saco River	Marine	46	17	10	0.95
Boston	Marine	–	–	–	0.85
Bersimis	Estuarine	39	18	6	0.63
Chew Stoke	Alluvial	28	10	–	0.59
Kapuskasing	Lacustrine	39	23	4	0.46
Decomposed Talus	Residual	50	18	1	0.29
St. Catherines	Till (?)	49	28	3	0.26
Remolded soils					
London	Marine	78	52	1	0.97
Weald	Marine	43	25	1	0.95
Beauharnois	Till (?)	44	24	1	0.73
Boston	Marine	48	24	1	0.69
Beauharnois	Estuarine	70	42	1	0.65
Bersimis	Estuarine	33	13	1	0.38

After Kenney, 1959.

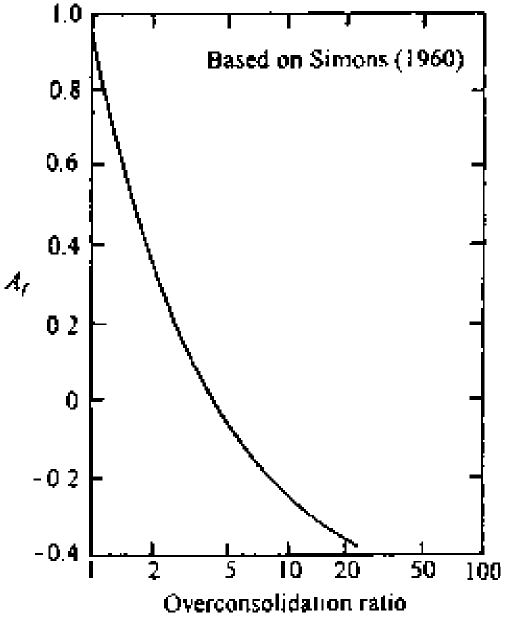


Figure 4.11 Variation of A_f with overconsolidation ratio for Weald clay.

Table 4.3 Typical values of *A* at failure

Type of soil	*A*
Clay with high sensitivity	$\frac{3}{4}$–$1\frac{1}{2}$
Normally consolidated clay	$\frac{1}{2}$–1
Overconsolidated clay	$-\frac{1}{2}$–0
Compacted sandy clay	$\frac{1}{2}$–$\frac{3}{4}$

4.5 Directional variation of A_f

Owing to the nature of deposition of cohesive soils and subsequent consolidation, clay particles tend to become oriented perpendicular to the direction of the major principal stress. Parallel orientation of clay particles could cause the strength of clay and thus A_f to vary with direction. Kurukulasuriya *et al.* (1999) conducted undrained triaxial tests on kaolin clay specimens obtained at various inclinations *i* as shown in Figure 4.12. Figure 4.13

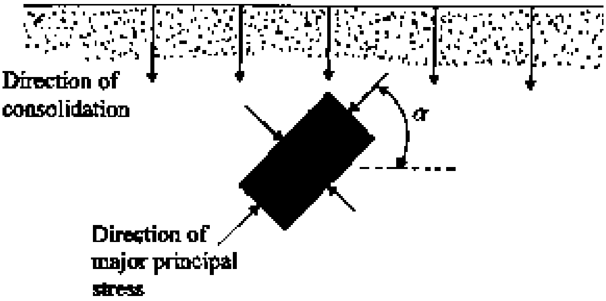


Figure 4.12 Directional variation of major principal stress application.

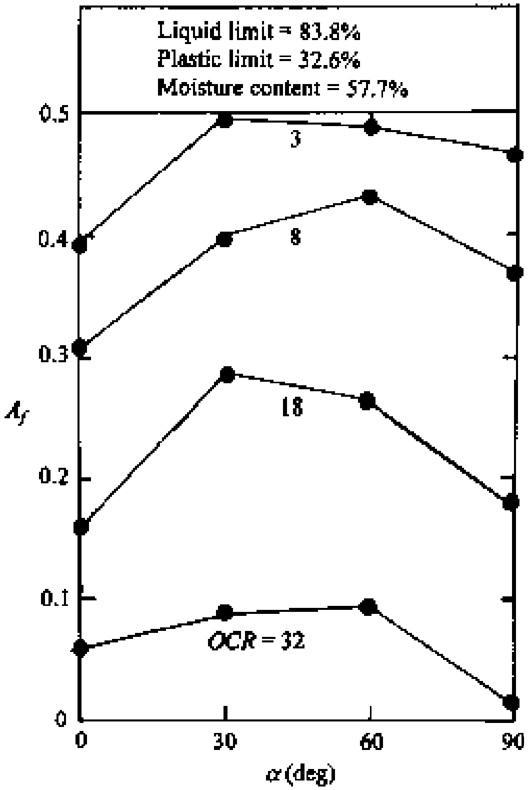


Figure 4.13 Variation of A_f with α and overconsolidation ratio (OCR) for kaolin clay based on the triaxial results of Kurukulasuriya *et al.* (1999).

shows the directional variation of A_f with overconsolidation ratio. It can be seen from this figure that A_f is maximum between $\alpha = 30°–60°$.

4.6 Pore water pressure under triaxial test conditions

A typical stress application on a soil element under triaxial test conditions is shown in Figure 4.14*a* ($\Delta\sigma_1 > \Delta\sigma_3$). Δu is the increase in the pore water pressure without drainage. To develop a relation between Δu, $\Delta\sigma_1$, and $\Delta\sigma_3$, we can consider that the stress conditions shown in Figure 4.14*a* are the sum of the stress conditions shown in Figure 4.14*b* and 4.14*c*.

For the isotropic stress $\Delta\sigma_3$ as applied in Figure 4.14*b*,

$$\Delta u_b = B\Delta\sigma_3 \tag{4.12}$$

[from Eq. (4.7)], and for a uniaxial stress $\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3$ as applied in Figure 4.14*c*,

$$\Delta u_a = A(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) \tag{4.13}$$

[from Eq. (4.10)]. Now,

$$\Delta u = \Delta u_b + \Delta u_a = B\ \Delta\sigma_3 + A(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) \tag{4.14}$$

For saturated soil, if $B = 1$; so

$$\Delta u = \Delta\sigma_3 + A(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) \tag{4.15}$$

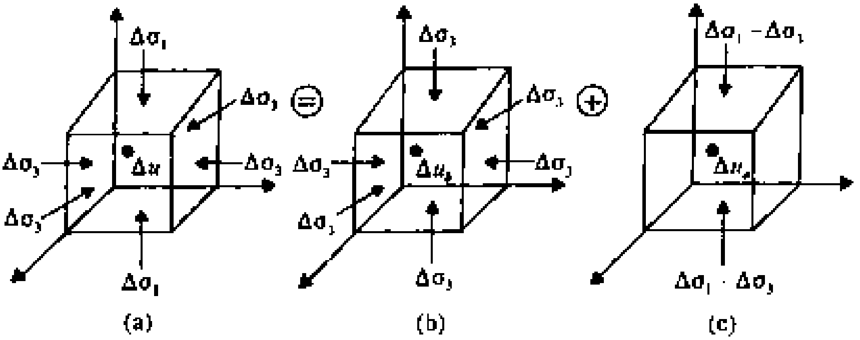


Figure 4.14 Excess pore water pressure under undrained triaxial test conditions.

4.7 Henkel's modification of pore water pressure equation

In several practical considerations in soil mechanics, the intermediate and minor principal stresses are not the same. To take the intermediate principal stress into consideration Figure 4.15, Henkel (1960) suggested a modification of Eq. (4.15):

$$\Delta u = \frac{\Delta\sigma_1 + \Delta\sigma_2 + \Delta\sigma_3}{3} + a\sqrt{(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_2)^2 + (\Delta\sigma_2 - \Delta\sigma_3)^2 + (\Delta\sigma_3 - \Delta\sigma_1)^2} \tag{4.16}$$

or

$$\Delta u = \Delta\sigma_{\text{oct}} + 3a\Delta\tau_{\text{oct}} \tag{4.17}$$

where a is Henkel's pore pressure parameter and $\Delta\sigma_{\text{oct}}$ and $\Delta\tau_{\text{oct}}$ are the increases in the octahedral normal and shear stresses, respectively.

In triaxial compression tests, $\Delta\sigma_2 = \Delta\sigma_3$. For that condition,

$$\Delta u = \frac{\Delta\sigma_1 + 2\Delta\sigma_3}{3} + a\sqrt{2}(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) \tag{4.18}$$

For uniaxial tests as in Figure 4.14*c*, we can substitute $\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3$ for $\Delta\sigma_1$ and zero for $\Delta\sigma_2$ and $\Delta\sigma_3$ in Eq. (4.16), which will yield

$$\Delta u = \frac{\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3}{3} + a\sqrt{2}(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3)$$

or

$$\Delta u = \left(\frac{1}{3} + a\sqrt{2}\right)(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) \tag{4.19}$$

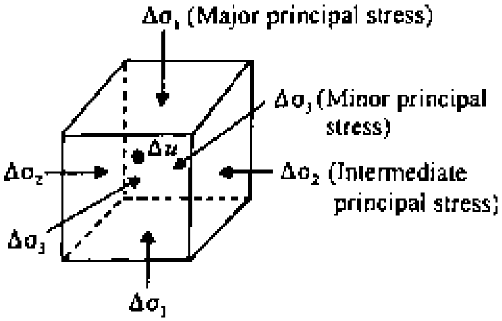


Figure 4.15 Saturated soil element with major, intermediate, and minor principal stresses.

A comparison of Eqs. (4.13) and (4.19) gives

$$A = \left(\frac{1}{3} + a\sqrt{2}\right)$$

or

$$a = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(A - \frac{1}{3}\right) \tag{4.20}$$

The usefulness of this more fundamental definition of pore water pressure is that it enables us to predict the excess pore water pressure associated with loading conditions such as plane strain. This can be illustrated by deriving an expression for the excess pore water pressure developed in a saturated soil (undrained condition) below the centerline of a flexible strip loading of uniform intensity, q (Figure 4.16). The expressions for σ_x, σ_y, and σ_z for such loading are given in Chap. 3. Note that $\sigma_z > \sigma_y > \sigma_x$, and $\sigma_y = v(\sigma_x + \sigma_z)$. Substituting σ_z, σ_y, and σ_x for σ_1, σ_2, and σ_3 in Eq. (4.16) yields

$$\Delta u = \frac{\sigma_z + v(\sigma_x + \sigma_z) + \sigma_x}{3} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(A - \frac{1}{3}\right) \\ \times \sqrt{[\sigma_z - v(\sigma_z + \sigma_x)]^2 + [v(\sigma_z + \sigma_x) - \sigma_x]^2 + (\sigma_x - \sigma_z)^2}$$

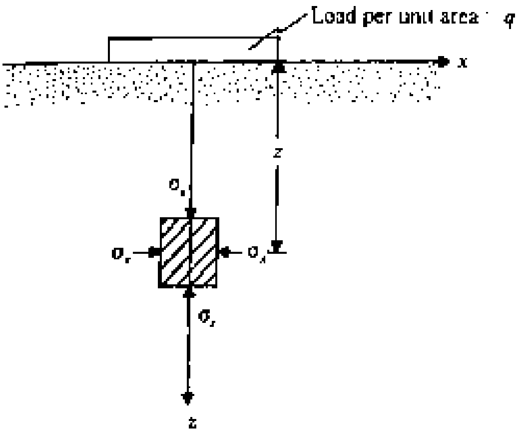


Figure 4.16 Estimation of excess pore water pressure in saturated soil below the centerline of a flexible strip loading (undrained condition).

For $v = 0.5$,

$$\Delta u = \sigma_x + \left[\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(A - \frac{1}{3}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\right](\sigma_z - \sigma_x) \tag{4.21}$$

If a representative value of A can be determined from standard triaxial tests, Δu can be estimated.

EXAMPLE 4.1

A uniform vertical load of 145 kN/m^2 is applied instantaneously over a very long strip, as shown in Figure 4.17. Estimate the excess pore water pressure that will be developed due to the loading at A and B. Assume that $v = 0.45$ and that the representative value of the pore water pressure parameter A determined from standard triaxial tests for such loading is 0.6.

SOLUTION The values of σ_x, σ_z, and τ_{xz} at A and B can be determined from Tables 3.5, 3.6, and 3.7.

- *At A:* $x/b = 0$, $z/b = 2/2 = 1$, and hence

  1. $\sigma_z/q = 0.818$, so $\sigma_z = 0.818 \times 145 = 118.6\,\text{kN/m}^2$
  2. $\sigma_x/q = 0.182$, so $\sigma_x = 26.39\,\text{kN/m}^2$
  3. $\tau_{xz}/q = 0$, so $\tau_{xz} = 0$.

Note that in this case σ_z and σ_x are the major (σ_1) and minor (σ_3) principal stresses, respectively.

This is a plane strain case. So the intermediate principal stress is

$$\sigma_2 = v(\sigma_1 + \sigma_3) = 0.45(118.6 + 26.39) = 65.25 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

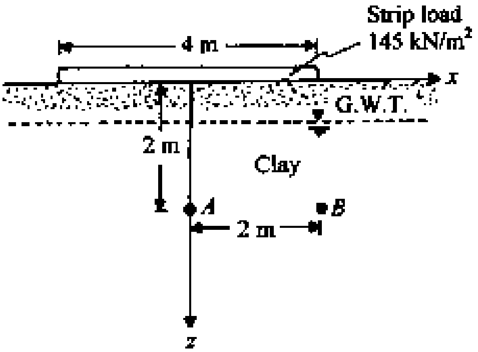


Figure 4.17 Uniform vertical strip load on ground surface.

From Eq. (4.20),

$$a = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(A - \frac{1}{3}\right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(0.6 - \frac{1}{3}\right) = 0.189$$

So

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta u &= \frac{\sigma_1 + \sigma_2 + \sigma_3}{3} + a\sqrt{(\sigma_1 - \sigma_2)^2 + (\sigma_2 - \sigma_3)^2 + (\sigma_3 - \sigma_1)^2} \\ &= \frac{118.6 + 65.25 + 26.39}{3} \\ &\quad + 0.189\sqrt{(118.6 - 65.25)^2 + (65.25 - 26.39)^2 + (26.39 - 118.6)^2} \\ &= 91.51\,\text{kN/m}^2\end{aligned}$$

- *At B*: $x/b = 2/2 = 1$, $z/b = 2/2 = 1$, and hence

1. $\sigma_z/q = 0.480$, so $\sigma_z = 0.480 \times 145 = 69.6$ kN/m^2
2. $\sigma_x/q = 0.2250$, so $\sigma_x = 0.2250 \times 145 = 32.63$ kN/m^2
3. $\tau_{xz}/q = 0.255$, so $\tau_{xz} = 0.255 \times 145 = 36.98$ kN/m^2

Calculation of the major and minor principal stresses is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_1, \sigma_3 &= \frac{\sigma_z + \sigma_x}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_z - \sigma_x}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xz}^2} \\ &= \frac{69.6 + 32.63}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{69.6 - 32.63}{2}\right)^2 + 36.98^2}\end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\sigma_1 = 92.46 \text{ kN/m}^2 \qquad \sigma_3 = 9.78 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$\sigma_2 = 0.45(92.46 + 9.78) = 46 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta u &= \frac{92.46 + 9.78 + 46}{3} \\ &\quad + 0.189\sqrt{(92.46 - 46)^2 + (46 - 9.78)^2 + (9.78 - 92.46)^2} \\ &= 68.6 \text{ kN/m}^2\end{aligned}$$

4.8 Pore water pressure due to one-dimensional strain loading (oedometer test)

In Sec. 4.4, the development of pore water pressure due to uniaxial loading (Figure 4.8) is discussed. In that case, the soil specimen was allowed to undergo axial and lateral strains. However, in oedometer tests the soil specimens are confined laterally, thereby allowing only one directional strain, i.e., strain in the direction of load application. For such a case, referring to Figure 4.8,

$$\Delta V_{\mathrm{p}} = nV_{\mathrm{o}}C_{\mathrm{p}}\Delta u$$

and

$$\Delta V = C_{\mathrm{c}}V_{\mathrm{o}}(\Delta\sigma - \Delta u)$$

However, $\Delta V_{\mathrm{p}} = \Delta V$. So,

$$nV_{\mathrm{o}}C_{\mathrm{p}}\Delta u = C_{\mathrm{c}}V_{\mathrm{o}}(\Delta\sigma - \Delta u)$$

or

$$\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta\sigma} = C = \frac{1}{1 + n(C_{\mathrm{p}}/C_{\mathrm{c}})} \tag{4.22}$$

If $C_{\mathrm{p}} < C_{\mathrm{c}}$, the ratio $C_{\mathrm{p}}/C_{\mathrm{c}} \approx 0$; hence $C \approx 1$. Lambe and Whitman (1969) reported the following C values:

Vicksburg buckshot clay slurry	0.99983
Lagunillas soft clay	0.99957
Lagunillas sandy clay	0.99718

More recently, Veyera *et al.* (1992) reported the C values in *reloading* for two poorly graded sands (i.e., Monterrey no. 0/30 sand and Enewetak coral sand) at various relative densities of compaction (D_{r}). In conducting the tests, the specimens were first consolidated by application of an initial stress (σ'_{c}), and then the stress was reduced by 69 kN/m^2. Following that, under undrained conditions, the stress was increased by 69 kN/m^2 in increments of 6.9 kN/m^2. The results of those tests for Monterey no. 0/30 sand are given in Table 4.4.

From Table 4.4, it can be seen that the magnitude of the C value can decrease well below 1.0, depending on the soil stiffness. An increase in the initial relative density of compaction as well as an increase in the effective confining pressure does increase the soil stiffness.

Table 4.4 C values in reloading for Monterrey no. 0/30 sand [compiled from the results of Veyera et al. (1992)]

Relative density D_r (%)	*Effective confining pressure σ'_c (kN/m^2)*	C
6	86	1.00
6	172	0.85
6	345	0.70
27	86	1.00
27	172	0.83
27	345	0.69
27	690	0.56
46	86	1.00
46	172	0.81
46	345	0.66
46	690	0.55
65	86	1.00
65	172	0.79
65	345	0.62
65	690	0.53
85	86	1.00
85	172	0.74
85	345	0.61
85	690	0.51

PROBLEMS

4.1 A line load of $q = 60\,\text{kN/m}$ with $\alpha = 0$ is placed on a ground surface as shown in Figure P4.1. Calculate the increase of pore water pressure at M immediately after application of the load for the cases given below.

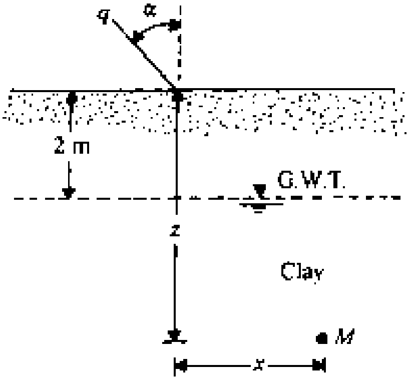


Figure P4.1

(*a*) $z = 10\,\text{m}$, $x = 0\,\text{m}$, $v = 0.5$, $A = 0.45$.
(*b*) $z = 10\,\text{m}$, $x = 2\,\text{m}$, $v = 0.45$, $A = 0.6$.

4.2 Redo Prob. 4.1*a* and 4.1*b* with $q = 60\,\text{kN/m}$ and $\alpha = 90°$.

4.3 Redo Prob. 4.1*a* and 4.1*b* with $q = 60\,\text{kN/m}$ and $\alpha = 30°$.

4.4 Determine the increase of pore water pressure at M due to the strip loading shown in Figure P4.2 Assume $v = 0.5$ and $\alpha = 0$ for all cases given below.

(*a*) $z = 2.5\,\text{m}$; $x = 0\,\text{m}$; $A = 0.65$.
(*b*) $z = 2.5\,\text{m}$; $x = 1.25\,\text{m}$; $A = 0.52$.

4.5 Redo Prob. 4.4*b* for $\alpha = 45°$.
4.6 A surcharge of $195\,\text{kN/m}^2$ was applied over a circular area of diameter 3 m, as shown in Figure P4.3. Estimate the height of water h_1 that a piezometer would show immediately after the application of the surcharge. Assume that $A \approx 0.65$ and $v = 0.5$.
4.7 Redo Prob. 4.6 for point M; i.e., find h_2.

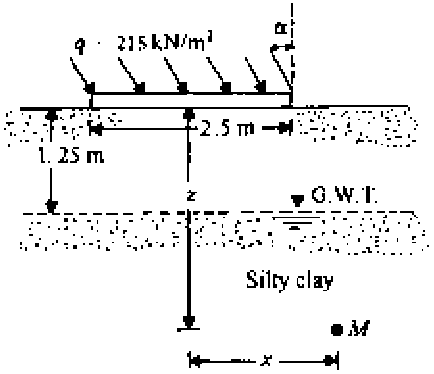


Figure P4.2

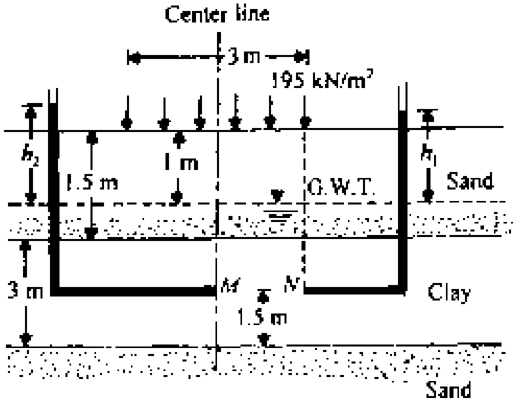


Figure P4.3

References

Black, D. K. and K. L. Lee, Saturating Samples by Back Pressure, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 99, no. SMI, pp. 75–93, 1973.

Eigenbrod, K. D. and J. P. Burak, Measurement of *B* Values Less than Unity for Thinly Interbedded Varved Clay, *Geotech. Testing J.*, vol. 13, no. 4, pp. 370–374, 1990.

Henkel, D. J., The Shear Strength of Saturated Remolded Clays, *Proc. Res. Conf. Shear Strength of Cohesive Soils*, ASCE, pp. 533–554, 1960.

Kenney, T. C., Discussion, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 85, no. SM3, pp. 67–79, 1959.

Kurukulasuriya, L. C., M. Oda, and H. Kazama, Anisotropy of Undrained Shear Strength of an Over-Consolidated Soil by Triaxial and Plane Strain Tests, *Soils and Found.*, vol. 39, no. 1, pp. 21–29, 1999.

Lambe, T. W. and R. V. Whitman, *Soil Mechanics*, Wiley, New York, 1969.

Simons, N. E., The Effect of Overconsolidation on the Shear Strength Characteristics of an Undisturbed Oslo Clay, *Proc. Res. Conf. Shear Strength of Cohesive Soils*, ASCE, pp. 747–763, 1960.

Skempton, A. W., The Pore Pressure Coefficients *A* and *B, Geotechnique*, vol. 4, pp. 143–147, 1954.

Skempton, A. W. and A. W. Bishop, *Soils, Building Materials, Their Elasticity and Inelasticity*, M. Reiner, ed., North Holland, Amsterdam, 1956.

Terzaghi, K., *Erdbaumechanik auf Bodenphysikalisher Grundlage*, Deuticke, Vienna, 1925.

Veyera, G. E., W. A. Charlie, D. O. Doehring, and M. E. Hubert, Measurement of the Pore Pressure Parameter *C* Less than Unity in Saturated Sands, *Geotech. Testing J.*, vol. 15, no. 3, pp. 223–230, 1992.

Chapter 5

Permeability and seepage

5.1 Introduction

Any given mass of soil consists of solid particles of various sizes with interconnected void spaces. The continuous void spaces in a soil permit water to flow from a point of high energy to a point of low energy. Permeability is defined as the property of a soil that allows the seepage of fluids through its interconnected void spaces. This chapter is devoted to the study of the basic parameters involved in the flow of water through soils.

PERMEABILITY

5.2 Darcy's law

In order to obtain a fundamental relation for the quantity of seepage through a soil mass under a given condition, consider the case shown in Figure 5.1. The cross-sectional area of the soil is equal to A and the rate of seepage is q.

According to Bernoulli's theorem, the total head for flow at any section in the soil can be given by

$$\text{Total head} = \text{elevation head} + \text{pressure head} + \text{velocity head} \tag{5.1}$$

The velocity head for flow through soil is very small and can be neglected. The total heads at sections A and B can thus be given by

$$\text{Total head at A} = z_\text{A} + h_\text{A}$$

$$\text{Total head at B} = z_\text{B} + h_\text{B}$$

where z_A and z_B are the elevation heads and h_A and h_B are the pressure heads. The loss of head Δh between sections A and B is

$$\Delta h = (z_\text{A} + h_\text{A}) - (z_\text{B} + h_\text{B}) \tag{5.2}$$

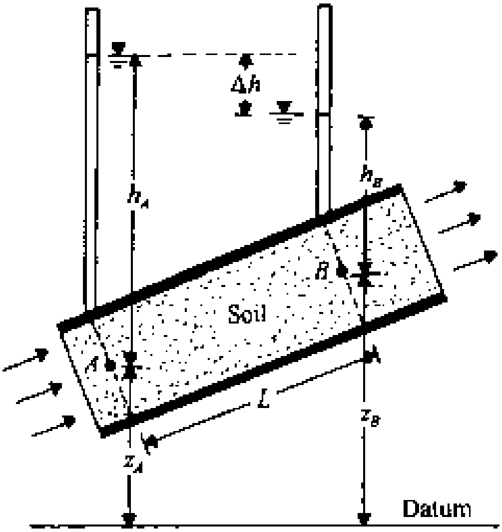


Figure 5.1 Development of Darcy's law.

The hydraulic gradient i can be written as

$$i = \frac{\Delta h}{L} \tag{5.3}$$

where L is the distance between sections A and B.

Darcy (1856) published a simple relation between the discharge velocity and the hydraulic gradient:

$$v = ki \tag{5.4}$$

where

v = discharge velocity
i = hydraulic gradient
k = coefficient of permeability

Hence the rate of seepage q can be given by

$$q = kiA \tag{5.5}$$

Note that A is the cross-section of the soil perpendicular to the direction of flow.

The coefficient of permeability k has the units of velocity, such as cm/s or mm/s, and is a measure of the resistance of the soil to flow of water. When the properties of water affecting the flow are included, we can express k by the relation

$$k(\text{cm/s}) = \frac{K\rho g}{\mu} \tag{5.6}$$

where

$K =$ intrinsic (or absolute) permeability, cm^2
$\rho =$ mass density of the fluid, g/cm^3
$g =$ acceleration due to gravity, cm/s^2
$\mu =$ absolute viscosity of the fluid, poise [that is, g/(cm · s)]

It must be pointed out that the velocity v given by Eq. (5.4) is the discharge velocity calculated on the basis of the gross cross-sectional area. Since water can flow only through the interconnected pore spaces, the actual velocity of seepage through soil, v_s, can be given by

$$v_s = \frac{v}{n} \tag{5.7}$$

where n is the porosity of the soil.

Some typical values of the coefficient of permeability are given in Table 5.1. The coefficient of permeability of soils is generally expressed at a temperature of 20°C. At any other temperature T, the coefficient of permeability can be obtained from Eq. (5.6) as

$$\frac{k_{20}}{k_T} = \frac{(\rho_{20})(\mu_T)}{(\rho_T)(\mu_{20})}$$

where

$k_T,\ k_{20} =$ coefficient of permeability at T°C and 20°C, respectively
$\rho_T,\ \rho_{20} =$ mass density of the fluid at T°C and 20°C, respectively
$\mu_T,\ \mu_{20} =$ coefficient of viscosity at T°C and 20°C, respectively

Table 5.1 Typical values of coefficient of permeability for various soils

Material	*Coefficient of permeability (mm/s)*
Coarse	10–10^3
Fine gravel, coarse, and medium sand	10^{-2}–10
Fine sand, loose silt	10^{-4}–10^{-2}
Dense silt, clayey silt	10^{-5}–10^{-4}
Silty clay, clay	10^{-8}–10^{-5}

Table 5.2 Values of μ_T/μ_{20}

Temperature T(°C)	μ_T/μ_{20}	*Temperature T(°C)*	μ_T/μ_{20}
10	1.298	21	0.975
11	1.263	22	0.952
12	1.228	23	0.930
13	1.195	24	0.908
14	1.165	25	0.887
15	1.135	26	0.867
16	1.106	27	0.847
17	1.078	28	0.829
18	1.051	29	0.811
19	1.025	30	0.793
20	1.000		

Since the value of ρ_{20}/ρ_T is approximately 1, we can write

$$k_{20} = k_T \frac{\mu_T}{\mu_{20}} \tag{5.8}$$

Table 5.2 gives the values of μ_T/μ_{20} for a temperature T varying from 10 to 30°C.

5.3 Validity of Darcy's law

Darcy's law given by Eq. (5.4), $v = ki$, is true for laminar flow through the void spaces. Several studies have been made to investigate the range over which Darcy's law is valid, and an excellent summary of these works was given by Muskat (1937). A criterion for investigating the range can be furnished by the Reynolds number. For flow through soils, Reynolds number R_n can be given by the relation

$$R_n = \frac{vD\rho}{\mu} \tag{5.9}$$

where

v = discharge (superficial) velocity, cm/s
D = average diameter of the soil particle, cm
ρ = density of the fluid, g/cm^3
μ = coefficient of viscosity, g/(cm · s).

For laminar flow conditions in soils, experimental results show that

$$R_n = \frac{vD_\rho}{\mu} \leq 1 \tag{5.10}$$

with coarse sand, assuming $D = 0.45$ mm and $k \approx 100D^2 = 100(0.045)^2 = 0.203$ cm/s. Assuming $i = 1$, then $v = ki = 0.203$ cm/s. Also, $\rho_{\text{water}} \approx 1$ g/cm^3, and $\mu_{20°\text{C}} = (10^{-5})(981)$ g/(cm · s). Hence

$$R_n = \frac{(0.203)(0.045)(1)}{(10^{-5})(981)} = 0.931 < 1$$

From the above calculations, we can conclude that, for flow of water through all types of soil (sand, silt, and clay), the flow is laminar and Darcy's law is valid. With coarse sands, gravels, and boulders, turbulent flow of water can be expected, and the hydraulic gradient can be given by the relation

$$i = av + bv^2 \tag{5.11}$$

where a and b are experimental constants [see Forchheimer (1902), for example].

Darcy's law as defined by Eq. (5.4) implies that the discharge velocity bears a linear relation with the hydraulic gradient. Hansbo (1960) reported the test results of four undisturbed natural clays. On the basis of his results (Figure 5.2),

$$v = k(i - i') \qquad i \geq i' \tag{5.12}$$

and

$$v = ki^n \qquad i < i' \tag{5.13}$$

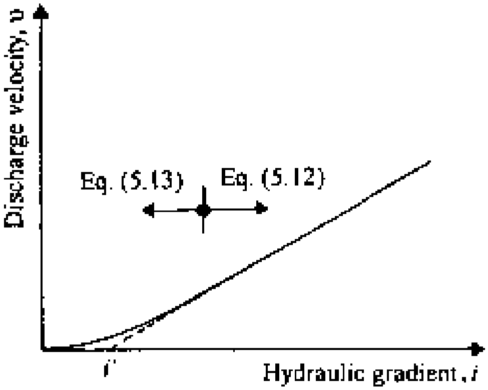


Figure 5.2 Variation of v with i [Eqs. (5.12) and (5.13).]

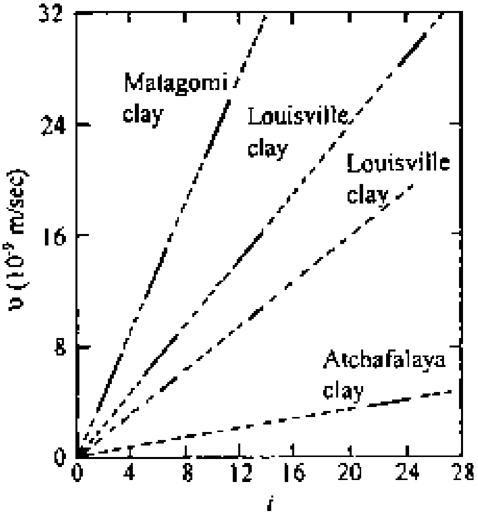


Figure 5.3 Discharge velocity-gradient relationship for four clays (after Tavenas *et al.*, 1983b).

The value of n for the four Swedish clays was about 1.6. There are several studies, however, that refute the preceding conclusion.

Figure 5.3 shows the laboratory test results between v and i for four clays (Tavenas *et al.*, 1983a,b). These tests were conducted using triaxial test equipment, and the results show that Darcy's law is valid.

5.4 Determination of coefficient of permeability in the laboratory

The three most common laboratory methods for determining the coefficient of permeability of soils are the following:

1. constant-head test
2. falling-head test
3. indirect determination from consolidation test

The general principles of these methods are given below.

Constant-head test

The constant-head test is suitable for more permeable granular materials. The basic laboratory test arrangement is shown in Figure 5.4. The soil specimen is placed inside a cylindrical mold, and the constant-head loss h

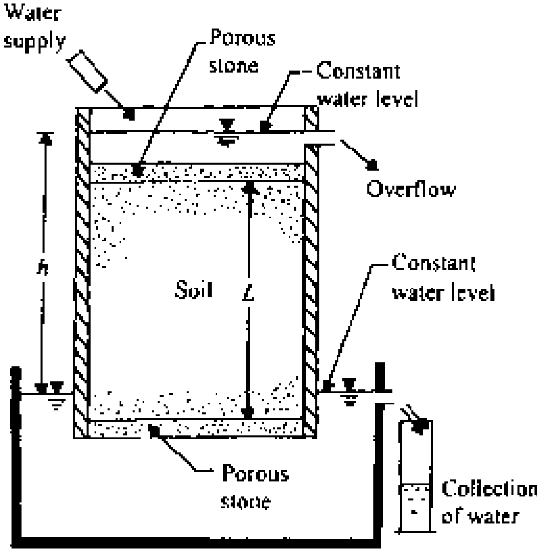


Figure 5.4 Constant-head laboratory permeability test.

of water flowing through the soil is maintained by adjusting the supply. The outflow water is collected in a measuring cylinder, and the duration of the collection period is noted. From Darcy's law, the total quantity of flow Q in time t can be given by

$$Q = qt = kiAt$$

where A is the area of cross-section of the specimen. However, $i = h/L$, where L is the length of the specimen, and so $Q = k(h/L)At$. Rearranging gives

$$k = \frac{QL}{hAt} \tag{5.14}$$

Once all the quantities on the right-hand side of Eq. (5.14) have been determined from the test, the coefficient of permeability of the soil can be calculated.

Falling-head test

The falling-head permeability test is more suitable for fine-grained soils. Figure 5.5 shows the general laboratory arrangement for the test. The soil specimen is placed inside a tube, and a standpipe is attached to the top of

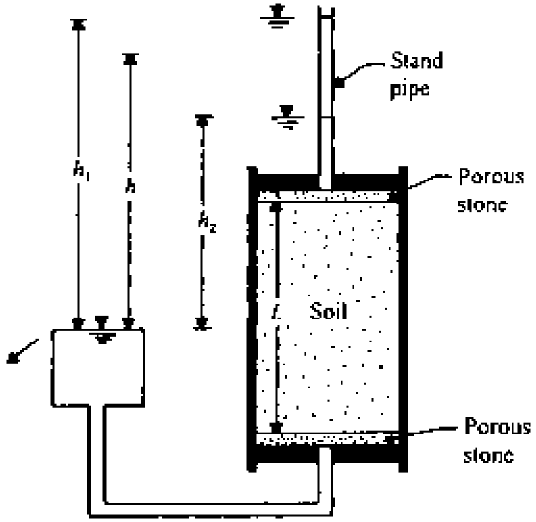


Figure 5.5 Falling-head laboratory permeability test.

the specimen. Water from the standpipe flows through the specimen. The initial head difference h_1 at time $t = 0$ is recorded, and water is allowed to flow through the soil such that the final head difference at time $t = t$ is h_2.

The rate of flow through the soil is

$$q = kiA = k\frac{h}{L}A = -a\frac{dh}{dt} \tag{5.15}$$

where

h = head difference at any time t
A = area of specimen
a = area of standpipe
L = length of specimen

From Eq. (5.15),

$$\int_0^t dt = \int_{h_1}^{h_2} \frac{aL}{Ak}\left(-\frac{dh}{h}\right)$$

or

$$k = 2.303\frac{aL}{At}\log\frac{h_1}{h_2} \tag{5.16}$$

The values of a, L, A, t, h_1, and h_2 can be determined from the test, and the coefficient of the permeability k for a soil can then be calculated from Eq. (5.16).

Permeability from consolidation test

The coefficient of permeability of clay soils is often determined by the consolidation test, the procedures of which are explained in Sec. 6.5. From Eq. (6.25),

$$T_\upsilon = \frac{C_\upsilon t}{H^2}$$

where

T_υ = time factor
C_υ = coefficient of consolidation
H = length of average drainage path
t = time

The coefficient of consolidation is [see Eq. (6.15)]

$$C_\upsilon = \frac{k}{\gamma_w m_\upsilon}$$

where

γ_w = unit weight of water
m_υ = volume coefficient of compressibility

Also,

$$m_\upsilon = \frac{\Delta e}{\Delta\sigma(1+e)}$$

where

Δe = change of void ratio for incremental loading
$\Delta\sigma$ = incremental pressure applied
e = initial void ratio

Combining these three equations, we have

$$k = \frac{T_\upsilon \gamma_w \Delta e H^2}{t\Delta\sigma(1+e)} \tag{5.17}$$

For 50% consolidation, $T_v = 0.197$, and the corresponding t_{50} can be estimated according to the procedure presented in Sec. 6.10. Hence

$$k = \frac{0.197\gamma_w \Delta e H^2}{t_{50}\Delta\sigma(1+e)} \tag{5.18}$$

5.5 Variation of coefficient of permeability for granular soils

For fairly uniform sand (i.e., small uniformity coefficient), Hazen (1911) proposed an empirical relation for the coefficient of permeability in the form

$$k(\text{cm/s}) = cD_{10}^2 \tag{5.19}$$

where c is a constant that varies from 1.0 to 1.5 and D_{10} is the effective size, in millimeters, and is defined in Chap. 1. Equation (5.19) is based primarily on observations made by Hazen on loose, clean filter sands. A small quantity of silts and clays, when present in a sandy soil, may substantially change the coefficient of permeability.

Casagrande proposed a simple relation for the coefficient of permeability for fine to medium clean sand in the following form:

$$k = 1.4e^2 k_{0.85} \tag{5.20}$$

where k is the coefficient of permeability at a void ratio e and $k_{0.85}$ is the corresponding value at a void ratio of 0.85.

A theoretical solution for the coefficient of permeability also exists in the literature. This is generally referred to as the Kozeny–Carman equation, which is derived below.

It was pointed out earlier in this chapter that the flow through soils finer than coarse gravel is laminar. The interconnected voids in a given soil mass can be visualized as a number of capillary tubes through which water can flow (Figure 5.6).

According to the Hagen–Poiseuille equation, the quantity of flow of water in unit time, q, through a capillary tube of radius R can be given by

$$q = \frac{\gamma_w S}{8\mu} R^2 a \tag{5.21}$$

where

γ_w = unit weight of water
μ = absolute coefficient of viscosity

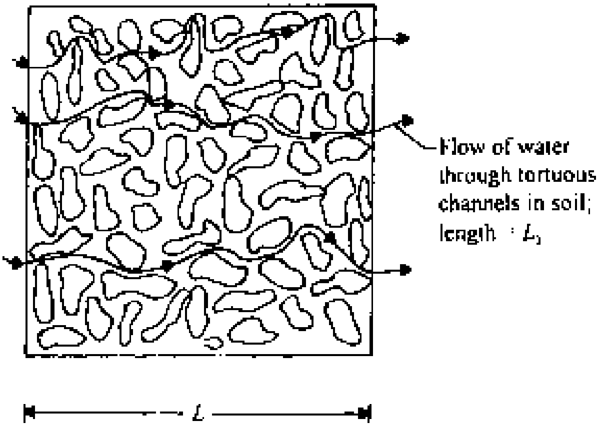


Figure 5.6 Flow of water through tortuous channels in soil.

a = area cross-section of tube
S = hydraulic gradient

The hydraulic radius R_H of the capillary tube can be given by

$$R_H = \frac{\text{area}}{\text{wetted perimeter}} = \frac{\pi R^2}{2\pi R} = \frac{R}{2} \tag{5.22}$$

From Eqs. (5.21) and (5.22),

$$q = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\gamma_w S}{\mu} R_H^2 a \tag{5.23}$$

For flow through two parallel plates, we can also derive

$$q = \frac{1}{3}\frac{\gamma_w S}{\mu} R_H^2 a \tag{5.24}$$

So, for laminar flow conditions the flow through any cross-section can be given by a general equation

$$q = \frac{\gamma_w S}{C_S \mu} R_H^2 a \tag{5.25}$$

where C_S is the shape factor. Also, the average velocity of flow v_a is given by

$$v_a = \frac{q}{a} = \frac{\gamma_w S}{C_S \mu} R_H^2 \tag{5.26}$$

For an actual soil, the interconnected void spaces can be assumed to be a number of tortuous channels (Figure 5.6), and for these, the term S in Eq. (5.26) is equal to $\Delta h/\Delta L_1$. Now,

$$R_{\mathrm{H}} = \frac{\text{area}}{\text{perimeter}} = \frac{\text{(area)(length)}}{\text{(perimenter)(length)}} = \frac{\text{volume}}{\text{surface area}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\text{(surface area)/(volume of pores)}} \tag{5.27}$$

If the total volume of soil is V, the volume of voids is $V_v = nV$, where n is porosity. Let S_V be equal to the surface area per unit volume of soil (bulk). From Eq. (5.27),

$$R_{\mathrm{H}} = \frac{\text{volume}}{\text{surface area}} = \frac{nV}{S_V V} = \frac{n}{S_{\mathrm{V}}} \tag{5.28}$$

Substituting Eq. (5.28) into Eq. (5.26) and taking $v_{\mathrm{a}} = v_{\mathrm{s}}$ (where v_{s} is the actual seepage velocity through soil), we get

$$v_{\mathrm{s}} = \frac{\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}{C_{\mathrm{S}}\mu} S \frac{n^2}{S_V^2} \tag{5.29}$$

It must be pointed out that the hydraulic gradient i used for soils is the macroscopic gradient. The factor S in Eq. (5.29) is the microscopic gradient for flow through soils. Referring to Figure 5.6, $i = \Delta h/\Delta L$ and $S = \Delta h/\Delta L_1$. So,

$$i = \frac{\Delta h}{\Delta L_1}\frac{\Delta L_1}{\Delta L} = ST \tag{5.30}$$

or

$$S = \frac{i}{T} \tag{5.31}$$

where T is tortuosity, $\Delta L_1/\Delta L$.

Again, the seepage velocity in soils is

$$v_{\mathrm{s}} = \frac{v}{n}\frac{\Delta L_1}{\Delta L} = \frac{v}{n}T \tag{5.32}$$

where v is the discharge velocity. Substitution of Eqs. (5.32) and (5.31) into Eq. (5.29) yields

$$v_{\mathrm{s}} = \frac{v}{n}T = \frac{\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}{C_{\mathrm{S}}\mu}\frac{i}{T}\frac{n^2}{S_V^2}$$

or

$$v = \frac{\gamma_w}{C_S \mu S_V^2} \frac{n^3}{T^2} i \tag{5.33}$$

In Eq. (5.33), S_V is the surface area per unit volume of soil. If we define S_s as the surface area per unit volume of soil solids, then

$$S_s V_s = S_V V \tag{5.34}$$

where V_s is the volume of soil solids in a bulk volume V, that is,

$$V_s = (1 - n)V$$

So,

$$S_s = \frac{S_V V}{V_s} = \frac{S_V V}{(1-n)V} = \frac{S_V}{1-n} \tag{5.35}$$

Combining Eqs. (5.33) and (5.35), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \frac{\gamma_w}{C_S \mu S_s^2 T^2} \frac{n^3}{(1-n)^2} i \\ &= \frac{1}{C_S S_s^2 T^2} \frac{\gamma_w}{\mu} \frac{e^3}{1+e} i \end{aligned} \tag{5.36}$$

where e is the void ratio. This relation is the Kozeny–Carman equation (Kozeny, 1927; Carman, 1956). Comparing Eqs. (5.4) and (5.36), we find that the coefficient of permeability is

$$k = \frac{1}{C_S S_s^2 T^2} \frac{\gamma_w}{\mu} \frac{e^3}{1+e} \tag{5.37}$$

The absolute permeability was defined by Eq. (5.6) as

$$K = k \frac{\mu}{\gamma_w}$$

Comparing Eqs. (5.6) and (5.37),

$$K = \frac{1}{C_S S_s^2 T^2} \frac{e^3}{1+e} \tag{5.38}$$

The Kozeny–Carman equation works well for describing coarse-grained soils such as sand and some silts. For these cases the coefficient of permeability bears a linear relation to $e^3/(1+e)$. However, serious discrepancies are observed when the Kozeny–Carman equation is applied to clayey soils.

For granular soils, the shape factor C_S is approximately 2.5, and the tortuosity factor T is about $\sqrt{2}$. Thus, from Eq. (5.20), we write that

$$k \propto e^2 \tag{5.39}$$

Similarly, from Eq. (5.37),

$$k \propto \frac{e^3}{1+e} \tag{5.40}$$

Amer and Awad (1974) used the preceding relation and their experimental results to provide

$$k = C_1 D_{10}^{2.32} C_u^{0.6} \frac{e^3}{1+e} \tag{5.41}$$

where D_{10} is effective size, C_u a uniformity coefficient, and C_1 a constant.

Another form of relation for coefficient of permeability and void ratio for granular soils has also been used, namely,

$$k \propto \frac{e^2}{1+e} \tag{5.42}$$

For comparison of the validity of the relations given in Eqs. (5.39)–(5.42), the experimental results (laboratory constant-head test) for a uniform Madison sand are shown in Figure 5.7. From the plot, it appears that all three relations are equally good.

More recently, Chapuis (2004) proposed an empirical relationship for k in conjunction with Eq. (5.42) as

$$k\ (\text{cm/s}) = 2.4622 \left[D_{10}^2 \frac{e^3}{(1+e)} \right]^{0.7825} \tag{5.43}$$

where D_{10} = effective size (mm).

The preceding equation is valid for natural, uniform sand and gravel to predict k that is in the range of 10^{-1}–10^{-3} cm/s. This can be extended to natural, silty sands without plasticity. It is not valid for crushed materials or silty soils with some plasticity.

Mention was made in Sec. 5.3 that turbulent flow conditions may exist in very coarse sands and gravels and that Darcy's law may not be valid for these materials. However, under a low hydraulic gradient, laminar flow conditions usually exist. Kenney *et al.* (1984) conducted laboratory tests on granular soils in which the particle sizes in various specimens ranged from 0.074 to 25.4 mm. The uniformity coefficients of these specimens, C_u, ranged from 1.04 to 12. All permeability tests were conducted at a

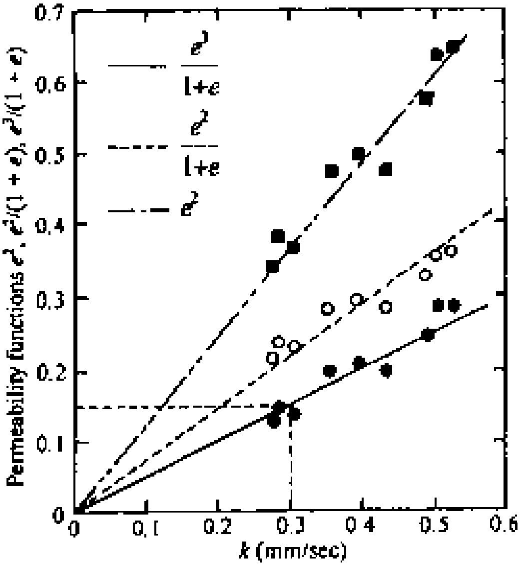


Figure 5.7 Plot of *k* against permeability function for Madison sand.

relative density of 80% or more. These tests showed that, for laminar flow conditions, the absolute permeability can be approximated as

$$K(\text{mm}^2) = (0.05\text{–}1)D_5^2 \tag{5.44}$$

where D_5 = diameter (mm) through which 5% of soil passes.

Modification of Kozeny–Carman equation for practical application

For practical use, Carrier (2003) modified Eq. (5.37) in the following manner. At 20°C, γ_w/μ for water is about 9.33×10^4 ($1/\text{cm} \cdot \text{S}$). Also, $(C_S T^2)$ is approximately equal to 5. Substituting these values into Eq. (5.37), we obtain.

$$k(\text{cm/s}) = 1.99 \times 10^4 \left(\frac{1}{S_s}\right)^2 \frac{e^3}{1+e} \tag{5.45}$$

Again,

$$S_s = \frac{\text{SF}}{D_{\text{eff}}} \left(\frac{1}{\text{cm}}\right) \tag{5.46}$$

with

$$D_{\mathrm{eff}} = \frac{100\%}{\sum \left(\dfrac{f_i}{D_{(\mathrm{av})i}} \right)} \tag{5.47}$$

where

f_i = fraction of particles between two sieve seizes, in percent (*Note*: larger sieve, *l*; smaller sieve, *s*)

$$D_{(\mathrm{av})i}(\mathrm{cm}) = [D_{\mathrm{l}i}(\mathrm{cm})]^{0.5} \times [D_{\mathrm{s}i}(\mathrm{cm})]^{0.5} \tag{5.48}$$

SF = shape factor

Combining Eqs. (5.45), (5.46), (5.47), and (5.48)

$$k(\mathrm{cm/s}) = 1.99 \times 10^4 \left[\frac{100\%}{\sum \dfrac{f_i}{D_{\mathrm{l}i}^{0.5} \times D_{\mathrm{s}i}^{0.5}}} \right]^2 \left(\frac{1}{\mathrm{SF}} \right)^2 \left(\frac{e^3}{1+e} \right) \tag{5.49}$$

The magnitude of SF may vary from between 6 and 8, depending on the angularity of the soil particles.

Carrier (2003) further suggested a slight modification of Eq. (5.49), which can be written as

$$k\,(\mathrm{cm/s}) = 1.99 \times 10^4 \left[\frac{100\%}{\sum \dfrac{f_i}{D_{\mathrm{l}i}^{0.404} \times D_{\mathrm{s}i}^{0.595}}} \right]^5 \left(\frac{1}{\mathrm{SF}} \right)^2 \left(\frac{e^3}{1+e} \right) \tag{5.50}$$

EXAMPLE 5.1

The results of a sieve analysis on sand are given below.

Sieve No.	*Sieve opening (cm)*	*Percent passing*	*Fraction of particles between two consecutive sieves (%)*
30	0.06	100	
			4
40	0.0425	96	
			12
60	0.02	84	
			34
100	0.015	50	
			50
200	0.0075	0	

Estimate the hydraulic conductivity using Eq. (5.50). Given: the void ratio of the sand is 0.6. Use SF = 7.

SOLUTION For fraction between Nos. 30 and 40 sieves:

$$\frac{f_i}{D_{li}^{0.404} \times D_{si}^{0.595}} = \frac{4}{(0.06)^{0.404} \times (0.0425)^{0.595}} = 81.62$$

For fraction between Nos. 40 and 60 sieves:

$$\frac{f_i}{D_{li}^{0.404} \times D_{si}^{0.595}} = \frac{12}{(0.0425)^{0.404} \times (0.02)^{0.595}} = 440.76$$

Similarly, for fraction between Nos. 60 and 100 sieves:

$$\frac{f_i}{D_{li}^{0.404} \times D_{si}^{0.595}} = \frac{34}{(0.02)^{0.404} \times (0.015)^{0.595}} = 2009.5$$

And, for between Nos. 100 and 200 sieves:

$$\frac{f_i}{D_{li}^{0.404} \times D_{si}^{0.595}} = \frac{50}{(0.015)^{0.404} \times (0.0075)^{0.595}} = 5013.8$$

$$\frac{100\%}{\sum \dfrac{f_i}{D_{li}^{0.404} \times D_{si}^{0.595}}} = \frac{100}{81.62 + 440.76 + 2009.5 + 5013.8} \approx 0.0133$$

From Eq. (5.50)

$$k = (1.99 \times 10^4)(0.0133)^2 \left(\frac{1}{7}\right)^2 \left(\frac{0.6^3}{1+0.6}\right) = 0.0097\,\text{cm/s}$$

EXAMPLE 5.2

Refer to Figure 5.7. For the soil, (a) calculate the "composite shape factor," $C_S S_s^2 T^2$, of the Kozeny–Carman equation, given $\mu_{20°C} = 10.09 \times 10^{-3}$ poise, (b) If $C_S = 2.5$ and $T = \sqrt{2}$, determine S_s. Compare this value with the theoretical value for a sphere of diameter $D_{10} = 0.2\,\text{mm}$.

SOLUTION *Part a*: From Eq. (5.37),

$$k = \frac{1}{C_S S_s^2 T^2} \frac{\gamma_w}{\mu} \frac{e^3}{1+e}$$

$$C_S S_s^2 T^2 = \frac{\gamma_w}{\mu} \frac{e^3/(1+e)}{k}$$

The value of $[e^3/(1+e)]/k$ is the slope of the straight line for the plot of $e^3/(1+e)$ against k (Figure 5.7). So

$$\frac{e^3/(1+e)}{k} = \frac{0.15}{0.03\,\text{cm/s}} = 5$$

$$C_S S_s^2 T^2 = \frac{(1\,\text{g/cm}^3)(981\,\text{cm/s}^2)}{10.09 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{poise}}(5) = 4.86 \times 10^5\,\text{cm}^{-2}$$

Part b: (Note the units carefully.)

$$S_s = \sqrt{\frac{4.86 \times 10^5}{C_S T^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{4.86 \times 10^5}{2.5 \times (\sqrt{2})^2}} = 311.8\,\text{cm}^2/\text{cm}^3$$

For $D_{10} = 0.2\,\text{mm}$,

$$S_s = \frac{\text{surface area of a sphere of radius 0.01 cm}}{\text{volume of sphere of radius 0.01 cm}}$$

$$= \frac{4\pi(0.01)^2}{4/3\ \pi(0.01)^3} = \frac{3}{0.01} = 300\,\text{cm}^2/\text{cm}^3$$

This value of $S_s = 300\,\text{cm}^2/\text{cm}^3$ agrees closely with the estimated value of $S_s = 311.8\,\text{cm}^2/\text{cm}^3$.

5.6 Variation of coefficient of permeability for cohesive soils

The Kozeny–Carman equation does not successfully explain the variation of the coefficient of permeability with void ratio for clayey soils. The discrepancies between the theoretical and experimental values are shown in Figures 5.8 and 5.9. These results are based on consolidation–permeability tests (Olsen, 1961, 1962). The marked degrees of variation between the theoretical and experimental values arise from several factors, including deviations from Darcy's law, high viscosity of the pore water, and unequal pore sizes. Olsen developed a model to account for the variation of permeability due to unequal pore sizes.

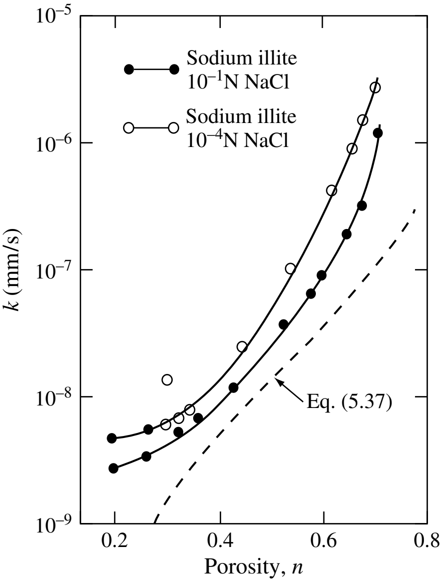


Figure 5.8 Coefficient of permeability for sodium illite (after Olsen, 1961).

Several other empirical relations were proposed from laboratory and field permeability tests on clayey soil. They are summarized in Table 5.3.

EXAMPLE 5.3

For a normally consolidated clay soil, the following values are given:

Void ratio	k(*cm/s*)
1.1	0.302×10^{-7}
0.9	0.12×10^{-7}

Estimate the hydraulic conductivity of the clay at a void ratio of 0.75. Use the equation proposed by Samarsinghe *et al.* (1982; see Table 5.3).

SOLUTION

$$k = C_4 \left(\frac{e^n}{1+e} \right)$$

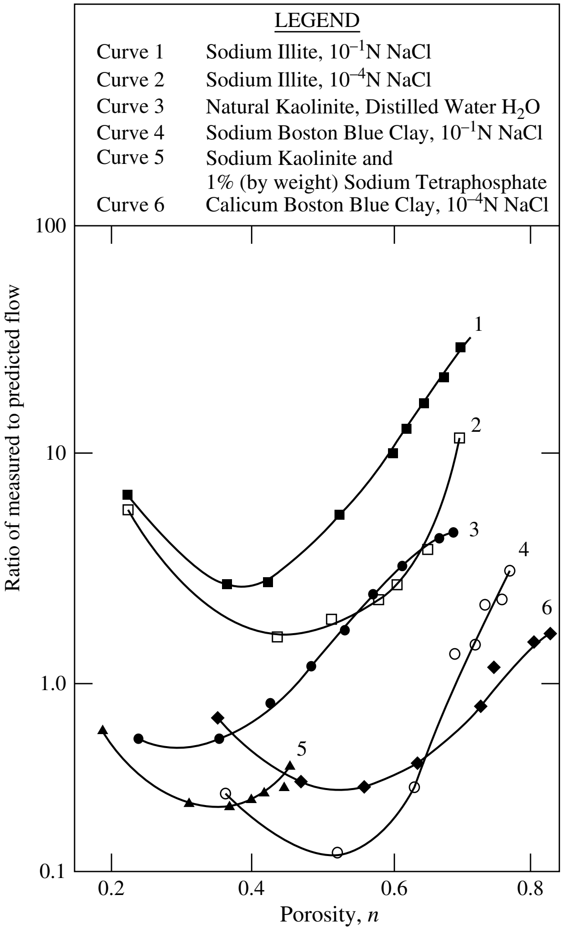


Figure 5.9 Ratio of the measured flow rate to that predicted by the Kozeny–Carman equation for several clays (after Olsen, 1961).

$$\frac{k_1}{k_2} = \frac{\left(\dfrac{e_1^n}{1+e_1}\right)}{\left(\dfrac{e_2^n}{1+e_2}\right)}$$

$$\frac{0.302\times 10^{-7}}{0.12\times 10^{-7}} = \frac{\dfrac{(1.1)^n}{1+1.1}}{\dfrac{(0.9)^n}{1+0.9}}$$

Table 5.3 Empirical relations for coefficient of permeability in clayey soils

Investigator	*Relation*	*Notation*	*Remarks*
Mesri and Olson (1971)	$\log k = C_2 \ \log e + C_3$	$C_2,\ C_3 =$ constants	Based on artificial and remolded soils
Taylor (1948)	$\log\ k = \log\ k_0 - \dfrac{e_0 - e}{C_k}$	$k_0 =$ coefficient of in situ permeability at void ratio e_0 $k =$ coefficient of permeability at void ratio e $C_k =$ permeability change index	$C_k \approx 0.5e_0$ (Tavenas *et al.*, 1983a,b)
Samarsinghe *et al.* (1982)	$k = C_4 \dfrac{e^n}{1+e}$	$C_4 =$ constant $\log\ [k(1+e)] = \log\ C_4 + n \log\ e$	Applicable only to normally consolidated clays
Raju *et al.* (1995)	$\dfrac{e}{e_L} = 2.23 + 0.204 \log\ k$	k is in cm/s $e_L =$ void ratio at liquid limit $= w_{LL}G_s$ $w_{LL} =$ moisture content at liquid limit	Normally consolidated clay
Tavenas *et al.* (1983a,b)	$k = f$	$f =$ function of void ratio, and PI + CF PI = plasticity index in decimals CF = clay size fraction in decimals	See Figure 5.10

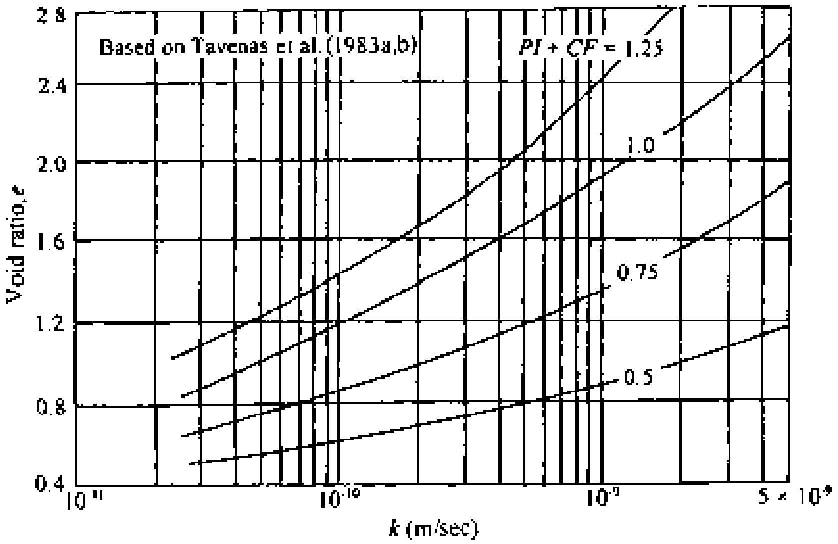


Figure 5.10 Plot of e versus k for various values of PI + CF.

$$2.517 = \left(\frac{1.9}{2.1}\right)\left(\frac{1.1}{0.9}\right)^n$$

$$2.782 = (1.222)^n$$

$$n = \frac{\log(2.782)}{\log(1.222)} = \frac{0.444}{0.087} = 5.1$$

so

$$k = C_4\left(\frac{e^{5.1}}{1+e}\right)$$

To find C_4,

$$0.302 \times 10^{-7} = C_4\left[\frac{(1.1)^{5.1}}{1+1.1}\right] = \left(\frac{1.626}{2.1}\right)C_4$$

$$C_4 = \frac{(0.302 \times 10^{-7})(2.1)}{1.626} = 0.39 \times 10^{-7}$$

Hence

$$k = \left(0.39 \times 10^{-7}\,\text{cm/s}\right)\left(\frac{e^n}{1+e}\right)$$

At a void ratio of 0.75

$$k = \left(0.39 \times 10^{-7}\,\text{cm/s}\right)\left(\frac{0.75^{5.1}}{1+0.75}\right) = 0.514 \times 10^{-8}\,\text{cm/s}$$

5.7 Directional variation of permeability in anisotropic medium

Most natural soils are anisotropic with respect to the coefficient of permeability, and the degree of anisotropy depends on the type of soil and the nature of its deposition. In most cases, the anisotropy is more predominant in clayey soils compared to granular soils. In anisotropic soils, the directions of the maximum and minimum permeabilities are generally at right angles to each other, maximum permeability being in the horizontal direction.

Figure 5.11*a* shows the seepage of water around a sheet pile wall. Consider a point *O* at which the flow line and the equipotential line are as

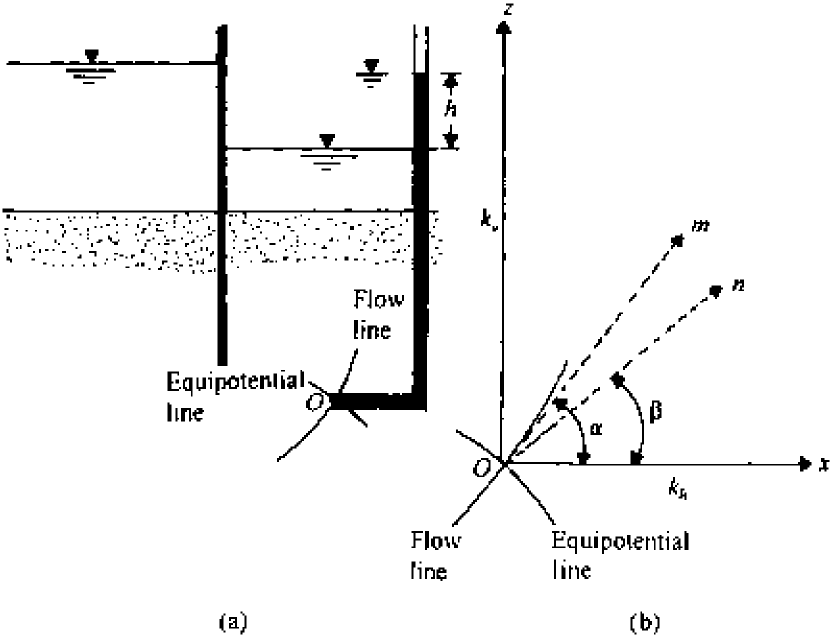


Figure 5.11 Directional variation of coefficient of permeability.

shown in the figure. The flow line is a line along which a water particle at O will move from left to right. For the definition of an equipotential line, refer to Sec. 5.12. Note that in anisotropic soil the flow line and equipotential line are not orthogonal. Figure 5.11*b* shows the flow line and equipotential line at O. The coefficients of permeability in the x and z directions are k_{h} and k_{v}, respectively.

In Figure 5.11, m is the direction of the tangent drawn to the flow line at O, and thus that is the direction of the resultant discharge velocity. Direction n is perpendicular to the equipotential line at O, and so it is the direction of the resultant hydraulic gradient. Using Darcy's law,

$$v_x = -k_{\mathrm{h}} \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \tag{5.51}$$

$$v_z = -k_{\mathrm{v}} \frac{\partial h}{\partial z} \tag{5.52}$$

$$v_m = -k_\alpha \frac{\partial h}{\partial m} \tag{5.53}$$

$$v_n = -k_\beta \frac{\partial h}{\partial n} \tag{5.54}$$

where

k_h = maximum coefficient of permeability (in the horizontal x direction)
k_v = minimum coefficient of permeability (in the vertical z direction)
$k_\alpha,\ k_\beta$ = coefficients of permeability in m, n directions, respectively

Now we can write

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial m} = \frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\cos\alpha + \frac{\partial h}{\partial z}\sin\alpha \tag{5.55}$$

From Eqs. (5.51)–(5.53), we have

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = -\frac{v_x}{k_\text{h}} \qquad \frac{\partial h}{\partial z} = -\frac{v_z}{k_\text{v}} \qquad \frac{\partial h}{\partial m} = -\frac{v_m}{k_\alpha}$$

Also, $v_x = v_m \cos\alpha$ and $v_z = v_m \sin\alpha$.

Substitution of these into Eq. (5.55) gives

$$-\frac{v_m}{k_\alpha} = -\frac{v_x}{k_\text{h}}\cos\alpha + \frac{v_z}{k_\text{v}}\sin\alpha$$

or

$$\frac{v_m}{k_\alpha} = \frac{v_m}{k_\text{h}}\cos^2\alpha + \frac{v_m}{k_\text{v}}\sin^2\alpha$$

so

$$\frac{1}{k_\alpha} = \frac{\cos^2\alpha}{k_\text{h}} + \frac{\sin^2\alpha}{k_\text{v}} \tag{5.56}$$

The nature of the variation of k_α with α as determined by Eq. (5.56) is shown in Figure 5.12. Again, we can say that

$$v_n = v_x \cos\beta + v_z \sin\beta \tag{5.57}$$

Combining Eqs. (5.51), (5.52), and (5.54),

$$k_\beta \frac{\partial h}{\partial n} = k_\text{h}\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\cos\beta + k_\text{v}\frac{\partial h}{\partial z}\sin\beta \tag{5.58}$$

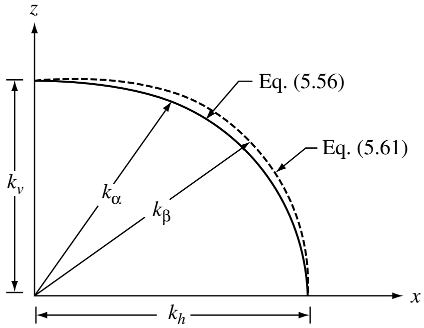


Figure 5.12 Directional variation of permeability.

However,

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial h}{\partial n} \cos\beta \tag{5.59}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial h}{\partial n} \sin\beta \tag{5.60}$$

Substitution of Eqs. (5.59) and (5.60) into Eq. (5.58) yields

$$k_\beta = k_\mathrm{h} \cos^2\beta + k_\mathrm{v} \sin^2\beta \tag{5.61}$$

The variation of k_β with β is also shown in Figure 5.12. It can be seen that, for given values of k_h and k_v, Eqs. (5.56) and (5.61) yield slightly different values of the directional permeability. However, the maximum difference will not be more than 25%.

There are several studies available in the literature providing the experimental values of $k_\mathrm{h}/k_\mathrm{v}$. Some are given below:

Soil type	$k_\mathrm{h}/k_\mathrm{v}$	*Reference*
Organic silt with peat	1.2–1.7	Tsien (1955)
Plastic marine clay	1.2	Lumb and Holt (1968)
Soft clay	1.5	Basett and Brodie (1961)
Soft marine clay	1.05	Subbaraju (1973)
Boston blue clay	0.7–3.3	Haley and Aldrich (1969)

Figure 5.13 shows the laboratory test results obtained by Fukushima and Ishii (1986) related to k_h and k_v on compacted Maso-do soil (weathered granite). All tests were conducted after full saturation of the compacted soil specimens. The results show that k_h and k_v are functions of molding moisture content and confining pressure. For given molding moisture contents and confining pressures, the ratios of k_h/k_v are in the same general range as shown in the preceding table.

5.8 Effective coefficient of permeability for stratified soils

In general, natural soil deposits are stratified. If the stratification is continuous, the effective coefficients of permeability for flow in the horizontal and vertical directions can be readily calculated.

Flow in the horizontal direction

Figure 5.14 shows several layers of soil with horizontal stratification. Owing to fabric anisotropy, the coefficient of permeability of each soil layer may vary depending on the direction of flow. So, let us assume that $k_{\text{h}_1}, k_{\text{h}_2}, k_{\text{h}_3}, \ldots,$ are the coefficients of permeability of layers 1, 2, 3, …, respectively, for flow in the horizontal direction. Similarly, let $k_{\text{v}_1}, k_{\text{v}_2}, k_{\text{v}_3}, \ldots,$ be the coefficients of permeability for flow in the vertical direction.

Considering the unit length of the soil layers as shown in Figure 5.14, the rate of seepage in the horizontal direction can be given by

$$q = q_1 + q_2 + q_3 + \cdots + q_n \tag{5.62}$$

where q is the flow rate through the stratified soil layers combined and $q_1, q_2, q_3, \ldots,$ is the rate of flow through soil layers 1, 2, 3, …, respectively. Note that for flow in the horizontal direction (which is the direction of stratification of the soil layers), the hydraulic gradient is the same for all layers. So,

$$\begin{aligned} q_1 &= k_{\text{h}_1} i H_1 \\ q_2 &= k_{\text{h}_2} i H_2 \\ q_3 &= k_{\text{h}_3} i H_3 \\ &\vdots \end{aligned} \tag{5.63}$$

and

$$q = k_{\text{e(h)}} i H \tag{5.64}$$

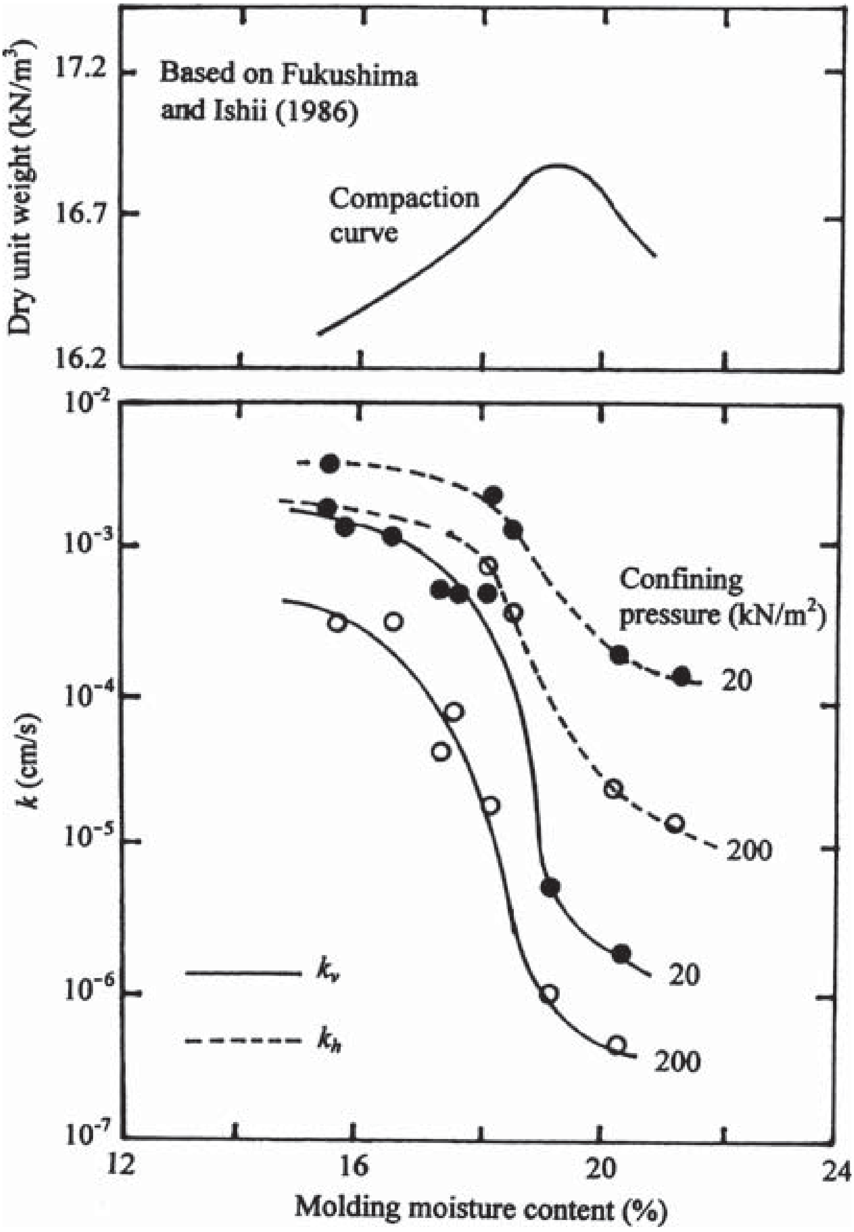


Figure 5.13 Variation of k_v and k_h for Masa-do soil compacted in the laboratory.

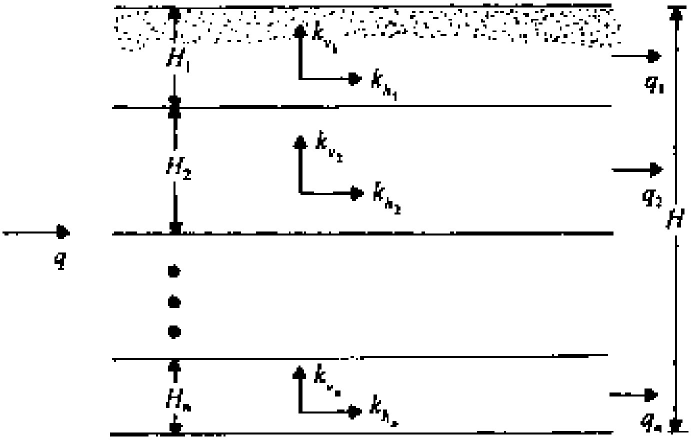


Figure 5.14 Flow in horizontal direction in stratified soil.

where

i = hydraulic gradient
$k_{e(h)}$ = effective coefficient of permeability for flow in horizontal direction
H_1, H_2, H_3 = thicknesses of layers 1, 2, 3, respectively
$H = H_1 + H_2 + H_3 + \ldots$

Substitution of Eqs. (5.63) and (5.64) into Eq. (5.62) yields

$$k_{e(h)} H = k_{h_1} H_1 + k_{h_2} H_2 + k_{h_3} H_3 + \cdots$$

Hence

$$k_{e(h)} = \frac{1}{H}(k_{h_1} H_1 + k_{h_2} H_2 + k_{h_3} H_3 + \cdots) \tag{5.65}$$

Flow in the vertical direction

For flow in the vertical direction for the soil layers shown in Figure 5.15,

$$v = v_1 = v_2 = v_3 = \ldots = v_n \tag{5.66}$$

where $v_1, v_2, v_3, \ldots,$ are the discharge velocities in layers 1, 2, 3, ..., respectively; or

$$v = k_{e(v)} i = k_{v_1} i_1 = k_{v_2} i_2 = k_{v_3} i_3 = \ldots \tag{5.67}$$

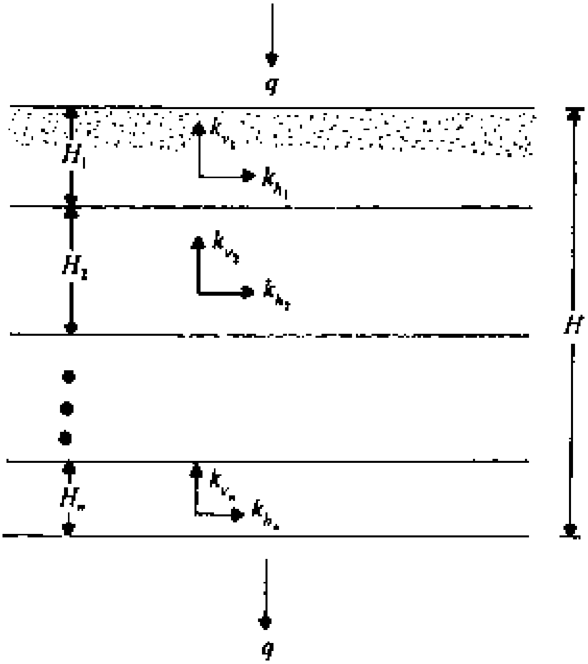


Figure 5.15 Flow in vertical direction in stratified soil.

where

$k_{e(v)}$ = effective coefficient of permeability for flow in the vertical direction
$k_{v_1}, k_{v_2}, k_{v_3}, \ldots$ = coefficients of permeability of layers 1, 2, 3, ..., respectively, for flow in the vertical direction
$i_1,\ i_2,\ i_3, \ldots$ = hydraulic gradient in soil layers 1, 2, 3, ..., respectively

For flow at right angles to the direction of stratification,

Total head loss = (head loss in layer 1) + (head loss in layer 2) + ···

or

$$iH = i_1H_1 + i_2H_2 + i_3H_3 + \cdots \tag{5.68}$$

Combining Eqs. (5.67) and (5.68) gives

$$\frac{v}{k_{e(v)}}H = \frac{v}{k_{v_1}}H_1 + \frac{v}{k_{v_2}}H_2 + \frac{v}{k_{v_3}}H_3 + \cdots$$

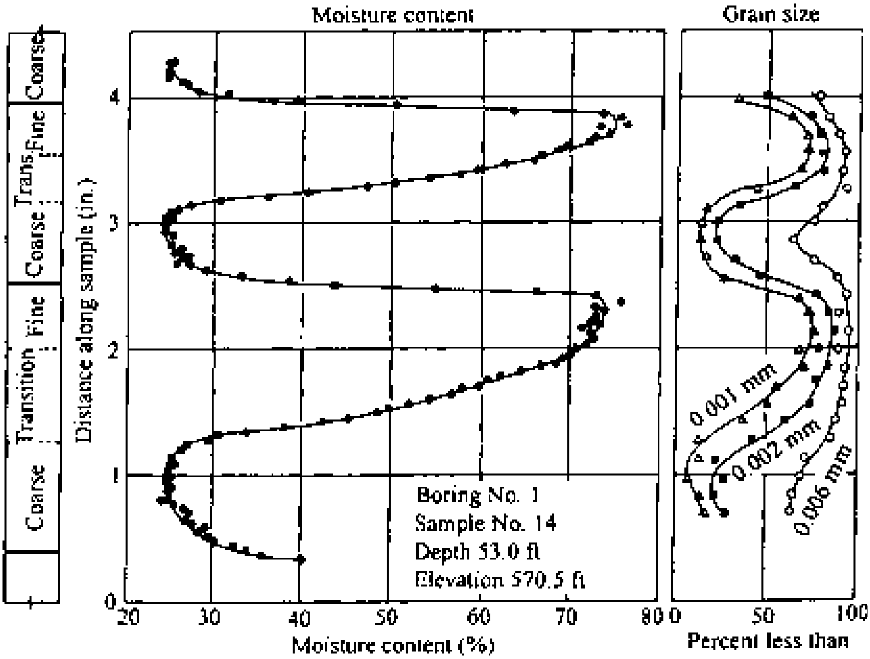


Figure 5.16 Variations of moisture content and grain size across thick-layer varves of New Liskeard varved clay (after Chan and Kenny, 1973).

or

$$k_{e(v)} = \frac{H}{H_1/k_{v_1} + H_2/k_{v_2} + H_3/k_{v_3} + \cdots} \tag{5.69}$$

Varved soils are excellent examples of continuously layered soil. Figure 5.16 shows the nature of the layering of New Liskeard varved clay (Chan and Kenny, 1973) along with the variation of moisture content and grain size distribution of various layers. The ratio of $k_{e(h)}/k_{e(v)}$ for this soil varies from about 1.5 to 3.7. Casagrande and Poulos (1969) provided the ratio of $k_{e(h)}/k_{e(v)}$ for a varved clay that varies from 4 to 40.

5.9 Determination of coefficient of permeability in the field

It is sometimes difficult to obtain undisturbed soil specimens from the field. For large construction projects it is advisable to conduct permeability tests in situ and compare the results with those obtained in the laboratory. Several techniques are presently available for determination of the coefficient of permeability in the field, such as pumping from wells and borehole tests, and some of these methods will be treated briefly in this section.

Pumping from wells

Gravity wells

Figure 5.17 shows a permeable layer underlain by an impermeable stratum. The coefficient of permeability of the top permeable layer can be determined by pumping from a well at a constant rate and observing the steady-state water table in nearby observation wells. The steady-state is established when the water levels in the test well and the observation wells become constant. At steady state, the rate of discharge due to pumping can be expressed as

$$q = kiA$$

From Figure 5.17, $i \approx dh/dr$ (this is referred to as Dupuit's assumption), and $A = 2\pi rh$. Substituting these into the above equation for rate of discharge gives

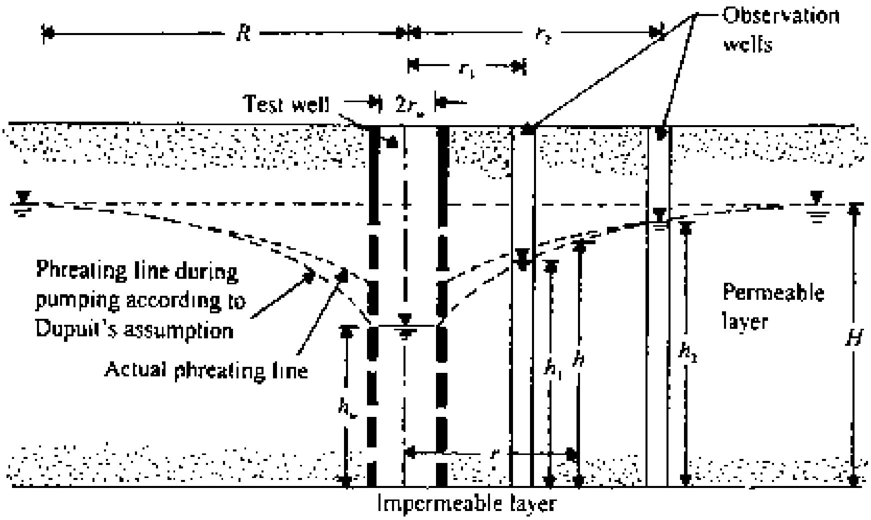


Figure 5.17 Determination of coefficient of permeability by pumping from wells—gravity well.

$$q = k\frac{dh}{dr}2\pi rh$$

$$\int_{r_1}^{r_2}\frac{dr}{r} = \frac{2\pi k}{q}\int_{h_1}^{h_2} h\ dh$$

So,

$$k = \frac{2.303q[\log(r_2/r_1)]}{\pi(h_2^2 - h_1^2)} \tag{5.70}$$

If the values of r_1, r_2, h_1, h_2, and q are known from field measurements, the coefficient of permeability can be calculated from the simple relation given in Eq. (5.70). According to Kozeny (1933), the maximum radius of influence, R (Figure 5.17), for drawdown due to pumping can be given by

$$R = \sqrt{\frac{12t}{n}}\sqrt{\frac{qk}{\pi}} \tag{5.71}$$

where

n = porosity
R = radius of influence
t = time during which discharge of water from well has been established

Also note that if we substitute $h_1 = h_w$ at $r_1 = r_w$ and $h_2 = H$ at $r_2 = R$, then

$$k = \frac{2.303q[\log\ (R/r_w)]}{\pi(H^2 - h_w^2)} \tag{5.72}$$

where H is the depth of the original groundwater table from the impermeable layer.

The depth h at any distance r from the well ($r_w \leq r \leq R$) can be determined from Eq. (5.70) by substituting $h_1 = h_w$ at $r_1 = r_w$ and $h_2 = h$ at $r_2 = r$. Thus

$$k = \frac{2.303q[\log\ (r/r_w)]}{\pi(h^2 - h_w^2)}$$

or

$$h = \sqrt{\frac{2.303q}{\pi k}\log\frac{r}{r_w} + h_w^2} \tag{5.73}$$

It must be pointed out that Dupuit's assumption (i.e., that $i = dh/dr$) does introduce large errors in regard to the actual phreatic line near the wells during steady state pumping. This is shown in Figure 5.17. For $r > H - 1.5H$ the phreatic line predicted by Eq. (5.73) will coincide with the actual phreatic line.

The relation for the coefficient of permeability given by Eq. (5.70) has been developed on the assumption that the well fully penetrates the permeable layer. If the well partially penetrates the permeable layer as shown in Figure 5.18, the coefficient of permeability can be better represented by the following relation (Mansur and Kaufman, 1962):

$$q = \frac{\pi k[(H-s)^2 - t^2]}{2.303 \log (R/r_{\mathrm{w}})} \left[1 + \left(0.30 + \frac{10 r_{\mathrm{w}}}{H}\right) \sin \frac{1.8s}{H}\right] \tag{5.74}$$

The notations used on the right-hand side of Eq. (5.74) are shown in Figure 5.18.

Artesian wells

The coefficient of permeability for a confined aquifier can also be determined from well pumping tests. Figure 5.19 shows an artesian well

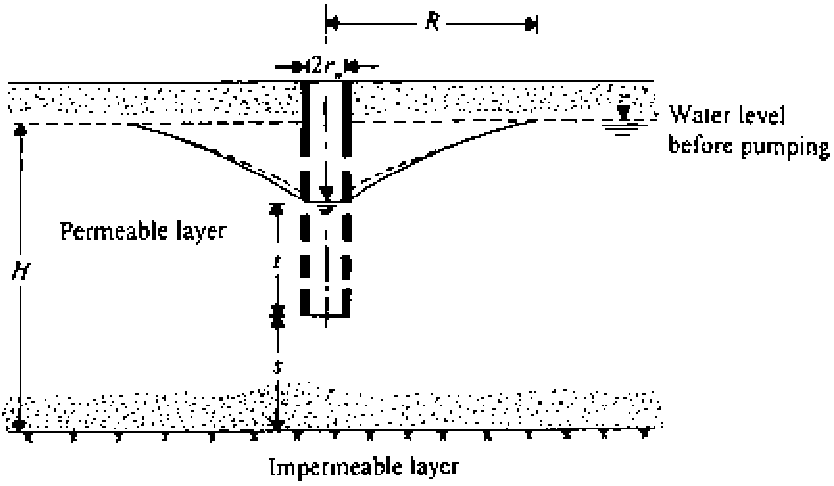


Figure 5.18 Pumping from partially penetrating gravity wells.

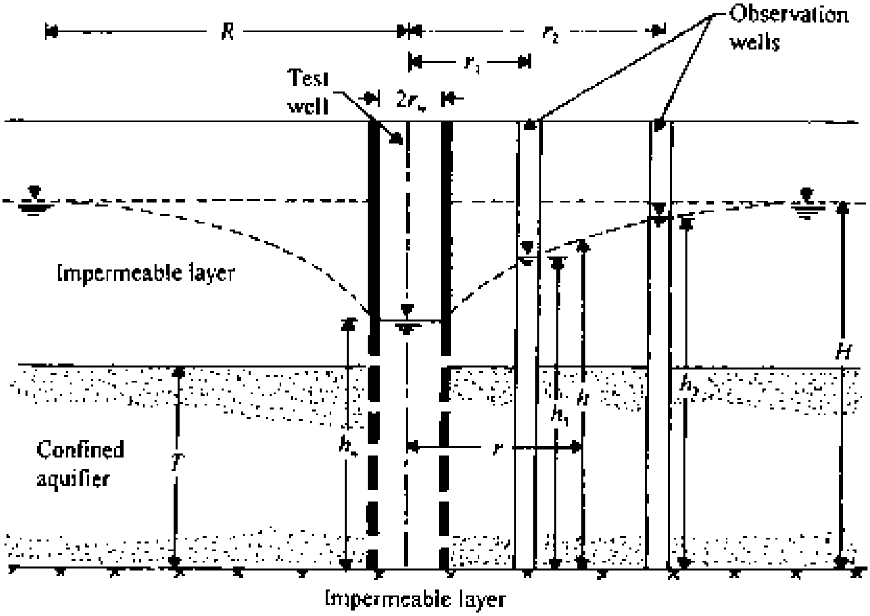


Figure 5.19 Determination of coefficient of permeability by pumping from wells—confined aquifer.

penetrating the full depth of an aquifier from which water is pumped out at a constant rate. Pumping is continued until a steady state is reached. The rate of water pumped out at steady state is given by

$$q = kiA = k\frac{dh}{dr} = 2\pi rT \tag{5.75}$$

where T is the thickness of the confined aquifier, or

$$\int_{r_1}^{r_2} \frac{dr}{r} = \int_{h_1}^{h_2} \frac{2\pi kT}{q} dh \tag{5.76}$$

Solution of Eq. (5.76) gives

$$k = \frac{q\log(r_2/r_1)}{2.727T(h_2 - h_1)}$$

Hence the coefficient of permeability k can be determined by observing the drawdown in two observation wells, as shown in Figure 5.19.

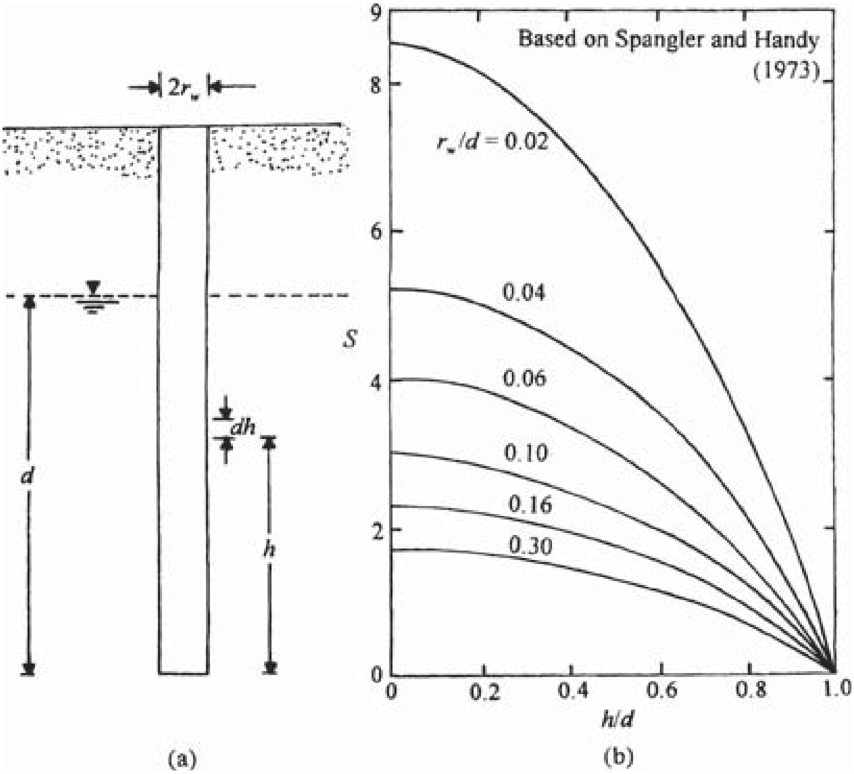


Figure 5.20 Auger hole test.

If we substitute $h_1 = h_w$ at $r_1 = r_w$ and $h_2 = H$ at $r_2 = R$ in the previous equation, we get

$$k = \frac{q\ log(R/r_w)}{2.727T(H - h_w)} \tag{5.77}$$

Auger hole test

Van Bavel and Kirkham (1948) suggested a method to determine k from an auger hole (Figure 5.20*a*). In this method, an auger hole is made in the ground that should extend to a depth of 10 times the diameter of the hole or to an impermeable layer, whichever is less. Water is pumped out of the hole, after which the rate of the rise of water with time is observed in several increments. The coefficient of permeability is calculated as

$$k = 0.617 \frac{r_w}{Sd} \frac{dh}{dt} \tag{5.78}$$

where

r_w = radius of the auger hole
d = depth of the hole below the water table
S = shape factor for auger hole
dh/dt = rate of increase of water table at a depth h measured from the bottom of the hole

The variation of S with r_w/d and h/d is given in Figure 5.20*b* (Spangler and Handy, 1973). There are several other methods of determining the field coefficient of permeability. For a more detailed description, the readers are directed to the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (1961) and the U.S. Department of the Navy (1971).

EXAMPLE 5.4

Refer to Figure 5.18. For the steady-state condition, $r_w = 0.4\,\text{m}$, $H = 28\,\text{m}$, $s = 8\,\text{m}$, and $t = 10\,\text{m}$. The coefficient of permeability of the layer is 0.03 mm/s. For the steady state pumping condition, estimate the rate of discharge q in m^3/min.

SOLUTION From Eq. (5.74)

$$q = \frac{\pi k[(H-s)^2 - t^2]}{2.303[\log(R/r_w)]}\left[1 + \left(0.30 + \frac{10r_w}{H}\right)\sin\frac{1.8s}{H}\right]$$

$$k = 0.03\,\text{mm/s} = 0.0018\,\text{m/min}$$

So,

$$q = \frac{\pi(0.0018)[(28-8)^2 - 10^2]}{2.303[\log(R/0.4)]}\left\{1 + \left[0.30 + \frac{(10)(0.4)}{28}\right]\sin\frac{1.8(8)}{28}\right\}$$
$$= \frac{0.8976}{\log(R/0.4)}$$

From the equation for q, we can construct the following table:

R (m)	*q* (m^3)
25	0.5
30	0.48
40	0.45
50	0.43
100	0.37

From the above table, the rate of discharge is approximately $0.45\,m^3/min$.

5.10 Factors affecting the coefficient of permeability

The coefficient of permeability depends on several factors, most of which are listed below.

1. Shape and size of the soil particles.
2. Void ratio. Permeability increases with increase in void ratio.
3. Degree of saturation. Permeability increases with increase in degree of saturation.
4. Composition of soil particles. For sands and silts this is not important; however, for soils with clay minerals this is one of the most important factors. Permeability depends on the thickness of water held to the soil particles, which is a function of the cation exchange capacity, valence of the cations, and so forth. Other factors remaining the same, the coefficient of permeability decreases with increasing thickness of the diffuse double layer.
5. Soil structure. Fine-grained soils with a flocculated structure have a higher coefficient of permeability than those with a dispersed structure.
6. Viscosity of the permeant.
7. Density and concentration of the permeant.

5.11 Electroosmosis

The coefficient of permeability—and hence the rate of seepage—through clay soils is very small compared to that in granular soils, but the drainage can be increased by application of an external electric current. This phenomenon is a result of the exchangeable nature of the adsorbed cations in

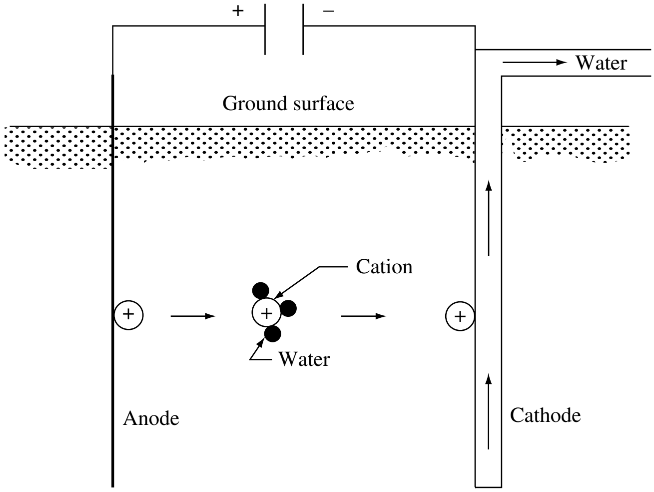


Figure 5.21 Principles of electroosmosis.

clay particles and the dipolar nature of the water molecules. The principle can be explained with the help of Figure 5.21. When dc electricity is applied to the soil, the cations start to migrate to the cathode, which consists of a perforated metallic pipe. Since water is adsorbed on the cations, it is also dragged along. When the cations reach the cathode, they release the water, and the subsequent build up of pressure causes the water to drain out. This process is called *electroosmosis* and was first used by L. Casagrande in 1937 for soil stabilization in Germany.

Rate of drainage by electroosmosis

Figure 5.22 shows a capillary tube formed by clay particles. The surface of the clay particles have negative charges, and the cations are concentrated in a layer of liquid. According to the Helmholtz–Smoluchowski theory (Helmholtz, 1879; Smoluchowski, 1914; see also Mitchell, 1970, 1976), the flow velocity due to an applied dc voltage E can be given by

$$v_e = \frac{D\zeta}{4\pi\eta}\frac{E}{L} \tag{5.79}$$

where

v_e = flow velocity due to applied voltage
D = dielectric constant

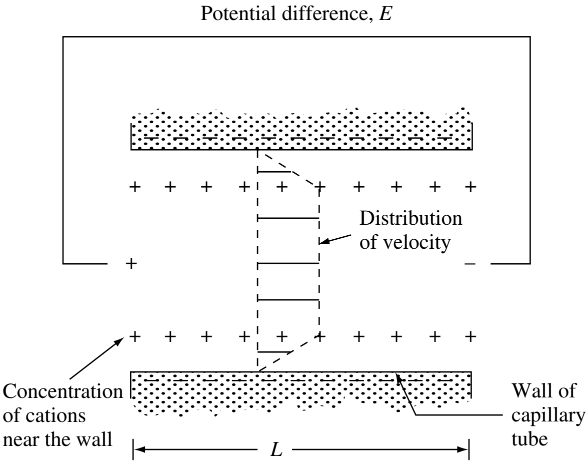


Figure 5.22 Helmholtz–Smoluchowski theory for electroosmosis.

ζ = zeta potential
η = viscosity
L = electrode spacing

Equation (5.79) is based on the assumptions that the radius of the capillary tube is large compared to the thickness of the diffuse double layer surrounding the clay particles and that all the mobile charge is concentrated near the wall. The rate of flow of water through the capillary tube can be given by

$$q_{\mathrm{c}} = av_{\mathrm{e}} \tag{5.80}$$

where a is area of the cross-section of the capillary tube.

If a soil mass is assumed to have a number of capillary tubes as a result of interconnected voids, the cross-sectional area A_{v} of the voids is

$$A_{\mathrm{v}} = nA$$

where A is the gross cross-sectional area of the soil and n the porosity.

The rate of discharge q through a soil mass of gross cross-sectional area A can be expressed by the relation

$$q = A_{\mathrm{v}}v_{\mathrm{e}} = nAv_{\mathrm{e}} = n\frac{D\zeta}{4\pi\eta}\frac{E}{L}A \tag{5.81}$$

$$= k_{\mathrm{e}}i_{\mathrm{e}}A \tag{5.82}$$

where $k_e = n(D\zeta/4\pi\eta)$ is the electroosmotic coefficient of permeability and i_e the electrical potential gradient. The units of k_e can be $\text{cm}^2/(\text{s}\cdot\text{V})$ and the units of i_e can be V/cm.

In contrast to the Helmholtz–Smoluchowski theory [Eq. (5.79)], which is based on flow through large capillary tubes, Schmid (1950, 1951) proposed a theory in which it was assumed that the capillary tubes formed by the pores between clay particles are small in diameter and that the excess cations are uniformly distributed across the pore cross-sectional area (Figure 5.23). According to this theory,

$$v_e = \frac{r^2 A_o F}{8\eta}\frac{E}{L} \tag{5.83}$$

where

r = pore radius
A_o = volume charge density in pore
F = Faraday constant

Based on Eq. (5.83), the rate of discharge q through a soil mass of gross cross-sectional area A can be written as

$$q = n\frac{r^2 A_o F}{8\eta}\frac{E}{L}A = k_e i_e A \tag{5.84}$$

where n is porosity and $k_e = n(r^2 A_o F/8\eta)$ is the electroosmotic coefficient of permeability.

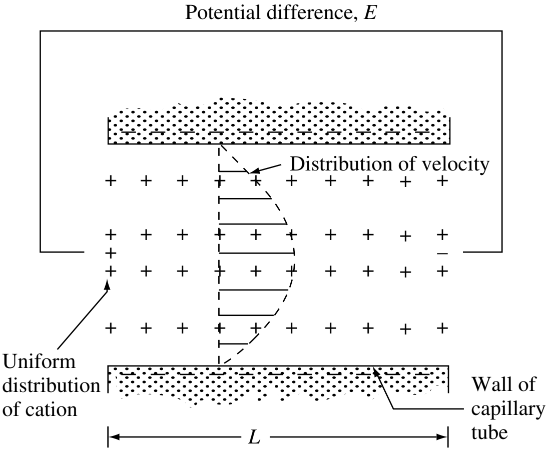


Figure 5.23 Schmid theory for electroosmosis.

Without arguing over the shortcomings of the two theories proposed, our purpose will be adequately served by using the flow-rate relation as $q = k_e i_e A$. Some typical values of k_e for several soils are as follows (Mitchell, 1976):

Material	*Water content (%)*	*$k_e[cm^2/(s \cdot V)]$*
London clay	52.3	5.8×10^{-5}
Boston blue clay	50.8	5.1×10^{-5}
Kaolin	67.7	5.7×10^{-5}
Clayey silt	31.7	5.0×10^{-5}
Rock flour	27.2	4.5×10^{-5}
Na-Montmorillonite	170	2.0×10^{-5}
Na-Montmorillonite	2000	12.0×10^{-5}

These values are of the same order of magnitude and range from 1.5×10^{-5} to $12 \times 10^{-5}\,\mathrm{cm}^2/(\mathrm{s} \cdot \mathrm{V})$ with an average of about $6 \times 10^{-5}\,\mathrm{cm}^2/(\mathrm{s} \cdot \mathrm{V})$.

Electroosmosis is costly and is not generally used unless drainage by conventional means cannot be achieved. Gray and Mitchell (1967) have studied the factors that affect the amount of water transferred per unit charge passed, such as water content, cation exchange capacity, and free electrolyte content of the soil.

SEEPAGE

5.12 Equation of continuity

Laplace's equation

In many practical cases, the nature of the flow of water through soil is such that the velocity and gradient vary throughout the medium. For these problems, calculation of flow is generally made by use of graphs referred to as *flow nets*. The concept of the flow net is based on Laplace's equation of continuity, which describes the steady flow condition for a given point in the soil mass.

To derive the equation of continuity of flow, consider an elementary soil prism at point A (Figure 5.24*b*) for the hydraulic structure shown in Figure 5.24*a*. The flows entering the soil prism in the x, y, and z directions can be given from Darcy's law as

$$q_x = k_x i_x A_x = k_x \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} dy\, dz \tag{5.85}$$

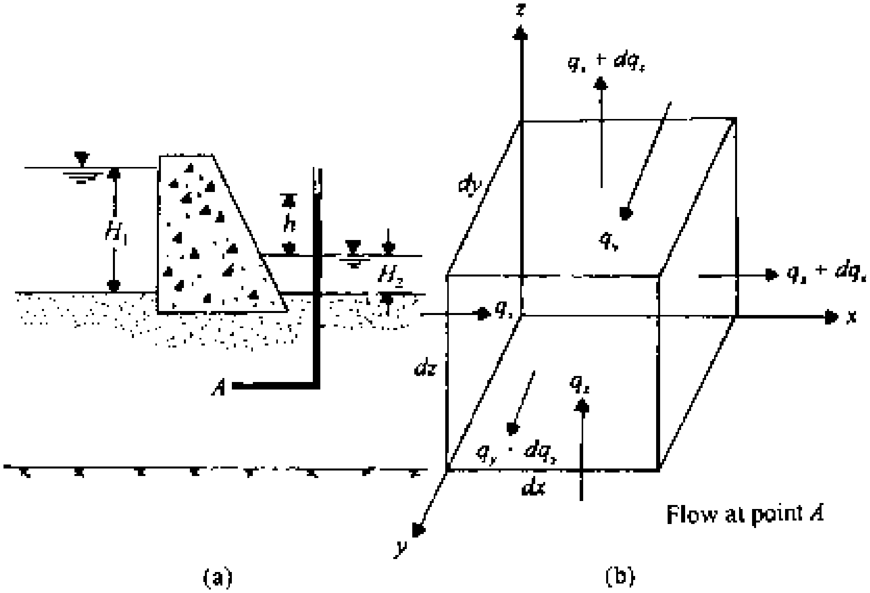


Figure 5.24 Derivation of continuity equation.

$$q_y = k_y i_y A_y = k_y \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} dx\ dz \tag{5.86}$$

$$q_z = k_z i_z A_z = k_z \frac{\partial h}{\partial z} dx\ dy \tag{5.87}$$

where

q_x, q_y, q_z = flow entering in directions *x, y*, and *z*, respectively
k_x, k_y, k_z = coefficients of permeability in directions *x, y*, and *z*, respectively
h = hydraulic head at point *A*

The respective flows leaving the prism in the *x, y*, and *z* directions are

$$\begin{aligned} q_x + dq_x &= k_x (i_x + di_x) A_x \\ &= k_x \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} dx \right) dy\ dz \end{aligned} \tag{5.88}$$

$$q_y + dq_y = k_y \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} dy \right) dx\ dz \tag{5.89}$$

$$q_z + dq_z = k_z \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} dz \right) dx\ dy \tag{5.90}$$

For steady flow through an incompressible medium, the flow entering the elementary prism is equal to the flow leaving the elementary prism. So,

$$q_x + q_y + q_z = (q_x + dq_x) + (q_y + dq_y) + (q_z + dq_z) \tag{5.91}$$

Combining Eqs. (5.85–5.91), we obtain

$$k_x \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + k_y \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} + k_2 \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{5.92}$$

For two-dimensional flow in the *xz* plane, Eq. (5.92) becomes

$$k_x \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + k_z \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{5.93}$$

If the soil is isotropic with respect to permeability, $k_x = k_z = k$, and the continuity equation simplifies to

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{5.94}$$

This is generally referred to as Laplace's equation.

Potential and stream functions

Consider a function $\phi(x, z)$ such that

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} = v_x = -k \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \tag{5.95}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} = v_z = -k \frac{\partial h}{\partial z} \tag{5.96}$$

If we differentiate Eq. (5.95) with respect to *x* and Eq. (5.96) with respect to *z* and substitute in Eq. (5.94), we get

$$\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{5.97}$$

Therefore $\phi(x, z)$ satisfies the Laplace equation. From Eqs. (5.95) and (5.96),

$$\phi(x,z) = -kh(x,z) + f(z) \tag{5.98}$$

and

$$\phi(x,z) = -kh(x,z) + g(x) \tag{5.99}$$

Since x and z can be varied independently, $f(z) = g(x) = C$, a constant. So,

$$\phi(x,z) = -kh(x,z) + C$$

and

$$h(x,z) = \frac{1}{k}[C - \phi(x,z)] \tag{5.100}$$

If $h(x, z)$ is a constant equal to h_1, Eq. (5.100) represents a curve in the xz plane. For this curve, ϕ will have a constant value ϕ_1. This is an *equipotential line*. So, by assigning to ϕ a number of values such as $\phi_1, \ \phi_2, \ \phi_3, \ldots,$ we can get a number of equipotential lines along which $h = h_1, \ h_2, \ h_3, \ldots,$ respectively. The slope along an equipotential line ϕ can now be derived:

$$d\phi = \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} dz \tag{5.101}$$

If ϕ is a constant along a curve, $d\phi = 0$. Hence

$$\left(\frac{dz}{dx}\right)_{\phi} = -\frac{\partial\phi/\partial x}{\partial\phi/\partial z} = -\frac{v_x}{v_z} \tag{5.102}$$

Again, let $\psi(x, z)$ be a function such that

$$\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial z} = v_x = -k\frac{\partial h}{\partial z} \tag{5.103}$$

and

$$-\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} = v_z = -k\frac{\partial h}{\partial z} \tag{5.104}$$

Combining Eqs. (5.95) and (5.103), we obtain

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial z}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial z^2} = \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x \, \partial z} \tag{5.105}$$

Again, combining Eqs. (5.96) and (5.104),

$$-\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x}$$

$$-\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x\, \partial z} = \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial x^2} \tag{5.106}$$

From Eqs. (5.105) and (5.106),

$$\frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial z^2} = -\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x\, \partial z} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x\, \partial z} = 0$$

So $\psi(x, z)$ also satisfies Laplace's equation. If we assign to $\psi(x, z)$ various values $\psi_1, \psi_2, \psi_3, \ldots$, we get a family of curves in the xz plane. Now

$$d\psi = \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial z} dz \tag{5.107}$$

For a given curve, if ψ is constant, then $d\psi = 0$. Thus, from Eq. (5.107),

$$\left(\frac{dz}{dx}\right)_{\psi} = \frac{\partial \psi/\partial x}{\partial \psi/\partial z} = \frac{v_z}{v_x} \tag{5.108}$$

Note that the slope $(dz/dx)_{\psi}$ is in the same direction as the resultant velocity. Hence the curves $\psi = \psi_1, \psi_2, \psi_3, \ldots$, are the flow lines.

From Eqs. (5.102) and (5.108), we can see that at a given point *(x, z)* the equipotential line and the flow line are orthogonal.

The functions $\phi(x, z)$ and $\psi(x, z)$ are called the potential function and the stream function, respectively.

5.13 Use of continuity equation for solution of simple flow problem

To understand the role of the continuity equation [Eq. (5.94)], consider a simple case of flow of water through two layers of soil as shown in Figure 5.25. The flow is in one direction only, i.e., in the direction of the x axis. The lengths of the two soil layers (L_A and L_B) and their coefficients of permeability in the direction of the x axis (k_A and k_B) are known. The total heads at sections 1 and 3 are known. We are required to plot the total head at any other section for $0 < x < L_A + L_B$.

For one-dimensional flow, Eq. (5.94) becomes

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} = 0 \tag{5.109}$$

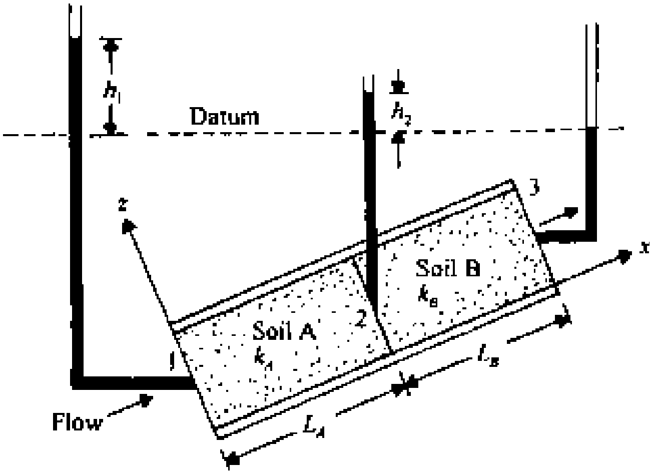


Figure 5.25 One-directional flow through two layers of soil.

Integration of Eq. (5.109) twice gives

$$h = C_2 x + C_1 \tag{5.110}$$

where C_1 and C_2 are constants.

For flow through soil A the boundary conditions are

1. at $x = 0$, $h = h_1$
2. at $x = L_A$, $h = h_2$

However, h_2 is unknown ($h_1 > h_2$). From the first boundary condition and Eq. (5.110), $C_1 = h_1$. So,

$$h = C_2 x + h_1 \tag{5.111}$$

From the second boundary condition and Eq. (5.110),

$$h_2 = C_2 L_A + h_1 \qquad \text{or} \qquad C_2 = (h_2 - h)/L_A$$

So,

$$h = -\frac{h_1 - h_2}{L_A} x + h_1 \quad 0 \le x \le L_A \tag{5.112}$$

For flow through soil B the boundary conditions for solution of C_1 and C_2 in Eq. (5.110) are

1. at $x = L_A, \; h = h_2$
2. at $x = L_A + L_B, \; h = 0$

From the first boundary condition and Eq. (5.110), $h_2 = C_2 L_A + C_1$, or

$$C_1 = h_2 - C_2 L_A \tag{5.113}$$

Again, from the secondary boundary condition and Eq. (5.110), $0 = C_2(L_A + L_B) + C_1$, or

$$C_1 = -C_2(L_A + L_B) \tag{5.114}$$

Equating the right-hand sides of Eqs. (5.113) and (5.114),

$$h_2 - C_2 L_A = -C_2(L_A + L_B)$$

$$C_2 = -\frac{h_2}{L_B} \tag{5.115}$$

and then substituting Eq. (5.115) into Eq. (5.113) gives

$$C_1 = h_2 + \frac{h_2}{L_B} L_A = h_2 \left(1 + \frac{L_A}{L_B}\right) \tag{5.116}$$

Thus, for flow through soil B,

$$h = -\frac{h_2}{L_B} x + h_2 \left(1 + \frac{L_A}{L_B}\right) \quad L_A \leq x \leq L_A + L_B \tag{5.117}$$

With Eqs. (5.112) and (5.117), we can solve for h for any value of x from 0 to $L_A + L_B$, provided that h_2 is known. However,

$$q = \text{rate of flow through soil A} = \text{rate of flow through soil B}$$

So,

$$q = k_A \left(\frac{h_1 - h_2}{L_A}\right) A = k_B \left(\frac{h_2}{L_B}\right) A \tag{5.118}$$

where k_A and k_B are the coefficients of permeability of soils A and B, respectively, and A is the area of cross-section of soil perpendicular to the direction of flow.

From Eq. (5.118),

$$h_2 = \frac{k_A h_1}{L_A(k_A/L_A + k_B/L_B)} \tag{5.119}$$

Substitution of Eq. (5.119) into Eqs. (5.112) and (5.117) yields, after simplification,

$$h = h_1\left(1 - \frac{k_B x}{k_A L_B + k_B L_A}\right) \quad x = 0 - L_A \tag{5.120}$$

$$h = h_1\left[\frac{k_A}{k_A L_B + k_B L_A}(L_A + L_B - x)\right] \quad x = L_A - (L_A + L_B) \tag{5.121}$$

5.14 Flow nets

Definition

A set of flow lines and equipotential lines is called a flow net. As discussed in Sec. 5.12, a flow line is a line along which a water particle will travel. An equipotential line is a line joining the points that show the same piezometric elevation (i.e., hydraulic head = $h(x, z)$ = const). Figure 5.26 shows an

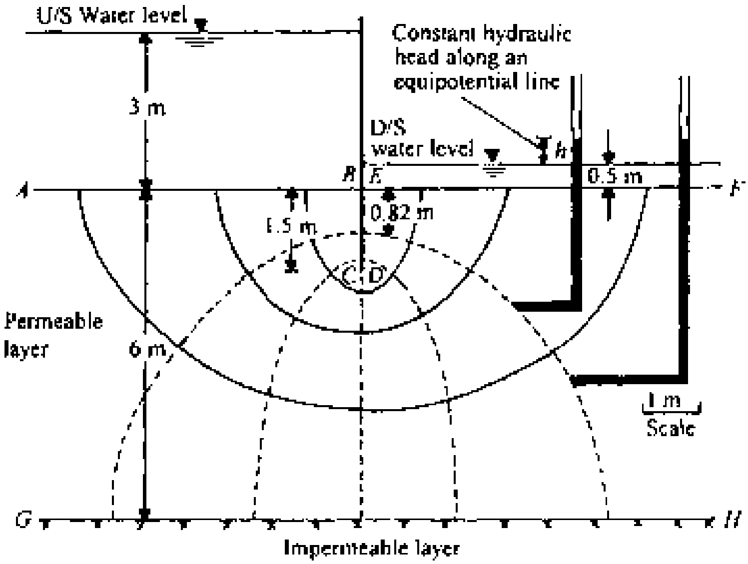


Figure 5.26 Flow net around a single row of sheet pile structures.

example of a flow net for a single row of sheet piles. The permeable layer is isotropic with respect to the coefficient of permeability, i.e., $k_x = k_z = k$. Note that the solid lines in Figure 5.26 are the flow lines and the broken lines are the equipotential lines. In drawing a flow net, the boundary conditions must be kept in mind. For example, in Figure 5.26,

1. *AB* is an equipotential line
2. *EF* is an equipotential line
3. *BCDE* (i.e., the sides of the sheet pile) is a flow line
4. *GH* is a flow line

The flow lines and the equipotential lines are drawn by trial and error. It must be remembered that the flow lines intersect the equipotential lines at right angles. The flow and equipotential lines are usually drawn in such a way that the flow elements are approximately squares. Drawing a flow net is time consuming and tedious because of the trial-and-error process involved. Once a satisfactory flow net has been drawn, it can be traced out.

Some other examples of flow nets are shown in Figures 5.27 and 5.28 for flow under dams.

Calculation of seepage from a flow net under a hydraulic structure

A *flow channel* is the strip located between two adjacent flow lines. To calculate the seepage under a hydraulic structure, consider a flow channel as shown in Figure 5.29.

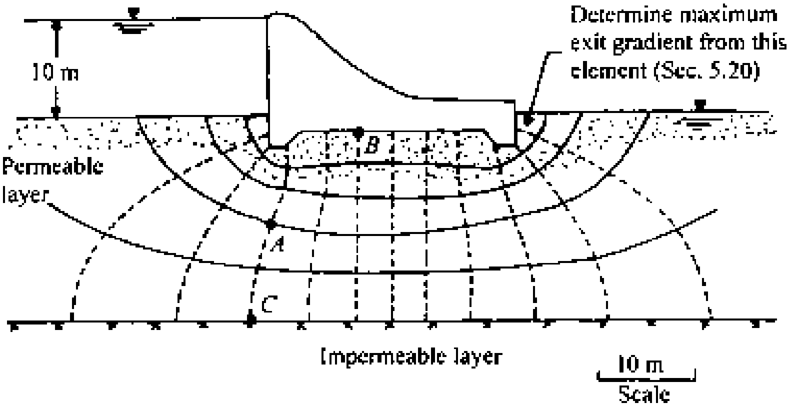


Figure 5.27 Flow net under a dam.

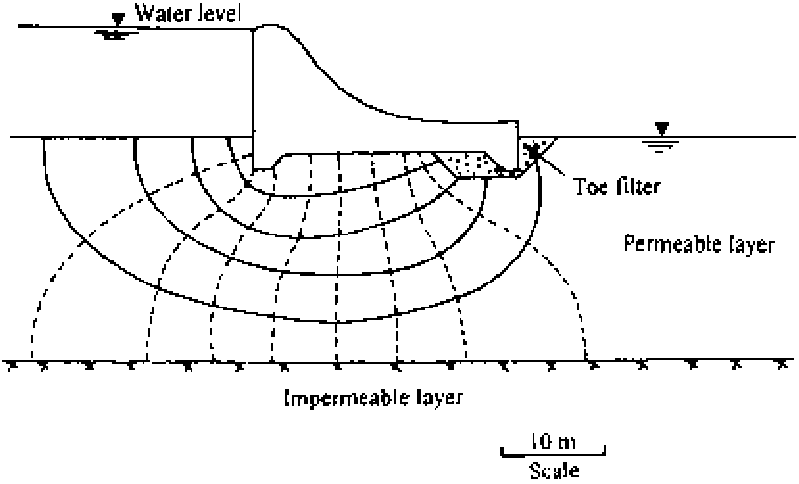


Figure 5.28 Flow net under a dam with a toe filter.

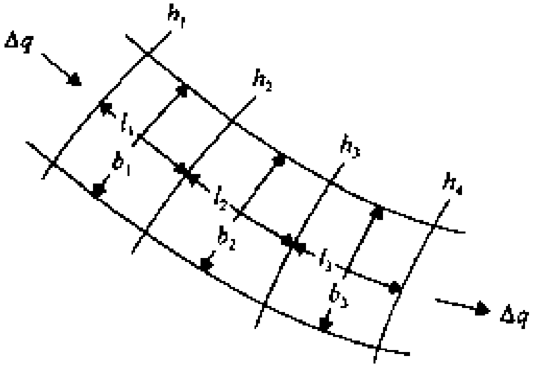


Figure 5.29 Flow through a flow channel.

The equipotential lines crossing the flow channel are also shown, along with their corresponding hydraulic heads. Let Δq be the flow through the flow channel per unit length of the hydraulic structure (i.e., perpendicular to the section shown). According to Darcy's law,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta q = kiA &= k\left(\frac{h_1 - h_2}{l_1}\right)(b_1 \times 1) = k\left(\frac{h_2 - h_3}{l_2}\right)(b_2 \times 1)\\ &= k\left(\frac{h_3 - h_4}{l_3}\right)(b_3 \times 1) = \ldots \qquad (5.122)\end{aligned}$$

If the flow elements are drawn as squares, then

$$l_1 = b_1$$
$$l_2 = b_2$$
$$l_3 = b_3$$
$$\vdots$$

So, from Eq. (5.122), we get

$$h_1 - h_2 = h_2 - h_3 = h_3 - h_4 = \cdots = \Delta h = \frac{h}{N_d} \tag{5.123}$$

where

Δh = potential drop = drop in piezometric elevation between two consecutive equipotential lines
h = total hydraulic head = difference in elevation of water between the upstream and downstream side
N_d = number of potential drops

Equation (5.123) demonstrates that the loss of head between any two consecutive equipotential lines is the same. Combining Eqs. (5.122) and (5.123) gives

$$\Delta q = k\frac{h}{N_d} \tag{5.124}$$

If there are N_f flow channels in a flow net, the rate of seepage per unit length of the hydraulic structure is

$$q = N_f \Delta q = kh\frac{N_f}{N_d} \tag{5.125}$$

Although flow nets are usually constructed in such a way that all flow elements are approximately squares, that need not always be the case. We could construct flow nets with all the flow elements drawn as rectangles. In that case the width-to-length ratio of the flow nets must be a constant, i.e.,

$$\frac{b_1}{l_1} = \frac{b_2}{l_2} = \frac{b_3}{l_3} = \ldots = n \tag{5.126}$$

For such flow nets the rate of seepage per unit length of hydraulic structure can be given by

$$q = kh\frac{N_f}{N_d}n \tag{5.127}$$

EXAMPLE 5.5

For the flow net shown in Figure 5.27:

(*a*) How high would water rise if a piezometer is placed at (i) *A* (ii) *B* (iii) *C*?
(*b*) If $k = 0.01\,\text{mm/s}$, determine the seepage loss of the dam in $\text{m}^3/(\text{day}\cdot\text{m})$.

SOLUTION The maximum hydraulic head h is 10 m. In Figure 5.27, $N_\text{d} = 12$, $\Delta h = h/N_\text{d} = 10/12 = 0.833$.

Part a(i): To reach *A*, water must go through three potential drops. So head lost is equal to $3 \times 0.833 = 2.5\,\text{m}$. Hence the elevation of the water level in the piezometer at *A* will be $10 - 2.5 = 7.5\,\text{m}$ above the ground surface.

Part a(ii): The water level in the piezometer above the ground level is $10 - 5(0.833) = 5.84\,\text{m}$.

Part a(iii): Points *A* and *C* are located on the same equipotential line. So water in a piezometer at *C* will rise to the same elevation as at *A*, i.e., 7.5 m above the ground surface.

Part b: The seepage loss is given by $q = kh(N_\text{f}/N_\text{d})$. From Figure 5.27, $N_\text{f} = 5$ and $N_\text{d} = 12$. Since

$$k = 0.01\,\text{mm/s} = \left(\frac{0.01}{1000}\right)(60 \times 60 \times 24) = 0.864\,\text{m/day}$$

$$q = 0.864(10)(5/12) = 3.6\,\text{m}^3/(\text{day}\cdot\text{m})$$

5.15 Hydraulic uplift force under a structure

Flow nets can be used to determine the hydraulic uplifting force under a structure. The procedure can best be explained through a numerical example. Consider the dam section shown in Figure 5.27, the cross-section of which has been replotted in Figure 5.30. To find the pressure head at point *D* (Figure 5.30), we refer to the flow net shown in Figure 5.27; the pressure head is equal to $(10 + 3.34\,\text{m})$ minus the hydraulic head loss. Point *D* coincides with the third equipotential line beginning with the upstream side, which means that the hydraulic head loss at that point is $2(h/N_\text{d}) = 2(10/12) = 1.67\,\text{m}$. So,

$$\text{Pressure head at } D = 13.34 - 1.67 = 11.67\,\text{m}$$

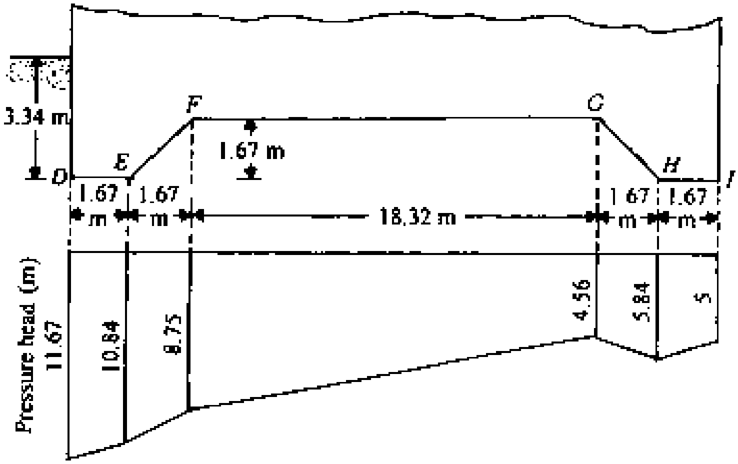


Figure 5.30 Pressure head under the dam section shown in Figure 5.27.

Similarly,

$$\text{Pressure head at } E = (10+3.34) - 3(10/12) = 10.84\,\text{m}$$

$$\text{Pressure head at } F = (10+1.67) - 3.5(10/12) = 8.75\,\text{m}$$

(Note that point F is approximately midway between the fourth and fifth equipotential lines starting from the upstream side.)

$$\text{Pressure head at } G = (10+1.67) - 8.5(10/12) = 4.56\,\text{m}$$

$$\text{Pressure head at } H = (10+3.34) - 9(10/12) = 5.84\,\text{m}$$

$$\text{Pressure head at } I = (10+3.34) - 10(10/12) = 5\,\text{m}$$

The pressure heads calculated above are plotted in Figure 5.30. Between points F and G, the variation of pressure heads will be approximately linear. The hydraulic uplift force per unit length of the dam, U, can now be calculated as

$$U = \gamma_w(\text{area of the pressure head diagram})(1)$$

$$= 9.81\left[\left(\frac{11.67+10.84}{2}\right)(1.67) + \left(\frac{10.84+8.75}{2}\right)(1.67)\right.$$

$$\left. + \left(\frac{8.75+4.56}{2}\right)(18.32) + \left(\frac{4.56+5.84}{2}\right)(1.67)\right.$$

$$+\left(\frac{5.84+5}{2}\right)(1.67)\Bigg]$$

$$=9.81(18.8+16.36+121.92+8.68+9.05)$$

$$=1714.9 \text{ kN/m}$$

5.16 Flow nets in anisotropic material

In developing the procedure described in Sec. 5.14 for plotting flow nets, we assumed that the permeable layer is isotropic, i.e., $k_{\text{horizontal}} = k_{\text{vertical}} = k$. Let us now consider the case of constructing flow nets for seepage through soils that show anisotropy with respect to permeability. For two-dimensional flow problems, we refer to Eq. (5.93):

$$k_x \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + k_z \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = 0$$

where $k_x = k_{\text{horizontal}}$ and $k_z = k_{\text{vertical}}$. This equation can be rewritten as

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{(k_z/k_x)\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{5.128}$$

Let $x' = \sqrt{k_z/k_x}\, x$, then

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{(k_z/k_x)\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x'^2} \tag{5.129}$$

Substituting Eq. (5.129) into Eq. (5.128), we obtain

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x'^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{5.130}$$

Equation (5.130) is of the same form as Eq. (5.94), which governs the flow in isotropic soils and should represent two sets of orthogonal lines in the $x'z$ plane. The steps for construction of a flow net in an anisotropic medium are as follows:

1. To plot the section of the hydraulic structure, adopt a *vertical scale*.
2. Determine $\sqrt{\dfrac{k_z}{k_x}} = \sqrt{\dfrac{k_{\text{vertical}}}{k_{\text{horizontal}}}}$
3. Adopt a horizontal scale such that $\text{scale}_{\text{horizontal}} = \sqrt{\dfrac{k_z}{k_x}}\,(\text{scale}_{\text{vertical}})$
4. With the scales adopted in steps 1 and 3, plot the cross-section of the structure.

5. Draw the flow net for the transformed section plotted in step 4 in the same manner as is done for seepage through isotropic soils.
6. Calculate the rate of seepage as

$$q = \sqrt{k_x k_z}\, h \frac{N_f}{N_d} \tag{5.131}$$

Compare Eqs. (5.124) and (5.131). Both equations are similar except for the fact that k in Eq. (5.124) is replaced by $\sqrt{k_x k_z}$ in Eq. (5.131).

EXAMPLE 5.6

A dam section is shown in Figure 5.31*a*. The coefficients of permeability of the permeable layer in the vertical and horizontal directions are 2×10^{-2} mm/s and 4×10^{-2} mm/s, respectively. Draw a flow net and calculate the seepage loss of the dam in $\text{m}^3/(\text{day} \cdot \text{m})$.

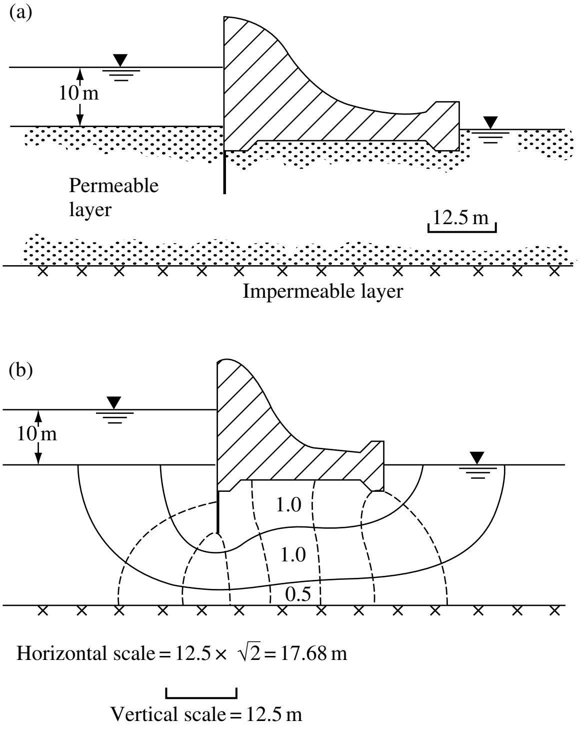


Figure 5.31 Construction of flow net under a dam.

SOLUTION From the given data,

$$k_z = 2 \times 10^{-2}\,\text{mm/s} = 1.728\ \text{m/day}$$

$$k_x = 4 \times 10^{-2}\,\text{mm/s} = 3.456\ \text{m/day}$$

and $h = 10\,\text{m}$. For drawing the flow net,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Horizontal scale} &= \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 10^{-2}}{4 \times 10^{-2}}}(\text{vertical scale})\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\text{vertical scale})\end{aligned}$$

On the basis of this, the dam section is replotted, and the flow net drawn as in Figure 5.31*b*. The rate of seepage is given by $q = \sqrt{k_x k_z}h(N_\text{f}/N_\text{d})$. From Figure 5.31*b*, $N_\text{d} = 8$ and $N_\text{f} = 2.5$. (the lowermost flow channel has a width-to-length ratio of 0.5). So,

$$q = \sqrt{(1.728)(3.456)}(10)(2.5/8) = 7.637\,\text{m}^3/(\text{day} \cdot \text{m})$$

EXAMPLE 5.7

A single row of sheet pile structure is shown in Figure 5.32*a*. Draw a flow net for the transformed section. Replot this flow net in the natural scale also. The relationship between the permeabilities is given as $k_x = 6k_z$.

SOLUTION For the transformed section,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Horizontal scale} &= \sqrt{\frac{k_z}{k_x}}(\text{vertical scale})\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}(\text{vertical scale})\end{aligned}$$

The transformed section and the corresponding flow net are shown in Figure 5.32*b*.

Figure 5.32*c* shows the flow net constructed to the natural scale. One important fact to be noticed from this is that when the soil is anisotropic with respect to permeability, *the flow and equipotential lines are not necessarily orthogonal.*

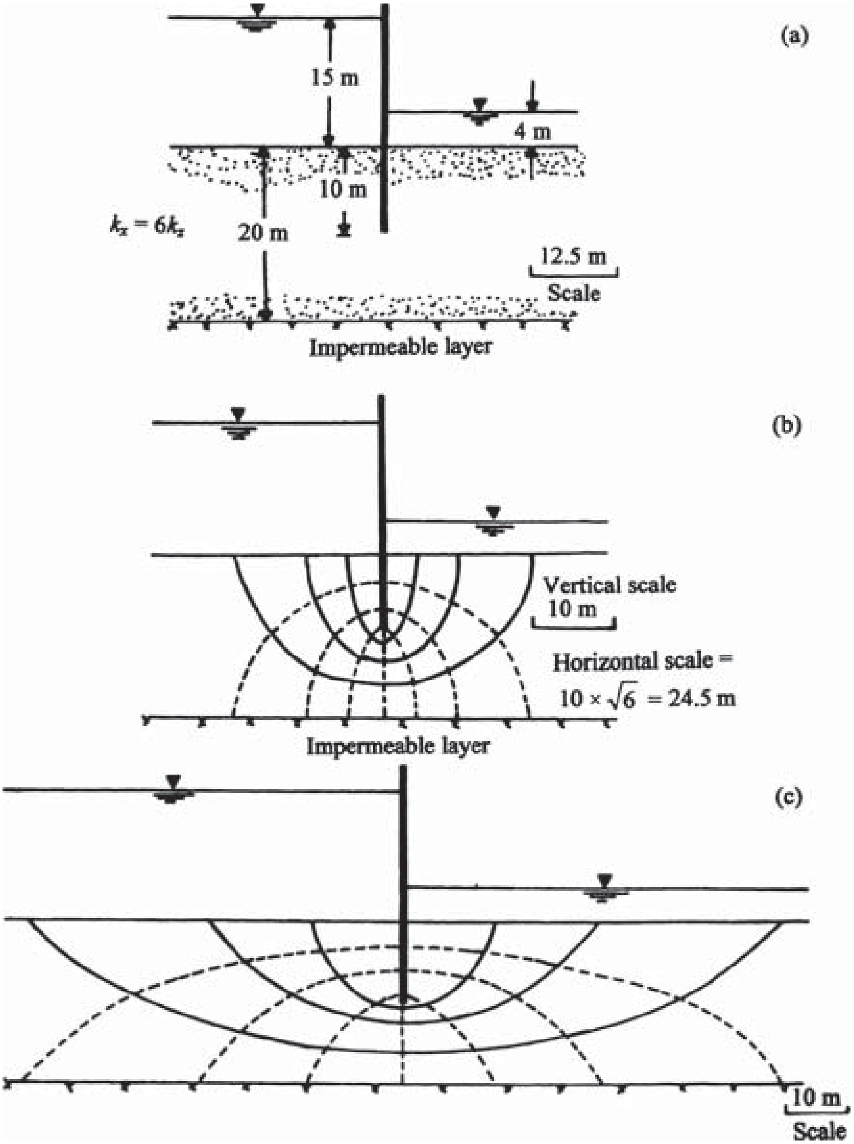


Figure 5.32 Flow net construction in anisotropic soil.

5.17 Construction of flow nets for hydraulic structures on nonhomogeneous subsoils

The flow net construction technique described in Sec. 5.14 is for the condition where the subsoil is homogeneous. Rarely in nature do such ideal conditions occur; in most cases, we encounter stratified soil deposits (such as those shown in Figure 5.35). When a flow net is constructed across the boundary of two soils with different permeabilities, the flow net deflects at the boundary. This is called a *transfer condition*. Figure 5.33 shows a general condition where a flow channel crosses the boundary of two soils. Soil layers 1 and 2 have permeabilities of k_1 and k_2, respectively. The dashed lines drawn across the flow channel are the equipotential lines.

Let Δh be the loss of hydraulic head between two consecutive equipotential lines. Considering a unit length perpendicular to the section shown, the rate of seepage through the flow channel is

$$\Delta q = k_1 \frac{\Delta h}{l_1}(b_1 \times 1) = k_2 \frac{\Delta h}{l_2}(b_2 \times 1)$$

or

$$\frac{k_1}{k_2} = \frac{b_2/l_2}{b_1/l_1} \tag{5.132}$$

where l_1 and b_1 are the length and width of the flow elements in soil layer 1 and l_2 and b_2 are the length and width of the flow elements in soil layer 2.

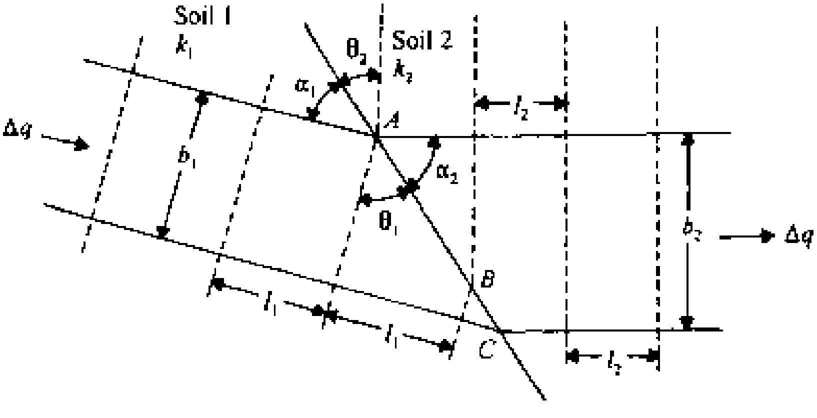


Figure 5.33 Transfer condition.

Referring again to Figure 5.33,

$$l_1 = AB\sin\theta_1 = AB\cos\alpha_1 \tag{5.133a}$$

$$l_2 = AB\sin\theta_2 = AB\cos\alpha_2 \tag{5.133b}$$

$$b_1 = AC\cos\theta_1 = AC\sin\alpha_1 \tag{5.133c}$$

$$b_2 = AC\cos\theta_2 = AC\sin\alpha_2 \tag{5.133d}$$

From Eqs. (5.133*a*) and (5.133*c*),

$$\frac{b_1}{l_1} = \frac{\cos\theta_1}{\sin\theta_1} = \frac{\sin\alpha_1}{\cos\alpha_1}$$

or

$$\frac{b_1}{l_1} = \frac{1}{\tan\theta_1} = \tan\alpha_1 \tag{5.134}$$

Also, from Eqs. (5.133*b*) and (5.133*d*),

$$\frac{b_2}{l_2} = \frac{\cos\theta_2}{\sin\theta_2} = \frac{\sin\alpha_2}{\cos\alpha_2}$$

or

$$\frac{b_2}{l_2} = \frac{1}{\tan\theta_2} = \tan\alpha_2 \tag{5.135}$$

Combining Eqs. (5.132), (5.134), and (5.135),

$$\frac{k_1}{k_2} = \frac{\tan\theta_1}{\tan\theta_2} = \frac{\tan\alpha_2}{\tan\alpha_1} \tag{5.136}$$

Flow nets in nonhomogeneous subsoils can be constructed using the relations given by Eq. (5.136) and other general principles outlined in Sec. 5.14. It is useful to keep the following points in mind while constructing the flow nets:

1. If $k_1 > k_2$, we may plot square flow elements in layer 1. This means that $l_1 = b_1$ in Eq. (5.132). So $k_1/k_2 = b_2/l_2$. Thus the flow elements in layer 2 will be rectangles and their width-to-length ratios will be equal to k_1/k_2. This is shown in Figure 5.34*a*.
2. If $k_1 < k_2$, we may plot square flow elements in layer 1 (i.e., $l_1 = b_1$). From Eq. (5.132), $k_1/k_2 = b_2/l_2$. So the flow elements in layer 2 will be rectangles. This is shown in Figure 5.34*b*.

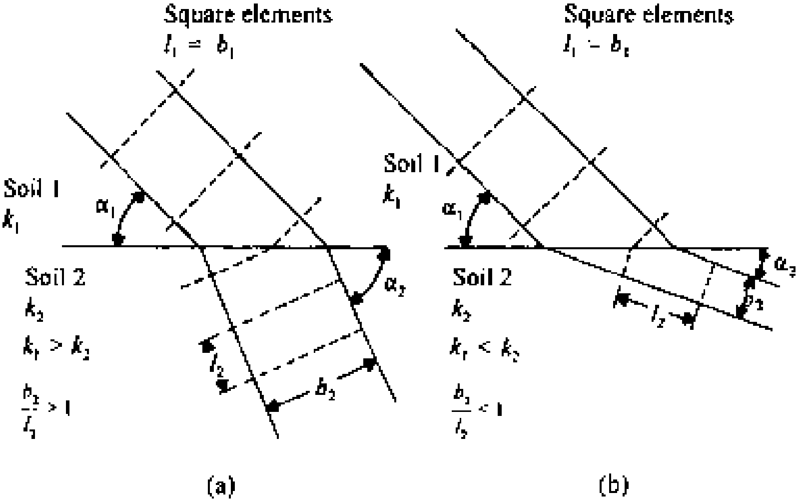


Figure 5.34 Flow channel at the boundary between two soils with different coefficients of permeability.

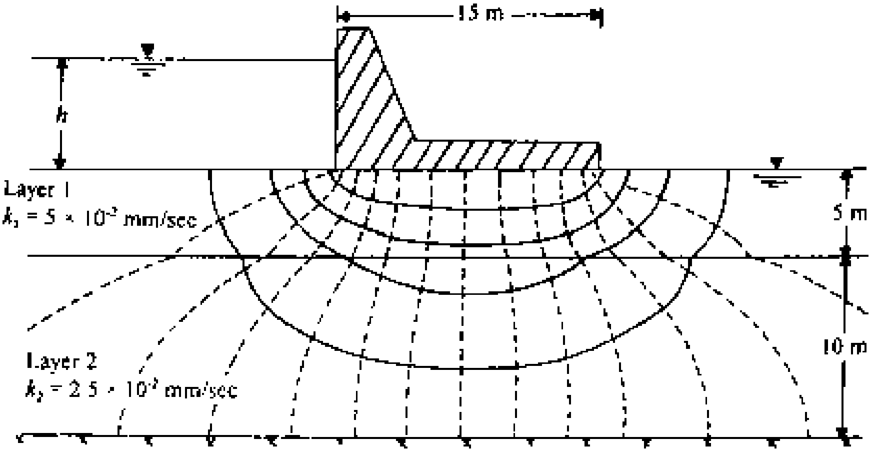


Figure 5.35 Flow net under a dam resting on a two-layered soil deposit.

An example of the construction of a flow net for a dam section resting on a two-layered soil deposit is given in Figure 5.35. Note that $k_1 = 5 \times 10^{-2}$ mm/s and $k_2 = 2.5 \times 10^{-2}$ mm/s. So,

$$\frac{k_1}{k_2} = \frac{5.0 \times 10^{-2}}{2.5 \times 10^{-2}} = 2 = \frac{\tan \alpha_2}{\tan \alpha_1} = \frac{\tan \theta_1}{\tan \theta_2}$$

In soil layer 1, the flow elements are plotted as squares, and since $k_1/k_2 = 2$, the length-to-width ratio of the flow elements in soil layer 2 is 1/2.

5.18 Numerical analysis of seepage

General seepage problems

In this section, we develop some approximate finite difference equations for solving seepage problems. We start from Laplace's equation, which was derived in Sec. 5.12. For two-dimensional seepage,

$$k_x \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + k_z \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{5.137}$$

Figure 5.36 shows, a part of a region in which flow is taking place. For flow in the horizontal direction, using Taylor's series, we can write

$$h_1 = h_0 + \Delta x \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)_0 + \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2!}\left(\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}\right)_0 + \frac{(\Delta x)^3}{3!}\left(\frac{\partial^3 h}{\partial x^3}\right)_0 + \cdots \tag{5.138}$$

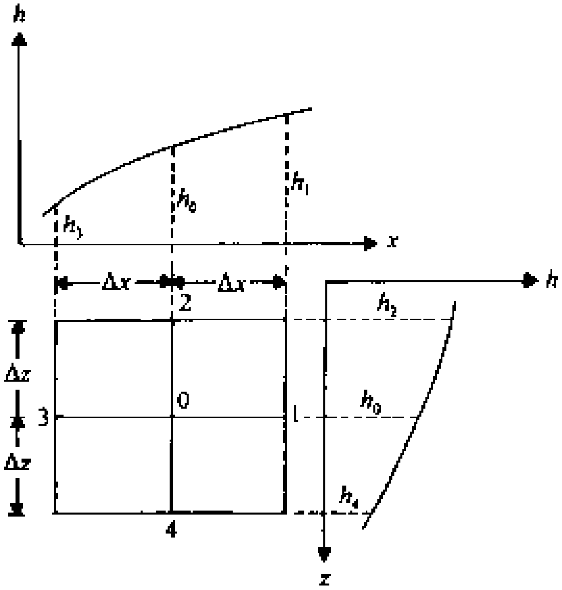


Figure 5.36 Hydraulic heads for flow in a region.

and

$$h_3 = h_0 - \Delta x\left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)_0 + \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2!}\left(\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}\right)_0 - \frac{(\Delta x)^3}{3!}\left(\frac{\partial^3 h}{\partial x^3}\right)_0 + \cdots \tag{5.139}$$

Adding Eqs. (5.138) and (5.139), we obtain

$$h_1 + h_3 = 2h_0 + \frac{2(\Delta x)^2}{2!}\left(\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}\right)_0 + \frac{2(\Delta x)^4}{4!}\left(\frac{\partial^4 h}{\partial x^4}\right)_0 + \cdots \tag{5.140}$$

Assuming Δx to be small, we can neglect the third and subsequent terms on the right-hand side of Eq. (5.140). Thus

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}\right)_0 = \frac{h_1 + h_3 - 2h_0}{(\Delta x)^2} \tag{5.141}$$

Similarly, for flow in the z direction we can obtain

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2}\right)_0 = \frac{h_2 + h_4 - 2h_0}{(\Delta z)^2} \tag{5.142}$$

Substitution of Eqs. (5.141) and (5.142) into Eq. (5.137) gives

$$k_x \frac{h_1 + h_3 - 2h_0}{(\Delta x)^2} + k_z \frac{h_2 + h_4 - 2h_0}{(\Delta z)^2} = 0 \tag{5.143}$$

If $k_x = k_y = k$ and $\Delta x = \Delta z$, Eq. (5.143) simplifies to

$$h_1 + h_2 + h_3 + h_4 - 4h_0 = 0$$

or

$$h_0 = \frac{1}{4}(h_1 + h_2 + h_3 + h_4) \tag{5.144}$$

Equation (5.144) can also be derived by considering Darcy's law, $q = kiA$. For the rate of flow from point 1 to point 0 through the channel shown in Figure 5.37*a*, we have

$$q_{1-0} = k\frac{h_1 - h_0}{\Delta x}\Delta z \tag{5.145}$$

Similarly,

$$q_{0-3} = k\frac{h_0 - h_3}{\Delta x}\Delta z \tag{5.146}$$

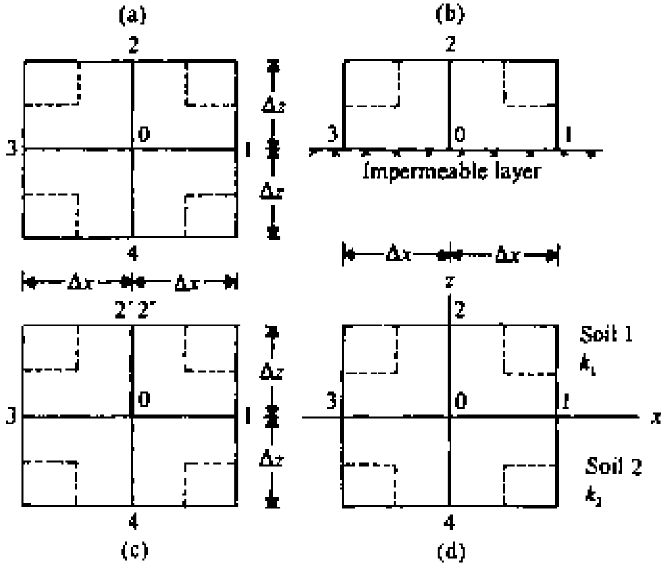


Figure 5.37 Numerical analysis of seepage.

$$q_{2-0} = k\frac{h_2 - h_0}{\Delta z}\Delta x \tag{5.147}$$

$$q_{0-4} = k\frac{h_0 - h_4}{\Delta z}\Delta x \tag{5.148}$$

Since the total rate of flow into point 0 is equal to the total rate of flow out of point 0, $q_{\text{in}} - q_{\text{out}} = 0$. Hence

$$(q_{1-0} + q_{2-0}) - (q_{0-3} + q_{0-4}) = 0 \tag{5.149}$$

Taking $\Delta x = \Delta z$ and substituting Eqs. (5.145)–(5.148) into Eq. (5.149), we get

$$h_0 = \frac{1}{4}(h_1 + h_2 + h_3 + h_4)$$

If the point 0 is located on the boundary of a pervious and an impervious layer, as shown in Figure 5.37*b*, Eq. (5.144) must be modified as follows:

$$q_{1-0} = k\frac{h_1 - h_0}{\Delta x}\frac{\Delta z}{2} \tag{5.150}$$

$$q_{0-3} = k\frac{h_0 - h_3}{\Delta x}\frac{\Delta z}{2} \tag{5.151}$$

$$q_{0-2} = k\frac{h_0 - h_2}{\Delta z}\Delta x \tag{5.152}$$

For continuity of flow,

$$q_{1-0} - q_{0-3} - q_{0-2} = 0 \tag{5.153}$$

With $\Delta x = \Delta z$, combining Eqs. (5.150)–(5.153) gives

$$\frac{h_1 - h_0}{2} - \frac{h_0 - h_3}{2} - (h_0 - h_2) = 0$$

$$\frac{h_1}{2} + \frac{h_3}{2} + h_2 - 2h_0 = 0$$

or

$$h_0 = \frac{1}{4}(h_1 + 2h_2 + h_3) \tag{5.154}$$

When point 0 is located at the bottom of a piling (Figure 5.37*c*), the equation for the hydraulic head for flow continuity can be given by

$$q_{1-0} + q_{4-0} - q_{0-3} - q_{0-2'} - q_{0-2''} = 0 \tag{5.155}$$

Note that 2′ and 2″ are two points at the same elevation on the opposite sides of the sheet pile with hydraulic heads of $h_{2'}$ and $h_{2''}$, respectively. For this condition we can obtain (for $\Delta x = \Delta z$), through a similar procedure to that above,

$$h_0 = \frac{1}{4}[h_1 + \frac{1}{2}(h_{2'} + h_{2''}) + h_3 + h_4] \tag{5.156}$$

Seepage in layered soils

Equation (5.144), which we derived above, is valid for seepage in homogeneous soils. However, for the case of flow across the boundary of one homogeneous soil layer to another, Eq. (5.144) must be modified. Referring to Figure 5.37*d*, since the flow region is located half in soil 1 with a coefficient of permeability k_1 and half in soil 2 with a coefficient of permeability k_2, we can say that

$$k_{\text{av}} = \frac{1}{2}(k_1 + k_2) \tag{5.157}$$

Now, if we replace soil 2 by soil 1, the replaced soil (i.e., soil 1) will have a hydraulic head of $h_{4'}$ in place of h_4. For the velocity to remain the same,

$$k_1 \frac{h_{4'} - h_0}{\Delta z} = k_2 \frac{h_4 - h_0}{\Delta z} \tag{5.158}$$

or

$$h_{4'} = \frac{k_2}{k_1}(h_4 - h_0) + h_0 \tag{5.159}$$

Thus, based on Eq. (5.137), we can write

$$\frac{k_1 + k_2}{2} \frac{h_1 + h_3 - 2h_0}{(\Delta x)^2} + k_1 \frac{h_2 + h_{4'} - 2h_0}{(\Delta z)^2} = 0 \tag{5.160}$$

Taking $\Delta x = \Delta z$ and substituting Eq. (5.159) into Eq. (5.160),

$$\frac{1}{2}(k_1 + k_2)\left[\frac{h_1 + h_3 - 2h_0}{(\Delta x)^2}\right] + \frac{k_1}{(\Delta x)^2}\left\{h_2 + \left[\frac{k_2}{k_1}(h_4 - h_0) + h_0\right] - 2h_0\right\} = 0 \tag{5.161}$$

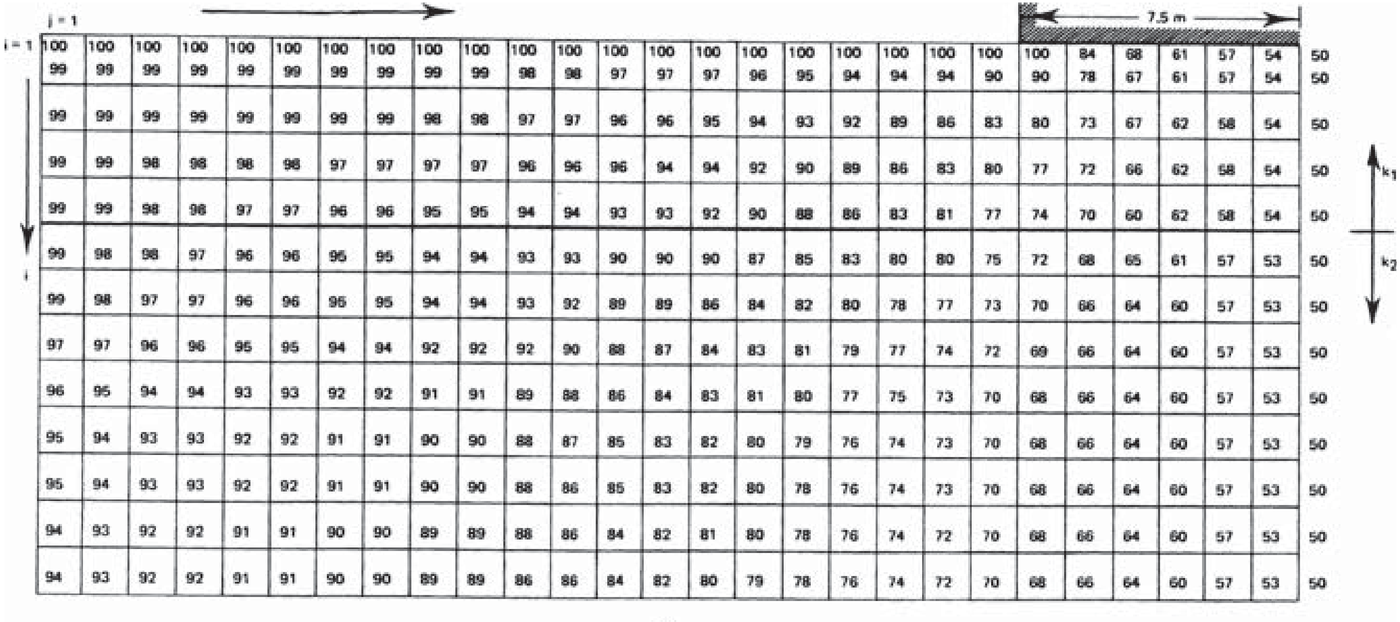
or

$$h_0 = \frac{1}{4}\left(h_1 + \frac{2k_1}{k_1 + k_2} h_2 + h_3 + \frac{2k_2}{k_1 + k_2} h_4\right) \tag{5.162}$$

The application of the equations developed in this section can best be demonstrated by the use of a numerical example. Consider the problem of determining the hydraulic heads at various points below the dam shown in Figure 5.35. Let $\Delta x = \Delta z = 1.25$ m. Since the flow net below the dam will be symmetrical, we will consider only the left half. The steps or determining the values of h at various points in the permeable soil layers are as follows:

1. Roughly sketch out a flow net.
2. Based on the rough flow net (step 1), assign some values for the hydraulic heads at various grid points. These are shown in Figure 5.38*a*. Note that the values of h assigned here are in percent.
3. Consider the heads for row 1 (i.e., $i = 1$). The $h_{(i,j)}$ for $i = 1$ and $j = 1, 2, \ldots, 22$ are 100 in Figure 5.38*a*; these are correct values based on the boundary conditions. The $h_{(i,j)}$ for $i = 1$ and $j = 23, 24, \ldots,$ 28 are estimated values. The flow condition for these grid points is similar to that shown in Figure 5.37*b*, and according to Eq. (5.154), $(h_1 + 2h_2 + h_3) - 4h_0 = 0$, or

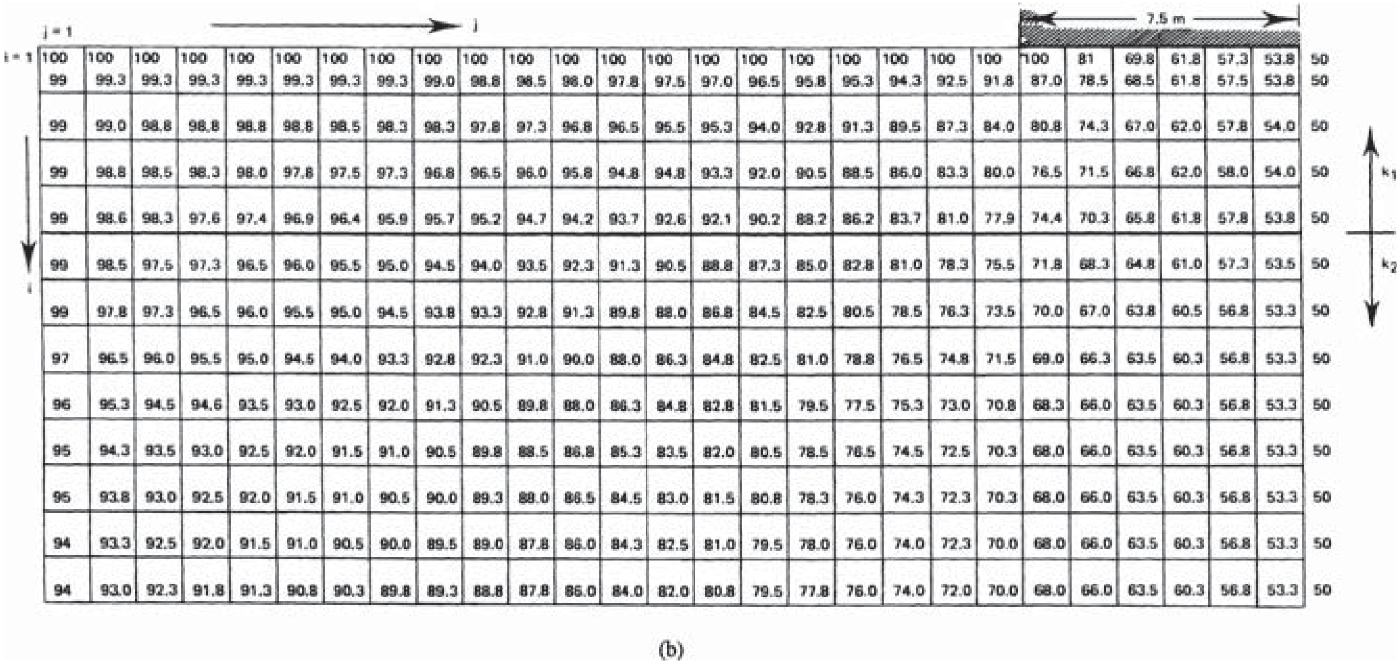
$$(h_{(i,j+1)} + 2h_{(i+1,j)} + h_{(i,j-1)}) - 4h_{(i,j)} = 0 \tag{5.163}$$



100 99	100 99	100 99	100 99	100 99	100 99	100 99	100 99	100 99	100 99	100 98	100 98	100 97	100 97	100 97	100 96	100 95	100 94	100 94	100 94	100 90	100 90	84 78	68 67	61 61	57 57	54 54	50 50
99	99	99	99	99	99	99	99	98	98	97	97	96	96	95	94	93	92	89	86	83	80	73	67	62	58	54	50
99	99	98	98	98	98	97	97	97	97	96	96	96	94	94	92	90	89	86	83	80	77	72	66	62	58	54	50
99	99	98	98	97	97	96	96	95	95	94	94	93	93	92	90	88	86	83	81	77	74	70	60	62	58	54	50
99	98	98	97	96	96	95	95	94	94	93	93	90	90	90	87	85	83	80	80	75	72	68	65	61	57	53	50
99	98	97	97	96	96	95	95	94	94	93	92	89	89	86	84	82	80	78	77	73	70	66	64	60	57	53	50
97	97	96	96	95	95	94	94	92	92	92	90	88	87	84	83	81	79	77	74	72	69	66	64	60	57	53	50
96	95	94	94	93	93	92	92	91	91	89	88	86	84	83	81	80	77	75	73	70	68	66	64	60	57	53	50
95	94	93	93	92	92	91	91	90	90	88	87	85	83	82	80	79	76	74	73	70	68	66	64	60	57	53	50
95	94	93	93	92	92	91	91	90	90	88	86	85	83	82	80	78	76	74	73	70	68	66	64	60	57	53	50
94	93	92	92	91	91	90	90	89	89	88	86	84	82	81	80	78	76	74	72	70	68	66	64	60	57	53	50
94	93	92	92	91	91	90	90	89	89	86	86	84	82	80	79	78	76	74	72	70	68	66	64	60	57	53	50

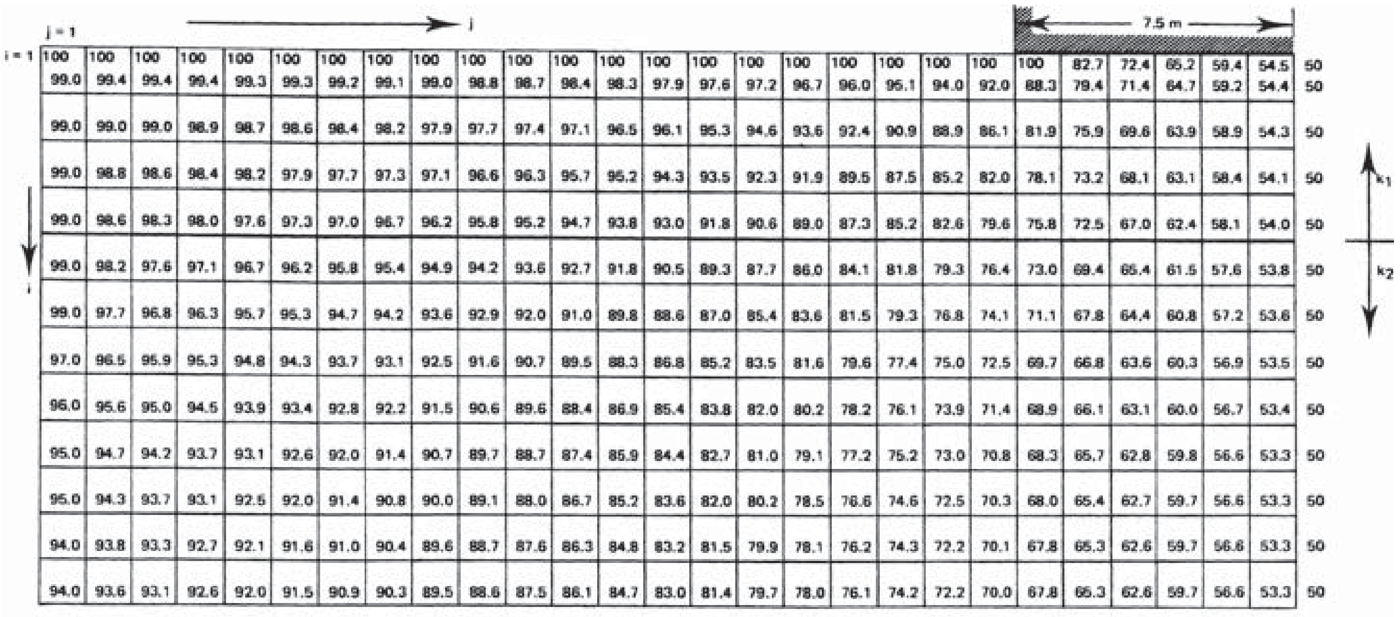
(a)

Figure 5.38 Hydraulic head calculation by numerical method: (a) Initial assumption.



100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	81	69.8	61.8	57.3	53.8	50
99	99.3	99.3	99.3	99.3	99.3	99.3	99.3	99.0	98.8	98.5	98.0	97.8	97.5	97.0	96.5	95.8	95.3	94.3	92.5	91.8	87.0	78.5	68.5	61.8	57.5	53.8	50
99	99.0	98.8	98.8	98.8	98.8	98.5	98.3	98.3	97.8	97.3	96.8	96.5	95.5	95.3	94.0	92.8	91.3	89.5	87.3	84.0	80.8	74.3	67.0	62.0	57.8	54.0	50
99	98.8	98.5	98.3	98.0	97.8	97.5	97.3	96.8	96.5	96.0	95.8	94.8	94.8	93.3	92.0	90.5	88.5	86.0	83.3	80.0	76.5	71.5	66.8	62.0	58.0	54.0	50
99	98.6	98.3	97.6	97.4	96.9	96.4	95.9	95.7	95.2	94.7	94.2	93.7	92.6	92.1	90.2	88.2	86.2	83.7	81.0	77.9	74.4	70.3	65.8	61.8	57.8	53.8	50
99	98.5	97.5	97.3	96.5	96.0	95.5	95.0	94.5	94.0	93.5	92.3	91.3	90.5	88.8	87.3	85.0	82.8	81.0	78.3	75.5	71.8	68.3	64.8	61.0	57.3	53.5	50
99	97.8	97.3	96.5	96.0	95.5	95.0	94.5	93.8	93.3	92.8	91.3	89.8	88.0	86.8	84.5	82.5	80.5	78.5	76.3	73.5	70.0	67.0	63.8	60.5	56.8	53.3	50
97	96.5	96.0	95.5	95.0	94.5	94.0	93.3	92.8	92.3	91.0	90.0	88.0	86.3	84.8	82.5	81.0	78.8	76.5	74.8	71.5	69.0	66.3	63.5	60.3	56.8	53.3	50
96	95.3	94.5	94.6	93.5	93.0	92.5	92.0	91.3	90.5	89.8	88.0	86.3	84.8	82.8	81.5	79.5	77.5	75.3	73.0	70.8	68.3	66.0	63.5	60.3	56.8	53.3	50
95	94.3	93.5	93.0	92.5	92.0	91.5	91.0	90.5	89.8	88.5	86.8	85.3	83.5	82.0	80.5	78.5	76.5	74.5	72.5	70.3	68.0	66.0	63.5	60.3	56.8	53.3	50
95	93.8	93.0	92.5	92.0	91.5	91.0	90.5	90.0	89.3	88.0	86.5	84.5	83.0	81.5	80.8	78.3	76.0	74.3	72.3	70.3	68.0	66.0	63.5	60.3	56.8	53.3	50
94	93.3	92.5	92.0	91.5	91.0	90.5	90.0	89.5	89.0	87.8	86.0	84.3	82.5	81.0	79.5	78.0	76.0	74.0	72.3	70.0	68.0	66.0	63.5	60.3	56.8	53.3	50
94	93.0	92.3	91.8	91.3	90.8	90.3	89.8	89.3	88.8	87.8	86.0	84.0	82.0	80.8	79.5	77.8	76.0	74.0	72.0	70.0	68.0	66.0	63.5	60.3	56.8	53.3	50

Figure 5.38 (b) At the end of the first interation.



100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	82.7	72.4	65.2	59.4	54.5	50
99.0	99.4	99.4	99.4	99.3	99.3	99.2	99.1	99.0	98.8	98.7	98.4	98.3	97.9	97.6	97.2	96.7	96.0	95.1	94.0	92.0	88.3	79.4	71.4	64.7	59.2	54.4	50
99.0	99.0	99.0	98.9	98.7	98.6	98.4	98.2	97.9	97.7	97.4	97.1	96.5	96.1	95.3	94.6	93.6	92.4	90.9	88.9	86.1	81.9	75.9	69.6	63.9	58.9	54.3	50
99.0	98.8	98.6	98.4	98.2	97.9	97.7	97.3	97.1	96.6	96.3	95.7	95.2	94.3	93.5	92.3	91.9	89.5	87.5	85.2	82.0	78.1	73.2	68.1	63.1	58.4	54.1	50
99.0	98.6	98.3	98.0	97.6	97.3	97.0	96.7	96.2	95.8	95.2	94.7	93.8	93.0	91.8	90.6	89.0	87.3	85.2	82.6	79.6	75.8	72.5	67.0	62.4	58.1	54.0	50
99.0	98.2	97.6	97.1	96.7	96.2	95.8	95.4	94.9	94.2	93.6	92.7	91.8	90.5	89.3	87.7	86.0	84.1	81.8	79.3	76.4	73.0	69.4	65.4	61.5	57.6	53.8	50
99.0	97.7	96.8	96.3	95.7	95.3	94.7	94.2	93.6	92.9	92.0	91.0	89.8	88.6	87.0	85.4	83.6	81.5	79.3	76.8	74.1	71.1	67.8	64.4	60.8	57.2	53.6	50
97.0	96.5	95.9	95.3	94.8	94.3	93.7	93.1	92.5	91.6	90.7	89.5	88.3	86.8	85.2	83.5	81.6	79.6	77.4	75.0	72.5	69.7	66.8	63.6	60.3	56.9	53.5	50
96.0	95.6	95.0	94.5	93.9	93.4	92.8	92.2	91.5	90.6	89.6	88.4	86.9	85.4	83.8	82.0	80.2	78.2	76.1	73.9	71.4	68.9	66.1	63.1	60.0	56.7	53.4	50
95.0	94.7	94.2	93.7	93.1	92.6	92.0	91.4	90.7	89.7	88.7	87.4	85.9	84.4	82.7	81.0	79.1	77.2	75.2	73.0	70.8	68.3	65.7	62.8	59.8	56.6	53.3	50
95.0	94.3	93.7	93.1	92.5	92.0	91.4	90.8	90.0	89.1	88.0	86.7	85.2	83.6	82.0	80.2	78.5	76.6	74.6	72.5	70.3	68.0	65.4	62.7	59.7	56.6	53.3	50
94.0	93.8	93.3	92.7	92.1	91.6	91.0	90.4	89.6	88.7	87.6	86.3	84.8	83.2	81.5	79.9	78.1	76.2	74.3	72.2	70.1	67.8	65.3	62.6	59.7	56.6	53.3	50
94.0	93.6	93.1	92.6	92.0	91.5	90.9	90.3	89.5	88.6	87.5	86.1	84.7	83.0	81.4	79.7	78.0	76.1	74.2	72.2	70.0	67.8	65.3	62.6	59.7	56.6	53.3	50

(c)

Figure 5.38 (c) At the end of the tenth iteration.

Since the hydraulic heads in Figure 5.38 are assumed values, Eq. (5.163) will not be satisfied. For example, for the grid point $i = 1$ and $j = 23$, $h_{(i,j-1)} = 100$, $h_{(i,j)} = 84$, $h_{(i,j+1)} = 68$, and $h_{(i+1,j)} = 78$. If these values are substituted into Eq. (5.163), we get $[68 + 2(78) + 100] - 4(84) = -12$, instead of zero. If we set -12 equal to R (where R stands for *residual*) and add $R/4$ to $h_{(i,j)}$, Eq. (5.163) will be satisfied. So the new, corrected value of $h_{(i,j)}$ is equal to $84 + (-3) = 81$, as shown in Figure 5.38*b*. This is called the relaxation process. Similarly, the corrected head for the grid point $i = 1$ and $j = 24$ can be found as follows:

$$[84 + 2(67) + 61] - 4(68) = 7 = R$$

So, $h_{(1,24)} = 68 + 7/4 = 69.75 \approx 69.8$. The corrected values of $h_{(1,25)}$, $h_{(1,26)}$, and $h_{(1,27)}$ can be determined in a similar manner. Note that $h_{(1,28)} = 50$ is correct, based on the boundary condition. These are shown in Figure 5.38*b*.

4. Consider the rows $i = 2$, 3, and 4. The $h_{(i,j)}$ for $i = 2, \ldots, 4$ and $j = 2, 3, \ldots, 27$ should follow Eq. (5.144); $(h_1 + h_2 + h_3 + h_4) - 4h_0 = 0$; or

$$(h_{(i,j+1)} + h_{(i-1,j)} + h_{(i,j-1)} + h_{(i+1,j)}) - 4h_{(i,j)} = 0 \tag{5.164}$$

To find the corrected heads $h_{(i,j)}$, we proceed as in step 3. The residual R is calculated by substituting values into Eq. (5.164), and the corrected head is then given by $h_{(i,j)} + R/4$. Owing to symmetry, the corrected values of $h_{(1,28)}$ for $i = 2$, 3, and 4 are all 50, as originally assumed. The corrected heads are shown in Figure 5.38*b*.

5. Consider row $i = 5$ (for $j = 2, 3, \ldots, 27$). According to Eq. (5.162),

$$h_1 + \frac{2k_1}{k_1 + k_2} h_2 + h_3 + \frac{2k_2}{k_1 + k_2} h_4 - 4h_0 = 0 \tag{5.165}$$

Since $k_1 = 5 \times 10^{-2}$ mm/s and $k_2 = 2.5 \times 10^{-2}$ mm/s,

$$\frac{2k_1}{k_1 + k_2} = \frac{2(5) \times 10^{-2}}{(5 + 2.5) \times 10^{-2}} = 1.33$$

$$\frac{2k_2}{k_1 + k_2} = \frac{2(2.5) \times 10^{-2}}{(5 + 2.5) \times 10^{-2}} = 0.667$$

Using the above values, Eq. (5.165) can be rewritten as

$$h_{(i,j+1)} + 1.333h_{(i-1,j)} + h_{(i,j-1)} + 0.667h_{(i+1,j)} - 4h_{(i,j)} = 0$$

As in step 4, calculate the residual R by using the heads in Figure 5.38*a*. The corrected values of the heads are given by $h_{(i,j)} + R/4$. These are shown in Figure 5.38*b*. Note that, owing to symmetry, the head at the grid point $i = 5$ and $j = 28$ is 50, as assumed initially.

6. Consider the rows $i = 6, 7, \ldots, 12$. The $h_{(i,j)}$ for $i = 6, 7, \ldots, 12$ and $j = 2, 3, \ldots, 27$ can be found by using Eq. (5.164). Find the corrected head in a manner similar to that in step 4. The heads at $j = 28$ are all 50, as assumed. These values are shown in Figure 5.38*b*.
7. Consider row $i = 13$. The $h_{(i,j)}$ for $i = 13$ and $j = 2, 3, \ldots, 27$ can be found from Eq. (5.154), $(h_1 + 2h_2 + h_3) - 4h_0 = 0$, or

   $$h_{(i,j+1)} + 2h_{(i-1,j)} + h_{(i,j-1)} - 4h_{(i,j)} = 0$$

   With proper values of the head given in Figure 5.38*a*, find the residual and the corrected heads as in step 3. Note that $h_{(13,28)} = 50$ owing to symmetry. These values are given in Figure 5.38*b*.
8. With the new heads, repeat steps 3–7. This iteration must be carried out several times until the residuals are negligible.

Figure 5.38*c* shows the corrected hydraulic heads after ten iterations. With these values of h, the equipotential lines can now easily be drawn.

5.19 Seepage force per unit volume of soil mass

Flow of water through a soil mass results in some force being exerted on the soil itself. To evaluate the *seepage force* per unit volume of soil, consider a soil mass bounded by two flow lines *ab* and *cd* and two equipotential lines *ef* and *gh*, as shown in Figure 5.39. The soil mass has unit thickness at right angles to the section shown. The self-weight of the soil mass

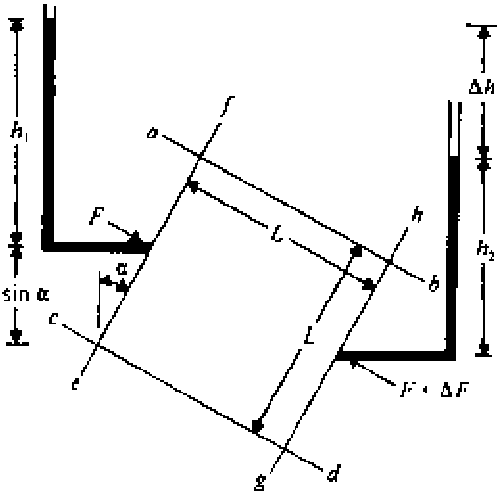


Figure 5.39 Seepage force determination.

is (length)(width)(thickness)(γ_{sat}) = (L)(L)(1)(γ_{sat}) = $L^2\gamma_{\text{sat}}$. The hydrostatic force on the side *ef* of the soil mass is (pressure head)(L)(1) = $h_1\gamma_{\text{w}}L$. The hydrostatic force on the side *gh* of the soil mass is $h_2L\gamma_{\text{w}}$. For equilibrium,

$$\Delta F = h_1\gamma_{\text{w}}L + L^2\gamma_{\text{sat}}\sin\alpha - h_2\gamma_{\text{w}}L \tag{5.166}$$

However, $h_1 + L\sin\alpha = h_2 + \Delta h$, so

$$h_2 = h_1 + L\sin\alpha - \Delta h \tag{5.167}$$

Combining Eqs. (5.166) and (5.167),

$$\Delta F = h_1\gamma_{\text{w}}L + L^2\gamma_{\text{sat}}\sin\alpha - (h_1 + L\sin\alpha - \Delta h)\gamma_{\text{w}}L$$

or

$$\Delta F = L^2(\gamma_{\text{sat}} - \gamma_{\text{w}})\sin\alpha + \Delta h\gamma_{\text{w}}L = \underset{\substack{\text{submerged}\\ \text{unit weight}\\ \text{of soil}}}{L^2\gamma'\sin\alpha} + \underset{\substack{\text{seepage}\\ \text{force}}}{\Delta h\gamma_{\text{w}}L} \tag{5.168}$$

where $\gamma' = \gamma_{\text{sat}} - \gamma_{\text{w}}$. From Eq. (5.168) we can see that the seepage force on the soil mass considered is equal to $\Delta h\gamma_{\text{w}}L$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Seepage force per unit volume of soil mass} &= \frac{\Delta h\gamma_{\text{w}}L}{L^2}\\ &= \gamma_{\text{w}}\frac{\Delta h}{L} = \gamma_{\text{w}}i\end{aligned} \tag{5.169}$$

where i is the hydraulic gradient.

5.20 Safety of hydraulic structures against piping

When upward seepage occurs and the hydraulic gradient i is equal to i_{cr}, *piping* or *heaving* originates in the soil mass:

$$i_{\text{cr}} = \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma_{\text{w}}}$$

$$\gamma' = \gamma_{\text{sat}} - \gamma_{\text{w}} = \frac{G_{\text{s}}\gamma_{\text{w}} + e\gamma_{\text{w}}}{1+e} - \gamma_{\text{w}} = \frac{(G_{\text{s}} - 1)\gamma_{\text{w}}}{1+e}$$

So,

$$i_{\text{cr}} = \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma_{\text{w}}} = \frac{G_{\text{s}} - 1}{1+e} \tag{5.170}$$

For the combinations of G_s and e generally encountered in soils, i_{cr} varies within a range of about 0.85–1.1.

Harza (1935) investigated the safety of hydraulic structures against piping. According to his work, the factor of safety against piping, F_S, can be defined as

$$F_S = \frac{i_{cr}}{i_{exit}} \tag{5.171}$$

where i_{exit} is the maximum exit gradient. The maximum exit gradient can be determined from the flow net. Referring to Figure 5.27, the maximum exit gradient can be given by $\Delta h/l$ (Δh is the head lost between the last two equipotential lines, and l the length of the flow element). A factor of safety of 3–4 is considered adequate for the safe performance of the structure. Harza also presented charts for the maximum exit gradient of dams constructed over deep homogeneous deposits (see Figure 5.40). Using the notations shown in Figure 5.40, the maximum exit gradient can be given by

$$i_{exit} = C\frac{h}{B} \tag{5.172}$$

A theoretical solution for the determination of the maximum exit gradient for a single row of sheet pile structures as shown in Figure 5.26 is available (see Harr, 1962) and is of the form

$$i_{exit} = \frac{1}{\pi}\frac{\text{maximum hydraulic head}}{\text{depth of penetration of sheet pile}} \tag{5.173}$$

Lane (1935) also investigated the safety of dams against piping and suggested an empirical approach to the problem. He introduced a term called *weighted creep distance*, which is determined from the shortest flow path:

$$L_w = \frac{\sum L_h}{3} + \sum L_v \tag{5.174}$$

where

L_w = weighted creep distance
$\sum L_h = L_{h_1} + L_{h_2} + \cdots$ = sum of horizontal distance along shortest flow path (see Figure 5.41)
$\sum L_v = L_{v_1} + L_{v_2} + \cdots$ = sum of vertical distances along shortest flow path (see Figure 5.41)

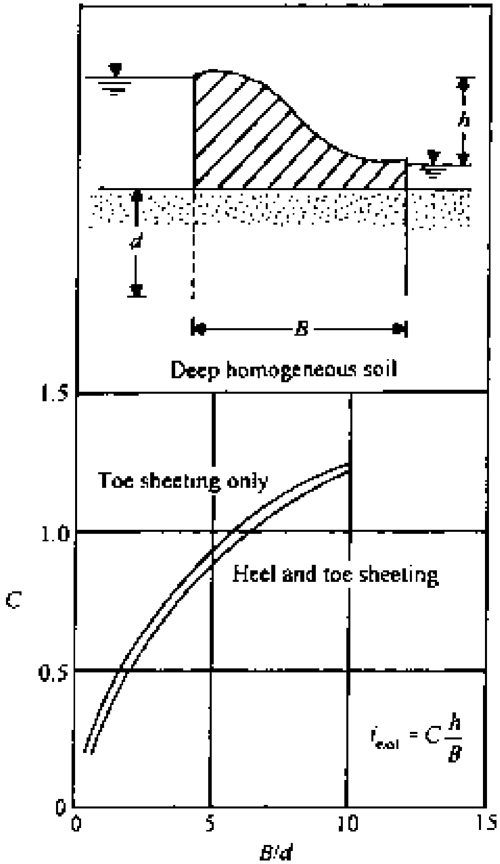


Figure 5.40 Critical exit gradient [Eq. (5.172)].

Once the weighted creep length has been calculated, the weighted creep ratio can be determined as (Figure 5.41)

$$\text{Weighted creep ratio} = \frac{L_w}{H_1 - H_2} \tag{5.175}$$

For a structure to be safe against piping, Lane suggested that the weighted creep ratio should be equal to or greater than the safe values shown in Table 5.4.

If the cross-section of a given structure is such that the shortest flow path has a slope steeper than 45°, it should be taken as a vertical path. If the slope of the shortest flow path is less than 45°, it should be considered as a horizontal path.

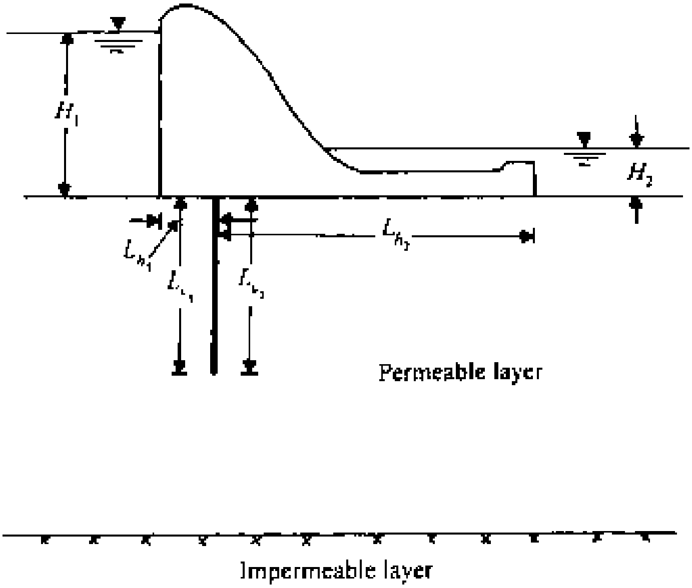


Figure 5.41 Calculation of weighted creep distance.

Table 5.4 Safe values for the weighted creep ratio

Material	*Safe weighted creep ratio*
Very fine sand or silt	8.5
Fine sand	7.0
Medium sand	6.0
Coarse sand	5.0
Fine gravel	4.0
Coarse gravel	3.0
Soft to medium clay	2.0–3.0
Hard clay	1.8
Hard pan	1.6

Terzaghi (1922) conducted some model tests with a single row of sheet piles as shown in Figure 5.42 and found that the failure due to piping takes place within a distance of $D/2$ from the sheet piles (D is the depth of penetration of the sheet pile). Therefore, the stability of this type of structure can be determined by considering a soil prism on the downstream side of unit thickness and of section $D \times D/2$. Using the flow net, the hydraulic uplifting pressure can be determined as

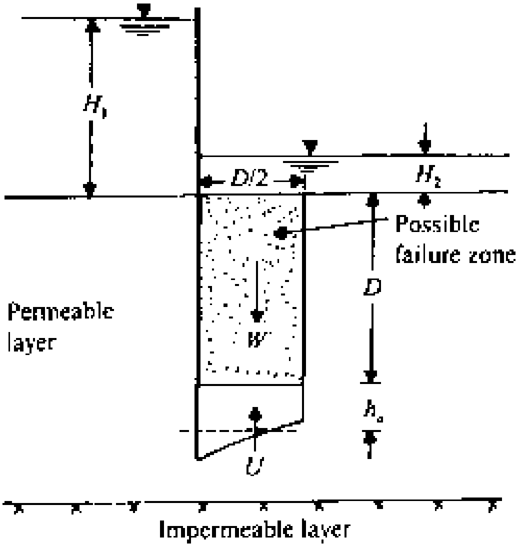


Figure 5.42 Failure due to piping for a single-row sheet pile structure.

$$U = \frac{1}{2}\gamma_w D h_a \tag{5.176}$$

where h_a is the average hydraulic head at the base of the soil prism. The submerged weight of the soil prism acting vertically downward can be given by

$$W' = \frac{1}{2}\gamma' D^2 \tag{5.177}$$

Hence the factor of safety against heave is

$$F_S = \frac{W'}{U} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\gamma' D^2}{\frac{1}{2}\gamma_w D h_a} = \frac{D\gamma'}{h_a \gamma_w} \tag{5.178}$$

A factor of safety of about 4 is generally considered adequate.

For structures other than a single row of sheet piles, such as that shown in Figure 5.43, Terzaghi (1943) recommended that the stability of several soil prisms of size $D/2 \times D' \times 1$ be investigated to find the minimum factor of safety. Note that $0 < D' \leq D$. However, Harr (1962, p. 125) suggested that a factor of safety of 4–5 with $D' = D$ should be sufficient for safe performance of the structure.

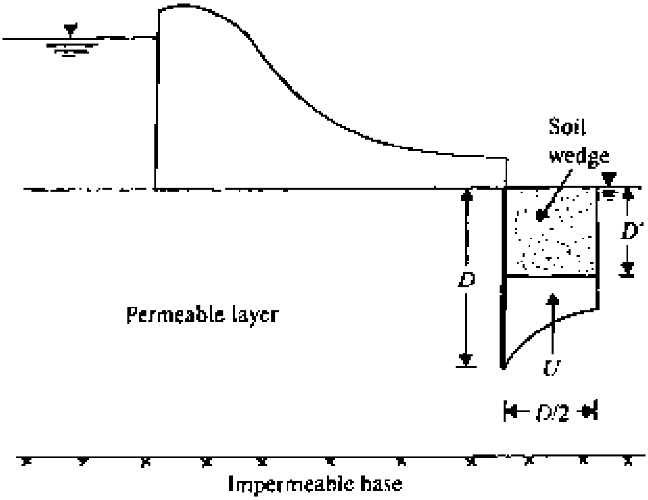


Figure 5.43 Safety against piping under a dam.

EXAMPLE 5.8

A flow net for a single row of sheet piles is given in Figure 5.26.

(*a*) Determine the factor of safety against piping by Harza's method.
(*b*) Determine the factor of safety against piping by Terzaghi's method [Eq. (5.178)]. Assume $\gamma' = 10.2\,\text{kN/m}^3$.

SOLUTION *Part a*:

$$i_{\text{exit}} = \frac{\Delta h}{L} \qquad \Delta h = \frac{3-0.5}{N_{\text{d}}} = \frac{3-0.5}{6} = 0.417\,\text{m}$$

The length of the last flow element can be scaled out of Figure 5.26 and is approximately 0.82 m. So,

$$i_{\text{exit}} = \frac{0.417}{0.82} = 0.509$$

[We can check this with the theoretical equation given in Eq. (5.173):

$$i_{\text{exit}} = (1/\pi)[(3-0.5)/1.5] = 0.53$$

which is close to the value obtained above.]

$$i_{\text{cr}} = \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma_{\text{w}}} = \frac{10.2\,\text{kN/m}^3}{9.81\,\text{kN/m}^3} = 1.04$$

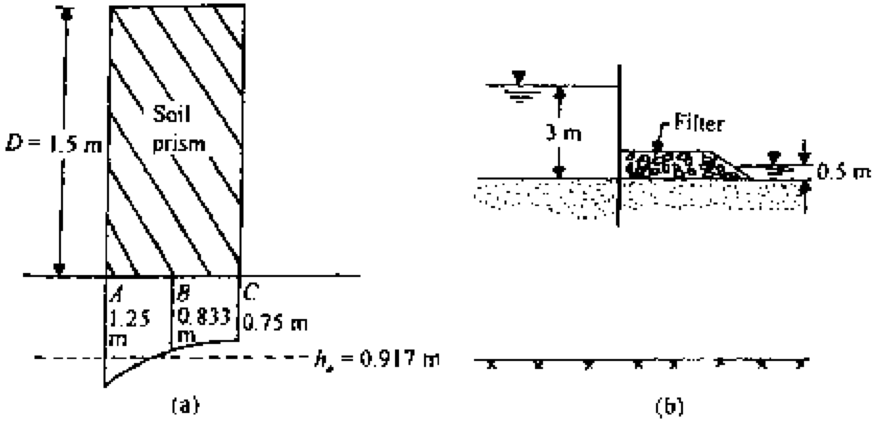


Figure 5.44 Factor of safety calculation by Terzaghi's method.

So the factor of safety against piping is

$$\frac{i_{\mathrm{cr}}}{i_{\mathrm{exit}}} = \frac{1.04}{0.509} = 2.04$$

Part b: A soil prism of cross-section $D \times D/2$ where $D = 1.5\,\mathrm{m}$, on the downstream side adjacent to the sheet pile is plotted in Figure 5.44*a*. The approximate hydraulic heads at the bottom of the prism can be evaluated by using the flow net. Referring to Figure 5.26 (note that $N_{\mathrm{d}} = 6$),

$$h_{\mathrm{A}} = \frac{3}{6}(3 - 0.5) = 1.25\,\mathrm{m}$$

$$h_{\mathrm{B}} = \frac{2}{6}(3 - 0.5) = 0.833\,\mathrm{m}$$

$$h_{\mathrm{C}} = \frac{1.8}{6}(3 - 0.5) = 0.75\,\mathrm{m}$$

$$h_{\mathrm{a}} = \frac{0.375}{0.75}\left(\frac{1.25 + 0.75}{2} + 0.833\right) = 0.917\,\mathrm{m}$$

$$F_{\mathrm{S}} = \frac{D\gamma'}{h_{\mathrm{a}}\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}} = \frac{1.5 \times 10.2}{0.917 \times 9.81} = 1.7$$

The factor of safety calculated here is rather low. However, it can be increased by placing some filter material on the downstream side above the ground surface, as shown in Figure 5.44*b*. This will increase the weight of the soil prism [W'; see Eq. (5.177)].

Example 5.9

A dam section is shown in Figure 5.45. The subsoil is fine sand. Using Lane's method, determine whether the structure is safe against piping.

SOLUTION From Eq. (5.174),

$$L_\mathrm{w} = \frac{\sum L_\mathrm{h}}{3} + \sum L_\mathrm{v}$$

$$\sum L_\mathrm{h} = 6 + 10 = 16\,\mathrm{m}$$

$$\sum L_\mathrm{v} = 1 + (8 + 8) + 1 + 2 = 20\,\mathrm{m}$$

$$L_\mathrm{w} = \frac{16}{3} + 20 = 25.33\,\mathrm{m}$$

From Eq. (5.175),

$$\text{Weighted creep ratio} = \frac{L_\mathrm{w}}{H_1 - H_2} = \frac{25.33}{10 - 2} = 3.17$$

From Table 5.4, the safe weighted creep ratio for fine sand is about 7. Since the calculated weighted creep ratio is 3.17, the structure is *unsafe*.

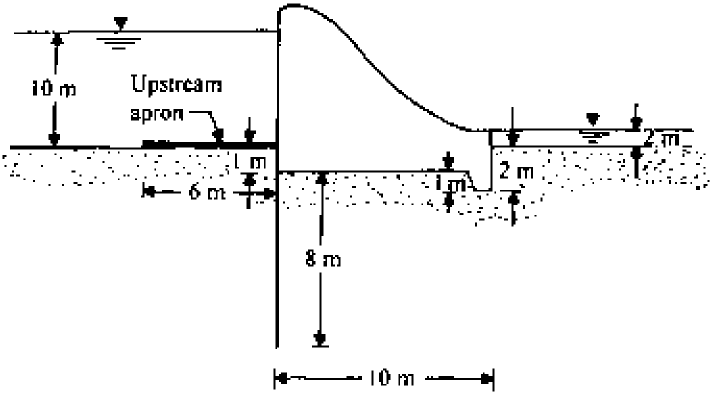


Figure 5.45 Safety against piping under a dam by using Lane's method.

5.21 Filter design

When seepage water flows from a soil with relatively fine grains into a coarser material (e.g., Figure 5.44*b*), there is a danger that the fine soil particles may wash away into the coarse material. Over a period of time, this process may clog the void spaces in the coarser material. Such a situation can be prevented by the use of a filter or protective filter between the two soils. For example, consider the earth dam section shown in Figure 5.46. If rockfills were only used at the toe of the dam, the seepage water would wash the fine soil grains into the toe and undermine the structure. Hence, for the safety of the structure, a filter should be placed between the fine soil and the rock toe (Figure 5.46). For the proper selection of the filter material, two conditions should be kept in mind.

1. The size of the voids in the filter material should be small enough to hold the larger particles of the protected material in place.
2. The filter material should have a high permeability to prevent buildup of large seepage forces and hydrostatic pressures in the filters.

Based on the experimental investigation of protective filters, Terzaghi and Peck (1948) provided the following criteria to satisfy the above conditions:

$$\frac{D_{15(\mathrm{F})}}{D_{85(\mathrm{B})}} \le 4\text{–}5 \qquad \text{(to satisfy condition 1)} \tag{5.179}$$

$$\frac{D_{15(\mathrm{F})}}{D_{15(\mathrm{B})}} \ge 4\text{–}5 \qquad \text{(to satisfy condition 2)} \tag{5.180}$$

where

$D_{15(\mathrm{F})}$ = diameter through which 15% of filter material will pass
$D_{15(\mathrm{B})}$ = diameter through which 15% of soil to be protected will pass
$D_{85(\mathrm{B})}$ = diameter through which 85% of soil to be protected will pass

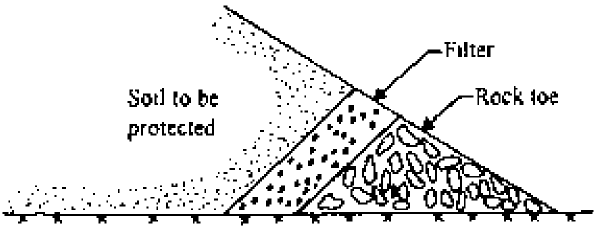


Figure 5.46 Use of filter at the toe of an earth dam.

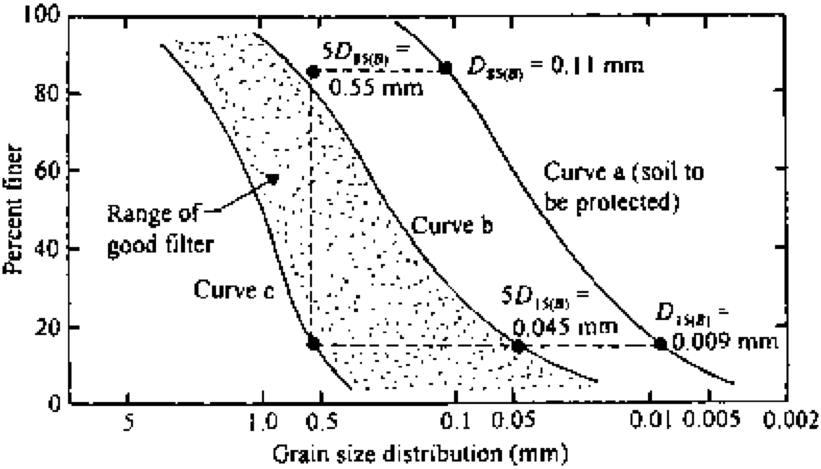


Figure 5.47 Determination of grain-size distribution of soil filters using Eqs. (5.179) and (5.180).

The proper use of Eqs. (5.179) and (5.180) to determine the grain-size distribution of soils used as filters is shown in Figure 5.47. Consider the soil used for the construction of the earth dam shown in Figure 5.46. Let the grain-size distribution of this soil be given by curve *a* in Figure 5.47. We can now determine $5D_{85(B)}$ and $5D_{15(B)}$ and plot them as shown in Figure 5.47. The acceptable grain-size distribution of the filter material will have to lie in the shaded zone.

Based on laboratory experimental results, several other filter design criteria have been suggested in the past. These are summarized in Table 5.5.

Table 5.5 Filter criteria developed from laboratory testing

Investigator	*Year*	*Criteria developed*
Bertram	1940	$\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{85(B)}} < 6$; $\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{85(B)}} < 9$
U.S. Corps of Engineers	1948	$\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{85(B)}} < 5$; $\frac{D_{50(F)}}{D_{50(B)}} < 25$; $\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{15(B)}} < 20$
Sherman	1953	For $C_{u(base)} < 1.5$: $\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{15(B)}} < 6$; $\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{15(B)}} < 20$; $\frac{D_{50(F)}}{D_{50(B)}} < 25$

Table 5.5 (Continued)

Investigator	*Year*	*Criteria developed*
		For $1.5 < C_{u(\text{base})} < 4.0$: $\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{85(B)}} < 5$; $\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{15(B)}} < 20$; $\frac{D_{50(F)}}{D_{50(B)}} < 20$ For $C_{u(\text{base})} > 4.0$: $\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{85(B)}} < 5$; $\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{85(B)}} < 40$; $\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{85(B)}} < 25$
Leatherwood and Peterson	1954	$\frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{85(B)}} < 4.1$; $\frac{D_{50(F)}}{D_{50(B)}} < 5.3$
Karpoff	1955	Uniform filter: $5 < \frac{D_{50(F)}}{D_{50(B)}} < 10$ Well-graded filter: $12 < \frac{D_{50(F)}}{D_{50(B)}} < 58$; $12 < \frac{D_{15(F)}}{D_{15(B)}} < 40$; and Parallel grain-size curves
Zweck and Davidenkoff	1957	Base of medium and coarse uniform sand: $5 < \frac{D_{50(F)}}{D_{50(B)}} < 10$ Base of fine uniform sand: $5 < \frac{D_{50(F)}}{D_{50(B)}} < 15$ Base of well-graded fine sand: $5 < \frac{D_{50(F)}}{D_{50(B)}} < 25$

Note: $D_{50(F)}$ = diameter through which 50% of the filter passes; $D_{50(B)}$ = diameter through which 50% of the soil to be protected passes; C_u = uniformity coefficient.

5.22 Calculation of seepage through an earth dam resting on an impervious base

Several solutions have been proposed for determination of the quantity of seepage through a homogeneous earth dam. In this section, some of these solutions will be considered.

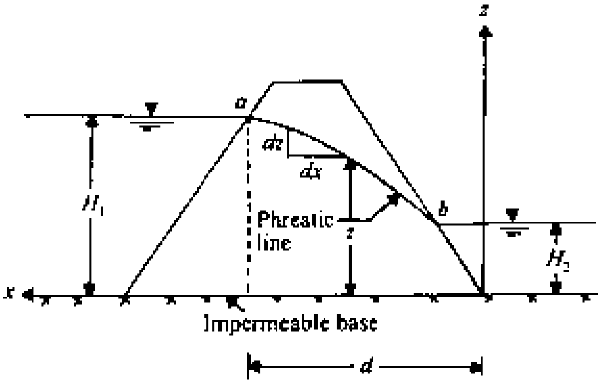


Figure 5.48 Dupuit's solution for flow through an earth dam.

Dupuit's solution

Figure 5.48 shows the section of an earth dam in which *ab* is the *phreatic surface*, i.e., the uppermost line of seepage. The quantity of seepage through a unit length at right angles to the cross-section can be given by Darcy's law as $q = kiA$.

Dupuit (1863) assumed that the hydraulic gradient i is equal to the slope of the free surface and is constant with depth, i.e., $i = dz/dx$. So

$$q = k\frac{dz}{dx}[(z)(1)] = k\frac{dz}{dx}z$$

$$\int_0^d q\,dx = \int_{H_2}^{H_1} kz\,dz$$

$$qd = \frac{k}{2}(H_1^2 - H_2^2)$$

or

$$q = \frac{k}{2d}(H_1^2 - H_2^2) \tag{5.181}$$

Equation (5.181) represents a parabolic free surface. However, in the derivation of the equation, no attention has been paid to the entrance or exit conditions. Also note that if $H_2 = 0$, the phreatic line would intersect the impervious surface.

Schaffernak's solution

For calculation of seepage through a homogeneous earth dam. Schaffernak (1917) proposed that the phreatic surface will be like line *ab* in Figure 5.49,

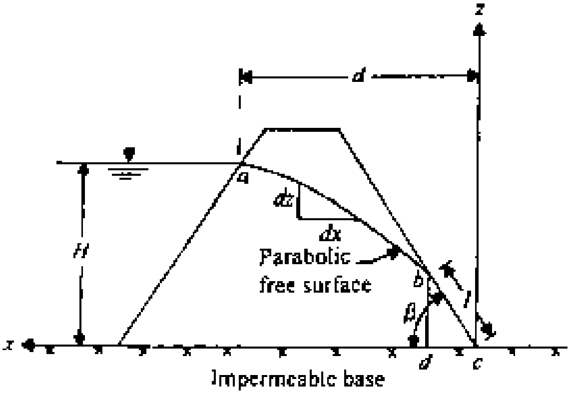


Figure 5.49 Schaffernak's solution for flow through an earth dam.

i.e., it will intersect the downstream slope at a distance l from the impervious base. The seepage per unit length of the dam can now be determined by considering the triangle *bcd* in Figure 5.49:

$$q = kiA \qquad A = (\overline{bd})(1) = l \sin\beta$$

From Dupuit's assumption, the hydraulic gradient is given by $i = dz/dx = \tan\beta$. So,

$$q = kz\frac{dz}{dx} = (k)(l \sin\beta)(\tan\beta) \tag{5.182}$$

or

$$\int_{l\sin\beta}^{H} z\,dz = \int_{l\cos\beta}^{d} (l\sin\beta)(\tan\beta)dx$$

$$\frac{1}{2}(H^2 - l^2\sin^2\beta) = (l\sin\beta)(\tan\beta)(d - l\cos\beta)$$

$$\frac{1}{2}(H^2 - l^2\sin^2\beta) = l\frac{\sin^2\beta}{\cos\beta}(d - l\cos\beta)$$

$$\frac{H^2\cos\beta}{2\ \sin^2\beta} - \frac{l^2\cos\beta}{2} = ld - l^2\cos\beta$$

$$l^2\cos\beta - 2ld + \frac{H^2\cos\beta}{\sin^2\beta} = 0 \tag{5.183}$$

$$l = \frac{2d \pm \sqrt{4d^2 - 4[(H^2\cos^2\beta)/\sin^2\beta]}}{2\cos\beta}$$

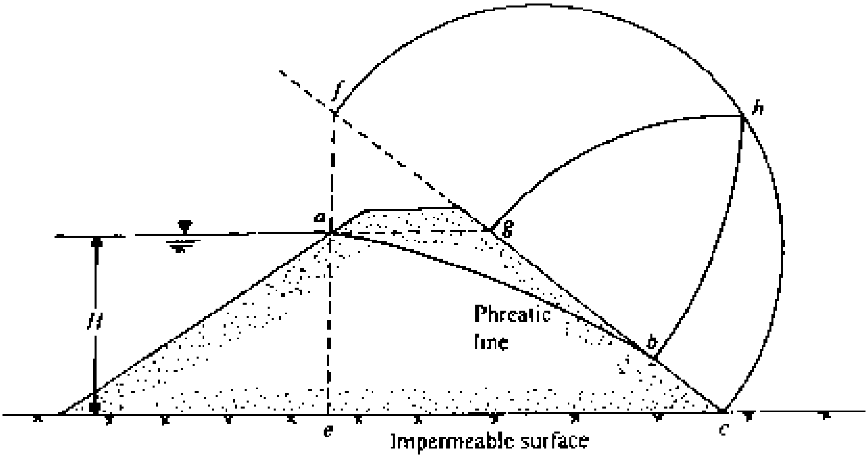


Figure 5.50 Graphical construction for Schaffernak's solution.

so

$$l = \frac{d}{\cos\beta} - \sqrt{\frac{d^2}{\cos^2\beta} - \frac{H^2}{\sin^2\beta}} \tag{5.184}$$

Once the value of l is known, the rate of seepage can be calculated from the equation $q = kl \sin\beta \tan\beta$.

Schaffernak suggested a graphical procedure to determine the value of l. This procedure can be explained with the aid of Figure 5.50.

1. Extend the downstream slope line *bc* upward.
2. Draw a vertical line *ae* through the point *a*. This will intersect the projection of line *bc* (step 1) at point *f*.
3. With *fc* as diameter, draw a semicircle *fhc*.
4. Draw a horizontal line *ag*.
5. With *c* as the center and *cg* as the radius, draw an arc of a circle, *gh*.
6. With *f* as the center and *fh* as the radius, draw an arc of a circle, *hb*.
7. Measure $bc = l$.

Casagrande (1937) showed experimentally that the parabola *ab* shown in Figure 5.49 should actually start from the point *a′* as shown in Figure 5.51. Note that $aa' = 0.3\Delta$. So, with this modification, the value of d for use in Eq. (5.184) will be the horizontal distance between points *a′* and *c*.

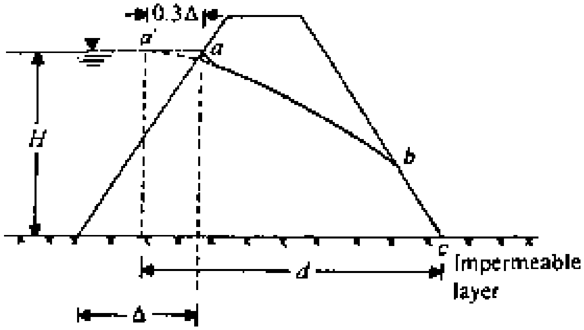


Figure 5.51 Modified distance *d* for use in Eq. (5.184).

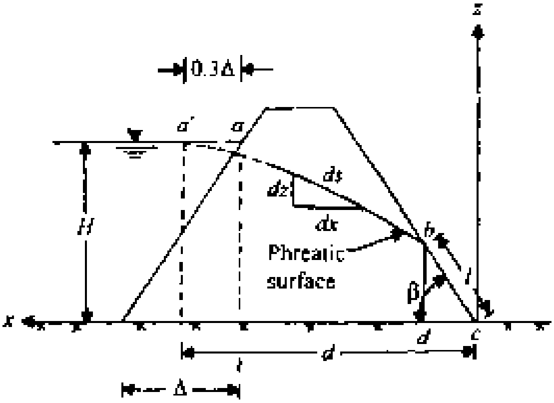


Figure 5.52 L. Casagrande's solution for flow through an earth dam (*Note*: length of the curve $a'bc = S$).

L. Casagrande's solution

Equation (5.187) was obtained on the basis of Dupuit's assumption that the hydraulic gradient i is equal to dz/dx. Casagrande (1932) suggested that this relation is an approximation to the actual condition. In reality (see Figure 5.52),

$$i = \frac{dz}{ds} \tag{5.185}$$

For a downstream slope of $\beta > 30°$, the deviations from Dupuit's assumption become more noticeable. Based on this assumption [Eq. (5.185)], the rate of seepage is $q = kiA$. Considering the triangle bcd in Figure 5.52,

$$i = \frac{dz}{ds} = \sin\beta \qquad A = (bd)(1) = l\sin\beta$$

So

$$q = k\frac{dz}{ds}z = kl\sin^2\beta \tag{5.186}$$

or

$$\int_{l\sin\beta}^{H} z\ dz \int_{l}^{s} (l\sin^2\beta)\ ds$$

where s is the length of the curve $a'bc$. Hence

$$\frac{1}{2}(H^2 - l^2\sin^2\beta) = l\sin^2\beta(s-l)$$

$$H^2 - l^2\sin^2\beta = 2ls\sin^2\beta - 2l^2\sin^2\beta$$

$$l^2 - 2ls + \frac{H^2}{\sin^2\beta} = 0 \tag{5.187}$$

The solution to Eq. (5.187) is

$$l = s - \sqrt{s^2 - \frac{H^2}{\sin^2\beta}} \tag{5.188}$$

With about a 4–5% error, we can approximate s as the length of the straight line $a'c$. So,

$$s = \sqrt{d^2 + H^2} \tag{5.189}$$

Combining Eqs. (5.188) and (5.189),

$$l = \sqrt{d^2 + H^2} - \sqrt{d^2 - H^2\cot^2\beta} \tag{5.190}$$

Once l is known, the rate of seepage can be calculated from the equation

$$q = kl\sin^2\beta$$

A solution that avoids the approximation introduced in Eq. (5.190) was given by Gilboy (1934) and put into graphical form by Taylor (1948), as shown in Figure 5.53. To use the graph,

1. Determine d/H.
2. For given values of d/H and β, determine m.
3. Calculate $l = mH/\sin\beta$.
4. Calculate $q = kl\sin^2\beta$.

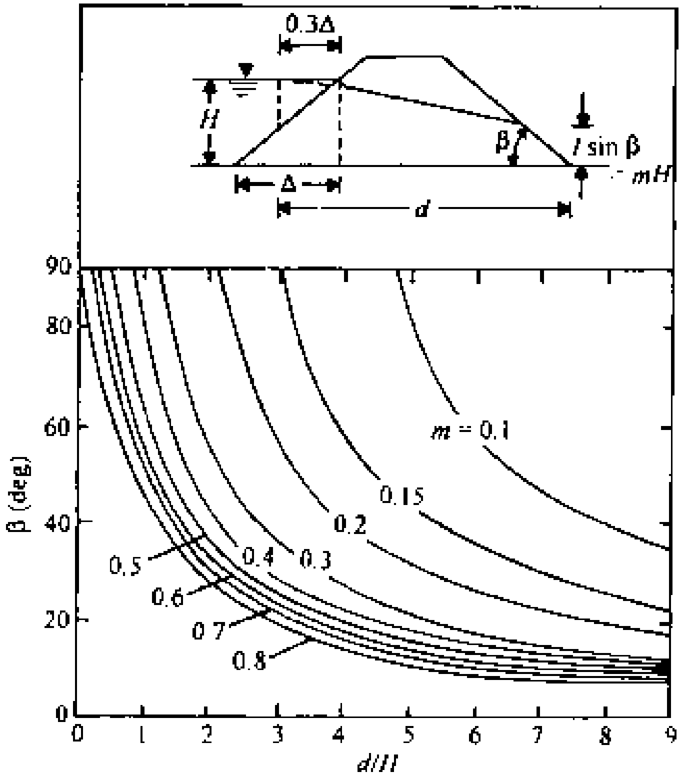


Figure 5.53 Chart for solution by L. Casagrande's method based on Gilboy's solution.

Pavlovsky's solution

Pavlovsky (1931; also see Harr, 1962) also gave a solution for calculation of seepage through an earth dam. This can be explained with reference to Figure 5.54. The dam section can be divided into three zones, and the rate of seepage through each zone can be calculated as follows.

Zone I (area agOf)

In zone I the seepage lines are actually curved, but Pavlovsky assumed that they can be replaced by horizontal lines. The rate of seepage through an elementary strip *dz* can then be given by

$$dq = kidA$$

$$dA = (dz)(1) = dz$$

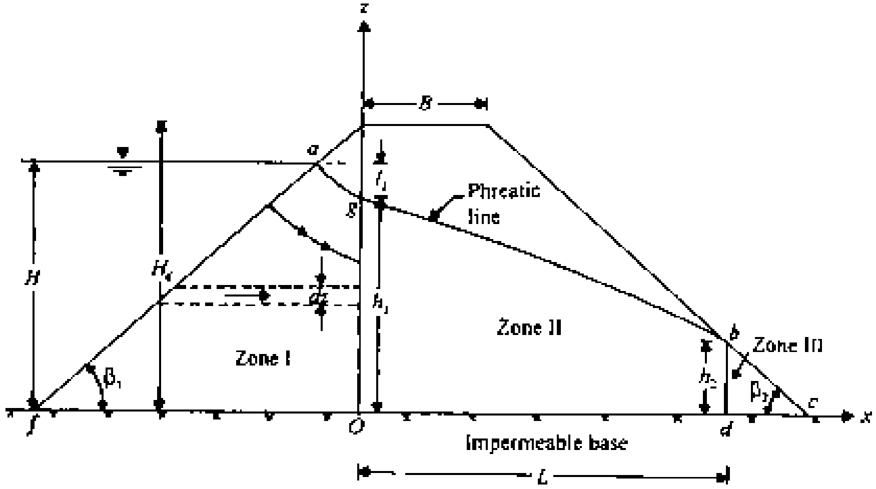


Figure 5.54 Pavlovsky's solution for seepage through an earth dam.

$$i = \frac{\text{loss of head, } l_1}{\text{length of flow}} = \frac{l_1}{(H_d - z)\cot\beta_1}$$

So,

$$q = \int dq = \int_0^{h_1} \frac{kl_1}{(H_d - z)\cot\beta_1}\, dz = \frac{kl_1}{\cot\beta_1} \ln \frac{H_d}{H_d - h_1}$$

However, $l_1 = H - h_1$. So,

$$q = \frac{k(H - h_1)}{\cot\beta_1} \ln \frac{H_d}{H_d - h_1} \tag{5.191}$$

Zone II (area Ogbd)

The flow in zone II can be given by the equation derived by Dupuit [Eq. (5.181)]. Substituting h_1 for H_1, h_2 for H_2, and L for d in Eq. (5.181), we get

$$q = \frac{k}{2L}(h_1^2 - h_2^2) \tag{5.192}$$

where

$$L = B + (H_d - h_2)\cot\beta_2 \tag{5.193}$$

Zone III (area bcd)

As in zone I, the stream lines in zone III are also assumed to be horizontal:

$$q = k\int_0^{h_2} \frac{dz}{\cot\beta_2} = \frac{kh_2}{\cot\beta_2} \tag{5.194}$$

Combining Eqs. (5.191)–(5.193),

$$h_2 = \frac{B}{\cot\beta_2} + H_\mathrm{d} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{B}{\cot\beta_2} + H_\mathrm{d}\right)^2 - h_1^2} \tag{5.195}$$

From Eqs. (5.191) and (5.194),

$$\frac{H - h_1}{\cot\beta_1} \ln \frac{H_\mathrm{d}}{H_\mathrm{d} - h_1} = \frac{h_2}{\cot\beta_2} \tag{5.196}$$

Equations (5.195) and (5.196) contain two unknowns, h_1 and h_2, which can be solved graphically (see Ex. 5.10). Once these are known, the rate of seepage per unit length of the dam can be obtained from any one of the equations (5.191), (5.192), and (5.194).

Seepage through earth dams with $k_x \neq k_z$

If the soil in a dam section shows anisotropic behavior with respect to permeability, the dam section should first be plotted according to the transformed scale (as explained in Sec. 5.16):

$$x' = \sqrt{\frac{k_z}{k_x}}x$$

All calculations should be based on this transformed section. Also, for calculating the rate of seepage, the term k in the corresponding equations should be equal to $\sqrt{k_x k_z}$.

EXAMPLE 5.10

The cross-section of an earth dam is shown in Figure 5.55. Calculate the rate of seepage through the dam [q in $\mathrm{m^3/(min \cdot m)}$] by (*a*) Dupuit's method; (*b*) Schaffernak's method; (*c*) L. Casagrande's method; and (*d*) Pavlovsky's method.

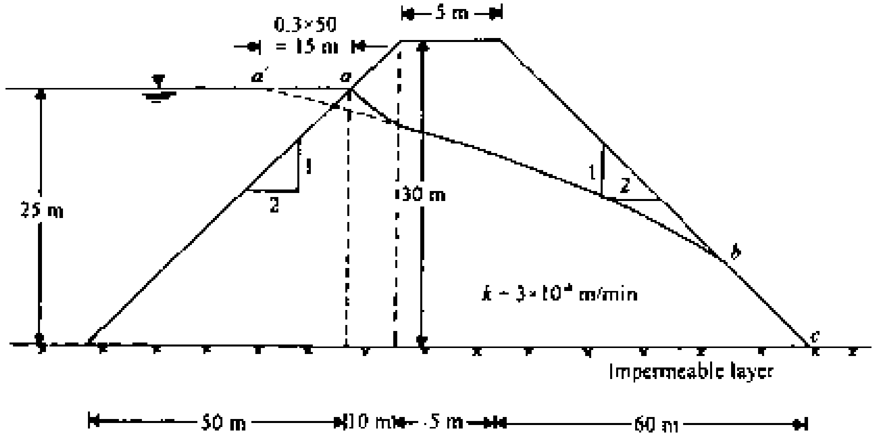


Figure 5.55 Seepage through an earth dam.

SOLUTION *Part a, Dupuit's method*: From Eq. (5.181),

$$q = \frac{k}{2d}(H_1^2 - H_2^2)$$

From Figure 5.55, $H_1 = 25\,\text{m}$ and $H_2 = 0$; also, d (the horizontal distance between points a and c) is equal to $60 + 5 + 10 = 75\,\text{m}$. Hence

$$q = \frac{3 \times 10^{-4}}{2 \times 75}(25)^2 = 12.5 \times 10^{-4}\,\text{m}^3/(\text{min}\cdot\text{m})$$

Part b, Schaffernak's method: From Eqs. (5.182) and (5.184),

$$q = (k)(l \sin\beta)(\tan\beta) \qquad l = \frac{d}{\cos\beta} - \sqrt{\frac{d^2}{\cos^2\beta} - \frac{H^2}{\sin^2\beta}}$$

Using Casagrande's correction (Figure 5.51), d (the horizontal distance between a' and c) is equal to $60 + 5 + 10 + 15 = 90\,\text{m}$. Also,

$$\beta = \tan^{-1}\frac{1}{2} = 26.57° \qquad H = 25\,\text{m}$$

So,

$$l = \frac{90}{\cos 26.57°} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{90}{\cos\ 26.57°}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{25}{\sin\ 26.57°}\right)^2}$$

$$= 100.63 - \sqrt{(100.63)^2 - (55.89)^2} = 16.95\,\text{m}$$

$$q = (3 \times 10^{-4})(16.95)(\sin\ 26.57°)(\tan\ 26.57°) = 11.37 \times 10^{-4}\,\mathrm{m^3/(min \cdot m)}$$

Part c: L. Casagrande's method: We will use the graph given in Figure 5.53.

$$d = 90\,\mathrm{m} \qquad H = 25\,\mathrm{m} \qquad \frac{d}{H} = \frac{90}{25} = 3.6 \qquad \beta = 26.57°$$

From Figure 5.53, for $\beta = 26.57°$ and $d/H = 3.6$, $m = 0.34$ and

$$l = \frac{mH}{\sin\beta} = \frac{0.34\ (25)}{\sin 26.57°} = 19.0\,\mathrm{m}$$

$$q = kl\ \sin^2\beta = (3 \times 10^{-4})(19.0)(\sin 26.57°)^2 = 11.4 \times 10^{-4}\,\mathrm{m^3/(min \cdot m)}$$

Part d: Pavlovsky's method: From Eqs. (5.195) and (5.196),

$$h_2 = \frac{B}{\cot\beta_2} + H_\mathrm{d} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{B}{\cot\beta_2} + H_\mathrm{d}\right)^2 - h_1^2}$$

$$\frac{H - h_1}{\cot\beta_1} \ln \frac{H_\mathrm{d}}{H_\mathrm{d} - h_1} = \frac{h_2}{\cot\beta_2}$$

From Figure 5.55, $B = 5\,\mathrm{m}$, $\cot\beta_2 = \cot 26.57° = 2$, $H_\mathrm{d} = 30\,\mathrm{m}$, and $H = 25\,\mathrm{m}$. Substituting these values in Eq. (5.198), we get

$$h_2 = \frac{5}{2} + 30 - \sqrt{\left(\frac{5}{2} + 30\right)^2 - h_1^2}$$

or

$$h_2 = 32.5 - \sqrt{1056.25 - h_1^2} \tag{E5.1}$$

Similarly, from Eq. (5.196),

$$\frac{25 - h_1}{2} \ln \frac{30}{30 - h_1} = \frac{h_2}{2}$$

or

$$h_2 = (25 - h_1) \ln \frac{30}{30 - h_1} \tag{E5.2}$$

Eqs. (E5.1) and (E5.2) must be solved by trial and error:

h_1 (m)	h_2 from Eq. (E5.1) (m)	h_2 from Eq. (E5.2) (m)
2	0.062	1.587
4	0.247	3.005
6	0.559	4.240
8	1.0	5.273
10	1.577	6.082
12	2.297	6.641
14	3.170	6.915
16	4.211	6.859
18	5.400	6.414
20	6.882	5.493

Using the values of h_1 and h_2 calculated in the preceding table, we can plot the graph as shown in Figure 5.56, and from that, $h_1 = 18.9\,\text{m}$ and $h_2 = 6.06\,\text{m}$. From Eq. (5.194),

$$q = \frac{kh_2}{\cot\beta_2} = \frac{(3\times10^{-4})(6.06)}{2} = 9.09\times10^{-4}\,\text{m}^3/(\text{min}\cdot\text{m})$$

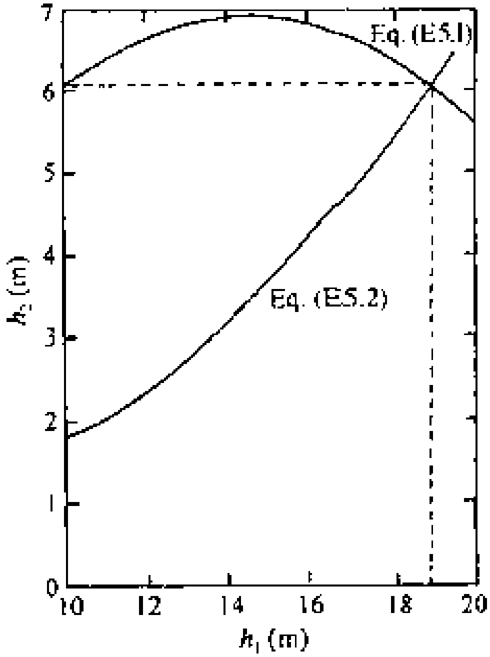


Figure 5.56 Plot of h_2 against h_1.

5.23 Plotting of phreatic line for seepage through earth dams

For construction of flow nets for seepage through earth dams, the phreatic line needs to be established first. This is usually done by the method proposed by Casagrande (1937) and is shown in Figure 5.57*a*. Note that *aefb* in Figure 5.57*a* is the actual phreatic line. The curve *a′efb′c′* is a parabola with its focus at *c′*; the phreatic line coincides with this parabola, but with some deviations at the upstream and the downstream faces. At a point *a*, the phreatic line starts at an angle of 90° to the upstream face of the dam and $aa' = 0.3\Delta$.

The parabola *a′efb′c′* can be constructed as follows:

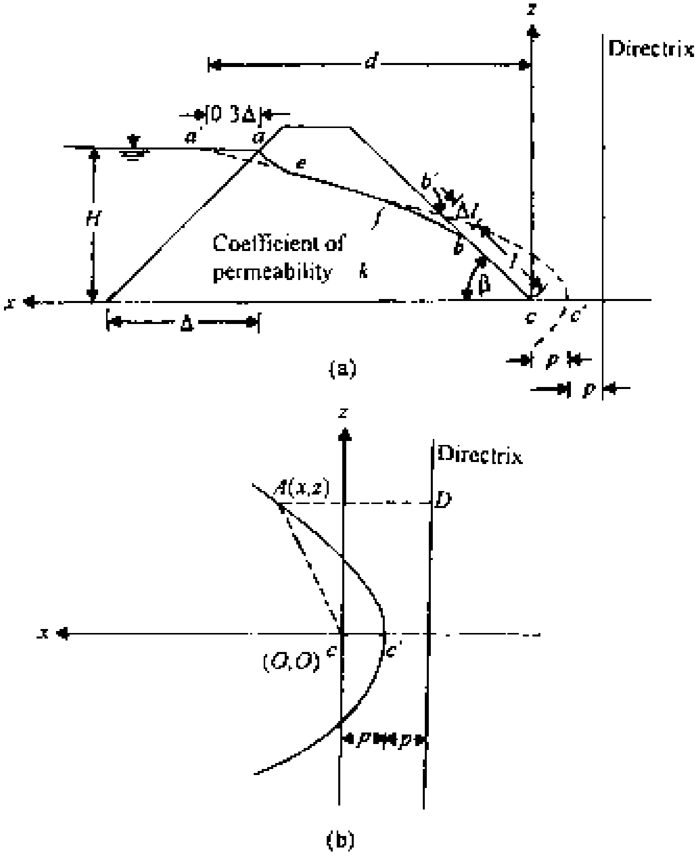


Figure 5.57 Determination of phreatic line for seepage through an earth dam.

1. Let the distance cc' be equal to p. Now, referring to Figure 5.57*b*, $Ac = AD$ (based on the properties of a parabola), $Ac = \sqrt{x^2 + z^2}$, and $AD = 2p + x$. Thus,

$$\sqrt{x^2 + z^2} = 2p + x \tag{5.197}$$

At $x = d,\ z = H$. Substituting these conditions into Eq. (5.197) and rearranging, we obtain

$$p = \frac{1}{2}\left(\sqrt{d^2 + H^2} - d\right) \tag{5.198}$$

Since d and H are known, the value of p can be calculated.

2. From Eq. (5.197),

$$x^2 + z^2 = 4p^2 + x^2 + 4px$$

$$x = \frac{z^2 - 4p^2}{4p} \tag{5.199}$$

With p known, the values of x for various values of z can be calculated from Eq. (5.199), and the parabola can be constructed.

To complete the phreatic line, the portion *ae* must be approximated and drawn by hand. When $\beta < 30°$, the value of l can be calculated from Eq. (5.184) as

$$l = \frac{d}{\cos\beta} - \sqrt{\frac{d^2}{\cos^2\beta} - \frac{H^2}{\sin^2\beta}}$$

Note that $l = bc$ in Figure 5.57*a*. Once point b has been located, the curve fb can be approximately drawn by hand.

If $\beta \geq 30°$, Casagrande proposed that the value of Δl can be determined by using the graph given in Figure 5.58. In Figure 5.57*a*, $b'b = \Delta l$, and $bc = l$. After locating the point b on the downstream face, the curve fb can be approximately drawn by hand.

5.24 Entrance, discharge, and transfer conditions of line of seepage through earth dams

A. Casagrande (1937) analyzed the entrance, discharge, and transfer conditions for the line of seepage through earth dams. When we consider the flow from a free-draining material (coefficient of permeability very large; $k_1 \approx \infty$ into a material of permeability k_2, it is called an *entrance*. Similarly,

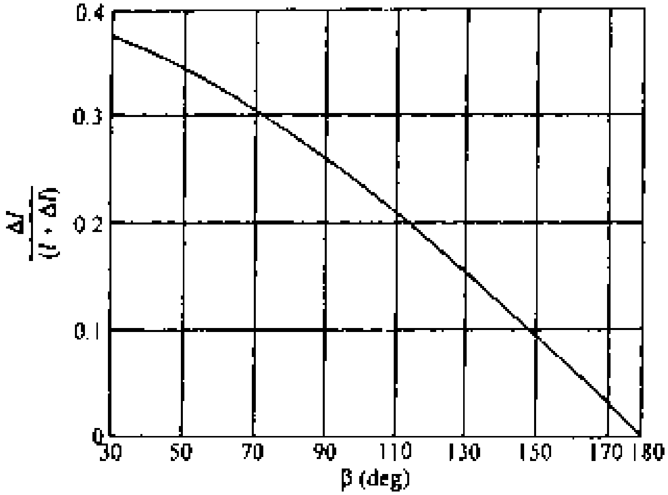


Figure 5.58 Plot of $\Delta l/(l+\Delta l)$ against downstream slope angle (After Casagrande, 1937).

when the flow is from a material of permeability k_1 into a free-draining material ($k_2 \approx \infty$), it is referred to as *discharge*. Figure 5.59 shows various entrance, discharge, and transfer conditions. The transfer conditions show the nature of deflection of the line of seepage when passing from a material of permeability k_1 to a material of permeability k_2.

Using the conditions given in Figure 5.59, we can determine the nature of the phreatic lines for various types of earth dam sections.

5.25 Flow net construction for earth dams

With a knowledge of the nature of the phreatic line and the entrance, discharge, and transfer conditions, we can now proceed to draw flow nets for earth dam sections. Figure 5.60 shows an earth dam section that is homogeneous with respect to permeability. To draw the flow net, the following steps must be taken:

1. Draw the phreatic line, since this is known.
2. Note that *ag* is an equipotential line and that *gc* is a flow line.
3. It is important to realize that the pressure head at any point on the phreatic line is zero; hence the difference of total head between any two equipotential lines should be equal to the difference in elevation between the points where these equipotential lines intersect the phreatic line. Since loss of hydraulic head between any two consecutive equipotential lines is the same, determine the number of equipotential drops, N_d, the flow net needs to have and calculate $\Delta h = h/N_d$.

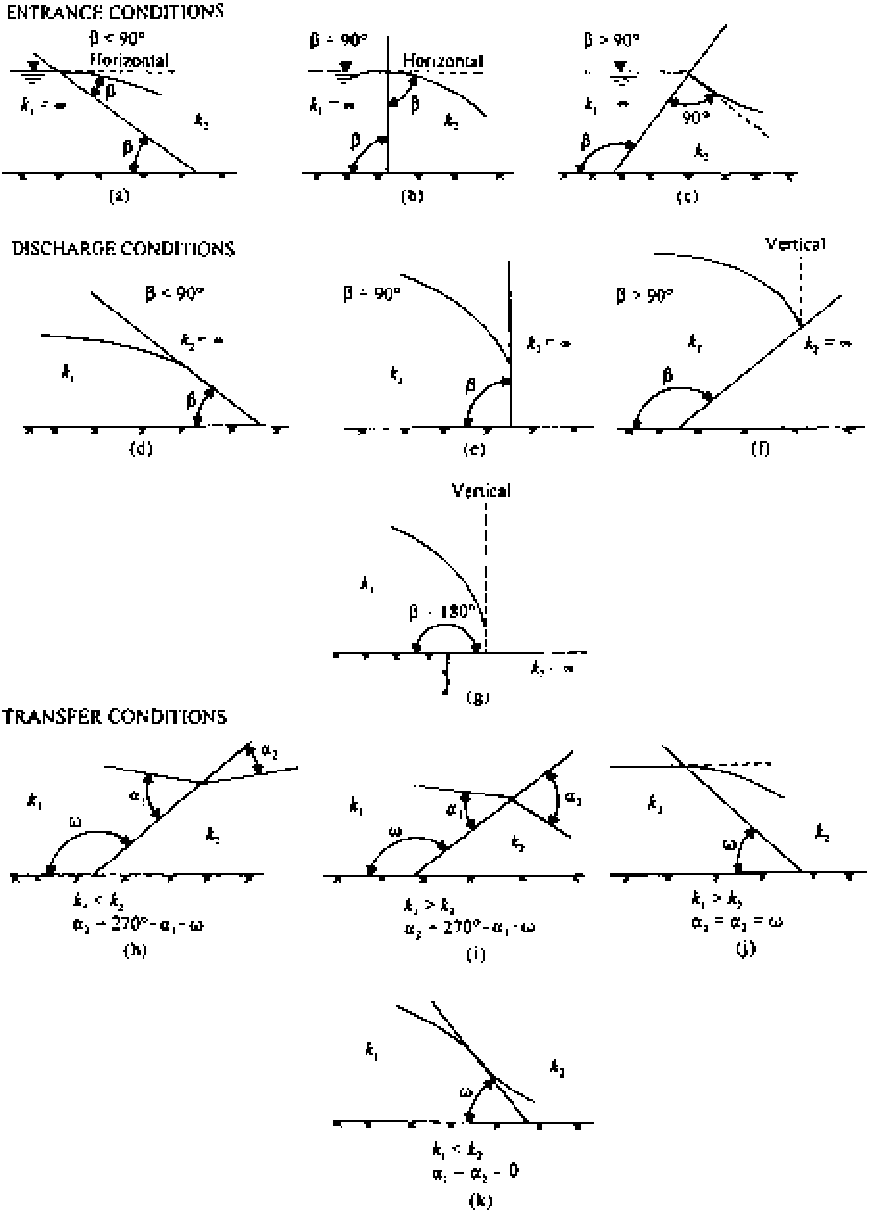


Figure 5.59 Entrance, discharge, and transfer conditions (after Casagrande, 1937).

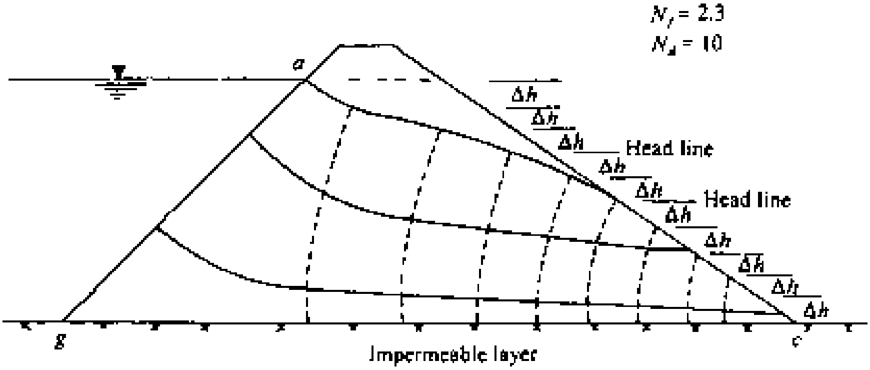


Figure 5.60 Flow net construction for an earth dam.

4. Draw the *head lines* for the cross-section of the dam. The points of intersection of the head lines and the phreatic lines are the points from which the equipotential lines should start.
5. Draw the flow net, keeping in mind that the equipotential lines and flow lines must intersect at right angles.
6. The rate of seepage through the earth dam can be calculated from the relation given in Eq. (5.125), $q = kh(\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{f}}/\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{d}})$.

In Figure 5.60 the number of flow channels, N_f, is equal to 2.3. The top two flow channels have square flow elements, and the bottom flow channel has elements with a width-to-length ratio of 0.3. Also, N_d in Figure 5.60 is equal to 10.

If the dam section is anisotropic with respect to permeability, a transformed section should first be prepared in the manner outlined in Sec. 5.15. The flow net can then be drawn on the transformed section, and the rate of seepage obtained from Eq. (5.131).

Figures 5.61 and 5.62 show some typical flow nets through earth dam sections.

A flow net for seepage through a zoned earth dam section is shown in Figure 5.63. The soil for the upstream half of the dam has a permeability k_1, and the soil for the downstream half of the dam has a permeability $k_2 = 5k_1$. The phreatic line must be plotted by trial and error. As shown in Figure 5.34*b*, here the seepage is from a soil of low permeability (upstream half) to a soil of high permeability (downstream half). From Eq. (5.132),

$$\frac{k_1}{k_2} = \frac{b_2/l_2}{b_1/l_1}$$

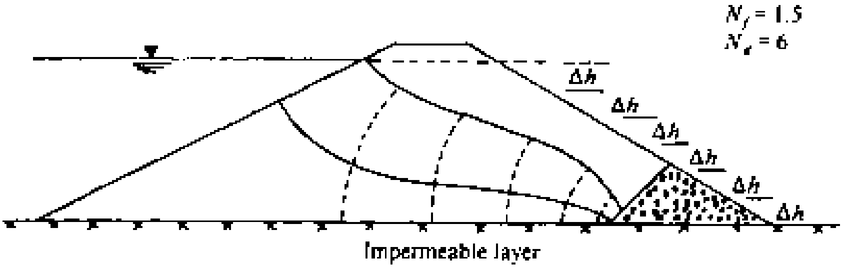


Figure 5.61 Typical flow net for an earth dam with rock toe filter.

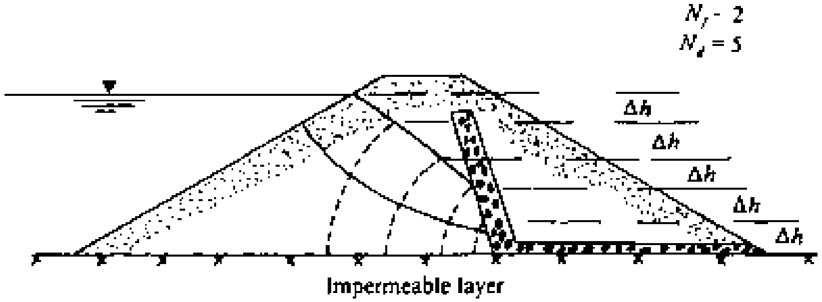


Figure 5.62 Typical flow net for an earth dam with chimney drain.

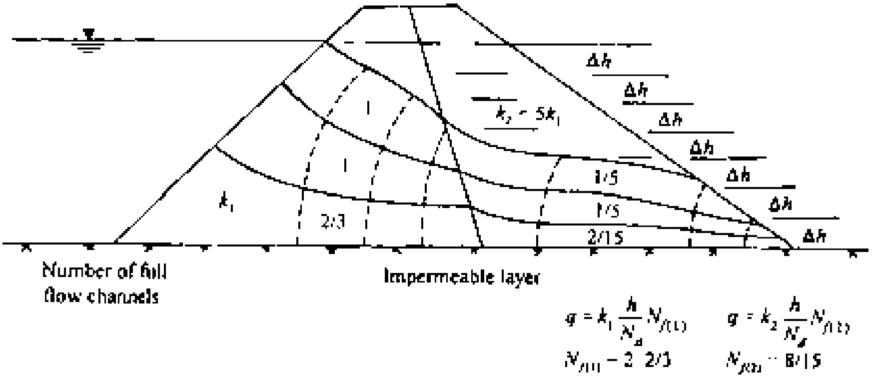


Figure 5.63 Flow net for seepage through a zoned earth dam.

If $b_1 = l_1$ and $k_2 = 5k_1$, $b_2/l_2 = 1/5$. For that reason, square flow elements have been plotted in the upstream half of the dam, and the flow elements in the downstream half have a width-to-length ratio of 1/5. The rate of seepage can be calculated by using the following equation:

$$q = k_1 \frac{h}{N_d} N_{f(1)} = k_2 \frac{h}{N_d} N_{f(2)} \tag{5.200}$$

where $N_{f(1)}$ is the number of full flow channels in the soil having a permeability k_1, and $N_{f(2)}$ is the number of full flow channels in the soil having a permeability k_2.

PROBLEMS

5.1 The results of a constant head permeability test on a fine sand are as follows: area of the soil specimen $180\,\text{cm}^2$, length of specimen 320 mm, constant head maintained 460 mm, and flow of water through the specimen 200 mL in 5 min. Determine the coefficient of permeability.

5.2 The fine sand described in Prob. 5.1 was tested in a falling-head permeameter, and the results are as follows: area of the specimen $90\,\text{cm}^2$, length of the specimen 320 mm, area of the standpipe $5\,\text{cm}^2$, and head difference at the beginning of the test 1000 mm. Calculate the head difference after 300 s from the start of the test (use the result of Prob. 5.1).

5.3 The sieve analysis for a sand is given in the following table. Estimate the coefficient of permeability of the sand at a void ratio of 0.5. Use Eq. (5.50) and SF = 6.5.

U.S. sieve no.	*Percent passing*
30	100
40	80
60	68
100	28
200	0

5.4 For a normally consolidated clay, the following are given:

Void ratio	*k(cm/s)*
0.8	1.2×10^{-6}
1.4	3.6×10^{-6}

Estimate the coefficient of permeability of the clay at a void ratio, $e = 0.62$. Use the equation proposed by Samarsinghe *et al.* (Table 5.3.)

5.5 A single row of sheet pile structure is shown in Figure P5.1.

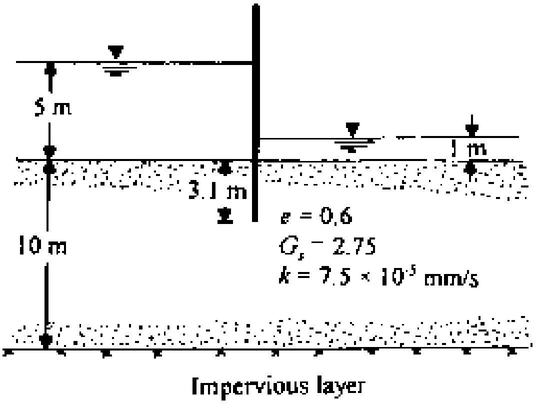


Figure P5.1

(*a*) Draw the flow net.
(*b*) Calculate the rate of seepage.
(*c*) Calculate the factor of safety against piping using Terzaghi's method [Eq. (5.178)] and then Harza's method.

5.6 For the single row of sheet piles shown in Figure P5.1, calculate the hydraulic heads in the permeable layer using the numerical method described in Sec. 5.17. From these results, draw the equipotential lines. Use $\Delta z = \Delta x = 2\,\text{m}$.

5.7 A dam section is shown in Figure P5.2 Given $k_x = 9 \times 10^{-5}$ mm/s and $k_z = 1 \times 10^{-5}$ mm/s, draw a flow net and calculate the rate of seepage.

5.8 A dam section is shown in Figure P5.3 Using Lane's method, calculate the weighted creep ratio. Is the dam safe against piping?

5.9 Refer to Figure P5.4. Given for the soil are $G_s = 2.65$ and $e = 0.5$. Draw a flow net and calculate the factor of safety by Harza's method.

5.10 For the sheet pile structure shown Figure P5.5.

$d = 2.5\,\text{m}$	$H_1 = 3\,\text{m}$	$k_1 = 4 \times 10^{-3}$ mm/s
$d_1 = 5\,\text{m}$	$H_2 = 1\,\text{m}$	$k_2 = 2 \times 10^{-3}$ mm/s
$d_2 = 5\,\text{m}$		

(*a*) Draw a flow net for seepage in the permeable layer.
(*b*) Find the exit gradient.

5.11 An earth dam section is shown in Figure P5.6 Determine the rate of seepage through the earth dam using (*a*) Dupuit's method; (*b*) Schaffernak's method; and (*c*) L. Casagrande's method. Assume that $k = 10^{-5}$ m/min.

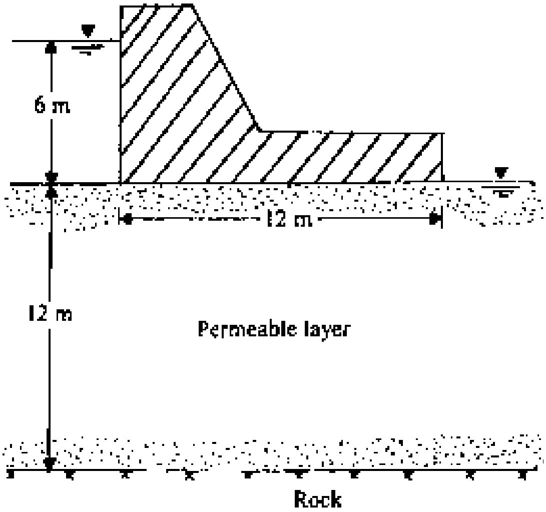


Figure P5.2

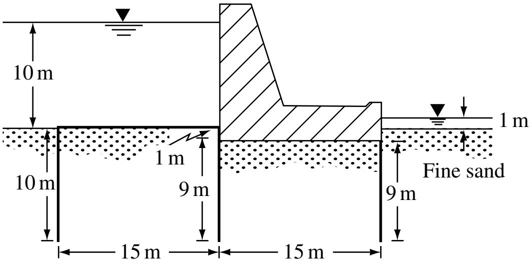


Figure P5.3

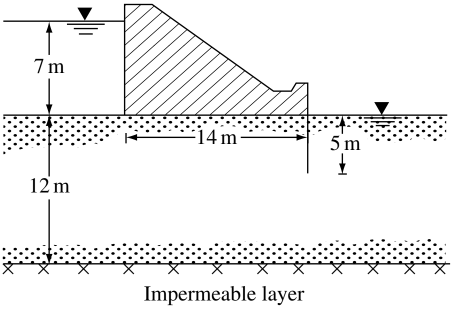


Figure P5.4

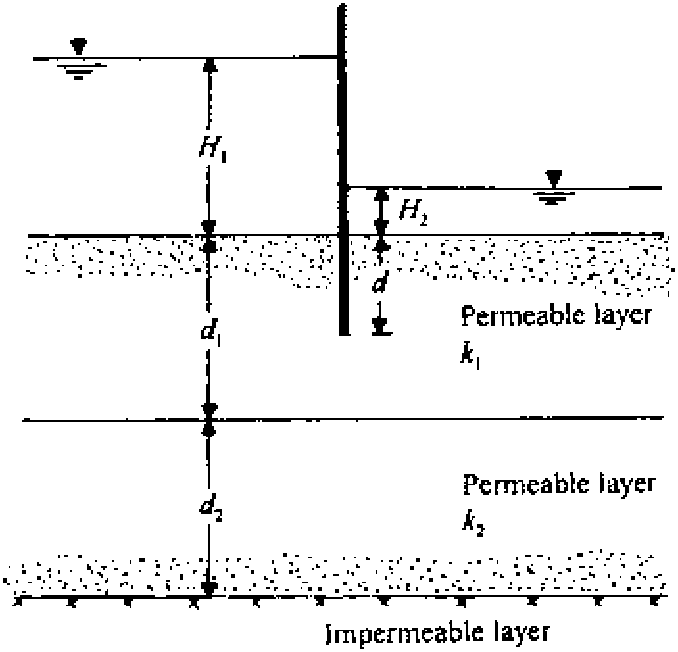


Figure P5.5

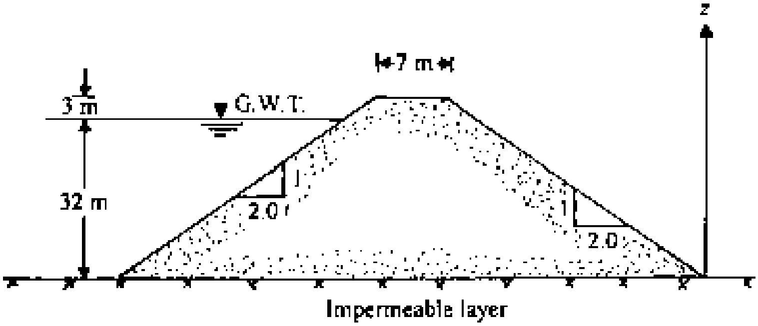


Figure P5.6

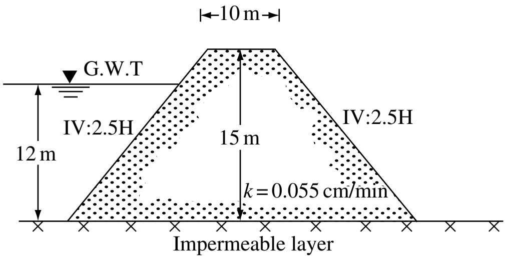


Figure P5.7

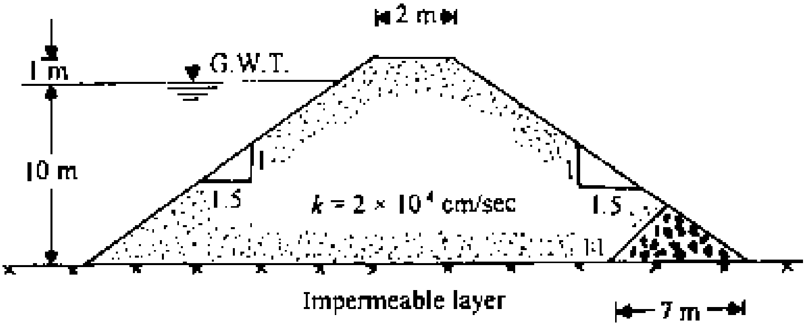


Figure P5.8

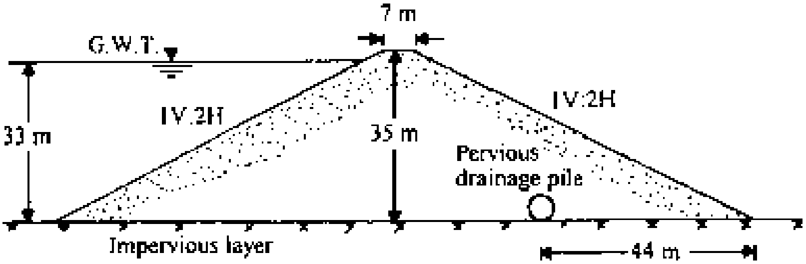


Figure P5.9

5.12 Repeat Prob. 5.9 assuming that $k_x = 4 \times 10^{-5}$ m/min and $k_z = 1 \times 10^{-5}$ m/min.

5.13 For the earth dam section shown in Figure P5.6, determine the rate of seepage through the dam using Pavlovsky's solution. Assume that $k = 4 \times 10^{-5}$ mm/s.

5.14 An earth dam section is shown in Figure P5.7. Draw the flow net and calculate the rate of seepage given $k = 0.055$ cm/min.

5.15 An earth dam section is shown in Figure P5.8. Draw the flow net and calculate the rate of seepage given $k = 2 \times 10^{-4}$ cm/s.

5.16 An earth dam section is shown in Figure P5.9. Draw the flow net and calculate the rate of seepage given $k = 3 \times 10^{-5}$ m/min.

References

Amer, A. M., and A. A. Awad, Permeability of Cohesionless Soils, *J. Geotech. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 100, no. 12, pp. 1309–1316, 1974.

Basett, D. J., and A. F. Brodie, A Study of Matabitchual Varved Clay, *Ont. Hydro Res. News*, vol. 13, no. 4, pp. 1–6, 1961.

Bertram, G. E., An Experimental Investigation of Protective Filters, *Publ. No. 267*, Harvard University Graduate School, 1940.

Carman, P. E., *Flow of Gases Through Porous Media*, Academic, New York, 1956.

Carrier III, W. D., Goodbye Hazen; Hello Kozeny-Carman, *J. Geotech. and Geoenv. Eng., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 129, no. 11, pp. 1054–1056, 2003.

Casagrande, A., Seepage Through Dams, in *Contribution to Soil Mechanics 1925–1940*, Boston Soc. of Civ. Eng., Boston, p. 295, 1937.

Casagrande, L., Naeherungsmethoden zur Bestimmurg von Art und Menge der Sickerung durch geschuettete Daemme, Thesis, Technische Hochschule, Vienna, 1932.

Casagrande, L., and S. J. Poulos, On Effectiveness of Sand Drains, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 6, no. 3, pp. 287–326, 1969.

Chan, H. T., and T. C. Kenney, Laboratory Investigation of Permeability Ratio of New Liskeard Varved Clay, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 10, no. 3, pp. 453–472, 1973.

Chapuis, R. P., Predicting the Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity of Sand and Gravel Using Effective Diameter and Void Ratio, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 41, no. 5, pp. 785–595, 2004.

Darcy, H., *Les Fontaines Publiques de la Ville de Dijon*, Dalmont, Paris, 1856.

Dupuit, J., *Etudes theoriques et Practiques sur le Mouvement des eaux dans les Canaux Decouverts et a travers les Terrains Permeables*, Dunot, Paris, 1863.

Forchheimer, P., Discussion of “The Bohio Dam” by George S. Morrison, *Trans., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 48, p. 302, 1902.

Fukushima, S., and T. Ishii, An Experimental Study of the Influence of Confining Pressure on Permeability Coefficients of Filldam Core Materials, *Soils and Found.*, Tokyo, vol. 26, no. 4, pp. 32–46, 1986.

Gilboy, G., Mechanics of Hydraulic Fill Dams, in *Contribution to Soil Mechanics 1925–1940*, Boston Soc. of Civ. Eng., Boston, 1934.

Gray, D. H., and J. K. Mitchell, Fundamental Aspects of Electro-osmosis in Soils, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., AM. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 93, no. SM6, pp. 209–236, 1967.

Haley, X., and X. Aldrich, Report No. 1—Engineering Properties of Foundation Soils at Long Creek–Fore River Areas and Back Cove, Report to Maine State Hwy. Comm., 1969.

Hansbo, S., Consolidation of Clay with Special Reference to Influence of Vertical Sand Drain, *Proc. Swedish Geotech. Inst.*, no. 18, pp. 41–61, 1960.

Harr, M. E., *Groundwater and Seepage*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962.

Harza, L. F., Uplift and Seepage Under Dams in Sand, *Trans., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 100, 1935.

Hazen, A., Discussion of “Dams on Sand Foundation” by A. C. Koenig, *Trans., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 73, p. 199, 1911.

Helmholtz, H., *Wiedemanns Ann. Phys.*, vol. 7, p. 137, 1879.

Karpoff, K. P., The Use of Laboratory Tests to Develop Design Criteria for Protective Filters, *Proc. ASTM*, no. 55, pp. 1183–1193, 1955.

Kenney, T. C., D. Lau, and G. I. Ofoegbu, Permeability of Compacted Granular Materials, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 21, no. 4, pp. 726–729, 1984.

Kozeny, J., Ueber kapillare Leitung des Wassers in Boden, *Wien Akad. Wiss.*, vol. 136, part 2a, p. 271, 1927.

Kozeny, J., Theorie und Berechnung der Brunnen, *Wasserkr. Wasserwritsch.*, vol. 28, p. 104, 1933.

Lane, E. W., Security from Under-Seepage: Masonry Dams on Earth Foundation, *Trans., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 100, p. 1235, 1935.

Leatherwood, F. N., and D. G. Peterson, Hydraulic Head Loss at the Interface Between Uniform Sands of Different Sizes, *Eos Trans. AGU*, vol. 35, no. 4, pp. 588–594, 1954.

Lumb, P., and J. K. Holt, The Undrained Shear Strength of a Soft Marine Clay from Hong Kong, *Geotechnique*, vol. 18, pp. 25–36, 1968.

Mansur, C. I., and R. I. Kaufman, Dewatering, in *Foundation Engineering*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962.

Mesri, G., and R. E. Olson, Mechanism Controlling the Permeability of Clays, *Clay Clay Miner.*, vol. 19, pp. 151–158, 1971.

Mitchell, J. K., In-Place Treatment of Foundation Soils, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 96, no. SM1, pp. 73–110, 1970.

Mitchell, J. K., "Fundamentals of Soil Behavior," Wiley, New York, 1976.

Muskat, M., *The Flow of Homogeneous Fluids Through Porous Media*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1937.

Olsen, H. W., Hydraulic Flow Through Saturated Clay, Sc.D. thesis, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1961.

Olsen, H. W., Hydraulic Flow Through Saturated Clays, *Proc. Natl. Conf. Clay Clay Miner., 9th*, pp. 131–161, 1962.

Pavlovsky, N. N., *Seepage Through Earth Dams* (in Russian), Inst. Gidrotekhniki i Melioratsii, Leningrad, 1931.

Raju, P. S. R. N., N. S. Pandian, and T. S. Nagaraj, Analysis and Estimation of Coefficient of Consolidation, *Geotech. Test. J.*, vol. 18, no. 2, pp. 252–258, 1995.

Samarsinghe, A. M., Y. H. Huang, and V. P. Drnevich, Permeability and Consolidation of Normally Consolidated Soils, *J. Geotech. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 108, no. 6, pp. 835–850, 1982.

Schaffernak, F., Über die Standicherheit durchlaessiger geschuetteter Dämme, *Allgem. Bauzeitung*, 1917.

Schmid, G., Zur Elektrochemie Feinporiger Kapillarsystems, *Zh. Elektrochem.* vol. 54, p. 425, 1950; vol. 55, p. 684, 1951.

Sherman, W. C., Filter Equipment and Design Criteria, *NTIS/AD 771076*, U.S. Army Waterways Experiment Station, Vickburg, Mississippi, 1953.

Smoluchowski, M., *in* L. Graetz (Ed.), "Handbuch der Elektrizital und Magnetismus," vol. 2, Barth, Leipzig, 1914.

Spangler, M. G., and R. L. Handy, *Soil Engineering*, 3rd ed., Intext Educational, New York, 1973.

Subbaraju, B. H., Field Performance of Drain Wells Designed Expressly for Strength Gain in Soft Marine Clays, *Proc. 8th Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 2.2, pp. 217–220, 1973.

Tavenas, F., P. Jean, P. Leblong, and S. Leroueil, The Permeability of Natural Soft Clays. Part II: Permeability Characteristics, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 20, no. 4, pp. 645–660, 1983a.

Tavenas, F., P. Leblong, P. Jean, and S. Leroueil, The Permeability of Natural Soft Clays. Part I: Methods of Laboratory Measurement, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 20, no. 4, pp. 629–644, 1983b.

Taylor, D. W., *Fundamentals of Soil Mechanics*, Wiley, New York, 1948.

Terzaghi, K., Der Grundbrunch on Stauwerken und Seine Verhutung, *Wasserkraft*, vol. 17, pp. 445–449, 1922. [Reprinted in *From Theory to Practice in Soil Mechanics*, Wiley, New York, pp. 146–148, 1960.]

Terzaghi, K., *Theoretical Soil Mechanics*, Wiley, New York, 1943.

Terzaghi, K., and R. B. Peck, *Soil Mechanics in Engineering Practice*, Wiley, New York, 1948.

Tsien, S. I., Stability of Marsh Deposits, *Bull. 15*, Hwy. Res. Board, pp. 15–43, 1955.

U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, Department of the Interior, *Design of Small Dams*, U.S. Govt. Print. Office, Washington, D.C., 1961.

U.S. Corps of Engineers, Laboratory Investigation of Filters for Enid and Grenada Dams, *Tech. Memo. 3–245*, U.S. Waterways Exp. Station, Vicksburg, Mississippi, 1948.

U.S. Department of the Navy, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, *Design Manual—Soil Mechanics, Foundations and Earth Structures*, NAVFAC DM-7, Washington, D.C., 1971.

Van Bavel, C. H. M., and D. Kirkham, Field Measurement of Soil Permeability Using Auger Holes, *Soil Sci. Soc. Am.*, Proc., vol. 13, 1948.

Zweck, H., and R. Davidenkoff, Etude Experimentale des Filtres de Granulometrie Uniforme, *Proc. 4th Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng., London*, vol. 2, pp. 410–413, 1957.

Chapter 6

Consolidation

6.1 Introduction

When a soil layer is subjected to a compressive stress, such as during the construction of a structure, it will exhibit a certain amount of compression. This compression is achieved through a number of ways, including rearrangement of the soil solids or extrusion of the pore air and/or water. According to Terzaghi (1943), "a decrease of water content of a saturated soil without replacement of the water by air is called a process of consolidation." When saturated clayey soils—which have a low coefficient of permeability—are subjected to a compressive stress due to a foundation loading, the pore water pressure will immediately increase; however, because of the *low permeability of the soil*, there will be a time lag between the application of load and the extrusion of the pore water and, thus, the settlement. This phenomenon, which is called *consolidation*, is the subject of this chapter.

To understand the basic concepts of consolidation, consider a clay layer of thickness H_t located below the groundwater level and between two highly permeable sand layers as shown in Figure 6.1*a*. If a surcharge of intensity $\Delta\sigma$ is applied at the ground surface over a very large area, the pore water pressure in the clay layer will increase. For a surcharge of *infinite extent*, the immediate increase of the pore water pressure, Δu, *at all depths* of the clay layer will be equal to the increase of the total stress, $\Delta\sigma$. Thus, immediately after the application of the surcharge,

$$\Delta u = \Delta\sigma$$

Since the total stress is equal to the sum of the effective stress and the pore water pressure, at all depths of the clay layer the increase of effective stress due to the surcharge (immediately after application) will be equal to zero (i.e., $\Delta\sigma' = 0$, where $\Delta\sigma'$ is the increase of effective stress). In other words, at time $t = 0$, the entire stress increase at all depths of the clay is taken by the pore water pressure and none by the soil skeleton. It must be pointed out that, for loads applied over a limited area, it may not be true that the

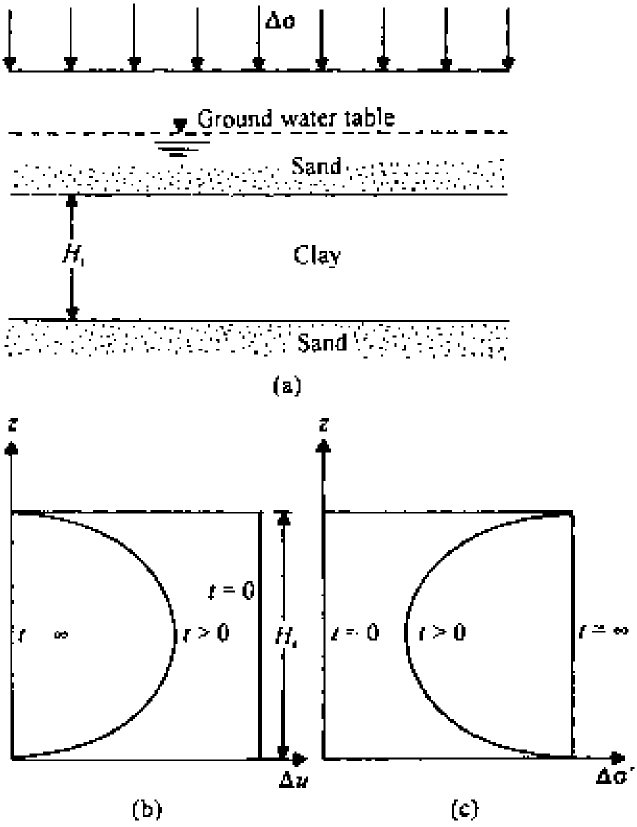


Figure 6.1 Principles of consolidation.

increase of the pore water pressure is equal to the increase of vertical stress at any depth at time $t = 0$.

After application of the surcharge (i.e., at time $t > 0$), the water in the void spaces of the clay layer will be squeezed out and will flow toward both the highly permeable sand layers, thereby reducing the excess pore water pressure. This, in turn, will increase the effective stress by an equal amount, since $\Delta\sigma' + \Delta u = \Delta\sigma$. Thus at time $t > 0$,

$$\Delta\sigma' > 0$$

and

$$\Delta u < \Delta\sigma$$

Theoretically, at time $t = \infty$ the excess pore water pressure at all depths of the clay layer will be dissipated by gradual drainage. Thus at time $t = \infty$,

$$\Delta\sigma' = \Delta\sigma$$

and

$$\Delta u = 0$$

Following is a summary of the variation of $\Delta\sigma, \Delta u$, and $\Delta\sigma'$ at various times. Figure 6.1*b* and *c* show the general nature of the distribution of Δu and $\Delta\sigma'$ with depth.

Time, t	*Total stress increase,* $\Delta\sigma$	*Excess pore water pressure,* Δu	*Effective stress increase,* $\Delta\sigma'$
0	$\Delta\sigma$	$\Delta\sigma$	0
> 0	$\Delta\sigma$	$< \Delta\sigma$	> 0
∞	$\Delta\sigma$	0	$\Delta\sigma$

This gradual process of increase in effective stress in the clay layer due to the surcharge will result in a settlement that is time-dependent, and is referred to as the process of consolidation.

6.2 Theory of one-dimensional consolidation

The theory for the time rate of one-dimensional consolidation was first proposed by Terzaghi (1925). The underlying assumptions in the derivation of the mathematical equations are as follows:

1. The clay layer is homogeneous.
2. The clay layer is saturated.
3. The compression of the soil layer is due to the change in volume only, which in turn, is due to the squeezing out of water from the void spaces.
4. Darcy's law is valid.
5. Deformation of soil occurs only in the direction of the load application.
6. The coefficient of consolidation C_v [Eq. (6.15)] is constant during the consolidation.

With the above assumptions, let us consider a clay layer of thickness H_t as shown in Figure 6.2. The layer is located between two highly permeable sand layers. When the clay is subjected to an increase of vertical pressure,

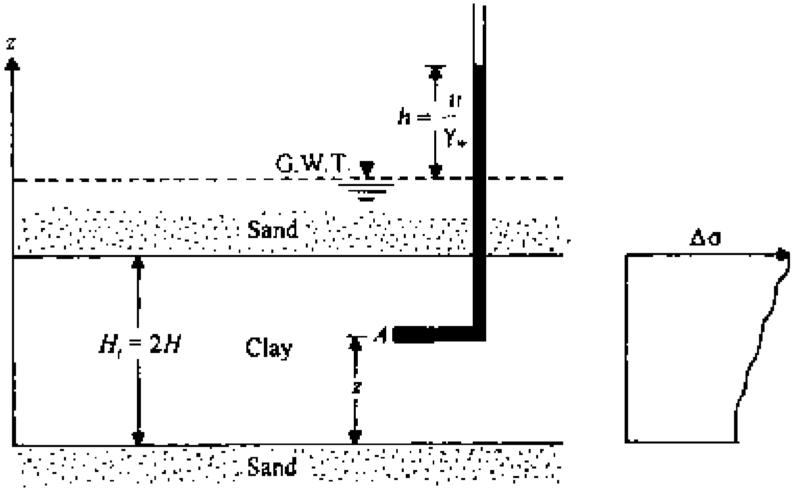


Figure 6.2 Clay layer undergoing consolidation.

$\Delta\sigma$, the pore water pressure at any point A will increase by u. Consider an elemental soil mass with a volume of $dx \cdot dy \cdot dz$ at A; this is similar to the one shown in Figure 5.24*b*. In the case of one-dimensional consolidation, the flow of water into and out of the soil element is in one direction only, i.e., in the z direction. This means that q_x, q_y, dq_x, and dq_y in Figure 5.24*b* are equal to zero, and thus the rate of flow into and out of the soil element can be given by Eqs. (5.87) and (5.90), respectively. So,

$$(q_z + dq_z) - q_z = \text{rate of change of volume of soil element} = \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \tag{6.1}$$

where

$$V = dx\ dy\ dz \tag{6.2}$$

Substituting the right-hand sides of Eqs. (5.87) and (5.90) into the left-hand side of Eq. (6.1), we obtain

$$k\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} dx\ dy\ dz = \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \tag{6.3}$$

where k is the coefficient of permeability [k_z in Eqs. (5.87) and (5.90)]. However,

$$h = \frac{u}{\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}} \tag{6.4}$$

where γ_{w} is the unit weight of water. Substitution of Eq. (6.4) into Eq. (6.3) and rearranging gives

$$\frac{k}{\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{1}{dx\ dy\ dz}\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \tag{6.5}$$

During consolidation, the rate of change of volume is equal to the rate of change of the void volume. So,

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial V_{\mathrm{v}}}{\partial t} \tag{6.6}$$

where V_{v} is the volume of voids in the soil element. However,

$$V_{\mathrm{v}} = eV_{\mathrm{s}} \tag{6.7}$$

where V_{s} is the volume of soil solids in the element, which is constant, and e is the void ratio. So,

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = V_{\mathrm{s}}\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = \frac{V}{1+e}\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = \frac{dx\ dy\ dz}{1+e}\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} \tag{6.8}$$

Substituting the above relation into Eq. (6.5), we get

$$\frac{k}{\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{1}{1+e}\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} \tag{6.9}$$

The change in void ratio, ∂e, is due to the increase of effective stress; assuming that these are linearly related, then

$$\partial e = -a_{\mathrm{v}}\partial(\Delta\sigma') \tag{6.10}$$

where a_{v} is the coefficient of compressibility. Again, the increase of effective stress is due to the decrease of excess pore water pressure, ∂u. Hence

$$\partial e = a_{\mathrm{v}}\partial u \tag{6.11}$$

Combining Eqs. (6.9) and (6.11) gives

$$\frac{k}{\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{a_{\mathrm{v}}}{1+e}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = m_{\mathrm{v}}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \tag{6.12}$$

where

$$m_v = \text{coefficient of volume compressibility} = \frac{a_v}{1+e} \tag{6.13}$$

$$\text{or} \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{k}{\gamma_w m_v}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = C_v \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} \tag{6.14}$$

where

$$C_v = \text{coefficient of consolidation} = \frac{k}{\gamma_w m_v} \tag{6.15}$$

Equation (6.14) is the basic differential equation of Terzaghi's consolidation theory and can be solved with proper boundary conditions. To solve the equation, we assume u to be the product of two functions, i.e., the product of a function of z and a function of t, or

$$u = F(z)G(t) \tag{6.16}$$

So,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = F(z)\frac{\partial}{\partial t}G(t) = F(z)G'(t) \tag{6.17}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}F(z)G(t) = F''(z)G(t) \tag{6.18}$$

From Eqs. (6.14), (6.17), and (6.18),

$$F(z)G'(t) = C_v F''(z)G(t)$$

or

$$\frac{F''(z)}{F(z)} = \frac{G'(t)}{C_v G(t)} \tag{6.19}$$

The right-hand side of Eq. (6.19) is a function of z only and is independent of t; the left-hand side of the equation is a function of t only and is independent of z. Therefore they must be equal to a constant, say, $-B^2$. So,

$$F''(z) = -B^2 F(z) \tag{6.20}$$

A solution to Eq. (6.20) can be given by

$$F(z) = A_1 \cos Bz + A_2 \sin Bz \tag{6.21}$$

where A_1 and A_2 are constants.

Again, the right-hand side of Eq. (6.19) may be written as

$$G'(t) = -B^2 C_v G(t) \tag{6.22}$$

The solution to Eq. (6.22) is given by

$$G(t) = A_3 \ \exp(-B^2 C_v t) \tag{6.23}$$

where A_3 is a constant. Combining Eqs. (6.16), (6.21), and (6.23),

$$\begin{aligned} u &= (A_1 \cos Bz + A_2 \sin Bz) A_3 \ \exp(-B^2 C_v t) \\ &= (A_4 \cos Bz + A_5 \sin Bz) \ \exp(-B^2 C_v t) \end{aligned} \tag{6.24}$$

where $A_4 = A_1 A_3$ and $A_5 = A_2 A_3$.

The constants in Eq. (6.24) can be evaluated from the boundary conditions, which are as follows:

1. At time $t = 0$, $u = u_i$ (initial excess pore water pressure at any depth).
2. $u = 0$ at $z = 0$.
3. $u = 0$ at $z = H_t = 2H$.

Note that H is the length of the longest drainage path. In this case, which is a twoway drainage condition (top *and* bottom of the clay layer), H is equal to half the total thickness of the clay layer, H_t.

The second boundary condition dictates that $A_4 = 0$, and from the third boundary condition we get

$$A_5 \sin 2BH = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad 2BH = n\pi$$

where n is an integer. From the above, a general solution of Eq. (6.24) can be given in the form

$$u = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} A_n \sin \frac{n\pi z}{2H} \exp\left(\frac{-n^2 \pi^2 T_v}{4}\right) \tag{6.25}$$

where T_v is the nondimensional time factor and is equal to $C_v t / H^2$.

To satisfy the first boundary condition, we must have the coefficients of A_n such that

$$u_i = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} A_n \sin \frac{n\pi z}{2H} \tag{6.26}$$

Equation (6.26) is a Fourier sine series, and A_n can be given by

$$A_n = \frac{1}{H}\int_0^{2H} u_i \sin\frac{n\pi z}{2H}\,dz \tag{6.27}$$

Combining Eqs. (6.25) and (6.27),

$$u = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty}\left(\frac{1}{H}\int_0^{2H} u_i \sin\frac{n\pi z}{2H}\,dz\right)\sin\frac{n\pi z}{2H}\exp\left(\frac{-n^2\pi^2 T_v}{4}\right) \tag{6.28}$$

So far, no assumptions have been made regarding the variation of u_i with the depth of the clay layer. Several possible types of variation for u_i are shown in Figure 6.3. Each case is considered below.

Constant u_i with depth

If u_i is constant with depth—i.e., if $u_i = u_0$ (Figure 6.3*a*)—then, referring to Eq. (6.28),

$$\frac{1}{H}\int_0^{2H} \underset{=u_0}{u_i}\ \sin\frac{n\pi z}{2H}\,dz = \frac{2u_0}{n\pi}(1-\cos n\pi)$$

So,

$$u = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty}\frac{2u_0}{n\pi}(1-\cos n\pi)\sin\frac{n\pi z}{2H}\exp\left(\frac{-n^2\pi^2 T_v}{4}\right) \tag{6.29}$$

Note that the term $1-\cos n\pi$ in the above equation is zero for cases when n is even; therefore u is also zero. For the nonzero terms it is convenient to substitute $n = 2m+1$, where m is an integer. So Eq. (6.29) will now read

$$u = \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty}\frac{2u_0}{(2m+1)\pi}[1-\cos(2m+1)\pi]\sin\frac{(2m+1)\pi z}{2H} \times \exp\left[\frac{-(2m+1)^2\pi^2 T_v}{4}\right]$$

or

$$u = \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty}\frac{2u_0}{M}\sin\frac{Mz}{H}\exp(-M^2 T_v) \tag{6.30}$$

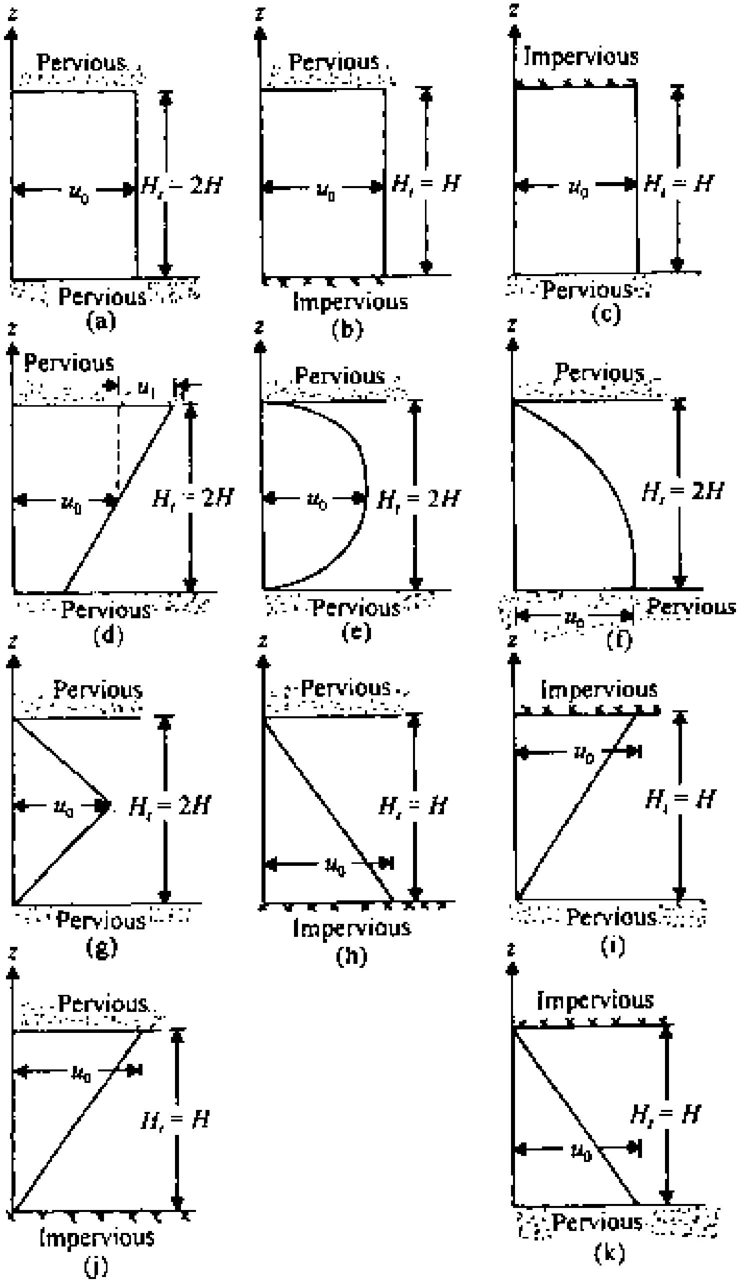


Figure 6.3 Variation of u_i with depth.

where $M = (2m+1)\pi/2$. At a given time the degree of consolidation at any depth z is defined as

$$U_z = \frac{\text{excess pore water pressure dissipated}}{\text{initial excess pore water pressure}}$$

$$= \frac{u_i - u}{u_i} = 1 - \frac{u}{u_i} = \frac{\Delta\sigma'}{u_i} = \frac{\Delta\sigma'}{u_0} \tag{6.31}$$

where $\Delta\sigma'$ is the increase of effective stress at a depth z due to consolidation. From Eqs. (6.30) and (6.31),

$$U_z = 1 - \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{2}{M} \sin \frac{Mz}{H} \exp(-M^2 T_\upsilon) \tag{6.32}$$

Figure 6.4 shows the variation of U_z with depth for various values of the nondimensional time factor T_υ; these curves are called isocrones. Example 6.1 demonstrates the procedure for calculation of U_z using Eq. (6.32).

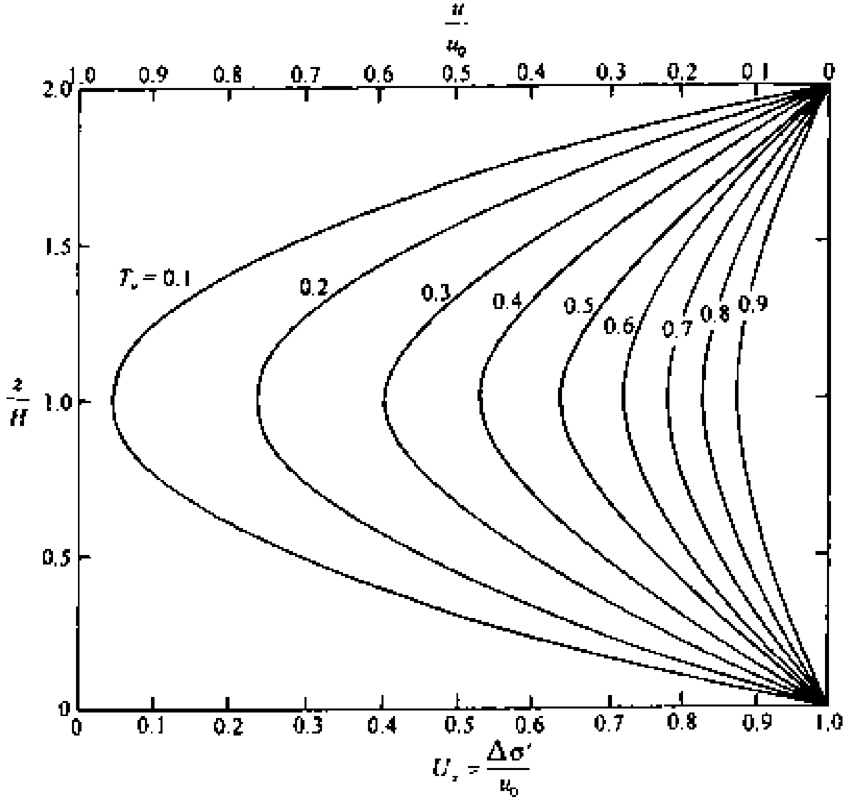


Figure 6.4 Variation of U_z with z/H and T_υ.

Example 6.1

Consider the case of an initial excess hydrostatic pore water that is constant with depth, i.e., $u_i = u_0$ (Figure 6.3*c*). For $T_v = 0.3$, determine the degree of consolidation at a depth $H/3$ measured from the top of the layer.

SOLUTION From Eq. (6.32), for constant pore water pressure increase,

$$U_z = 1 - \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{2}{M} \sin \frac{Mz}{H} \exp(-M^2 T_v)$$

Here $z = H/3$, or $z/H = 1/3$, and $M = (2m+1)\pi/2$. We can now make a table to calculate U_z:

1. z/H	1/3	1/3	1/3	
2. T_v	0.3	0.3	0.3	
3. m	0	1	2	
4. M	$\pi/2$	$3\pi/2$	$5\pi/2$	
5. Mz/H	$\pi/6$	$\pi/2$	$5\pi/6$	
6. $2/M$	1.273	0.4244	0.2546	
7. $\exp(-M^2T_v)$	0.4770	0.00128	≈ 0	
8. $\sin(Mz/H)$	0.5	1.0	0.5	
9. $(2/M)[\exp(-M^2T_v)$ $\sin(Mz/H)]$	0.3036	0.0005	≈ 0	$\sum = 0.3041$

Using the value of 0.3041 calculated in step 9, the degree of consolidation at depth $H/3$ is

$$U_{(H/3)} = 1 - 0.3041 = 0.6959 = 69.59\%$$

Note that in the above table we need not go beyond $m = 2$, since the expression in step 9 is negligible for $m \geq 3$.

In most cases, however, we need to obtain the average degree of consolidation for the entire layer. This is given by

$$U_{\text{av}} = \frac{(1/H_t)\int_0^{H_t} u_i\, dz - (1/H_t)\int_0^{H_t} u\, dz}{(1/H_t)\int_0^{H_t} u_i\, dz} \tag{6.33}$$

The average degree of consolidation is also the ratio of consolidation settlement at any time to maximum consolidation settlement. Note, in this case, that $H_\mathrm{t} = 2H$ and $u_i = u_0$.

Combining Eqs. (6.30) and (6.33),

$$U_\mathrm{av} = 1 - \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{2}{M^2} \exp(-M^2 T_\upsilon) \tag{6.34}$$

Terzaghi suggested the following equations for U_av to approximate the values obtained from Eq. (6.34):

$$\text{For } U_\mathrm{av} = 0\text{–}53\%: \qquad T_\upsilon = \frac{\pi}{4}\left(\frac{U_\mathrm{av}\%}{100}\right)^2 \tag{6.35}$$

$$\text{For } U_\mathrm{av} = 53\text{–}100\%: \qquad T_\upsilon = 1.781 - 0.933\,[\log(100 - U_\mathrm{av}\%)] \tag{6.36}$$

Sivaram and Swamee (1977) gave the following equation for U_av varying from 0 to 100%:

$$\frac{U_\mathrm{av}\%}{100} = \frac{(4T_\upsilon/\pi)^{0.5}}{[1 + (4T_\upsilon/\pi)^{2.8}]^{0.179}} \tag{6.37}$$

or

$$T_\upsilon = \frac{(\pi/4)(U_\mathrm{av}\%/100)^2}{[1 - (U_\mathrm{av}\%/100)^{5.6}]^{0.357}} \tag{6.38}$$

Equations (6.37) and (6.38) give an error in T_υ of less than 1% for $0\% < U_\mathrm{av} < 90\%$ and less than 3% for $90\% < U_\mathrm{av} < 100\%$. Table 6.1 gives the variation of T_υ with U_av based on Eq. (6.34).

It must be pointed out that, if we have a situation of one-way drainage as shown in Figures 6.3*b* and 6.3*c*, Eq. (6.34) would still be valid. Note, however, that the length of the drainage path is equal to the total thickness of the clay layer.

Linear variation of u_i

The linear variation of the initial excess pore water pressure, as shown in Figure 6.3*d*, may be written as

$$u_i = u_0 - u_1 \frac{H - z}{H} \tag{6.39}$$

Table 6.1 Variation of T_v with U_{av}

U_{av}(%)	*Value of* T_v	
	$u_i = u_0 = const$ *(Figures 6.3a–c)* $u_i = u_0 - u_l\left(\frac{H-z}{H}\right)$ *(Figure 6.3d)*	$u_i = u_0 \sin\frac{\pi z}{2H}$ *(Figure 6.3e)*
0	0	0
1	0.00008	0.0041
2	0.0003	0.0082
3	0.00071	0.0123
4	0.00126	0.0165
5	0.00196	0.0208
6	0.00283	0.0251
7	0.00385	0.0294
8	0.00502	0.0338
9	0.00636	0.0382
10	0.00785	0.0427
11	0.0095	0.0472
12	0.0113	0.0518
13	0.0133	0.0564
14	0.0154	0.0611
15	0.0177	0.0659
16	0.0201	0.0707
17	0.0227	0.0755
18	0.0254	0.0804
19	0.0283	0.0854
20	0.0314	0.0904
21	0.0346	0.0955
22	0.0380	0.101
23	0.0415	0.106
24	0.0452	0.111
25	0.0491	0.117
26	0.0531	0.122
27	0.0572	0.128
28	0.0615	0.133
29	0.0660	0.139
30	0.0707	0.145
31	0.0754	0.150
32	0.0803	0.156
33	0.0855	0.162
34	0.0907	0.168
35	0.0962	0.175
36	0.102	0.181
37	0.107	0.187
38	0.113	0.194
39	0.119	0.200
40	0.126	0.207
41	0.132	0.214
42	0.138	0.221
43	0.145	0.228
44	0.152	0.235
45	0.159	0.242
46	0.166	0.250

47	0.173	0.257
48	0.181	0.265
49	0.188	0.273
50	0.196	0.281
51	0.204	0.289
52	0.212	0.297
53	0.221	0.306
54	0.230	0.315
55	0.239	0.324
56	0.248	0.333
57	0.257	0.342
58	0.267	0.352
59	0.276	0.361
60	0.286	0.371
61	0.297	0.382
62	0.307	0.392
63	0.318	0.403
64	0.329	0.414
65	0.304	0.425
66	0.352	0.437
67	0.364	0.449
68	0.377	0.462
69	0.390	0.475
70	0.403	0.488
71	0.417	0.502
72	0.431	0.516
73	0.446	0.531
74	0.461	0.546
75	0.477	0.562
76	0.493	0.578
77	0.511	0.600
78	0.529	0.614
79	0.547	0.632
80	0.567	0.652
81	0.588	0.673
82	0.610	0.695
83	0.633	0.718
84	0.658	0.743
85	0.684	0.769
86	0.712	0.797
87	0.742	0.827
88	0.774	0.859
89	0.809	0.894
90	0.848	0.933
91	0.891	0.976
92	0.938	1.023
93	0.993	1.078
94	1.055	1.140
95	1.129	1.214
96	1.219	1.304
97	1.336	1.420
98	1.500	1.585
99	1.781	1.866
100	∞	∞

Substitution of the above relation for u_i into Eq. (6.28) yields

$$u = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} \left[\frac{1}{H} \int_0^{2H} \left(u_0 - u_1 \frac{H-z}{H} \right) \sin \frac{n\pi z}{2H} dz \right] \sin \frac{n\pi z}{2H} \times \exp\left(\frac{-n^2 \pi^2 T_v}{4} \right) \tag{6.40}$$

The average degree of consolidation can be obtained by solving Eqs. (6.40) and (6.33):

$$U_{\text{av}} = 1 - \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{2}{M^2} \exp(-M^2 T_v)$$

This is identical to Eq. (6.34), which was for the case where the excess pore water pressure is constant with depth, and so the same values as given in Table 6.1 can be used.

Sinusoidal variation of u_i

Sinusoidal variation (Figure 6.3*e*) can be represented by the equation

$$u_i = u_0 \sin \frac{\pi z}{2H} \tag{6.41}$$

The solution for the average degree of consolidation for this type of excess pore water pressure distribution is of the form

$$U_{\text{av}} = 1 - \exp\left(\frac{-\pi^2 T_v}{4} \right) \tag{6.42}$$

The variation of U_{av} for various values of T_v is given in Table 6.1.

Other types of pore water pressure variation

Figure 6.3*f*, *g*, and *i–k* show several other types of pore water pressure variation. Table 6.2 gives the relationships for the initial excess pore water pressure variation (u_i) and the boundary conditions. These could be solved to provide the variation of U_{av} with T_v and they are shown in Figure 6.5.

Table 6.2 Relationships for u_i and boundary conditions

Figure	u_i	*Boundary conditions*
6.3*f*	$u_0 \cos \frac{\pi z}{4H}$	Time $t = 0,\ u = u_i$ $u = 0$ at $z = 2H$ $u = 0$ at $z = 0$
6.3*g*	For $z \leq H,\ \frac{u_0}{H} z$ For $z \geq H,\ 2u_0 - \frac{u_0}{H} z$	$t = 0,\ u = u_i$ $u = 0$ at $z = 2H$ $u = 0$ at $z = 0$
6.3*h*	$u_0 - \frac{u_0}{H} z$	$t = 0,\ u = u_i$ $u = 0$ at $z = H$ $u = u_0$ at $z = 0$
6.3*i*	$\frac{u_0}{H} z$	$t = 0,\ u = u_i$ $u = u_0$ at $z = H$ $u = 0$ at $z = 0$
6.3*j*	$\frac{u_0}{H} z$	$t = 0,\ u = u_i$ $u = u_0$ at $z = H$ $u = 0$ at $z = 0$
6.3*k*	$u_0 - \frac{u_0}{H} z$	$t = 0,\ u = u_i$ $u = 0$ at $z = H$ $u = u_0$ at $z = 0$

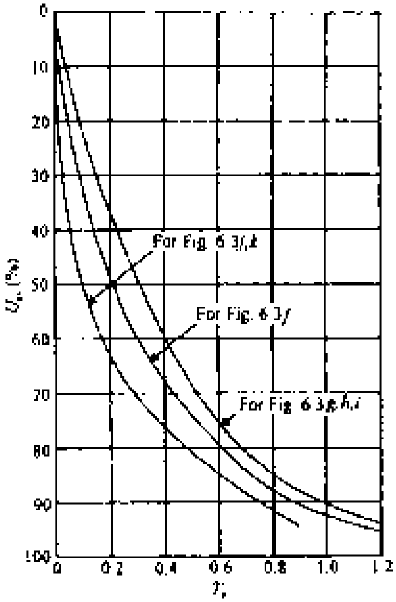


Figure 6.5 Variation of U_{av} with T_υ for initial excess pore water pressure diagrams shown in Figure 6.3.

EXAMPLE 6.2

Owing to certain loading conditions, the excess pore water pressure in a clay layer (drained at top and bottom) increased in the manner shown in Figure 6.6*a*. For a time factor $T_v = 0.3$, calculate the average degree of consolidation.

SOLUTION The excess pore water pressure diagram shown in Figure 6.6*a* can be expressed as the difference of two diagrams, as shown in Figure 6.6*b* and *c*. The excess pore water pressure diagram in Figure 6.6*b* shows a case where u_i varies linearly with depth. Figure 6.6*c* can be approximated as a sinusoidal variation.

The area of the diagram in Figure 6.6*b* is

$$A_1 = 6\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(15+5) = 60\,\text{kN/m}$$

The area of the diagram in Figure 6.6*c* is

$$A_2 = \sum_{z=0}^{z=6} 2\sin\frac{\pi z}{2H}dz = \int_0^6 2\sin\frac{\pi z}{6}dz$$

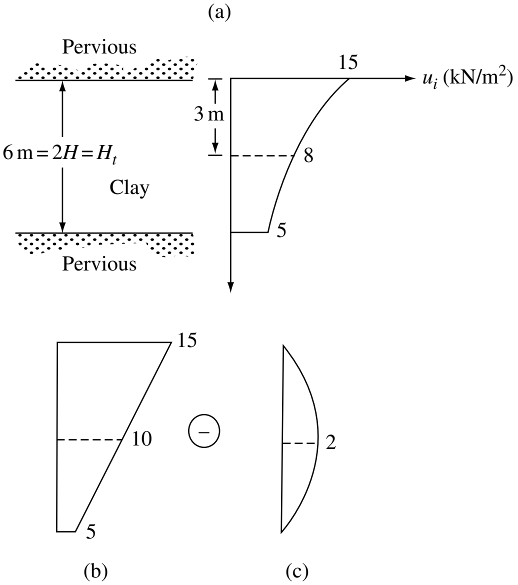


Figure 6.6 Calculation of average degree of consolidation ($T_v = 0.3$).

$$= (2)\left(\frac{6}{\pi}\right)\left(-\cos\frac{\pi z}{6}\right)_0^6 = \frac{12}{\pi}(2) = \frac{24}{\pi} = 7.64\,\text{kN/m}$$

The average degree of consolidation can now be calculated as follows:

$$\underset{\substack{\uparrow\\ \boxed{\text{For Figure 6.6}a}}}{U_{\text{av}}(T_v = 0.3)} \quad = \quad \frac{\overset{\substack{\boxed{\text{For Figure 6.6}b}\\ \downarrow}}{U_{\text{av}}(T_v = 0.3)}A_1 - \overset{\substack{\boxed{\text{For Figure 6.6}c}\\ \downarrow}}{U_{\text{av}}(T_v = 0.3)}A_2}{\underset{\substack{\uparrow\\ \boxed{\text{Net area of Figure 6.6}a}}}{A_1 - A_2}}$$

From Table 6.1 for $T_v = 0.3$, $U_{\text{av}} \approx 61\%$ for area A_1; $U_{\text{av}} \approx 52.3\%$ for area A_2.

So

$$U_{\text{av}} = \frac{61(60) - (7.64)52.3}{60 - 7.64} = \frac{3260.43}{52.36} = 62.3\%$$

EXAMPLE 6.3

A uniform surcharge of $q = 100\,\text{kN/m}^2$ is applied on the ground surface as shown in Figure 6.7*a*.

(*a*) Determine the initial excess pore water pressure distribution in the clay layer.

(*b*) Plot the distribution of the excess pore water pressure with depth in the clay layer at a time for which $T_v = 0.5$.

SOLUTION *Part a*: The initial excess pore water pressure will be $100\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and will be the same throughout the clay layer (Figure 6.7*a*).

Part b: From Eq. (6.31), $U_z = 1 - u/u_i$, or $u = u_i(1 - U_z)$. For $T_v = 0.5$ the values of U_z can be obtained from the top half of Figure 6.4 as shown in Figure 6.7*b*, and then the following table can be prepared:

Figure 6.7*c* shows the variation of excess pore water pressure with depth.

z/H	z (m)	U_z	$u = u_i(1 - U_z)$ (kN/m^2)
0	0	0.63	37
0.2	1	0.65	35
0.4	2	0.71	29
0.6	3	0.78	22
0.8	4	0.89	11
1.0	5	1	0

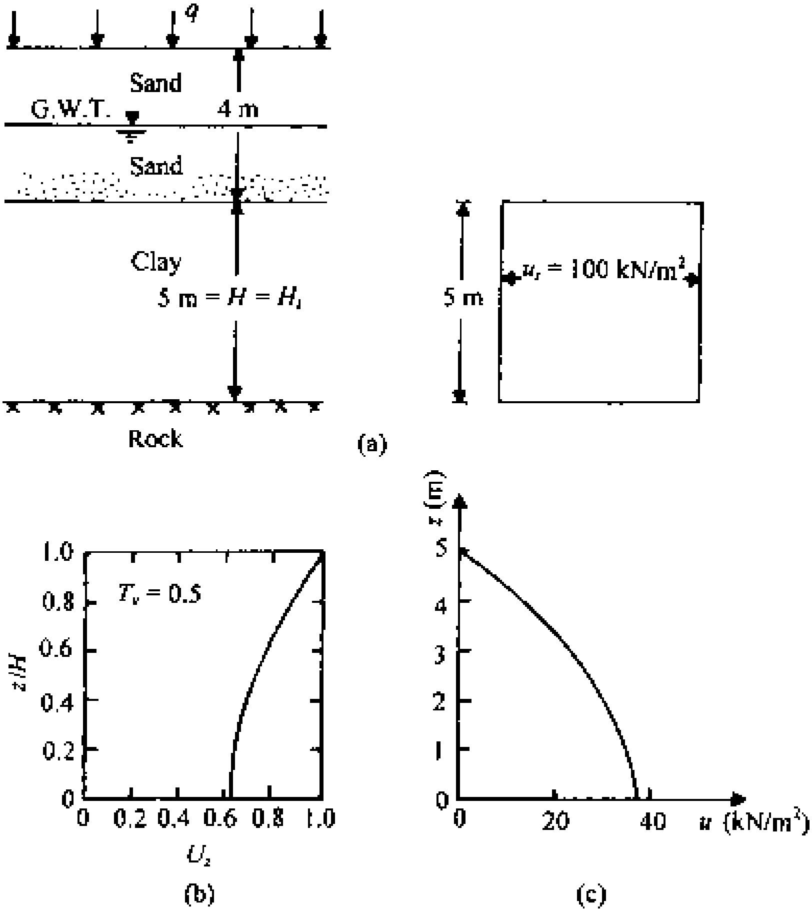


Figure 6.7 Excess pore water pressure distribution.

Example 6.4

Refer to Figure 6.3*e*. For the sinusoidal initial excess pore water pressure distribution, given

$$u_i = 50\ \sin\left(\frac{\pi z}{2H}\right) \text{kN/m}^2$$

assume $H_i = 2H = 5\,\text{m}$. Calculate the excess pore water pressure at the midheight of the clay layer for $T_v = 0.2$, 0.4, 0.6, and 0.8.

SOLUTION From Eq. (6.28),

$$u = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{H}\int_0^{2H} u_i \sin\frac{n\pi z}{2H}dz\right)}_{\text{term } A} \left(\sin\frac{n\pi z}{2H}\right)\exp\left(\frac{-n^2\pi T_v}{4}\right)$$

Let us evaluate the term A:

$$A = \frac{1}{H}\int_0^{2H} u_i \sin\frac{n\pi z}{2H}dz$$

or

$$A = \frac{1}{H}\int_0^{2H} 50\sin\frac{\pi z}{2H}\sin\frac{n\pi z}{2H}dz$$

Note that the above integral is zero if $n \neq 1$, and so the only nonzero term is obtained when $n = 1$. Therefore

$$A = \frac{50}{H}\int_0^{2H} \sin^2\frac{\pi z}{2H}dz = \frac{50}{H}H = 50$$

Since only for $n = 1$ is A not zero,

$$u = 50\sin\frac{\pi z}{2H}\exp\left(\frac{-\pi^2 T_v}{4}\right)$$

At the midheight of the clay layer, $z = H$, and so

$$u = 50\sin\frac{\pi}{2}\exp\left(\frac{-\pi^2 T_v}{4}\right) = 50\ \exp\left(\frac{-\pi^2 T_v}{4}\right)$$

The values of the excess pore water pressure are tabulated below:

T_v	$u = 50exp\left(\frac{-\pi^2 T_v}{4}\right)$ (kN/m^2)
0.2	30.52
0.4	18.64
0.6	11.38
0.8	6.95

6.3 Degree of consolidation under time-dependent loading

Olson (1977) presented a mathematical solution for one-dimensional consolidation due to a single ramp load. Olson's solution can be explained with the help of Figure 6.8, in which a clay layer is drained at the top and at the bottom (H is the drainage distance). A uniformly distributed load q is applied at the ground surface. Note that q is a function of time, as shown in Figure 6.8*b*.

The expression for the excess pore water pressure for the case where $u_i = u_0$ is given in Eq. (6.30) as

$$u = \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{2u_0}{M} \sin \frac{Mz}{H} \exp(-M^2 T_v)$$

where $T_v = C_v t/H^2$.

As stated above, the applied load is a function of time:

$$q = f(t_a) \tag{6.43}$$

where t_a is the time of application of any load.

For a differential load dq applied at time t_a, the instantaneous pore pressure increase will be $du_i = dq$. At time t the remaining excess pore water pressure du at a depth z can be given by the expression

$$\begin{aligned} du &= \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{2du_i}{M} \sin \frac{Mz}{H} \exp\left[\frac{-M^2 C_v (t - t_a)}{H^2}\right] \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{2dq}{M} \sin \frac{Mz}{H} \exp\left[\frac{-M^2 C_v (t - t_a)}{H^2}\right] \end{aligned} \tag{6.44}$$

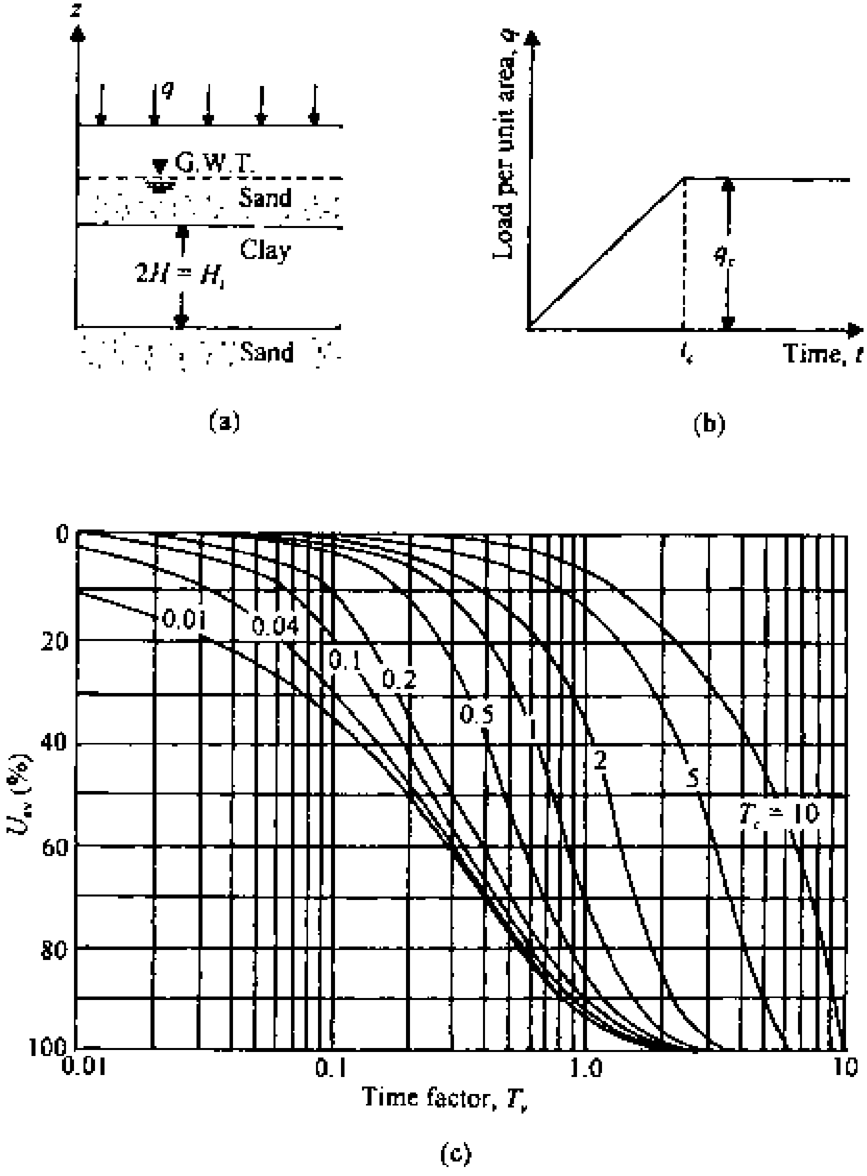


Figure 6.8 One-dimensional consolidation due to single ramp load (after Olson, 1977).

The average degree of consolidation can be defined as

$$u_{\text{av}} = \frac{\alpha q_{\text{c}} - (1/H_t)\int_0^{H_t} u\; dz}{q_{\text{c}}} = \frac{\text{settlement at time } t}{\text{settlement at time } t = \infty} \tag{6.45}$$

where αq_{c} is the total load per unit area applied at the time of the analysis. The settlement at time $t = \infty$ is, of course, the ultimate settlement. Note that the term q_{c} in the denominator of Eq. (6.45) is equal to the instantaneous excess pore water pressure ($u_i = q_{\text{c}}$) that might have been generated throughout the clay layer had the stress q_{c} been applied instantaneously.

Proper integration of Eqs. (6.44) and (6.45) gives the following:
For $T_v \le T_{\text{c}}$

$$u = \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{2q_{\text{c}}}{M^3 T_{\text{c}}} \sin \frac{Mz}{H} [1 - \exp(-M^2 T_v)] \tag{6.46}$$

and

$$U_{\text{av}} = \frac{T_v}{T_{\text{c}}} \left\{ 1 - \frac{2}{T_v} \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{1}{M^4} [1 - \exp(-M^2 T_v)] \right\} \tag{6.47}$$

For $T_v \ge T_{\text{c}}$

$$u = \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{2q_{\text{c}}}{M^3 T_{\text{c}}} [\exp(M^2 T_{\text{c}}) - 1] \sin \frac{Mz}{H} \exp(-M^2 T_v) \tag{6.48}$$

and

$$U_{\text{av}} = 1 - \frac{2}{T_{\text{c}}} \sum_{m=0}^{m=\infty} \frac{1}{M^4} [\exp(M^2 T_{\text{c}}) - 1] \exp(-M^2 T_{\text{c}}) \tag{6.49}$$

where

$$T_{\text{c}} = \frac{C_v t_{\text{c}}}{H^2} \tag{6.50}$$

Figure 6.8*c* shows the plot of U_{av} against T_v for various values of T_{c}.

EXAMPLE 6.5

Based on one-dimensional consolidation test results on a clay, the coefficient of consolidation for a given pressure range was obtained as $8 \times 10^{-3}\,\text{mm}^2/\text{s}$. In the field there is a 2-m-thick layer of the same clay with two-way drainage. Based on the assumption that a uniform surcharge of 70 kN/m^2 was to be applied instantaneously, the total consolidation settlement was estimated to be 150 mm. However, during the construction, the loading was gradual; the resulting surcharge can be approximated as

$$q\ (\mathrm{kN/m^2}) = \frac{70}{60} t\ (\mathrm{days})$$

for $t \le 60$ days and

$$q = 70\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

for $t \ge 60$ days. Estimate the settlement at $t = 30$ and 120 days.

SOLUTION

$$T_c = \frac{C_v t_c}{H^2} \tag{6.50$'$}$$

Now, $t_c = 60\ \text{days} = 60 \times 24 \times 60 \times 60\,\mathrm{s}$; also, $H_t = 2\,\mathrm{m} = 2H$ (two-way drainage), and so $H = 1\,\mathrm{m} = 1000\,\mathrm{mm}$. Hence,

$$T_c = \frac{(8 \times 10^{-3})(60 \times 24 \times 60 \times 60)}{(1000)^2} = 0.0414$$

At $t = 30$ days,

$$T_v = \frac{C_v t}{H^2} = \frac{(8 \times 10^{-3})(30 \times 24 \times 60 \times 60)}{(1000)^2} = 0.0207$$

From Figure 6.8*c*, for $T_v = 0.0207$ and $T_c = 0.0414$, $U_{av} \approx 5\%$. So,

$$\text{Settlement} = (0.05)(150) = 7.5\,\mathrm{mm}$$

At $t = 120$ days,

$$T_v = \frac{(8 \times 10^{-3})(120 \times 24 \times 60 \times 60)}{(1000)^2} = 0.083$$

From Figure 6.8*c* for $T_v = 0.083$ and $T_c = 0.0414$, $U_{av} \approx 27\%$. So,

$$\text{Settlement} = (0.27)(150) = 40.5\,\mathrm{mm}$$

6.4 Numerical solution for one-dimensional consolidation

Finite difference solution

The principles of finite difference solutions were introduced in Sec. 5.17. In this section, we will consider the finite difference solution for one-dimensional consolidation, starting from the basic differential equation of Terzaghi's consolidation theory:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = C_v \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} \tag{6.51}$$

Let u_R, t_R, and z_R be any arbitrary reference excess pore water pressure, time, and distance, respectively. From these, we can define the following nondimensional terms:

$$\text{Nondimensional excess pore water pressure: } \bar{u} = \frac{u}{u_R} \tag{6.52}$$

$$\text{Nondimensional time : } \bar{t} = \frac{t}{t_R} \tag{6.53}$$

$$\text{Nondimensional depth : } \bar{z} = \frac{z}{z_R} \tag{6.54}$$

From Eqs. (6.52), (6.53), and the left-hand side of Eq. (6.51),

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{u_R}{t_R} \frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{t}} \tag{6.55}$$

Similarly, from Eqs. (6.52), (6.53), and the right-hand side of Eq. (6.51),

$$C_v \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = C_v \frac{u_R}{z_R^2} \frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{z}^2} \tag{6.56}$$

From Eqs. (6.55) and (6.56),

$$\frac{u_R}{t_R} \frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{t}} = C_v \frac{u_R}{z_R^2} \frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{z}^2}$$

or

$$\frac{1}{t_R} \frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{t}} = \frac{C_v}{z_R^2} \frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{z}^2} \tag{6.57}$$

If we adopt the reference time in such a way that $t_R = z_R^2/C_v$, then Eq. (6.57) will be of the form

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{t}} = \frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{z}^2} \tag{6.58}$$

The left-hand side of Eq. (6.58) can be written as

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{\Delta \bar{t}}(\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta \bar{t}} - \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}) \tag{6.59}$$

where $\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}$ and $\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta \bar{t}}$ are the nondimensional pore water pressures at point 0 (Figure 6.9*a*) at nondimensional times t and $t+\Delta t$. Again, similar to Eq. (5.141),

$$\frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{z}^2} = \frac{1}{(\Delta \bar{z})^2}(\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} + \bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}) \tag{6.60}$$

Equating the right sides of Eqs. (6.59) and (6.60) gives

$$\frac{1}{\Delta \bar{t}}(\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta \bar{t}} - \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}) = \frac{1}{(\Delta \bar{z})^2}(\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} + \bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}})$$

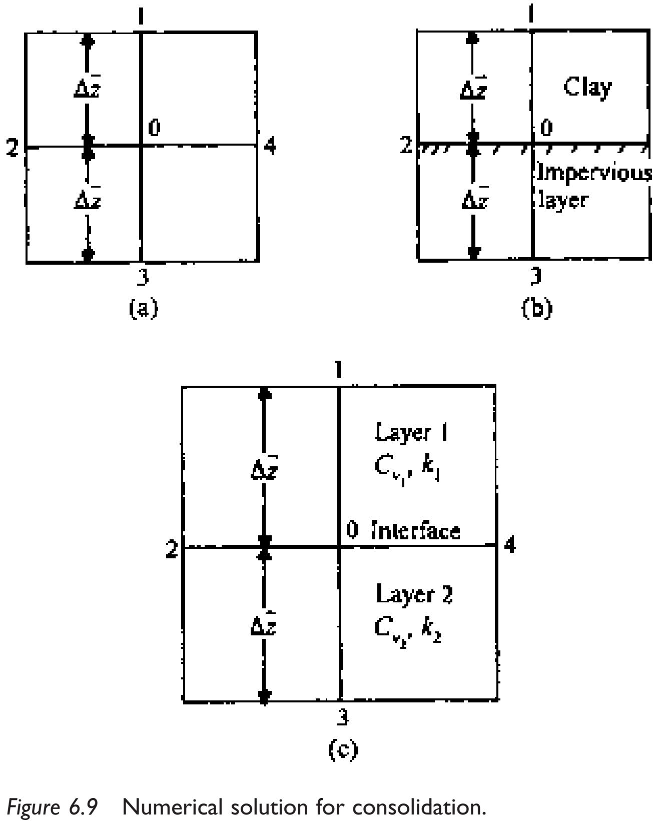


Figure 6.9 Numerical solution for consolidation.

or

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = \frac{\Delta\bar{t}_{(1)}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2}(\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} + \bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}) + \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}} \tag{6.61}$$

For Eq. (6.61) to converge, $\Delta\bar{t}$ and $\Delta\bar{z}$ must be chosen such that $\Delta\bar{t}/(\Delta\bar{z})^2$ is less than 0.5.

When solving for pore water pressure at the interface of a clay layer and an impervious layer, Eq. (6.61) can be used. However, we need to take point 3 as the mirror image of point 1 (Figure 6.9*b*); thus $\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} = \bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}}$. So Eq. (6.61) becomes

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = \frac{\Delta\bar{t}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2}(2\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}) + \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}} \tag{6.62}$$

Consolidation in a layered soil

It is not always possible to develop a closed-form solution for consolidation in layered soils. There are several variables involved, such as different coefficients of permeability, the thickness of layers, and different values of coefficient of consolidation. Figure 6.10 shows the nature of the degree of consolidation of a two-layered soil.

In view of the above, numerical solutions provide a better approach. If we are involved with the calculation of excess pore water pressure at the interface of two different types (i.e., different values of C_v) of clayey soils, Eq. (6.61) will have to be modified to some extent. Referring to Figure 6.9*c*, this can be achieved as follows (Scott, 1963). From Eq. (6.14),

$$\underset{\substack{\uparrow \\ \text{change} \\ \text{in volume}}}{\frac{k}{C_v}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}} = k \underset{\substack{\uparrow \\ \text{difference between} \\ \text{the rate of flow}}}{\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2}}$$

Based on the derivations of Eq. (5.161),

$$k\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{k_1}{(\Delta z)^2} + \frac{k_2}{(\Delta z)^2}\right]\left(\frac{2k_1}{k_1+k_2}u_{1,t} + \frac{2k_2}{k_1+k_2}u_{3,t} - 2u_{0,t}\right) \tag{6.63}$$

where k_1 and k_2 are the coefficients of permeability in layers 1 and 2, respectively, and $u_{0,t}$, $u_{1,t}$, and $u_{3,t}$ are the excess pore water pressures at time t for points 0, 1, and 3, respectively.

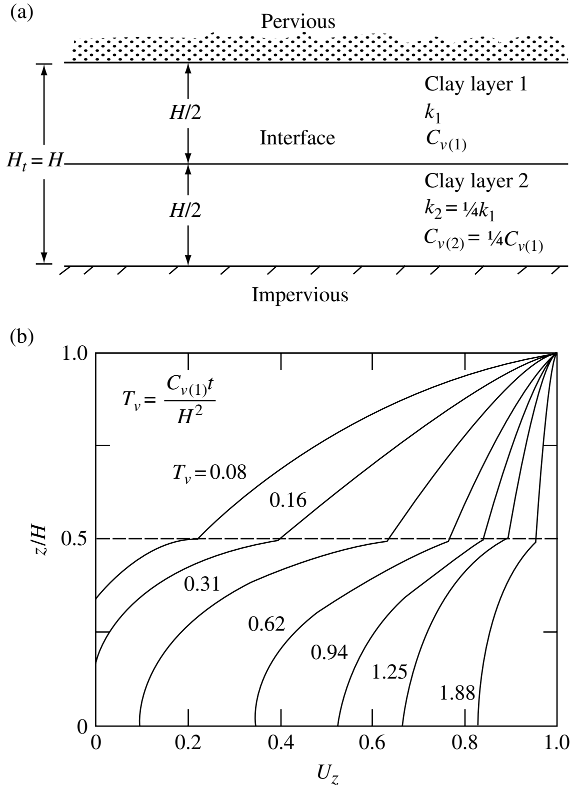


Figure 6.10 Degree of consolidation in two-layered soil [Part (b) after Luscher, 1965].

Also, the average volume change for the element at the boundary is

$$\frac{k}{C_v}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{k_1}{C_{v_1}} + \frac{k_2}{C_{v_2}}\right)\frac{1}{\Delta t}(u_{0,t+\Delta t} - u_{0,t}) \tag{6.64}$$

where $u_{0,t}$ and $u_{0,t+\Delta t}$ are the excess pore water pressures at point 0 at times t and $t+\Delta t$, respectively. Equating the right-hand sides of Eqs. (6.63) and (6.64), we get

$$\left(\frac{k_1}{C_{v_1}} + \frac{k_2}{C_{v_2}}\right)\frac{1}{\Delta t}(u_{0,t+\Delta t} - u_{0,t})$$

$$= \frac{1}{(\Delta z)^2}(k_1 + k_2)\left(\frac{2k_1}{k_1 + k_2}u_{1,t} + \frac{2k_2}{k_1 + k_2}u_{3,t} - 2u_{0,t}\right)$$

or

$$u_{0,t+\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta t}{(\Delta z)^2}\frac{k_1+k_2}{k_1/C_{v_1}+k_2/C_{v_2}} \times\left(\frac{2k_1}{k_1+k_2}u_{1,t}+\frac{2k_2}{k_1+k_2}u_{3,t}-2u_{0,t}\right)+u_{0,t}$$

or

$$u_{0,t+\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta t C_{v_1}}{(\Delta z)^2}\frac{1+k_2/k_1}{1+(k_2/k_1)(C_{v_1}/C_{v_2})} \times\left(\frac{2k_1}{k_1+k_2}u_{1,t}+\frac{2k_2}{k_1+k_2}u_{3,t}-2u_{0,t}\right)+u_{0,t} \tag{6.65}$$

Assuming $1/t_R = C_{v1}/z_R^2$ and combining Eqs. (6.52)–(6.54) and (6.65), we get

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = \frac{1+k_2/k_1}{1+(k_2/k_1)(C_{v_1}/C_{v_2})}\frac{\Delta\bar{t}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2} \times\left(\frac{2k_1}{k_1+k_2}\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}}+\frac{2k_2}{k_1+k_2}\bar{u}_{3,t}-2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}\right)+u_{0,\bar{t}} \tag{6.66}$$

EXAMPLE 6.6

A uniform surcharge of $q = 150\,\text{kN/m}^2$ is applied at the ground surface of the soil profile shown in Figure 6.11*a*. Using the numerical method, determine the distribution of excess pore water pressure for the clay layers after 10 days of load application.

SOLUTION Since this is a uniform surcharge, the excess pore water pressure immediately after the load application will be $150\,\text{kN/m}^2$ throughout the clay layers. However, owing to the drainage conditions, the excess pore water pressures at the top of layer 1 and bottom of layer 2 will immediately become zero. Now, let $z_R = 8\,\text{m}$ and $u_R = 1.5\,\text{kN/m}^2$. So $\bar{z} = (8\,\text{m})/(8\,\text{m}) = 1$ and $\bar{u} = (150\,\text{kN/m}^2)/(1.5\,\text{kN/m}^2) = 100$. Figure 6.10*b* shows the distribution of $\bar{u}$ at time $t = 0$; note that $\Delta\bar{z} = 2/8 = 0.25$. Now,

$$t_R = \frac{z_R^2}{C_v} \quad \bar{t} = \frac{t}{t_R} \quad \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta\bar{t}} = \frac{z_R^2}{C_v} \quad \text{or} \quad \Delta\bar{t} = \frac{C_v\Delta t}{z_R^2}$$

Let $\Delta t = 5$ days for both layers. So, for layer 1,

$$\Delta\bar{t}_{(1)} = \frac{C_{v_1}\Delta t}{z_R^2} = \frac{0.26(5)}{8^2} = 0.0203 \quad \frac{\Delta\bar{t}_{(1)}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2} = \frac{0.0203}{0.25^2} = 0.325 \quad (< 0.5)$$

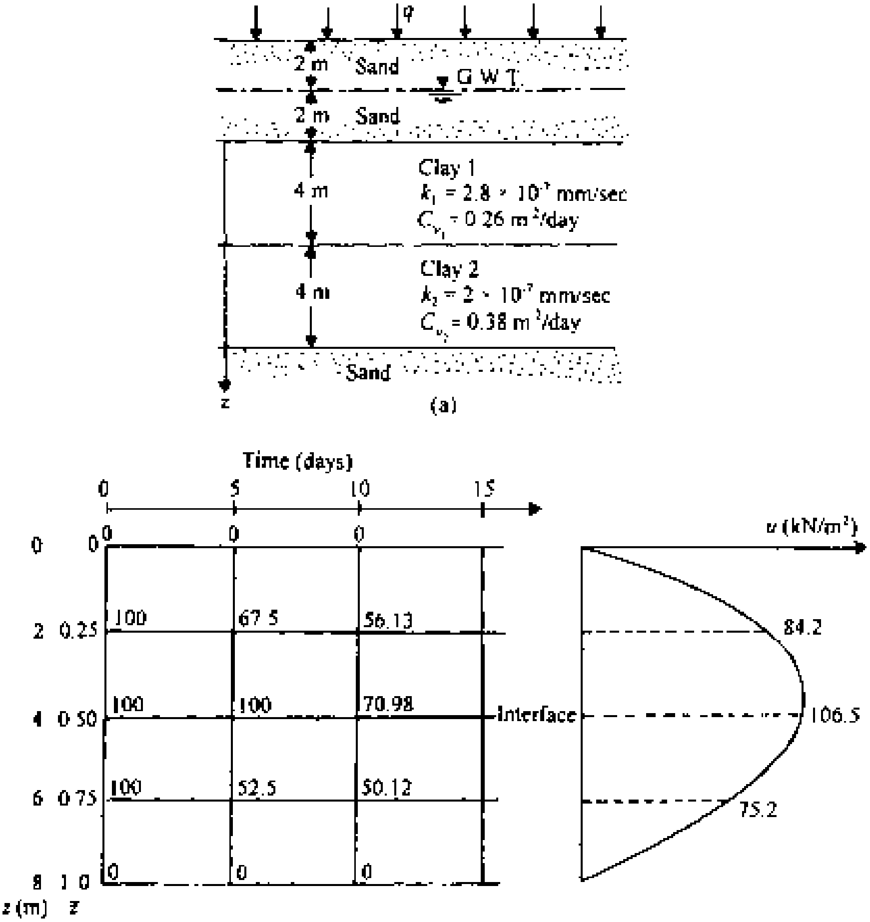


Figure 6.11 Numerical solution for consolidation in layered soil.

For layer 2,

$$\Delta\bar{t}_{(2)} = \frac{C_{v_2}\Delta t}{z_R^2} = \frac{0.38(5)}{8^2} = 0.0297 \quad \frac{\Delta\bar{t}_{(2)}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2} = \frac{0.0297}{0.25^2} = 0.475 \quad (< 0.5)$$

For $t = 5$ days,
At $\bar{z} = 0$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.25$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = \frac{\Delta\bar{t}_{(1)}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2}(\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} + \bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}) + \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}$$

$$= 0.325[0 + 100 - 2(100)] + 100 = 67.5 \tag{6.61'}$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.5$ [note: this is the boundary of two layers, so we will use Eq. (6.66)],

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = \frac{1 + k_2/k_1}{1 + (k_2/k_1)(C_{v_1}/C_{v_2})}\frac{\Delta\bar{t}_{(1)}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2} \times \left(\frac{2k_1}{k_1 + k_2}\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} + \frac{2k_2}{k_1 + k_2}\bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}\right) + \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}$$

$$= \frac{1 + \frac{2}{2.8}}{1 + (2 \times 0.26)/(2.8 \times 0.38)}(0.325) \times \left[\frac{2 \times 2.8}{2 + 2.8}(100) + \frac{2 \times 2}{2 + 2.8}(100) - 2(100)\right] + 100$$

or

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = (1.152)(0.325)(116.67 + 83.33 - 200) + 100 = 100$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.75$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = \frac{\Delta\bar{t}_{(2)}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2}(\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} + \bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}) + \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}$$

$$= 0.475[100 + 0 - 2(100)] + 100 = 52.5$$

At $\bar{z} = 1.0$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0$$

For $t = 10$ days,
At $\bar{z} = 0$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.25$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.325[0 + 100 - 2(67.5)] + 67.5 = 56.13$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.5$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = (1.152)(0.325)\left[\frac{2\times 2.8}{2+2.8}(67.5) + \frac{2\times 2}{2+2.8}(52.5) - 2(100)\right] + 100$$

$$= (1.152)(0.325)(78.75 + 43.75 - 200) + 100 = 70.98$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.75$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.475[100 + 0 - 2(52.5)] + 52.5 = 50.12$$

At $\bar{z} = 1.0$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0$$

The variation of the nondimensional excess pore water pressure is shown in Figure 6.11*b*. Knowing $u = (\bar{u})(u_R) = \bar{u}(1.5)\,\text{kN/m}^2$, we can plot the variation of u with depth.

EXAMPLE 6.7

For Example 6.6, assume that the surcharge q is applied gradually. The relation between time and q is shown in Figure 6.12*a*. Using the numerical method, determine the distribution of excess pore water pressure after 15 days from the start of loading.

SOLUTION As before, $z_R = 8\,\text{m}$, $u_R = 1.5\,\text{kN/m}^2$. For $\Delta t = 5$ days,

$$\frac{\Delta\bar{t}_{(1)}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2} = 0.325 \qquad \frac{\Delta\bar{t}_{(2)}}{(\Delta\bar{z})^2} = 0.475$$

The continuous loading can be divided into step loads such as $60\,\text{kN/m}^2$ from 0 to 10 days and an added $90\,\text{kN/m}^2$ from the tenth day on. This is shown by dashed lines in Figure 6.12*a*.
At $t = 0$ days,

$\bar{z} = 0 \quad \bar{u} = 0$

$\bar{z} = 0.25 \quad \bar{u} = 60/1.5 = 40$

$\bar{z} = 0.5 \quad \bar{u} = 40$

$\bar{z} = 0.75 \quad \bar{u} = 40$

$\bar{z} = 1 \quad \bar{u} = 0$

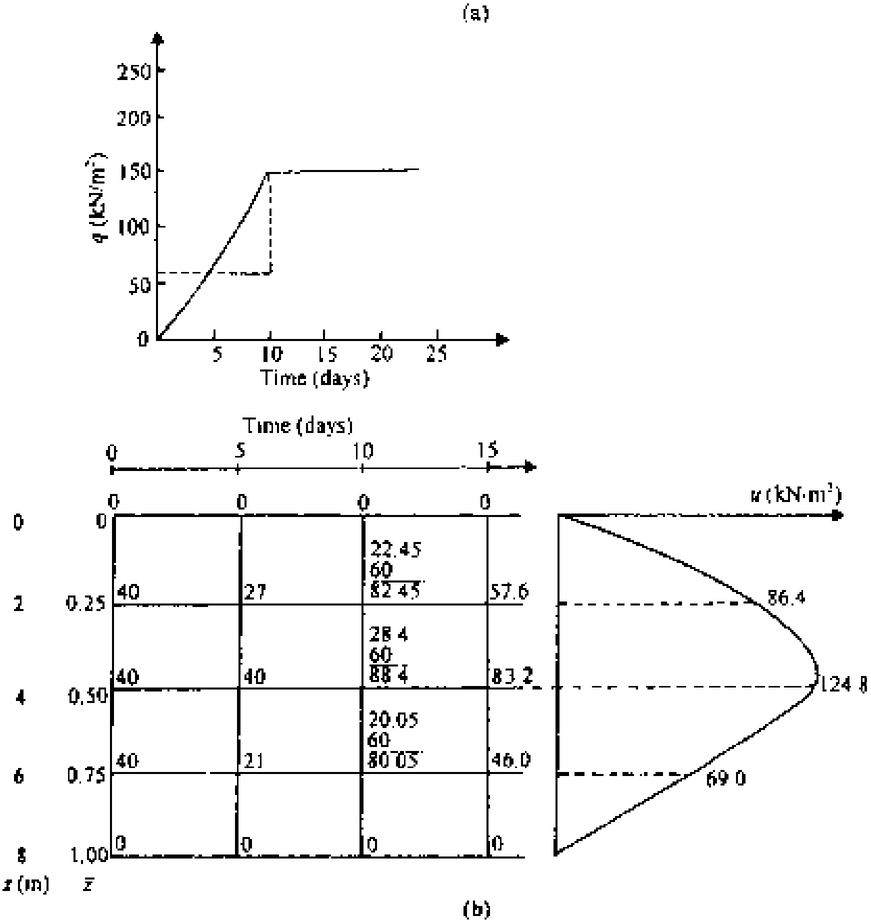


Figure 6.12 Numerical solution for ramp loading.

At $t = 5$ days,
At $\bar{z} = 0$,

$$\bar{u} = 0$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.25$, from. Eq. (6.61),

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.325[0 + 40 - 2(40)] + 40 = 27$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.5$, from Eq. (6.66),

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = (1.532)(0.325)\left[\frac{2\times 2.8}{2+2.8}(40)+\frac{2\times 2}{2+2.8}(40)-2(40)\right]+40=40$$

At $\bar{z}=0.75$, from Eq. (6.61),

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.475[40+0-2(40)]+40=21$$

At $\bar{z}=1$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0$$

At $t=10$ days,
At $\bar{z}=0$,

$$\bar{u}=0$$

At $\bar{z}=0.25$, from Eq. (6.61),

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.325[0+40-2(27)]+27=22.45$$

At this point, a new load of $90\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$ is added, so $\bar{u}$ will increase by an amount $90/1.5=60$. The new $\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}}$ is $60+22.45=82.45$. At $\bar{z}=0.5$, from Eq. (6.66),

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = (1.152)(0.325)\left[\frac{2\times 2.8}{2+2.8}(27)+\frac{2\times 2}{2+2.8}(21)-2(40)\right]+40=28.4$$

$$\text{New } \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 28.4+60=88.4$$

At $\bar{z}=0.75$, from Eq. (6.61),

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.475[40+0-2(21)]+21=20.05$$

$$\text{New } \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 60+20.05=80.05$$

At $\bar{z}=1$,

$$\bar{u}=0$$

At $t=15$ days,
At $\bar{z}=0$,

$$\bar{u}=0$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.25$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.325[0 + 88.4 - 2(82.45)] + 82.45 = 57.6$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.5$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = (1.152)(0.325) \times \left[\frac{2 \times 2.8}{2 + 2.8}(82.45) + \frac{2 \times 2}{2 + 2.8}(80.05) - 2(88.4)\right] + 88.4 = 83.2$$

At $\bar{z} = 0.75$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.475[88.4 + 0 - 2(80.05)] + 80.05 = 46.0$$

At $\bar{z} = 1$,

$$\bar{u} = 0$$

The distribution of excess pore water pressure is shown in Figure 6.12*b*.

6.5 Standard one-dimensional consolidation test and interpretation

The standard one-dimensional consolidation test is usually carried out on saturated specimens about 25.4 mm thick and 63.5 mm in diameter (Figure 6.13). The soil specimen is kept inside a metal ring, with a porous

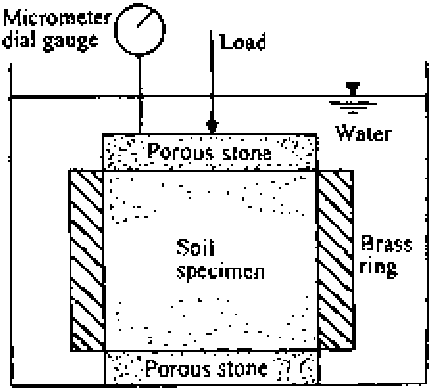


Figure 6.13 Consolidometer.

stone at the top and another at the bottom. The load P on the specimen is applied through a lever arm, and the compression of the specimen is measured by a micrometer dial gauge. The load is usually doubled every 24 h. The specimen is kept under water throughout the test.

For each load increment, the specimen deformation and the corresponding time t are plotted on semilogarithmic graph paper. Figure 6.14*a* shows a typical deformation versus log t graph. The graph consists of three distinct parts:

1. Upper curved portion (stage I). This is mainly the result of precompression of the specimen.
2. A straight-line portion (stage II). This is referred to as primary consolidation. At the end of the primary consolidation, the excess pore water pressure generated by the incremental loading is dissipated to a large extent.
3. A lower straight-line portion (stage III). This is called secondary consolidation. During this stage, the specimen undergoes small deformation with time. In fact, there must be immeasurably small excess pore water pressure in the specimen during secondary consolidation.

Note that at the end of the test, for each incremental loading the stress on the specimen is the effective stress σ'. Once the specific gravity of the soil solids, the initial specimen dimensions, and the specimen deformation at the end of each load have been determined, the corresponding void ratio can be calculated. A typical void ratio versus effective pressure relation plotted on semilogarithmic graph paper is shown in Figure 6.14*b*.

Preconsolidation pressure

In the typical e versus $\log \sigma'$ plot shown in Figure 6.14*b*, it can be seen that the upper part is curved; however, at higher pressures, e and $\log \sigma'$ bear a linear relation. The upper part is curved because when the soil specimen was obtained from the field, it was subjected to a certain maximum effective pressure. During the process of soil exploration, the pressure is released. In the laboratory, when the soil specimen is loaded, it will show relatively small decrease of void ratio with load up to the maximum effective stress to which the soil was subjected in the past. This is represented by the upper curved portion in Figure 6.14*b*. If the effective stress on the soil specimen is increased further, the decrease of void ratio with stress level will be larger. This is represented by the straight-line portion in the e versus $\log \sigma'$ plot. The effect can also be demonstrated in the laboratory by unloading and reloading a soil specimen, as shown in Figure 6.15. In this figure, *cd* is the void ratio–effective stress relation as the specimen is unloaded, and *dfgh* is the reloading branch. At *d*, the specimen is being subjected to a lower

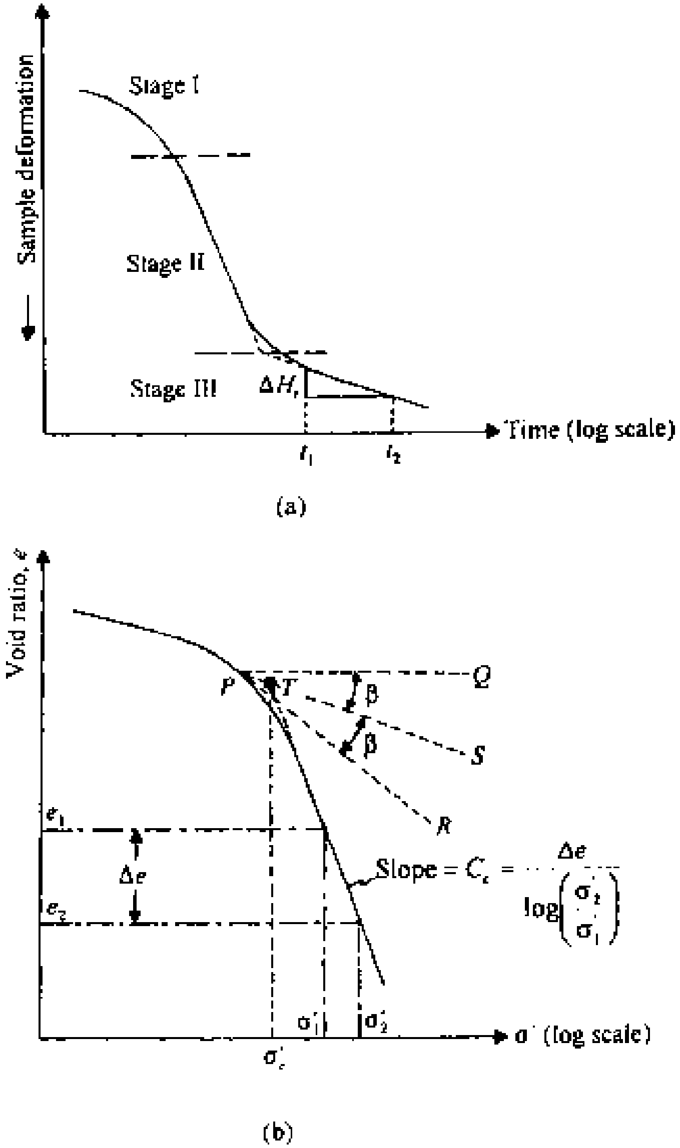


Figure 6.14 (*a*) Typical specimen deformation versus log-of-time plot for a given load increment and (*b*) Typical *e* versus log σ' plot showing procedure for determination of σ'_c and C_c.

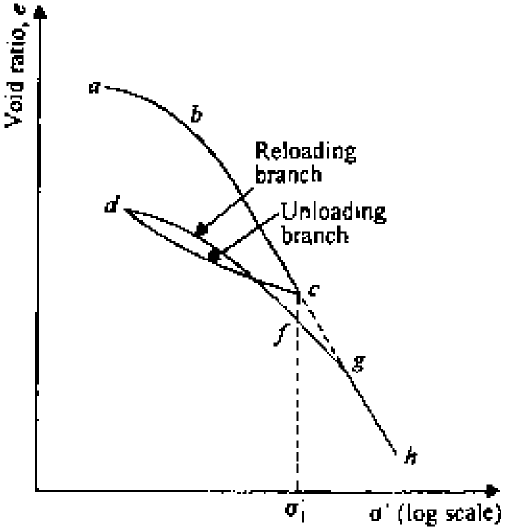


Figure 6.15 Plot of void ratio versus effective pressure showing unloading and reloading branches.

effective stress than the maximum stress σ_1' to which the soil was ever subjected. So *df* will show a flatter curved portion. Beyond point *f*, the void ratio will decrease at a larger rate with effective stress, and *gh* will have the same slope as *bc*.

Based on the above explanation, we can now define the two conditions of a soil:

1. *Normally consolidated.* A soil is called normally consolidated if the present effective overburden pressure is the maximum to which the soil has ever been subjected, i.e., $\sigma'_{\text{present}} \geq \sigma'_{\text{past maximum}}$.
2. *Overconsolidated.* A soil is called overconsolidated if the present effective overburden pressure is less than the maximum to which the soil was ever subjected in the past, i.e., $\sigma'_{\text{present}} < \sigma'_{\text{past maximum}}$.

In Figure 6.15, the branches *ab*, *cd* and *df* are the overconsolidated state of a soil, and the branches *bc* and *fh* are the normally consolidated state of a soil.

In the natural condition in the field, a soil may be either normally consolidated or overconsolidated. A soil in the field may become overconsolidated through several mechanisms, some of which are listed below (Brummund *et al.*, 1976).

- Removal of overburden pressure
- Past structures
- Glaciation
- Deep pumping
- Desiccation due to drying
- Desiccation due to plant lift
- Change in soil structure due to secondary compression
- Change in pH
- Change in temperature
- Salt concentration
- Weathering
- Ion exchange
- Precipitation of cementing agents

The preconsolidation pressure from an e versus $\log \sigma'$ plot is generally determined by a graphical procedure suggested by Casagrande (1936), as shown in Figure 6.14*b*. The steps are as follows:

1. Visually determine the point P (on the upper curved portion of the e versus $\log \sigma'$ plot) that has the maximum curvature.
2. Draw a horizontal line PQ.
3. Draw a tangent PR at P.
4. Draw the line PS bisecting the angle QPR.
5. Produce the straight-line portion of the e versus $\log \sigma'$ plot backward to intersect PS at T.
6. The effective pressure corresponding to point T is the preconsolidation pressure σ'_c.

In the field, the overconsolidation ratio (OCR) can be defined as

$$\mathrm{OCR} = \frac{\sigma'_c}{\sigma'_o} \tag{6.67}$$

where σ'_o = present effective overburden pressure

There are some empirical correlations presently available in the literature to estimate the preconsolidation pressure in the field. Following are a few of these relationships. However, they should be used cautiously.

Stas and Kulhawy (1984)

$$\frac{\sigma'_c}{p_a} = 10^{(1.11-1.62\mathrm{LI})} \text{ (for clays with sensitivity between 1 and 10)} \tag{6.68}$$

where

p_a = atmospheric pressure ($\approx 100\,\text{kN/m}^2$)
LI = liquidity index

Hansbo (1957)

$$\sigma'_c = \alpha_{(\text{VST})} S_{u(\text{VST})} \tag{6.69}$$

where

$S_{u(\text{VST})}$ = undrained shear strength based on vane shear test
$\alpha_{(\text{VST})}$ = an empirical coefficient = $\frac{222}{\text{LL}(\%)}$

where LL = liquid limit

Mayne and Mitchell (1988) gave a correlation for $\alpha_{(\text{VST})}$ as

$$\alpha_{(\text{VST})} = 22\text{PI}^{-0.48} \tag{6.70}$$

where PI = plasticity index (%)

Nagaraj and Murty (1985)

$$\log \sigma'_c = \frac{1.322\left(\dfrac{e_o}{e_L}\right) - 0.0463 \log \sigma'_o}{0.188} \tag{6.71}$$

where

e_o = void ratio at the present effective overburden pressure, σ'_o
e_L = void ratio of the soil at liquid limit

σ'_c and σ'_o are in kN/m^2

$$e_L = \left[\frac{\text{LL}(\%)}{100}\right] G_s$$

G_s = specific gravity of soil solids

Compression index

The slope of the e versus $\log\sigma'$ plot for normally consolidated soil is referred to as the compression index C_c. From Figure 6.14*b*,

$$C_c = \frac{e_1 - e_2}{\log\sigma_2' - \log\sigma_1'} = \frac{\Delta e}{\log(\sigma_2'/\sigma_1')} \tag{6.72}$$

For undisturbed normally consolidated clays, Terzaghi and Peck (1967) gave a correlation for the compression index as

$$C_c = 0.009(\mathrm{LL} - 10)$$

Based on laboratory test results, several empirical relations for C_c have been proposed, some of which are given in Table 6.3.

6.6 Effect of sample disturbance on the e versus $\log\sigma'$ curve

Soil samples obtained from the field are somewhat disturbed. When consolidation tests are conducted on these specimens, we obtain e versus $\log\sigma'$ plots that are slightly different from those in the field. This is demonstrated in Figure 6.16.

Curve I in Figure 6.16*a* shows the nature of the e versus $\log\sigma'$ variation that an undisturbed normally consolidated clay (present effective overburden pressure σ_0'; void ratio e_0) in the field would exhibit. This is called the *virgin compression curve*. A laboratory consolidation test on a carefully recovered specimen would result in an e versus $\log\sigma'$ plot such as curve II. If the same soil is completely remolded and then tested in a consolidometer, the resulting void ratio–pressure plot will be like curve III. The virgin compression curve (curve I) and the laboratory e versus $\log\sigma'$ curve obtained from a carefully recovered specimen (curve II) intersect at a void ratio of about $0.4e_0$ (Terzaghi and Peck, 1967).

Curve I in Figure 6.16*b* shows the nature of the field consolidation curve of an overconsolidated clay. Note that the present effective overburden pressure is σ_0', the corresponding void ratio e_0, σ_c' the preconsolidation pressure, and *bc* a part of the virgin compression curve. Curve II is the corresponding laboratory consolidation curve. After careful testing, Schmertmann (1953) concluded that the field recompression branch (*ab* in Figure 6.15*b*) has approximately the same slope as the laboratory unloading branch, *cf*. The slope of the laboratory unloading branch is referred to as C_r. The range of C_r is approximately from one-fifth to one-tenth of C_c.

Table 6.3 Empirical relations for C_c

Reference	*Relation*	*Comments*
Terzaghi and Peck (1967)	$C_c = 0.009(\mathrm{LL} - 10)$ $C_c = 0.007(\mathrm{LL} - 10)$ LL = liquid limit (%)	Undisturbed clay Remolded clay
Azzouz *et al.* (1976)	$C_c = 0.01\,w_N$ w_N = natural moisture content (%)	Chicago clay
	$C_c = 0.0046(\mathrm{LL} - 9)$ LL = liquid limit (%)	Brazilian clay
	$C_c = 1.21 + 1.005(e_0 - 1.87)$ e_0 = in situ void ratio	Motley clays from Sao Paulo city
	$C_c = 0.208e_0 + 0.0083$ e_0 = in situ void ratio	Chicago clay
	$C_c = 0.0115w_N$ w_N = natural moisture content (%)	Organic soil, peat
Nacci *et al.* (1975)	$C_c = 0.02 + 0.014(\mathrm{PI})$ PI = plasticity index (%)	North Atlantic clay
Rendon-Herrero (1983)	$C_c = 0.141G_s^{1.2}\left(\frac{1+e_0}{G_s}\right)^{2.38}$ G_s = specific gravity of soil solids e_0 = in situ void ratio	
Nagaraj and Murty (1985)	$C_c = 0.2343\left(\frac{\mathrm{LL}}{100}\right)G_s$ G_s = specific gravity of soil solids LL = liquid limit (%)	
Park and Koumoto (2004)	$C_c = \frac{n_o}{371.747\text{–}4.275n_o}$ n_o = in situ porosity of soil	

6.7 Secondary consolidation

It has been pointed out previously that clays continue to settle under sustained loading at the end of primary consolidation, and this is due to the continued re-adjustment of clay particles. Several investigations have been carried out for qualitative and quantitative evaluation of secondary consolidation. The magnitude of secondary consolidation is often defined by (Figure 6.14*a*)

$$C_\alpha = \frac{\Delta H_t/H_t}{\log t_2 - \log t_1} \tag{6.73}$$

where C_α is the coefficient of secondary consolidation.

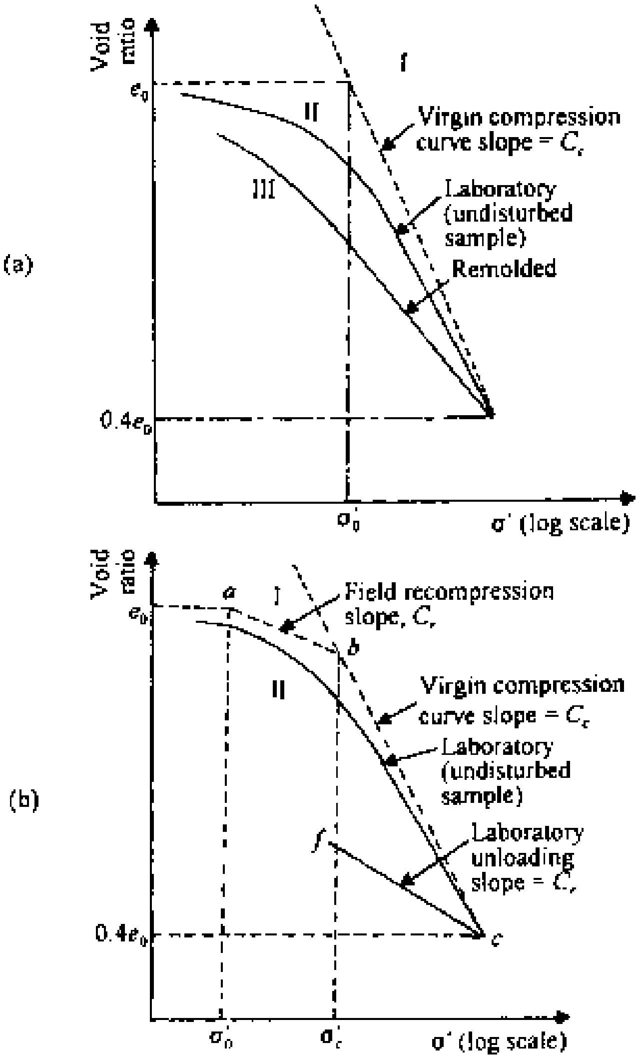


Figure 6.16 Effect of sample disturbance on e versus log σ' curve.

Mesri (1973) published an extensive list of the works of various investigators in this area. Figure 6.17 details the general range of the coefficient of secondary consolidation observed in a number of clayey soils. Secondary compression is greater in plastic clays and organic soils. Based on the

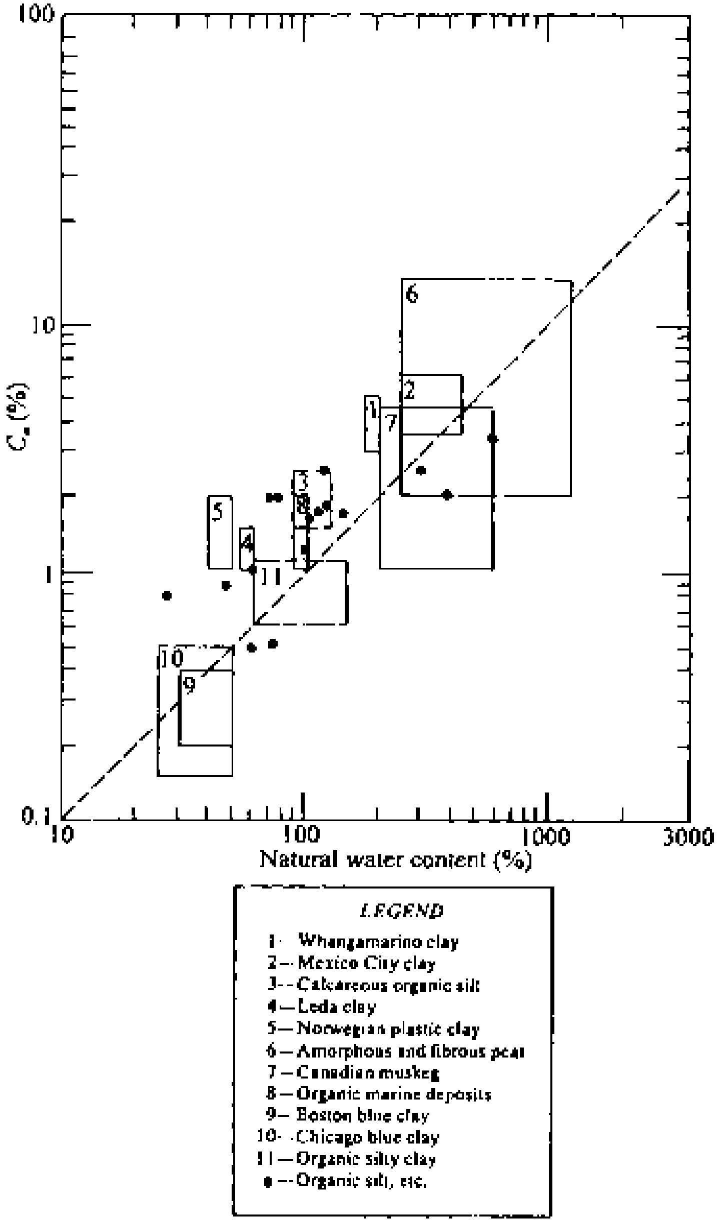


Figure 6.17 Coefficient of secondary consolidation for natural soil deposits (after Mesri, 1973).

coefficient of secondary consolidation, Mesri (1973) classified the secondary compressibility, and this is summarized below.

C_α	*Secondary compressibility*
< 0.002	very low
0.002–0.004	low
0.004–0.008	medium
0.008–0.016	high
0.016–0.032	very high

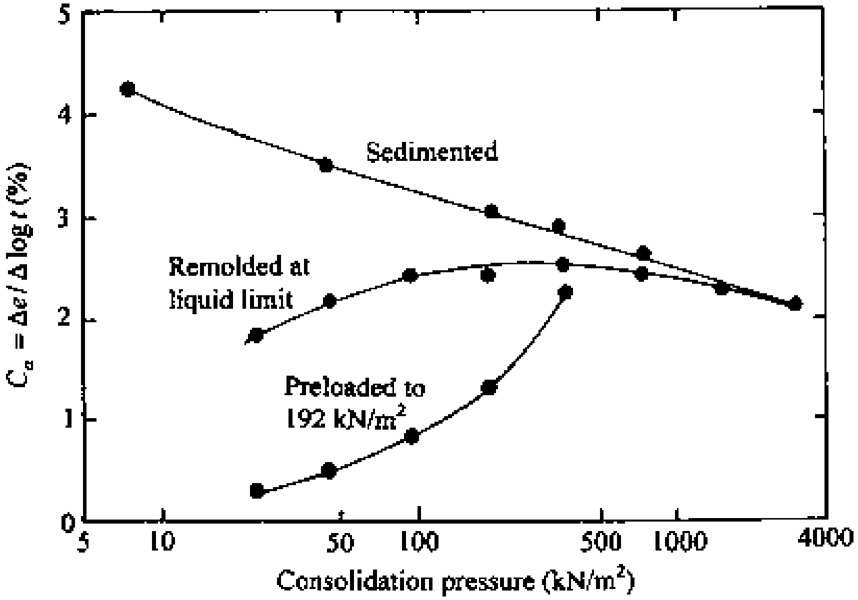


Figure 6.18 Coefficient of secondary compression for organic Paulding clay (after Mesri, 1973).

In order to study the effect of remolding and preloading on secondary compression, Mesri (1973) conducted a series of one-dimensional consolidation tests on an organic Paulding clay. Figure 6.18 shows the results in the form of a plot of $\Delta e/(\Delta \log t)$ versus consolidation pressure. For these tests, each specimen was loaded to a final pressure with load increment ratios of 1 and with only sufficient time allowed for excess pore water pressure dissipation. Under the final pressure, secondary compression was observed for a period of 6 months. The following conclusions can be drawn from the results of these tests:

1. For sedimented (undisturbed) soils, $\Delta e/(\Delta \log t)$ decreases with the increase of the final consolidation pressure.

2. Remolding of clays creates a more dispersed fabric. This results in a decrease of the coefficient of secondary consolidation at lower consolidation pressures as compared to that for undisturbed samples. However, it increases with consolidation pressure to a maximum value and then decreases, finally merging with the values for normally consolidated undisturbed samples.
3. Precompressed clays show a smaller value of coefficient of secondary consolidation. The degree of reduction appears to be a function of the degree of precompression.

Mesri and Godlewski (1977) compiled the values of C_α/C_c for a number of naturally occurring soils. From this study it appears that, in general,

- $C_\alpha/C_c \approx 0.04 \pm 0.01$ (for inorganic clays and silts)
- $C_\alpha/C_c \approx 0.05 \pm 0.01$ (for organic clays and silts)
- $C_\alpha/C_c \approx 0.075 \pm 0.01$ (for peats)

6.8 General comments on consolidation tests

Standard one-dimensional consolidation tests as described in Sec. 6.5 are conducted with a soil specimen having a thickness of 25.4 mm in which the load on the specimen is doubled every 24 h. This means that $\Delta\sigma/\sigma'$ is kept at 1 ($\Delta\sigma$ is the step load increment, and σ' the effective stress on the specimen before the application of the incremental step load). Following are some general observations as to the effect of any deviation from the standard test procedure.

Effect of load-increment ratio $\Delta\sigma/\sigma'$. Striking changes in the shape of the compression-time curves for one-dimensional consolidation tests are generally noticed if the magnitude of $\Delta\sigma/\sigma'$ is reduced to less than about 0.25. Leonards and Altschaeffl (1964) conducted several tests on Mexico City clay in which they varied the value of $\Delta\sigma/\sigma'$ and then measured the excess pore water pressure with time. The general nature of specimen deformation with time is shown in Figure 6.19*a*. From this figure it may be seen that, for $\Delta\sigma/\sigma' < 0.25$, the position of the end of primary consolidation (i.e., zero excess pore water pressure due to incremental load) is somewhat difficult to resolve. Furthermore, the load-increment ratio has a high influence on consolidation of clay. Figure 6.19*b* shows the nature of the e versus $\log\sigma'$ curve for various values of $\Delta\sigma/\sigma'$. If $\Delta\sigma/\sigma'$ is small, the ability of individual clay particles to readjust to their positions of equilibrium is small, which results in a smaller compression compared to that for larger values of $\Delta\sigma/\sigma'$.

Effect of load duration. In conventional testing, in which the soil specimen is left under a given load for about a day, a certain amount of secondary consolidation takes place before the next load increment is added.

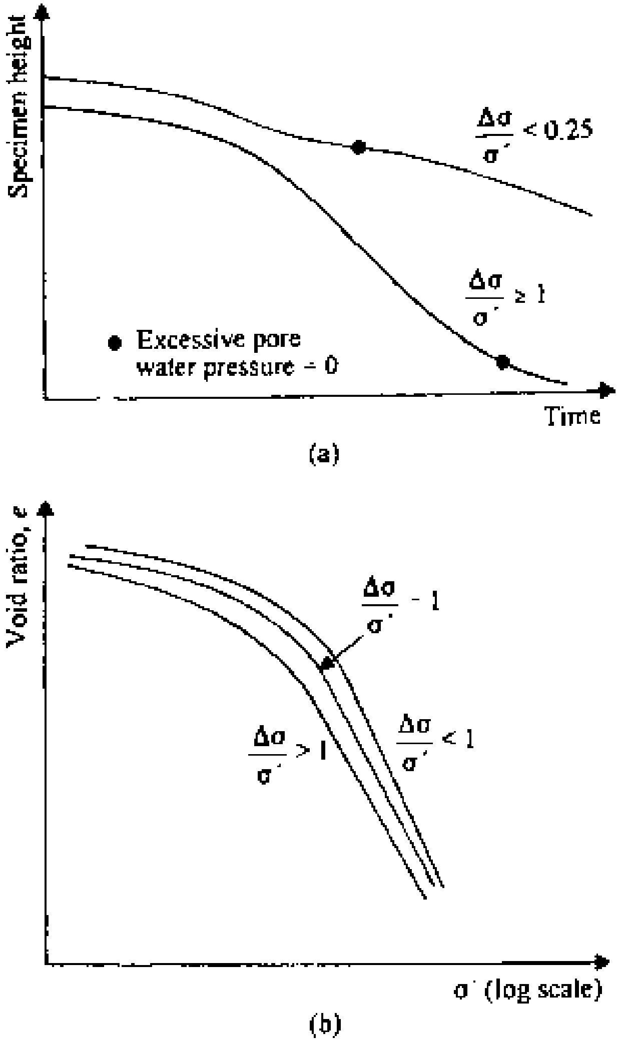


Figure 6.19 Effect of load-increment ratio.

If the specimen is left under a given load for more than a day, additional secondary consolidation settlement will occur. This additional amount of secondary consolidation will have an effect on the *e* versus $\log\sigma'$ plot, as shown in Figure 6.20. Curve *a* is based on the results at the end of primary consolidation. Curve *b* is based on the standard 24-h load-increment duration. Curve *c* refers to the condition for which a given load is kept for more than 24 h before the next load increment is applied. The strain

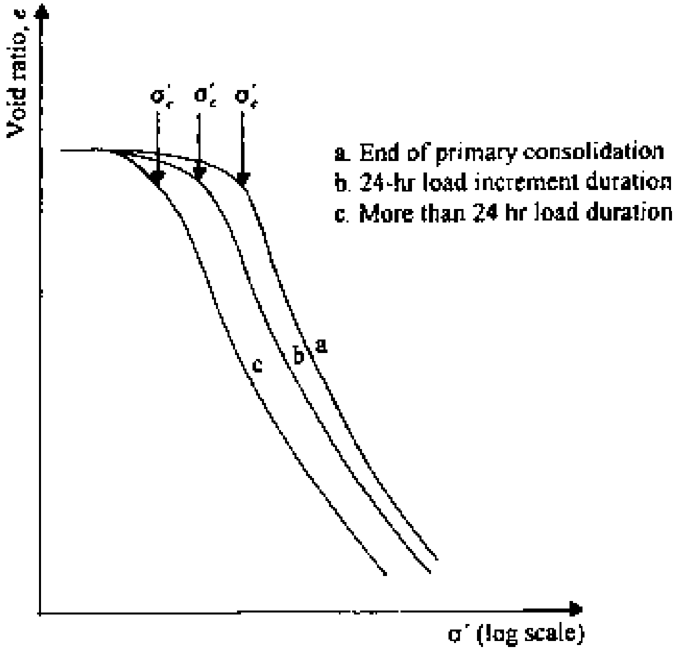


Figure 6.20 Effect of load duration on e versus log σ' plot.

for a given value of σ' is calculated from the total deformation that the specimen has undergone before the next load increment is applied. In this regard, Crawford (1964) provided experimental results on Leda clay. For his study, the preconsolidation pressure obtained from the end of primary e versus log σ' plot was about twice that obtained from the e versus log σ' plot where each load increment was kept for a week.

Effect of specimen thickness. Other conditions remaining the same, the proportion of secondary to primary compression increases with the decrease of specimen thickness for similar values of $\Delta\sigma/\sigma'$.

Effect of secondary consolidation. The continued secondary consolidation of a natural clay deposit has some influence on the preconsolidation pressure σ'_c. This fact can be further explained by the schematic diagram shown in Figure 6.21.

A clay that has recently been deposited and comes to equilibrium by its own weight can be called a "young, normally consolidated clay." If such a clay, with an effective overburden pressure of σ'_0 at an equilibrium void ratio of e_0, is now removed from the ground and tested in a consolidometer, it will show an e versus log σ' curve like that marked curve a in Figure 6.21. Note that the preconsolidation pressure for curve a is σ'_0. On the contrary,

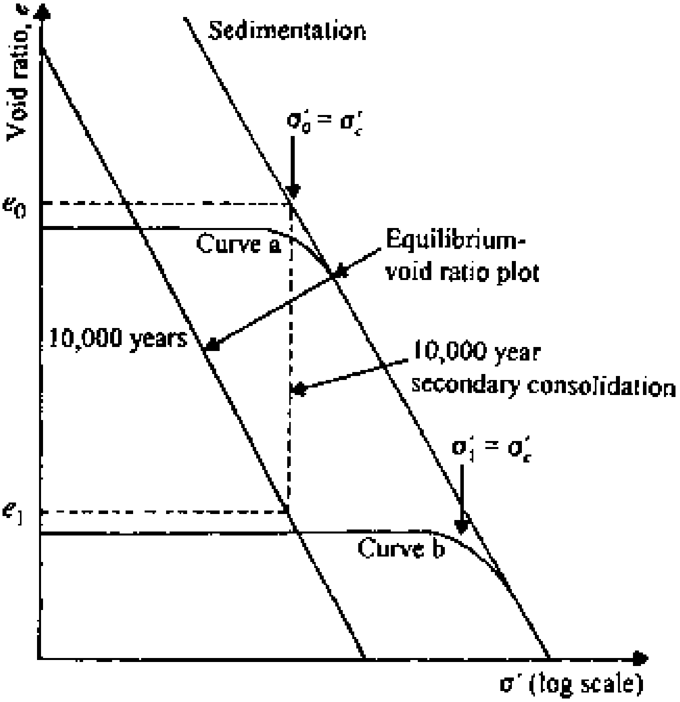


Figure 6.21 Effect of secondary consolidation.

if the same clay is allowed to remain undisturbed for 10,000 yr, for example, under the same effective overburden pressure σ'_0, there will be creep or secondary consolidation. This will reduce the void ratio to e_1. The clay may now be called an "aged, normally consolidated clay." If this clay, at a void ratio of e_1 and effective overburden pressure of σ'_0, is removed and tested in a consolidometer, the *e* versus $\log \sigma'$ curve will be like curve *b*. The preconsolidation pressure, when determined by standard procedure, will be σ'_1. Now, $\sigma'_c = \sigma'_1 > \sigma'_0$. This is sometimes referred to as a quasi-preconsolidation effect. The effect of preconsolidation is pronounced in most plastic clays. Thus it may be reasoned that, under similar conditions, the ratio of the quasi-preconsolidation pressure to the effective overburden pressure σ'_c/σ'_0 will increase with the plasticity index of the soil. Bjerrum (1972) gave an estimate of the relation between the plasticity index and the ratio of quasi-preconsolidation pressure to effective overburden pressure (σ'_c/σ'_0) for late glacial and postglacial clays. This relation is shown below:

Plasticity index	$\approx \sigma'_c/\sigma'_0$
20	1.4
40	1.65
60	1.75
80	1.85
100	1.90

6.9 Calculation of one-dimensional consolidation settlement

The basic principle of one-dimensional consolidation settlement calculation is demonstrated in Figure 6.22. If a clay layer of total thickness H_t is subjected to an increase of average effective overburden pressure from σ'_0 to σ'_1, it will undergo a consolidation settlement of ΔH_t. Hence the strain can be given by

$$\in = \frac{\Delta H_t}{H_t} \tag{6.74}$$

where $\in$ is strain. Again, if an undisturbed laboratory specimen is subjected to the same effective stress increase, the void ratio will decrease by Δe. Thus the strain is equal to

$$\in = \frac{\Delta e}{1 + e_0} \tag{6.75}$$

where e_0 is the void ratio at an effective stress of σ'_0.

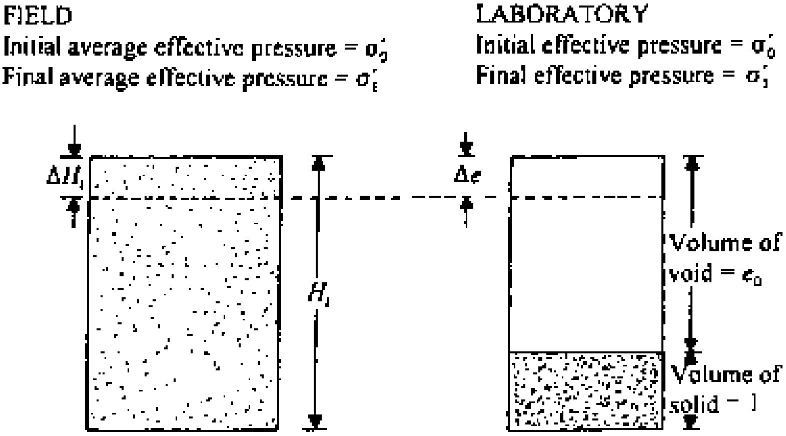


Figure 6.22 Calculation of one-dimensional consolidation settlement.

Thus, from Eqs. (6.74) and (6.75),

$$\Delta H_t = \frac{\Delta e H_t}{1+e_0} \tag{6.76}$$

For a normally consolidated clay in the field (Figure 6.23*a*),

$$\Delta e = C_c \log \frac{\sigma_1'}{\sigma_0'} = C_c \log \frac{\sigma_0' + \Delta\sigma}{\sigma_0'} \tag{6.77}$$

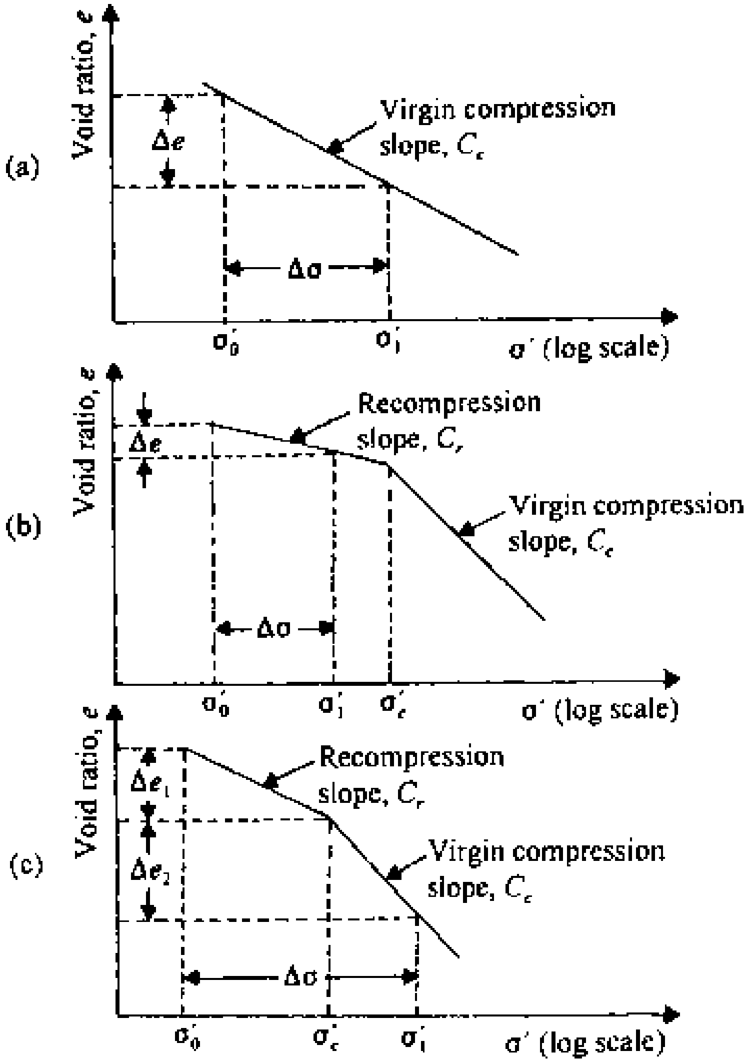


Figure 6.23 Calculation of Δe [Eqs. (6.77)–(6.79)].

For an overconsolidated clay, (1) if $\sigma_1' < \sigma_c'$ (i.e., overconsolidation pressure) (Figure 6.23*b*),

$$\Delta e = C_r \log \frac{\sigma_1'}{\sigma_0'} = C_r \log \frac{\sigma' + \Delta\sigma}{\sigma_0'} \tag{6.78}$$

and (2) if $\sigma_0' < \sigma_c' < \sigma_1'$ (Figure 6.23*c*),

$$\Delta e = \Delta e_1 + \Delta e_2 = C_r \log \frac{\sigma_c'}{\sigma_0'} + C_c \log \frac{\sigma_0' + \Delta\sigma}{\sigma_c'} \tag{6.79}$$

The procedure for calculation of one-dimensional consolidation settlement is described in more detail in Chap. 8.

6.10 Coefficient of consolidation

For a given load increment, the coefficient of consolidation C_v can be determined from the laboratory observations of time versus dial reading. There are several procedures presently available to estimate the coefficient of consolidation, some of which are described below.

Logarithm-of-time method

The logarithm-of-time method was originally proposed by Casagrande and Fadum (1940) and can be explained by referring to Figure 6.24.

1. Plot the dial readings for specimen deformation for a given load increment against time on semilog graph paper as shown in Figure 6.24.
2. Plot two points, *P* and *Q*, on the upper portion of the consolidation curve, which correspond to time t_1 and t_2, respectively. Note that $t_2 = 4t_1$.
3. The difference of dial readings between *P* and *Q* is equal to x. Locate point *R*, which is at a distance x above point *P*.
4. Draw the horizontal line *RS*. The dial reading corresponding to this line is d_0, which corresponds to 0% consolidation.
5. Project the straight-line portions of the primary consolidation and the secondary consolidation to intersect at *T*. The dial reading corresponding to *T* is d_{100}, i.e., 100% primary consolidation.
6. Determine the point *V* on the consolidation curve that corresponds to a dial reading of $(d_0 + d_{100})/2 = d_{50}$. The time corresponding to point *V* is t_{50}, i.e., time for 50% consolidation.

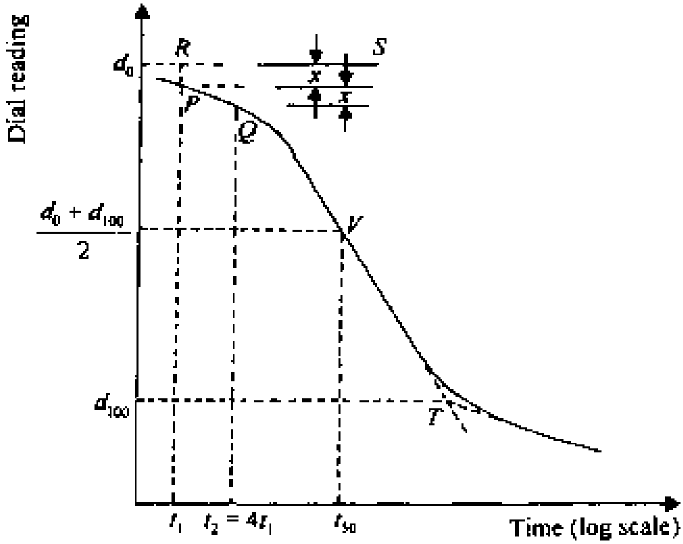


Figure 6.24 Logarithm-of-time method for determination of C_v.

7. Determine C_v from the equation $T_v = C_v t/H^2$. The value of T_v for $U_{av} = 50\%$ is 0.197 (Table 6.1). So,

$$C_v = \frac{0.197H^2}{t_{50}} \tag{6.80}$$

Square-root-of-time method

The steps for the square-root-of-time method (Taylor, 1942) are

1. Plot the dial reading and the corresponding square-root-of-time $\sqrt{t}$ as shown in Figure 6.25.
2. Draw the tangent PQ to the early portion of the plot.
3. Draw a line PR such that $OR = (1.15)(OQ)$.
4. The abscissa of the point S (i.e., the intersection of PR and the consolidation curve) will give $\sqrt{t_{90}}$ (i.e., the square root of time for 90% consolidation).
5. The value of T_v for $U_{av} = 90\%$ is 0.848. So,

$$C_v = \frac{0.848H^2}{t_{90}} \tag{6.81}$$

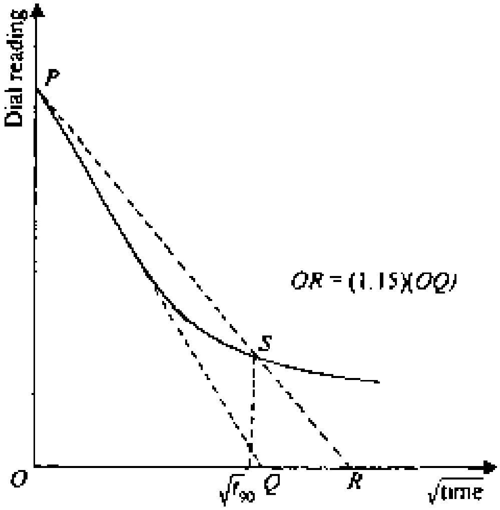


Figure 6.25 Square-root-of-time method for determination of C_v.

Su's maximum-slope method

1. Plot the dial reading against time on semilog graph paper as shown in Figure 6.26.
2. Determine d_0 in the same manner as in the case of the logarithm-of-time method (steps 2–4).
3. Draw a tangent *PQ* to the steepest part of the consolidation curve.
4. Find *h*, which is the slope of the tangent *PQ*.
5. Find d_u as

$$d_u = d_0 + \frac{h}{0.688} U_{av} \tag{6.82}$$

   where d_u is the dial reading corresponding to any given average degree of consolidation, U_{av}.
6. The time corresponding to the dial reading d_u can now be determined, and

$$C_v = \frac{T_v H^2}{t} \tag{6.83}$$

Su's method (1958) is more applicable for consolidation curves that do not exhibit the typical S-shape.

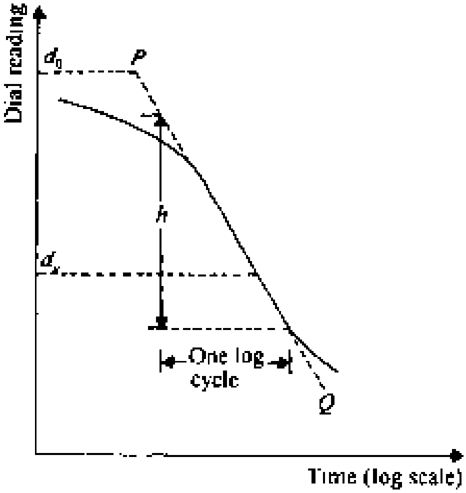


Figure 6.26 Maximum-slope method for determination of C_v.

Computational method

The computational method of Sivaram and Swamee (1977) is explained in the following steps.

1. Note two dial readings, d_1 and d_2, and their corresponding times, t_1 and t_2, from the early phase of consolidation. ("Early phase" means that the degree of consolidation should be less than 53%.)
2. Note a dial reading, d_3, at time t_3 after considerable settlement has taken place.
3. Determine d_0 as

$$d_0 = \frac{d_1 - d_2\sqrt{\dfrac{t_1}{t_2}}}{1 - \sqrt{\dfrac{t_1}{t_2}}} \tag{6.84}$$

4. Determine d_{100} as

$$d_{100} = d_0 - \frac{d_0 - d_3}{\left\{1 - \left[\dfrac{(d_0 - d_3)(\sqrt{t_2} - \sqrt{t_1})}{(d_1 - d_2)\sqrt{t_3}}\right]^{5.6}\right\}^{0.179}} \tag{6.85}$$

5. Determine C_v as

$$C_v = \frac{\pi}{4}\left(\frac{d_1 - d_2}{d_0 - d_{100}} \frac{H}{\sqrt{t_2} - \sqrt{t_1}}\right)^2 \tag{6.86}$$

where H is the length of the maximum drainage path.

Empirical correlation

Based on laboratory tests, Raju *et al.* (1995) proposed the following empirical relation to predict the coefficient of consolidation of normally consolidated uncemented clayey soils:

$$C_v = \left[\frac{1 + e_\mathrm{L}(1.23 - 0.276 \log \sigma'_0)}{e_\mathrm{L}}\right]\left[\frac{10^{-3}}{(\sigma'_0)^{0.353}}\right] \tag{6.87}$$

where

C_v = coefficient of consolidation (cm^2/s)
σ'_0 = effective overburden pressure (kN/m^2)
e_L = void ratio at liquid limit

Note that

$$e_\mathrm{L} = \left[\frac{\mathrm{LL}(\%)}{100}\right] G_\mathrm{s} \tag{6.88}$$

where LL is liquid limit and G_s specific gravity of soil solids.

Rectangular hyperbola method

The rectangular hyperbola method (Sridharan and Prakash, 1985) can be illustrated as follows. Based on Eq. (6.32), it can be shown that the plot of T_v/U_av versus T_v will be of the type shown in Figure 6.27*a*. In the range of $60\% \le U_\mathrm{av} \le 90\%$, the relation is linear and can be expressed as

$$\frac{T_v}{U_\mathrm{av}} = 8.208 \times 10^{-3} T_v + 2.44 \times 10^{-3} \tag{6.89}$$

Using the same analogy, the consolidation test results can be plotted in graphical form as $t/\Delta H_t$ versus t (where t is time and ΔH_t is specimen deformation), which will be of the type shown in Figure 6.27*b*. Now the following procedure can be used to estimate C_v.

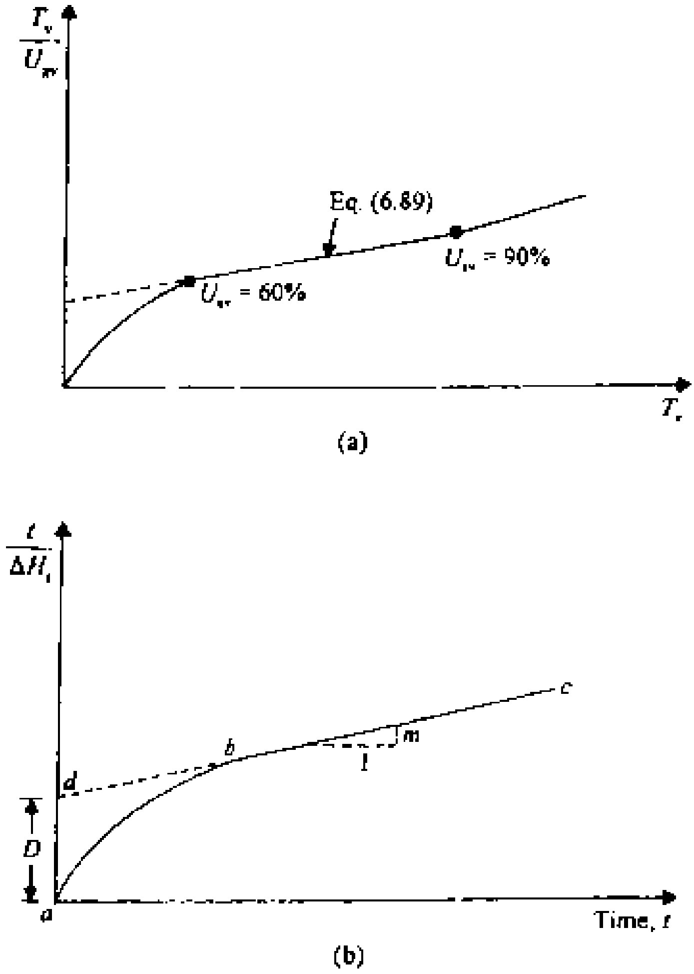


Figure 6.27 Rectangular hyperbola method for determination of C_υ.

1. Identify the straight-line portion, *bc*, and project it back to *d*. Determine the intercept, *D*.
2. Determine the slope *m* of the line *bc*.
3. Calculate C_υ as

$$C_\upsilon = 0.3\left(\frac{mH^2}{D}\right)$$

where H is the length of maximum drainage path. Note that the unit of m is L^{-1} and the unit of D is TL^{-1}. Hence the unit of C_v is

$$\frac{(\mathrm{L}^{-1})(\mathrm{L}^2)}{\mathrm{TL}^{-1}} = \mathrm{L}^2\mathrm{T}^{-1}$$

$\Delta H_t - t/\Delta H_t$ method

According to the $\Delta H_t - t/\Delta H_t$ method (Sridharan and Prakash, 1993),

1. Plot the variation of ΔH_t versus $t/\Delta H_t$ as shown in Figure 6.28. (*Note*: t is time and ΔH_t compression of specimen at time t.)
2. Draw the tangent PQ to the early portion of the plot.
3. Draw a line PR such that

$$OR = (1.33)(OQ)$$

4. Determine the abscissa of point S, which gives $t_{90}/\Delta H_t$ from which t_{90} can be calculated.
5. Calculate C_v as

$$C_v = \frac{0.848H^2}{t_{90}} \tag{6.90}$$

Early stage log-t method

The early stage log-t method (Robinson and Allam, 1996), an extension of the logarithm-of-time method, is based on specimen deformation against log-of-time plot as shown in Figure 6.29. According to this method, follow the logarithm-of-time method to determine d_0. Draw a horizontal line DE through d_0. Then draw a tangent through the point of inflection F. The tangent intersects line DE at point G. Determine the time t corresponding to G, which is the time at $U_{\mathrm{av}} = 22.14\%$. So

$$C_v = \frac{0.0385H_{\mathrm{dr}}^2}{t_{22.14}}$$

In most cases, for a given soil and pressure range, the magnitude of C_v determined using the *logarithm-of-time method* provides *lowest value*. The *highest value* is obtained from the *early stage log-t method*. The primary

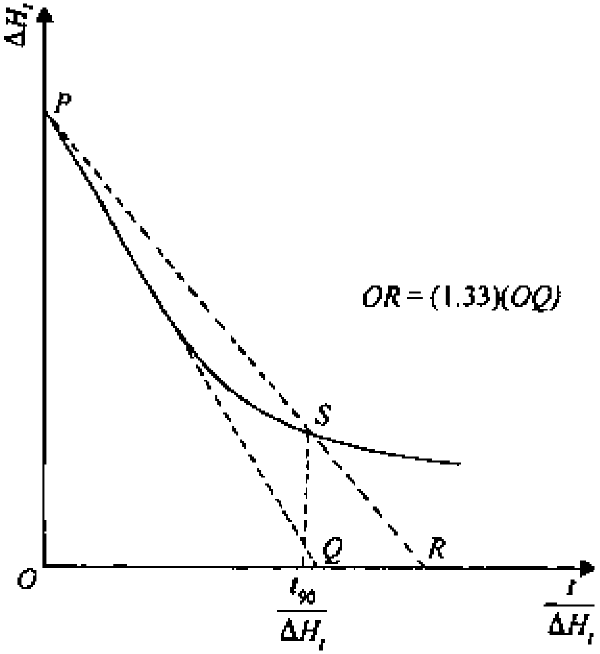


Figure 6.28 $\Delta H_t - t/\Delta H_t$ method for determination of C_v.

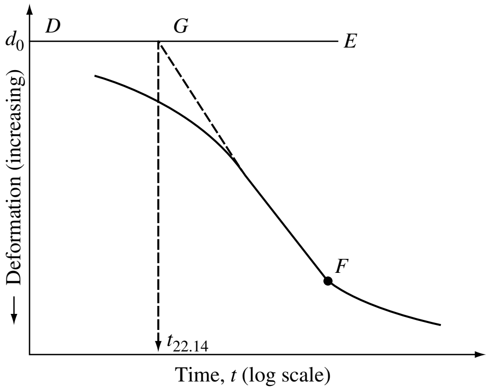


Figure 6.29 Early stage log-*t* method.

Table 6.4 Comparison of C_{υ} obtained from various methods (Based on the results of Robinson and Allam, 1996) for the pressure range σ' between 400 and 800 kN/m²

Soil	$C_{\upsilon(\text{esm})}$ (*cm²/s*)	$\frac{C_{\upsilon(\text{esm})}}{C_{\upsilon(\text{ltm})}}$	$\frac{C_{\upsilon(\text{esm})}}{C_{\upsilon(\text{stm})}}$
Red earth	12.80×10^{-4}	1.58	1.07
Brown soil	1.36×10^{-4}	1.05	0.94
Black cotton soil	0.79×10^{-4}	1.41	1.23
Illite	6.45×10^{-4}	1.55	1.1
Bentonite	0.022×10^{-4}	1.47	1.29
Chicago clay	7.41×10^{-4}	1.22	1.15

Note: esm–early stage log-*t* method; ltm–logarithm-of-time method; stm–square-root-of-time method.

reason is because the early stage log-*t* method uses the earlier part of the consolidation curve, whereas the logarithm-of-time method uses the lower portion of the consolidation curve. When the lower portion of the consolidation curve is taken into account, the effect of secondary consolidation plays a role in the magnitude of C_{υ}. This fact is demonstrated for several soils in Table 6.4.

Several investigators have also reported that the C_{υ} value obtained from the field is substantially higher than that obtained from laboratory tests conducted using conventional testing methods (i.e., logarithm-of-time and square-root-of-time methods). Hence, the early stage log-*t* method may provide a more realistic value of fieldwork.

EXAMPLE 6.8

The results of an oedometer test on a normally consolidated clay are given below (two-way drainage):

σ' (*kN/m²*)	e
50	1.01
100	0.90

The time for 50% consolidation for the load increment from 50 to 100 kN/m² was 12 min, and the average thickness of the sample was 24 mm. Determine the coefficient of permeability and the compression index.

SOLUTION

$$T_v = \frac{C_v t}{H^2}$$

For $U_{\mathrm{av}} = 50\%$, $T_v = 0.197$. Hence

$$0.197 = \frac{C_v(12)}{(2.4/2)^2} \quad C_v = 0.0236\,\mathrm{cm}^2/\mathrm{min} = 0.0236 \times 10^{-4}\,\mathrm{m}^2/\mathrm{min}$$

$$C_v = \frac{k}{m_v \gamma_{\mathrm{w}}} = \frac{k}{[\Delta e/\Delta\sigma(1+e_{\mathrm{av}})]\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}$$

For the given data, $\Delta e = 1.01 - 0.90 = 0.11$; $\Delta\sigma = 100 - 50 = 50\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$

$\gamma_{\mathrm{w}} = 9.81\,\mathrm{kN/m^3}$; and $e_{\mathrm{av}} = (1.01 + 0.9)/2 = 0.955$. So,

$$k = C_v \frac{\Delta e}{\Delta\sigma(1+e_{\mathrm{av}})}\gamma_{\mathrm{w}} = \left(0.0236 \times 10^{-4}\right)\left[\frac{0.11}{50(1+0.955)}\right](9.81)$$

$$= 0.2605 \times 10^{-7}\,\mathrm{m/min}$$

Compression index $= C_c = \dfrac{\Delta e}{\log(\sigma_2'/\sigma_1')} = \dfrac{1.01 - 0.9}{\log(100/50)} = 0.365$

6.11 One-dimensional consolidation with viscoelastic models

The theory of consolidation we have studied thus far is based on the assumption that the effective stress and the volumetric strain can be described by linear elasticity. Since Terzaghi's founding work on the theory of consolidation, several investigators (Taylor and Merchant, 1940; Taylor, 1942; Tan, 1957; Gibson and Lo, 1961; Schiffman *et al.*, 1964; Barden, 1965, 1968) have used viscoelastic models to study one-dimensional consolidation. This gives an insight into the secondary consolidation phenomenon which Terzaghi's theory does not explain. In this section, the work of Barden is briefly outlined.

The rheological model for soil chosen by Barden consists of a linear spring and nonlinear dashpot as shown in Figure 6.30. The equation of continuity for one-dimensional consolidation is given in Eq. (6.9) as

$$\frac{k(1+e)}{\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{\partial e}{\partial t}$$

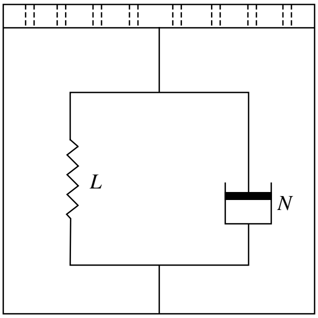


Figure 6.30 Rheological model for soil. *L*: Linear spring; *N*: Nonlinear dashpot.

Figure 6.31 shows the typical nature of the variation of void ratio with effective stress. From this figure we can write that

$$\frac{e_1 - e_2}{a_\text{v}} = \frac{e_1 - e}{a_\text{v}} + u + \tau \tag{6.91}$$

where

$\frac{e_1 - e_2}{a_\upsilon} = \Delta\sigma' =$ total effective stress increase the soil will be subjected to at the end of consolidation

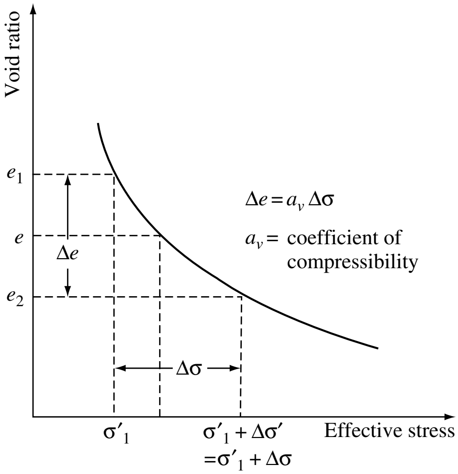


Figure 6.31 Nature of variation of void ratio with effective stress.

$\dfrac{e_1 - e}{a_\text{v}}$ = effective stress increase in the soil at some stage of consolidation (i.e., the stress carried by the soil grain bond, represented by the spring in Figure 6.30)

u = excess pore water pressure

τ = strain carried by film bond (represented by the dashpot in Figure 6.30)

The strain τ can be given by a power–law relation:

$$\tau = b\left(\frac{\partial e}{\partial t}\right)^{1/n}$$

where $n > 1$, and b is assumed to be a constant over the pressure range $\Delta\sigma$. Substitution of the preceding power–law relation for τ in Eq. (6.91) and simplification gives

$$e - e_2 = a_\text{v}\left[u + b\left(\frac{\partial e}{\partial t}\right)^{1/n}\right] \tag{6.92}$$

Now let $e - e_2 = e'$. So,

$$\frac{\partial e'}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} \tag{6.93}$$

$$\bar{z} = \frac{z}{H} \tag{6.94}$$

where H is the length of maximum drainage path, and

$$\bar{u} = \frac{u}{\Delta\sigma'} \tag{6.95}$$

The degree of consolidation is

$$U_z = \frac{e_1 - e}{e_1 - e_2} \tag{6.96}$$

and

$$\lambda = 1 - U_z = \frac{e - e_2}{e_1 - e_2} = \frac{e'}{a_\text{v}\Delta\sigma'} \tag{6.97}$$

Elimination of u from Eqs. (6.9) and (6.92) yields

$$\frac{k(1+e)}{\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}\left[\frac{e'}{a_{\upsilon}}-b\left(\frac{\partial e'}{\partial t}\right)^{1/n}\right]=\frac{\partial e'}{\partial t} \tag{6.98}$$

Combining Eqs. (6.94), (6.97), and (6.98), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \bar{z}^2}\left\{\lambda-\left[a_{\upsilon}b^n(\Delta\sigma')^{1-n}\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t}\right]^{1/n}\right\}&=\frac{a_{\upsilon}H^2\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}{k(1+e)}\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t}\\&=\frac{m_{\upsilon}H^2\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}}{k}\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t}=\frac{H^2}{C_{\upsilon}}\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t}\end{aligned} \tag{6.99}$$

where m_{υ} is the volume coefficient of compressibility and C_{υ} the coefficient of consolidation.

The right-hand side of Eq. (6.99) can be written in the form

$$\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial T_{\upsilon}}=\frac{H^2}{C_{\upsilon}}\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t} \tag{6.100}$$

where T_{υ} is the nondimensional time factor and is equal to $C_{\upsilon}t/H^2$.

Similarly defining

$$T_{\mathrm{s}}=\frac{t(\Delta\sigma')^{n-1}}{a_{\upsilon}b^n} \tag{6.101}$$

we can write

$$\left[a_{\upsilon}b^n\,(\Delta\sigma')^{1-n}\,\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t}\right]^{1/n}=\left(\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial T_{\mathrm{s}}}\right)^{1/n} \tag{6.102}$$

T_{s} in Eqs. (6.101) and (6.102) is defined as structural viscosity.

It is useful now to define a nondimensional ratio R as

$$R=\frac{T_{\upsilon}}{T_{\mathrm{s}}}=\frac{C_{\upsilon}a_{\upsilon}}{H^2}\frac{b^n}{(\Delta\sigma')^{n-1}} \tag{6.103}$$

From Eqs. (6.99), (6.100), and (6.102),

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \bar{z}^2}\left[\lambda-\left(\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial T_{\mathrm{s}}}\right)^{1/n}\right]=\frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial T_{\upsilon}} \tag{6.104}$$

Note that Eq. (6.104) is nonlinear. For that reason, Barden suggested solving the two simultaneous equations obtained from the basic equation (6.9).

$$\frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{z}^2} = \frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial T_v} \tag{6.105}$$

and

$$-\frac{1}{R}(\lambda - \bar{u})^n = \frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial T_v} \tag{6.106}$$

Finite-difference approximation is employed for solving the above two equations. Figure 6.32 shows the variation of λ and $\bar{u}$ with depth for a clay layer of height $H_t = 2H$ and drained both at the top and bottom (for $n = 5,\ R = 10^{-4}$). Note that for a given value of T_v (i.e., time t) the nondimensional excess pore water pressure decreases more than λ (i.e., void ratio).

For a given value of T_v, R, and n, the average degree of consolidation can be determined as (Figure 6.32)

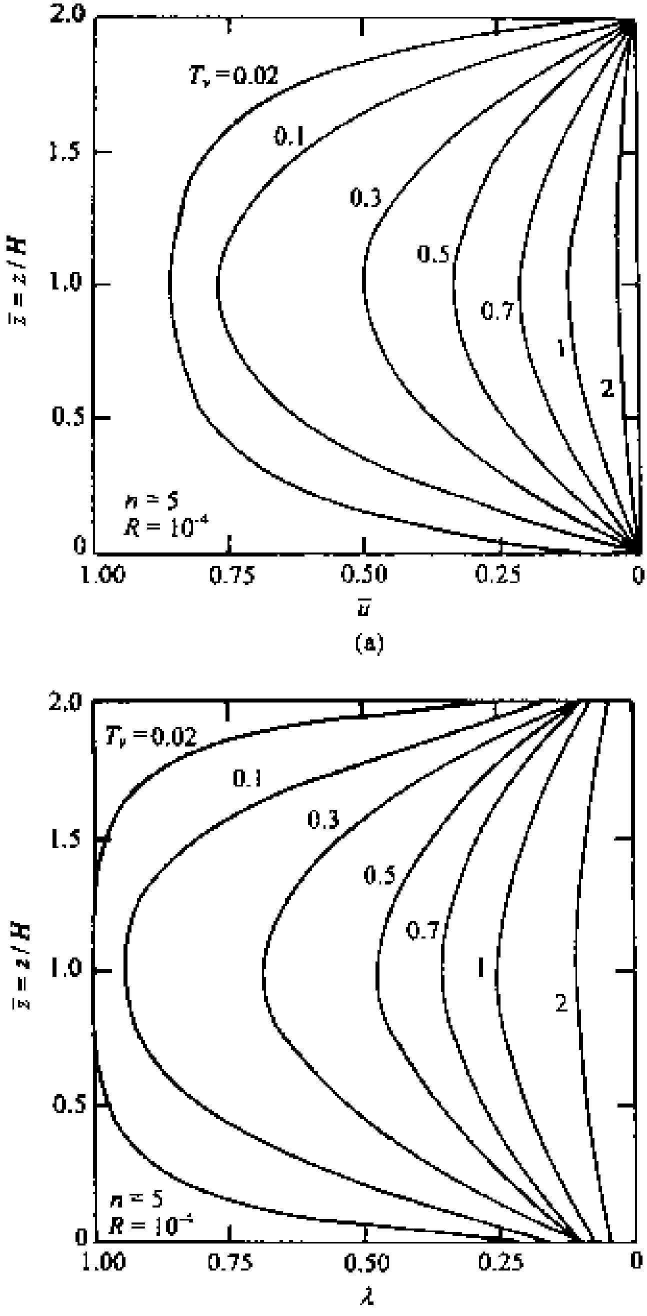
$$U_{\text{av}} = 1 - \int_0^1 \lambda \, d\bar{z} \tag{6.107}$$

Figure 6.33 shows the variation of U_{av} with T_v (for $n = 5$). Similar results can be obtained for other values of n. Note that in this figure the beginning of secondary consolidation is assumed to start after the *midplane excess pore water pressure* falls below an arbitrary value of $u = 0.01\ \Delta\sigma$. Several other observations can be made concerning this plot:

1. Primary and secondary consolidation are continuous processes and depend on the structural viscosity (i.e., R or T_s).
2. The proportion of the total settlement associated with the secondary consolidation increases with the increase of R.
3. In the conventional consolidation theory of Terzaghi, $R = 0$. Thus, the average degree of consolidation becomes equal to 100% at the end of primary consolidation.
4. As defined in Eq. (6.103),

$$R = \frac{C_v a_v}{H^2} \frac{b^n}{(\Delta\sigma')^{n-1}}$$

The term b is a complex quantity and depends on the electrochemical environment and structure of clay. The value of b increases with the increase of effective pressure σ' on the soil. When the ratio $\Delta\sigma'/\sigma'$ is small it will result in an increase of R, and thus in the proportion of secondary to primary consolidation. Other factors remaining constant, R will also increase with decrease of H, which is the length of the maximum drainage path, and thus so will the ratio of secondary to primary consolidation.



(a)

(b)

Figure 6.32 Plot of $\bar{z}$ against $\bar{u}$ and λ for a two-way drained clay layer (after Barden, 1965).

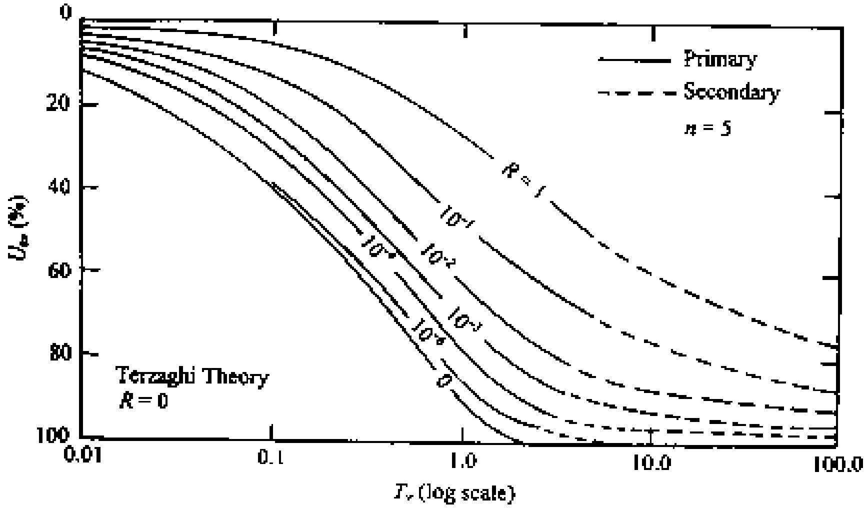


Figure 6.33 Plot of degree of consolidation versus T_v for various values of R ($n = 5$) (after Barden, 1965).

6.12 Constant rate-of-strain consolidation tests

The standard one-dimensional consolidation test procedure discussed in Sec. 6.5 is time consuming. At least two other one-dimensional consolidation test procedures have been developed in the past that are much faster yet give reasonably good results. The methods are (1) the constant rate-of-strain consolidation test and (2) the constant-gradient consolidation test. The fundamentals of these test procedures are described in this and the next sections.

The constant rate-of-strain method was developed by Smith and Wahls (1969). A soil specimen is taken in a fixed-ring consolidometer and saturated. For conducting the test, drainage is permitted at the top of the specimen but not at the bottom. A continuously increasing load is applied to the top of the specimen so as to produce a constant rate of compressive strain, and the excess pore water pressure u_b (generated by the continuously increasing stress σ at the top) at the bottom of the specimen is measured.

Theory

The mathematical derivations developed by Smith and Wahls for obtaining the void ratio—effective pressure relation and the corresponding coefficient of consolidation are given below.

The basic equation for continuity of flow through a soil element is given in Eq. (6.9) as

$$\frac{k}{\gamma_w}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{1}{1+e}\frac{\partial e}{\partial t}$$

The coefficient of permeability at a given time is a function of the average void ratio $\bar{e}$ in the specimen. The average void ratio is, however, continuously changing owing to the constant rate of strain. Thus

$$k = k(\bar{e}) = f(t) \tag{6.108}$$

The average void ratio is given by

$$\bar{e} = \frac{1}{H}\int_0^H e\, dz$$

where H $(= H_t)$ is the sample thickness. (Note: $z = 0$ is top of the specimen and $z = H$ is the bottom of the specimen.)

In the constant rate-of-strain type of test, the rate of change of volume is constant, or

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = -RA \tag{6.109}$$

where

V = volume of specimen
A = area of cross-section of specimen
R = constant rate of deformation of upper surface

The rate of change of average void ratio $\bar{e}$ can be given by

$$\frac{d\bar{e}}{dt} = \frac{1}{V_s}\frac{dV}{dt} = -\frac{1}{V_s}RA = -r \tag{6.110}$$

where r is a constant.

Based on the definition of $\bar{e}$ and Eq. (6.108), we can write

$$e_{(z,t)} = g(z)t + e_0 \tag{6.111}$$

where

$e_{(z,t)}$ = void ratio at depth z and time t
e_0 = initial void ratio at beginning of test

$g(z)$ = a function of depth only

The function $g(z)$ is difficult to determine. We will asume it to be a linear function of the form

$$-r\left[1-\frac{b}{r}\left(\frac{z-0.5H}{H}\right)\right]$$

where b is a constant. Substitution of this into Eq. (6.111) gives

$$e_{(z,t)}=e_0-rt\left[1-\frac{b}{r}\left(\frac{z-0.5H}{H}\right)\right] \tag{6.112}$$

Let us consider the possible range of variation of b/r as given in Eq. (6.112):

1. If $b/r=0$,

   $$e_{(z,t)}=e_0-rt \tag{6.113}$$

   This indicates that the void is constant with depth and changes with time only. In reality, this is not the case.
2. If $b/r=2$, the void ratio at the base of the specimen, i.e., at $z=H$, becomes

   $$e_{(H,t)}=e_0 \tag{6.114}$$

   This means that the void ratio at the base does not change with time at all, which is not realistic.

So the value of b/r is somewhere between 0 and 2 and may be taken as about 1.

Assuming $b/r\neq 0$ and using the definition of void ratio as given by Eq. (6.112), we can integrate Eq. (6.9) to obtain an equation for the excess pore water pressure. The boundary conditions are as follows: at $z=0,\ u=0$ (at any time); and at $z=H,\ \partial u/\partial z=0$ (at any time). Thus

$$u=\frac{\gamma_{\mathrm{w}}r}{k}\left\{zH\left[\frac{1+e_0-bt}{rt(bt)}\right]+\frac{z^2}{2rt}-\left[\frac{H(1+e_0)}{rt(bt)}\right]\right.$$
$$\left.\times\left[\frac{H(1+e)}{bt}\ln(1+e)-z\ln(1+e_{\mathrm{B}})-\frac{H(1+e_{\mathrm{T}})}{bt}\ln(1+e_{\mathrm{T}})\right]\right\} \tag{6.115}$$

where

$$e_{\mathrm{B}}=e_0-rt\left(1-\frac{1}{2}\frac{b}{r}\right) \tag{6.116}$$

$$e_T = e_0 - rt\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\frac{b}{r}\right) \tag{6.117}$$

Equation (6.115) is very complicated. Without loosing a great deal of accuracy, it is possible to obtain a simpler form of expression for u by assuming that the term $1+e$ in Eq. (6.9) is approximately equal to $1+\bar{e}$ (note that this is not a function of z). So, from Eqs. (6.9) and (6.112),

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \left[\frac{\gamma_w}{k(1+\bar{e})}\right]\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left\{e_0 - rt\left[1 - \frac{b}{r}\left(\frac{z-0.5H}{H}\right)\right]\right\} \tag{6.118}$$

Using the boundary condition $u = 0$ at $z = 0$ and $\partial u/\partial t = 0$ at $z = H$, Eq. (6.118) can be integrated to yield

$$u = \left[\frac{\gamma_w r}{k(1+\bar{e})}\right]\left[\left(Hz - \frac{z^2}{2}\right) - \frac{b}{r}\left(\frac{z^2}{4} - \frac{z^3}{6H}\right)\right] \tag{6.119}$$

The pore pressure at the base of the specimen can be obtained by substituting $z = H$ in Eq. (6.119):

$$u_{z=H} = \frac{\gamma_w r H^2}{k(1+\bar{e})}\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{12}\frac{b}{r}\right) \tag{6.120}$$

The average effective stress corresponding to a given value of $u_{z=H}$ can be obtained by writing

$$\sigma'_{av} = \sigma - \frac{u_{av}}{u_{z=H}} u_{z=H} \tag{6.121}$$

where

σ'_{av} =average effective stress on specimen at any time
σ =total stress on specimen
u_{av} =corresponding average pore water pressure

$$\frac{u_{av}}{u_{z=H}} = \frac{\frac{1}{H}\int_0^H u\, dz}{u_{z=H}} \tag{6.122}$$

Substitution of Eqs. (6.119) and (6.120) into Eq. (6.122) and further simplification gives

$$\frac{u_{av}}{u_{z=H}} = \frac{\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{24}(b/r)}{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{12}(b/r)} \tag{6.123}$$

Note that for $b/r = 0$, $u_{\text{av}}/u_{z=\text{H}} = 0.667$; and for $b/r = 1$, $u_{\text{av}}/u_{z=\text{H}} = 0.700$. Hence, for $0 \le b/r \le 1$, the values of $u_{\text{av}}/u_{z=\text{H}}$ do not change significantly. So, from Eqs. (6.121) and (6.123),

$$\sigma'_{\text{av}} = \sigma - \left[\frac{\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{24}(b/r)}{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{12}(b/r)}\right] u_{z=\text{H}} \tag{6.124}$$

Coefficient of consolidation

The coefficient of consolidation was defined previously as

$$C_\upsilon = \frac{k(1+e)}{a_\upsilon \gamma_{\text{w}}}$$

We can assume $1 + e \approx 1 + \bar{e}$, and from Eq. (6.120),

$$k = \frac{\gamma_{\text{w}} r H^2}{(1+\bar{e}) u_{z=\text{H}}} \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{12}\frac{b}{r}\right) \tag{6.125}$$

Substitution of these into the expression for C_υ gives

$$C_\upsilon = \frac{r H^2}{a_\upsilon u_{z=\text{H}}} \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{12}\frac{b}{r}\right) \tag{6.126}$$

Interpretation of experimental results

The following information can be obtained from a constant rate-of-strain consolidation test:

1. Initial height of specimen, H_i.
2. Value of A.
3. Value of V_{s}.
4. Strain rate R.
5. A continuous record of $u_{z=\text{H}}$.
6. A corresponding record of σ (total stress applied at the top of the specimen).

The plot of e versus σ'_{av} can be obtained in the following manner:

1. Calculate $r = RA/V_{\text{s}}$.
2. Assume $b/r \approx 1$.

3. For a given value of $u_{z=\mathrm{H}}$, the value of σ is known (at time t from the start of the test), and so σ'_{av} can be calculated from Eq. (6.124).
4. Calculate $\Delta H = Rt$ and then the change in void ratio that has taken place during time t,

$$\Delta e = \frac{\Delta H}{H_i}(1 + e_0)$$

where H_i is the initial height of the specimen.

5. The corresponding void ratio (at time t) is $e = e_0 - \Delta e$.
6. After obtaining a number of points of σ'_{av} and the corresponding e, plot the graph of e versus log σ'_{av}.
7. For a given value of σ'_{av} and e, the coefficient of consolidation C_v can be calculated by using Eq. (6.126). (Note that H in Eq. (6.126) is equal to $H_i - \Delta H$.)

Smith and Wahls (1969) provided the results of constant rate-of-strain consolidation tests on two clays—Massena clay and calcium montmorillonite. The tests were conducted at various rates of strain (0.0024%/min to 0.06%/min) and the e versus log σ' curves obtained were compared with those obtained from the conventional tests.

Figures 6.34 and 6.35 show the results obtained from tests conducted with Massena clay.

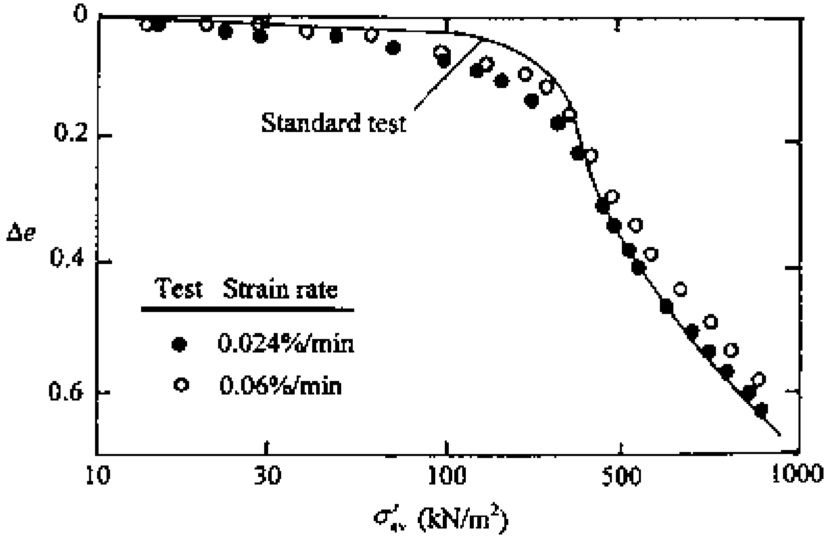


Figure 6.34 CRS tests on Messena clay—plot of Δe versus σ'_{av} (after Smith and Wahls, 1969).

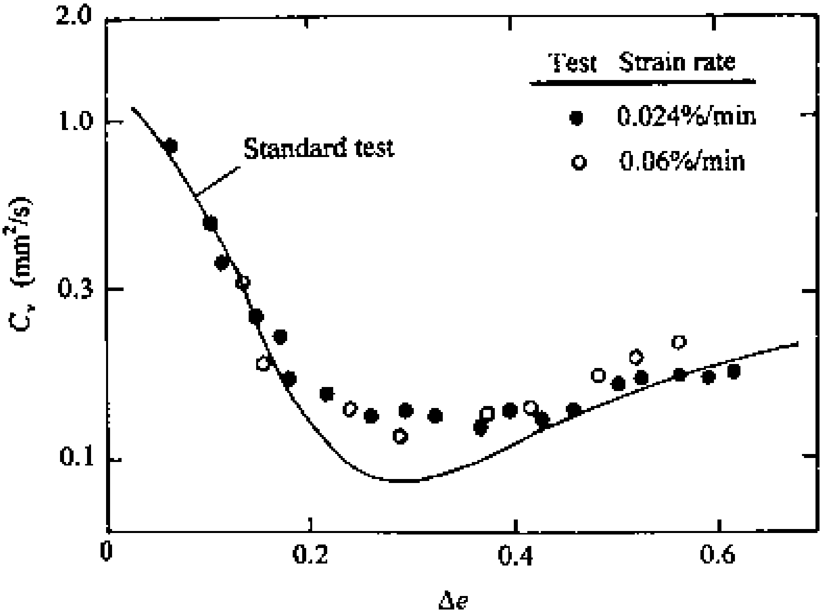


Figure 6.35 CRS tests on Messena clay—plot of C_v versus Δe (after Smith and Wahls, 1969).

This comparison showed that, for higher rates of strain, the e versus $\log \sigma'$ curves obtained from these types of tests may deviate considerably from those obtained from conventional tests. For that reason, it is recommended that the strain rate for a given test should be chosen such that the value of $u_{z=\mathrm{H}}/\sigma$ at the end of the test does not exceed 0.5. However, the value should be high enough that it can be measured with reasonable accuracy.

6.13 Constant-gradient consolidation test

The constant-gradient consolidation test was developed by Lowe *et al.* (1969). In this procedure a saturated soil specimen is taken in a consolidation ring. As in the case of the constant rate-of-strain type of test, drainage is allowed at the top of the specimen and pore water pressure is measured at the bottom. A load P is applied on the specimen, which increases the excess pore water pressure in the specimen by an amount Δu (Figure 6.36*a*). After a small lapse of time t_1, the excess pore water pressure at the top of the specimen will be equal to zero (since drainage is permitted). However, at the bottom of the specimen the excess pore water pressure will still be approximately Δu (Figure 6.36*b*). From this point on, the load P is increased slowly in such a way that the difference between the pore water

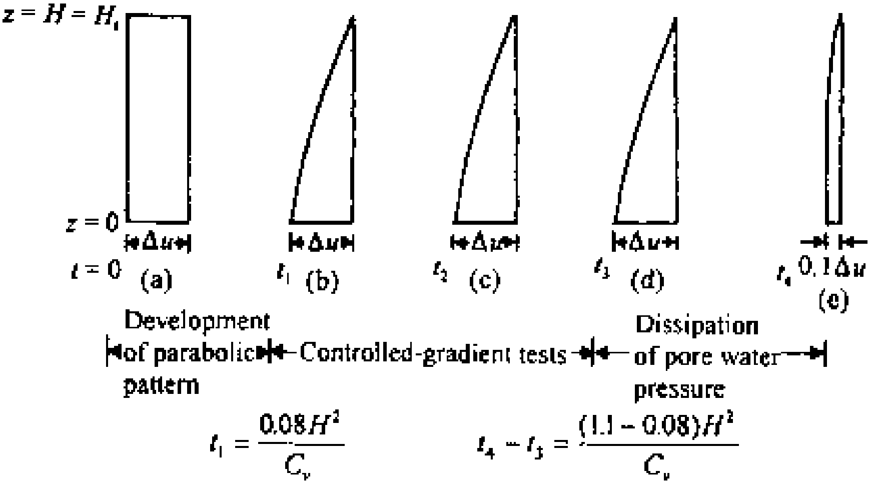


Figure 6.36 Stages in controlled-gradient test.

pressures at the top and bottom of the specimen remain constant, i.e., the difference is maintained at a constant Δu (Figure 6.36*c* and *d*). When the desired value of P is reached, say at time t_3, the loading is stopped and the excess pore water pressure is allowed to dissipate. The elapsed time t_4 at which the pore water pressure at the bottom of the specimen reaches a value of 0.1 Δu is recorded. During the entire test, the compression ΔH_t that the specimen undergoes is recorded. For complete details of the laboratory test arrangement, the reader is referred to the original paper of Lowe *et al.* (1969).

Theory

From the basic Eqs. (6.9) and (6.10), we have

$$\frac{k}{\gamma_w}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = -\frac{a_v}{1+e}\frac{\partial \sigma'}{\partial t} \tag{6.127}$$

or

$$\frac{\partial \sigma'}{\partial t} = -\frac{k}{\gamma_w m_v}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = -C_v\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} \tag{6.128}$$

Since $\sigma' = \sigma - u$,

$$\frac{\partial \sigma'}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \sigma}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \tag{6.129}$$

For the controlled-gradient tests (i.e., during the time t_1 to t_3 in Figure 6.36), $\partial u/\partial t = 0$. So,

$$\frac{\partial \sigma'}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \sigma}{\partial t} \tag{6.130}$$

Combining Eqs. (6.128) and (6.130),

$$\frac{\partial \sigma}{\partial t} = -C_v \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} \tag{6.131}$$

Note that the left-hand side of Eq. (6.131) is independent of the variable z and the right-hand side is independent of the variable t. So both sides should be equal to a constant, say A_1. Thus

$$\frac{\partial \sigma}{\partial t} = A_1 \tag{6.132}$$

$$\text{and } \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = -\frac{A_1}{C_v} \tag{6.133}$$

Integration of Eq. (6.133) yields

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = -\frac{A_1}{C_v} z + A_2 \tag{6.134}$$

$$\text{and } u = -\frac{A_1}{C_v}\frac{z^2}{2} + A_2 z + A_3 \tag{6.135}$$

The boundary conditions are as follows (note that $z = 0$ is at the bottom of the specimen):

1. At $z = 0$, $\partial u/\partial z = 0$.
2. At $z = H$, $u = 0$ (note that $H = H_t$; one-way drainage).
3. At $z = 0$, $u = \Delta u$.

From the first boundary condition and Eq. (6.134), we find that $A_2 = 0$. So,

$$u = -\frac{A_1}{C_v}\frac{z^2}{2} + A_3 \tag{6.136}$$

From the second boundary condition and Eq. (6.136),

$$A_3 = \frac{A_1 H^2}{2C_v} \tag{6.137}$$

$$\text{or } u = -\frac{A_1}{C_v}\frac{z^2}{2} + \frac{A_1}{C_v}\frac{H^2}{2} \tag{6.138}$$

From the third boundary condition and Eq. (6.138),

$$\Delta u = \frac{A_1}{C_v}\frac{H^2}{2}$$

$$\text{or } A_1 = \frac{2C_v\Delta u}{H^2} \tag{6.139}$$

Substitution of this value of A_1 into Eq. (6.138) yields

$$u = \Delta u\left(1 - \frac{z^2}{H^2}\right) \tag{6.140}$$

Equation (6.140) shows a parabolic pattern of excess pore water pressure distribution, which remains constant during the controlled-gradient test (time t_1–t_3 in Figure 6.36). This closely corresponds to Terzaghi isocrone (Figure 6.4) for $T_v = 0.08$.

Combining Eqs. (6.132) and (6.139), we obtain

$$\frac{\partial\sigma}{\partial t} = A_1 = \frac{2C_v\Delta u}{H^2}$$

$$\text{or } C_v = \frac{\partial\sigma}{\partial t}\frac{H^2}{2\Delta u} \tag{6.141}$$

Interpretation of experimental results

The following information will be available from the constant-gradient test:

1. Initial height of the specimen H_i and height H_t at any time during the test
2. Rate of application of the load P and thus the rate of application of stress $\partial\sigma/\partial t$ on the specimen
3. Differential pore pressure Δu
4. Time t_1
5. Time t_3
6. Time t_4

The plot of e versus σ'_{av} can be obtained in the following manner:

1. Calculate the initial void ratio e_0.
2. Calculate the change in void ratio at any other time t during the test as

   $$\Delta e = \frac{\Delta H}{H_i}(1 + e_0) = \frac{\Delta H_t}{H_i}(1 + e_0)$$

   where $\Delta H = \Delta H_t$ is the total change in height from the beginning of the test. So, the average void ratio at time t is $e = e_0 - \Delta e$.

3. Calculate the average effective stress at time t using the known total stress σ applied on the specimen at that time:

   $$\sigma'_{\mathrm{av}} = \sigma - u_{\mathrm{av}}$$

   where u_{av} is the average excess pore water pressure in the specimen, which can be calculated from Eq. (6.140).

Calculation of the coefficient of consolidation is as follows:

1. At time t_1,

   $$C_v = \frac{0.08H^2}{t_1}$$

2. At time $t_1 < t < t_3$,

   $$C_v = \frac{\Delta\sigma}{\Delta t}\frac{H^2}{2\Delta u} \tag{6.141$'$}$$

   Note that $\Delta\sigma/\Delta t$, H, and Δu are all known from the tests.
3. Between time t_3 and t_4,

   $$C_v = \frac{(1.1 - 0.08)H^2}{t_3 - t_4} = \frac{1.02H^2}{t_3 - t_4}$$

6.14 Sand drains

In order to accelerate the process of consolidation settlement for the construction of some structures, the useful technique of building sand drains can be used. Sand drains are constructed by driving down casings or hollow mandrels into the soil. The holes are then filled with sand, after which the casings are pulled out. When a surcharge is applied at ground surface, the pore water pressure in the clay will increase, and there will be drainage in the vertical and horizontal directions (Figure 6.37*a*). The horizontal drainage is induced by the sand drains. Hence the process of dissipation of excess pore water pressure created by the loading (and hence the settlement) is accelerated.

The basic theory of sand drains was presented by Rendulic (1935) and Barron (1948) and later summarized by Richart (1959). In the study of sand drains, two fundamental cases:

1. *Free-strain case*. When the surcharge applied at the ground surface is of a flexible nature, there will be equal distribution of surface load. This will result in an uneven settlement at the surface.

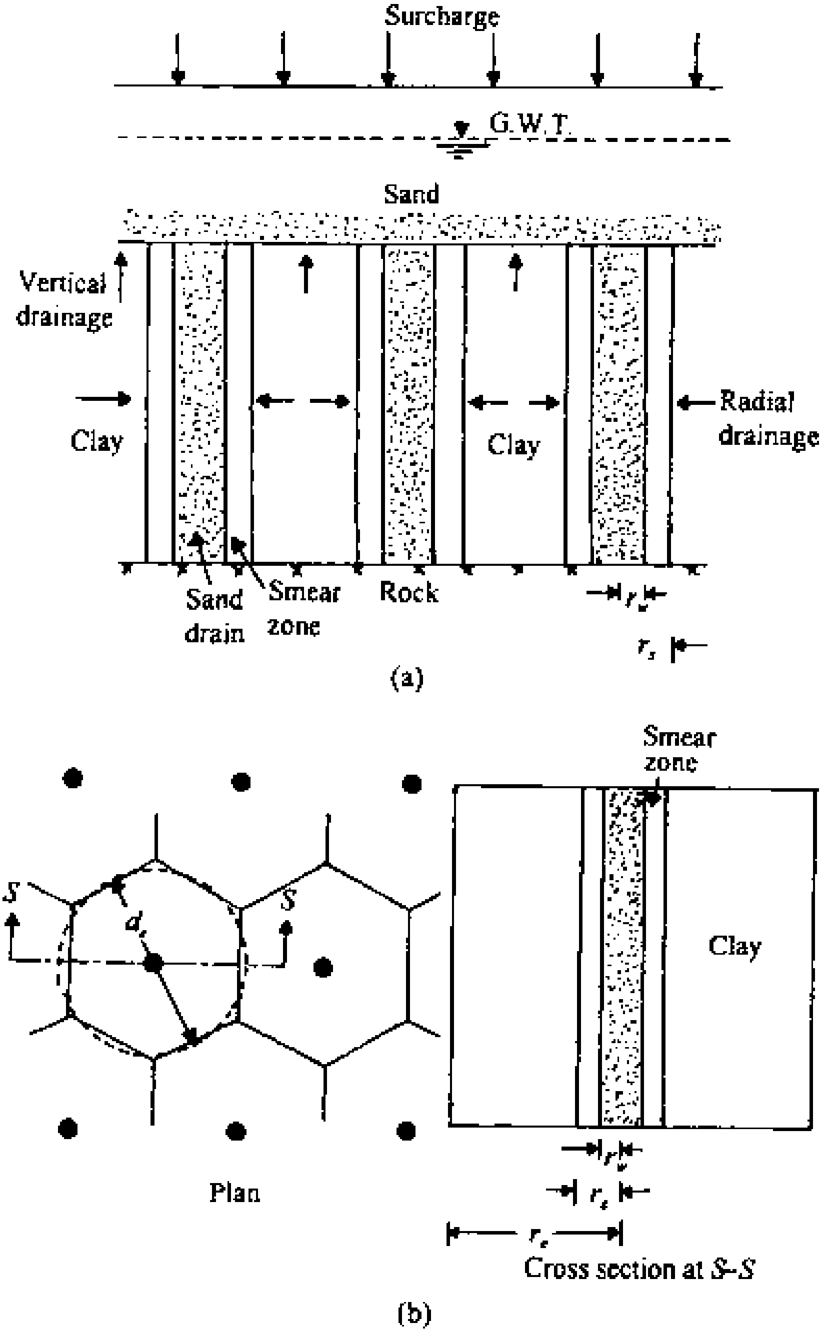


Figure 6.37 (a) Sand drains and (b) layout of sand drains.

2. *Equal-strain case*. When the surcharge applied at the ground surface is rigid, the surface settlement will be the same all over. However, this will result in an unequal distribution of stress.

Another factor that must be taken into consideration is the effect of "smear." A smear zone in a sand drain is created by the remolding of clay during the drilling operation for building it (see Figure 6.37*a*). This remolding of the clay results in a decrease of the coefficient of permeability in the horizontal direction.

The theories for free-strain and equal-strain consolidation are given below. In the development of these theories, it is assumed that drainage takes place only in the radial direction, i.e., *no dissipation of excess pore water pressure in the vertical direction*.

Free-strain consolidation with no smear

Figure 6.37*b* shows the general pattern of the layout of sand drains. For triangular spacing of the sand drains, the zone of influence of each drain is hexagonal in plan. This hexagon can be approximated as an equivalent circle of diameter d_e. Other notations used in this section are as follows:

1. r_e = radius of the equivalent circle = $d_e/2$.
2. r_w = radius of the sand drain well.
3. r_s = radial distance from the centerline of the drain well to the farthest point of the smear zone. Note that, in the no-smear case, $r_w = r_s$.

The basic differential equation of Terzaghi's consolidation theory for flow in the vertical direction is given in Eq. (6.14). For radial drainage, this equation can be written as

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = C_{vr}\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right) \tag{6.142}$$

where

u = excess pore water pressure
r = radial distance measured from center of drain well
C_{vr} = coefficient of consolidation in radial direction

For solution of Eq. (6.142), the following boundary conditions are used:

1. At time $t = 0,\ u = u_i$.
2. At time $t > 0,\ u = 0$ at $r = r_w$.
3. At $r = r_e,\ \partial u/\partial r = 0$.

With the above boundary conditions, Eq. (6.142) yields the solution for excess pore water pressure at any time t and radial distance r:

$$u = \sum_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots}^{\alpha=\infty} \frac{-2U_1(\alpha)U_0(\alpha r/r_\mathrm{w})}{\alpha[n^2 U_0^2(\alpha n) - U_1^2(\alpha)]} exp(-4\alpha^2 n^2 T_\mathrm{r}) \tag{6.143}$$

In Eq. (6.143),

$$n = \frac{r_\mathrm{e}}{r_\mathrm{w}} \tag{6.144}$$

$$U_1(\alpha) = J_1(\alpha)Y_0(\alpha) - Y_1(\alpha)J_0(\alpha) \tag{6.145}$$

$$U_0(\alpha n) = J_0(\alpha n)Y_0(\alpha) - Y_0(\alpha n)J_0(\alpha) \tag{6.146}$$

$$U_0\left(\frac{\alpha r}{r_\mathrm{w}}\right) = J_0\left(\frac{\alpha r}{r_\mathrm{w}}\right)Y_0(\alpha) - Y_0\left(\frac{\alpha r}{r_\mathrm{w}}\right)J_0(\alpha) \tag{6.147}$$

where

J_0 = Bessel function of first kind of zero order
J_1 = Bessel function of first kind of first order
Y_0 = Bessel function of second kind of zero order
Y_1 = Bessel function of second kind of first order
$\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots$ = roots of Bessel function that satisfy $J_1(\alpha n)Y_0(\alpha) - Y_1(\alpha n)J_0(\alpha) = 0$

$$T_\mathrm{r} = \text{time factor for radial flow} = \frac{C_{\upsilon\mathrm{r}} t}{d_\mathrm{e}^2} \tag{6.148}$$

In Eq. (6.148),

$$C_{\upsilon\mathrm{r}} = \frac{k_\mathrm{h}}{m_\upsilon \gamma_\mathrm{w}} \tag{6.149}$$

where k_h is the coefficient of permeability in the horizontal direction.

The average pore water pressure u_av throughout the soil mass may now be obtained from Eq. (6.143) as

$$u_\mathrm{av} = u_i \sum_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots}^{\alpha=\infty} \frac{4U_1^2(\alpha)}{\alpha^2(n^2-1)[n^2 U_0^2(\alpha n) - U_1^2(\alpha)]} \times \exp(-4\alpha^2 n^2 T_\mathrm{r}) \tag{6.150}$$

The average degree of consolidation U_r can be determined as

$$U_\mathrm{r} = 1 - \frac{u_\mathrm{av}}{u_i} \tag{6.151}$$

Figure 6.38 shows the variation of U_r with the time factor T_r.

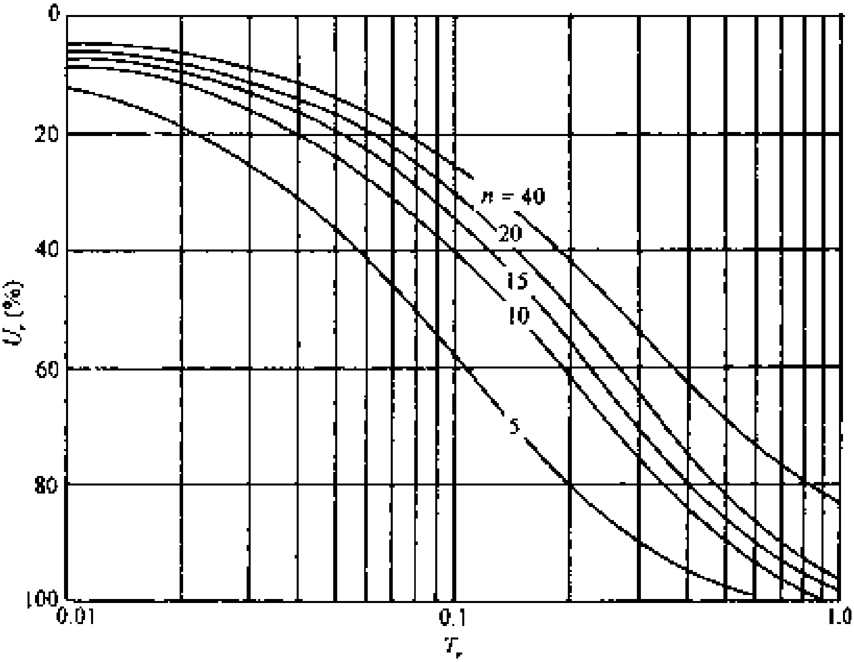


Figure 6.38 Free strain—variation of degree of consolidation U_r with time factor T_r.

Equal-strain consolidation with no smear

The problem of equal-strain consolidation with no smear ($r_\mathrm{w} = r_\mathrm{s}$) was solved by Barron (1948). The results of the solution are described below (refer to Figure 6.37).

The excess pore water pressure at any time t and radial distance r is given by

$$u = \frac{4u_{\mathrm{av}}}{d_\mathrm{e}^2 F(n)} \left[r_\mathrm{e}^2 \ln\left(\frac{r}{r_\mathrm{w}}\right) - \frac{r^2 - r_\mathrm{w}^2}{2} \right] \tag{6.152}$$

where

$$F(n) = \frac{n^2}{n^2 - 1} \ln(n) - \frac{3n^2 - 1}{4n^2} \tag{6.153}$$

u_{av} = average value of pore water pressure throughout clay layer

$$= u_i e^{\lambda} \tag{6.154}$$

$$\lambda = \frac{-8T_r}{F(n)} \tag{6.155}$$

The average degree of consolidation due to radial drainage is

$$U_r = 1 - \exp\left[\frac{-8T_r}{F(n)}\right] \tag{6.156}$$

Table 6.5 gives the values of the time factor T_r for various values of U_r. For $r_e/r_w > 5$ the free-strain and equal-strain solutions give approximately the same results for the average degree of consolidation.

Olson (1977) gave a solution for the average degree of consolidation U_r for time-dependent loading (ramp load) similar to that for vertical drainage, as described in Sec. 6.3.

Referring to Figure 6.8b, the surcharge increases from zero at time $t = 0$–q at time $t = t_c$. For $t \geq t_c$, the surcharge is equal to q. For this case

$$T'_r = \frac{C_{vr}t}{r_e^2} = 4T_r \tag{6.157}$$

and

$$T'_{rc} = \frac{C_{vr}t_c}{r_e^2} \tag{6.158}$$

For $T'_r \leq T'_{rc}$

$$U_r = \frac{T'_r - \frac{1}{A}[1 - \exp(AT'_r)]}{T'_{rc}} \tag{6.159}$$

For $T'_r \geq T'_{rc}$

$$U_r = 1 - \frac{1}{AT'_{rc}}[\exp(AT'_{rc}) - 1]\exp(-AT'_r) \tag{6.160}$$

where

$$A = \frac{2}{F(n)} \tag{6.161}$$

Figure 6.39 shows the variation of U_r with T'_r and T'_{rc} for $n = 5$ and 10.

Table 6.5 Solution for radial-flow equation (equal vertical strain)

Degree of consolidation U_r (%)	*Time factor* T_r *for value of* $n(= r_e/r_w)$				
	5	*10*	*15*	*20*	*25*
0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0.0012	0.0020	0.0025	0.0028	0.0031
2	0.0024	0.0040	0.0050	0.0057	0.0063
3	0.0036	0.0060	0.0075	0.0086	0.0094
4	0.0048	0.0081	0.0101	0.0115	0.0126
5	0.0060	0.0101	0.0126	0.0145	0.0159
6	0.0072	0.1222	0.0153	0.0174	0.0191
7	0.0085	0.0143	0.0179	0.0205	0.0225
8	0.0098	0.0165	0.0206	0.0235	0.0258
9	0.0110	0.0186	0.0232	0.0266	0.0292
10	0.0123	0.0208	0.0260	0.0297	0.0326
11	0.0136	0.0230	0.0287	0.0328	0.0360
12	0.0150	0.0252	0.0315	0.0360	0.0395
13	0.0163	0.0275	0.0343	0.0392	0.0431
14	0.0177	0.0298	0.0372	0.0425	0.0467
15	0.0190	0.0321	0.0401	0.0458	0.0503
16	0.0204	0.0344	0.0430	0.0491	0.0539
17	0.0218	0.0368	0.0459	0.0525	0.0576
18	0.0232	0.0392	0.0489	0.0559	0.0614
19	0.0247	0.0416	0.0519	0.0594	0.0652
20	0.0261	0.0440	0.0550	0.0629	0.0690
21	0.0276	0.0465	0.0581	0.0664	0.0729
22	0.0291	0.0490	0.0612	0.0700	0.0769
23	0.0306	0.0516	0.0644	0.0736	0.0808
24	0.0321	0.0541	0.0676	0.0773	0.0849
25	0.0337	0.0568	0.0709	0.0811	0.0890
26	0.0353	0.0594	0.0742	0.0848	0.0931
27	0.0368	0.0621	0.0776	0.0887	0.0973
28	0.0385	0.0648	0.810	0.0926	0.1016
29	0.0401	0.0676	0.0844	0.0965	0.1059
30	0.0418	0.0704	0.0879	0.1005	0.1103
31	0.0434	0.0732	0.0914	0.1045	0.1148
32	0.0452	0.0761	0.0950	0.1087	0.1193
33	0.0469	0.0790	0.0987	0.1128	0.1239
34	0.0486	0.0820	0.1024	0.1171	0.1285
35	0.0504	0.0850	0.1062	0.1214	0.1332
36	0.0522	0.0881	0.1100	0.1257	0.1380
37	0.0541	0.0912	0.1139	0.1302	0.1429
38	0.0560	0.0943	0.1178	0.1347	0.1479
39	0.579	0.0975	0.1218	0.1393	0.1529
40	0.0598	0.1008	0.1259	0.1439	0.1580
41	0.0618	0.1041	0.1300	0.1487	0.1632
42	0.0638	0.1075	0.1342	0.1535	0.1685
43	0.0658	0.1109	0.1385	0.1584	0.1739
44	0.0679	0.1144	0.1429	0.1634	0.1793
45	0.0700	0.1180	0.1473	0.1684	0.1849
46	0.0721	0.1216	0.1518	0.1736	0.1906

47	0.0743	0.1253	0.1564	0.1789	0.1964
48	0.0766	0.1290	0.1611	0.1842	0.2023
49	0.0788	0.1329	0.1659	0.1897	0.2083
50	0.0811	0.1368	0.1708	0.1953	0.2144
51	0.0835	0.1407	0.1758	0.2020	0.2206
52	0.0859	0.1448	0.1809	0.2068	0.2270
53	0.0884	0.1490	0.1860	0.2127	0.2335
54	0.0909	0.1532	0.1913	0.2188	0.2402
55	0.0935	0.1575	0.1968	0.2250	0.2470
56	0.0961	0.1620	0.2023	0.2313	0.2539
57	0.0988	0.1665	0.2080	0.2378	0.2610
58	0.1016	0.1712	0.2138	0.2444	0.2683
59	0.1044	0.1759	0.2197	0.2512	0.2758
60	0.1073	0.1808	0.2258	0.2582	0.2834
61	0.1102	0.1858	0.2320	0.2653	0.2912
62	0.1133	0.1909	0.2384	0.2726	0.2993
63	0.1164	0.1962	0.2450	0.2801	0.3075
64	0.1196	0.2016	0.2517	0.2878	0.3160
65	0.1229	0.2071	0.2587	0.2958	0.3247
66	0.1263	0.2128	0.2658	0.3039	0.3337
67	0.1298	0.2187	0.2732	0.3124	0.3429
68	0.1334	0.2248	0.2808	0.3210	0.3524
69	0.1371	0.2311	0.2886	0.3300	0.3623
70	0.1409	0.2375	0.2967	0.3392	0.3724
71	0.1449	0.2442	0.3050	0.3488	0.3829
72	0.1490	0.2512	0.3134	0.3586	0.3937
73	0.1533	0.2583	0.3226	0.3689	0.4050
74	0.1577	0.2658	0.3319	0.3795	0.4167
75	0.1623	0.2735	0.3416	0.3906	0.4288
76	0.1671	0.2816	0.3517	0.4021	0.4414
77	0.1720	0.2900	0.3621	0.4141	0.4546
78	0.1773	0.2988	0.3731	0.4266	0.4683
79	0.1827	0.3079	0.3846	0.4397	0.4827
80	0.1884	0.3175	0.3966	0.4534	0.4978
81	0.1944	0.3277	0.4090	0.4679	0.5137
82	0.2007	0.3383	0.4225	0.4831	0.5304
83	0.2074	0.3496	0.4366	0.4992	0.5481
84	0.2146	0.3616	0.4516	0.5163	0.5668
85	0.2221	0.3743	0.4675	0.5345	0.5868
86	0.2302	0.3879	0.4845	0.5539	0.6081
87	0.2388	0.4025	0.5027	0.5748	0.6311
88	0.2482	0.4183	0.5225	0.5974	0.6558
89	0.2584	0.4355	0.5439	0.6219	0.6827
90	0.2696	0.4543	0.5674	0.6487	0.7122
91	0.2819	0.4751	0.5933	0.6784	0.7448
92	0.2957	0.4983	0.6224	0.7116	0.7812
93	0.3113	0.5247	0.6553	0.7492	0.8225
94	0.3293	0.5551	0.6932	0.7927	0.8702
95	0.3507	0.5910	0.7382	0.8440	0.9266
96	0.3768	0.6351	0.7932	0.9069	0.9956
97	0.4105	0.6918	0.8640	0.9879	1.0846
98	0.4580	0.7718	0.9640	1.1022	1.2100
99	0.5391	0.9086	1.1347	1.2974	1.4244

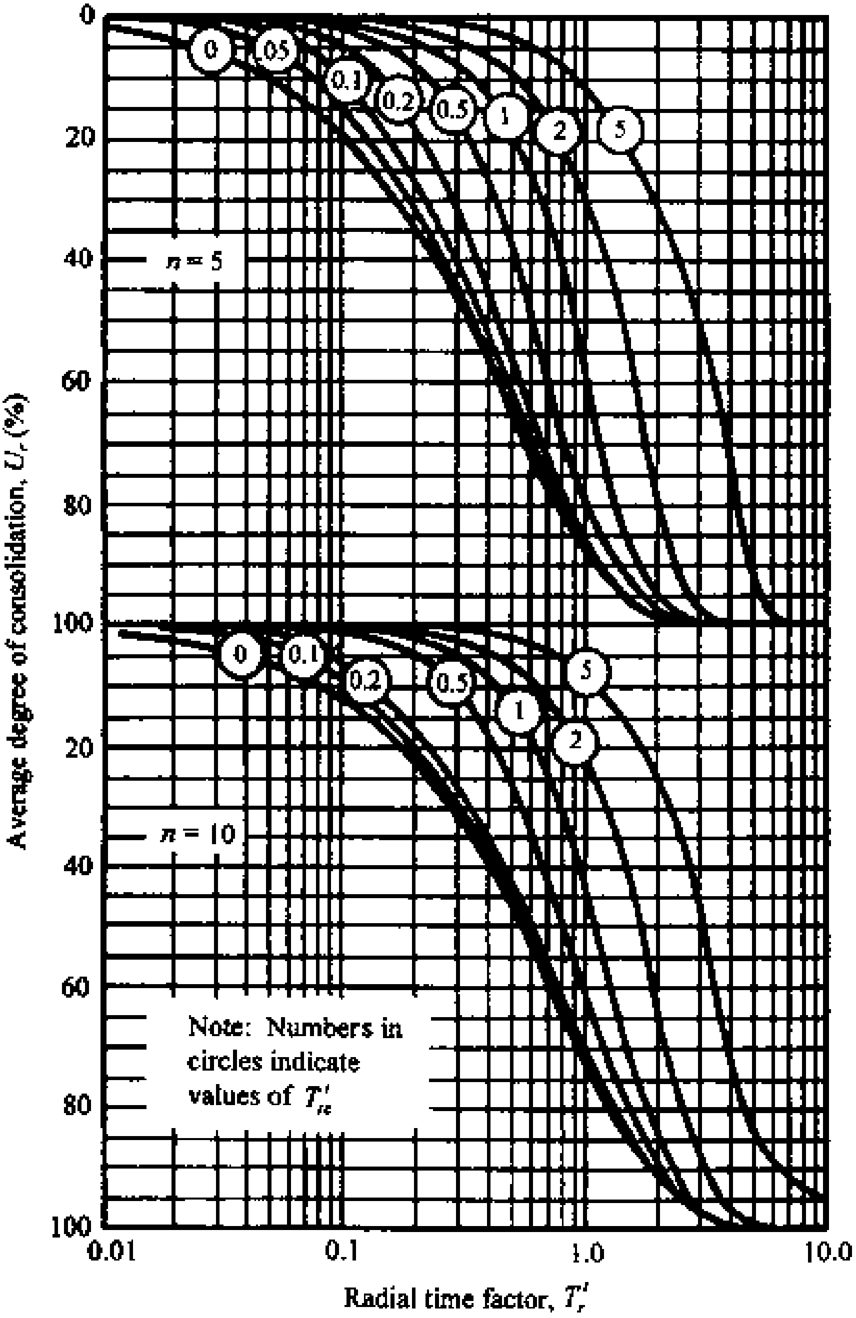


Figure 6.39 Olson's solution for radial flow under single ramp loading for $n = 5$ and 10 [Eqs. (6.160) and (6.161)].

Effect of smear zone on radial consolidation

Barron (1948) also extended the analysis of equal-strain consolidation by sand drains to account for the smear zone. The analysis is based on the assumption that the clay in the smear zone will have one boundary with zero excess pore water pressure and the other boundary with an excess pore water pressure that will be time dependent. Based on this assumption.

$$u = \frac{1}{m'} u_{\text{av}} \left[\ln\left(\frac{r}{r_{\text{e}}}\right) - \frac{r^2 - r_{\text{s}}^2}{2r_{\text{e}}^2} + \frac{k_{\text{h}}}{k_{\text{s}}} \left(\frac{n^2 - S^2}{n^2}\right) \ln S \right] \tag{6.162}$$

where k_{s} = coefficient of permeability of the smeared zone

$$S = \frac{r_{\text{s}}}{r_{\text{w}}} \tag{6.163}$$

$$m' = \frac{n^2}{n^2 - S^2} \ln\left(\frac{n}{S}\right) - \frac{3}{4} + \frac{S^2}{4n^2} + \frac{k_{\text{h}}}{k_{\text{s}}} \left(\frac{n^2 - S^2}{n^2}\right) \ln S \tag{6.164}$$

$$u_{\text{av}} = u_i \exp\left(\frac{-8T_{\text{r}}}{m'}\right) \tag{6.165}$$

The average degree of consolidation is given by the relation

$$U_{\text{r}} = 1 - \frac{u_{\text{av}}}{u_i} = 1 - \exp\left(\frac{-8T_{\text{r}}}{m'}\right) \tag{6.166}$$

6.15 Numerical solution for radial drainage (sand drain)

As shown above for vertical drainage (Sec. 6.4), we can adopt the finite-difference technique for solving consolidation problems in the case of radial drainage. From Eq. (6.142),

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = C_{\upsilon\text{r}} \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right)$$

Let u_{R}, t_{R}, and r_{R} be any reference excess pore water pressure, time, and radial distance, respectively. So,

$$\text{Nondimensional excess pore water pressure} = \bar{u} = \frac{u}{u_{\text{R}}} \tag{6.167}$$

$$\text{Nondimensional time} = \bar{t} = \frac{t}{t_{\text{R}}} \tag{6.168}$$

$$\text{Nondimensional radial distance} = \bar{r} = \frac{r}{r_{\text{R}}} \tag{6.169}$$

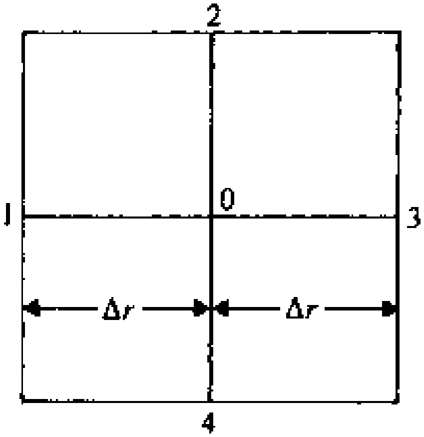


Figure 6.40 Numerical solution for radial drainage.

Substituting Eqs. (6.167)–(6.169) into Eq. (6.142), we get

$$\frac{1}{t_R}\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{t}} = \frac{C_{vr}}{r_R^2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{r}^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{r}}\right) \tag{6.170}$$

Referring to Figure 6.40,

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{t}} = \frac{1}{\Delta \bar{t}}(\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} - \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}) \tag{6.171}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{r}^2} = \frac{1}{(\Delta \bar{r})^2}(\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} + \bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}) \tag{6.172}$$

and

$$\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{r}} = \frac{1}{r}\left(\frac{u_{3,\bar{t}} - \bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}}}{2\Delta \bar{r}}\right) \tag{6.173}$$

If we adopt t_R in such a way that $1/t_R = C_{vr}/r_R^2$ and then substitute Eqs. (6.171)–(6.173) into Eq. (6.170), then

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = \frac{\Delta \bar{t}}{(\Delta \bar{r})^2}\left[\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} + \bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} + \frac{\bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} - \bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}}}{2(\bar{r}/\Delta \bar{r})} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}\right] + \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}} \tag{6.174}$$

Equation (6.174) is the basic finite-difference equation for solution of the excess pore water pressure (for radial drainage only).

EXAMPLE 6.9

For a sand drain, the following data are given: $r_w = 0.38\,\text{m}$, $r_e = 1.52\,\text{m}$, $r_w = r_s$, and $C_{vr} = 46.2 \times 10^{-4}\,\text{m}^2/\text{day}$. A uniformly distributed load of $50\,\text{kN/m}^2$ is applied at the ground surface. Determine the distribution of excess pore water pressure after 10 days of load application assuming radial drainage only.

SOLUTION Let $r_R = 0.38\,\text{m}$, $\Delta r = 0.38\,\text{m}$, and $\Delta t = 5$ days. So, $\bar{r}_e = r_e/r_R = 1.52/0.38 = 4$; $\Delta\bar{r}/r_R = 0.38/0.38 = 1$

$$\Delta\bar{t} = \frac{C_{vr}\Delta t}{r_R^2} = \frac{(46.2 \times 10^{-4})(5)}{(0.38)^2} = 0.16$$

$$\frac{\Delta\bar{t}}{(\Delta\bar{r})^2} = \frac{0.16}{(1)^2} = 0.16$$

Let $u_R = 0.5\,\text{kN/m}^2$. So, immediately after load application, $\bar{u} = 50/0.5 = 100$.

Figure 6.41 shows the initial nondimensional pore water pressure distribution at time $t = 0$. (Note that at $\bar{r} = 1$, $\bar{u} = 0$ owing to the drainage face.)

At 5 days: $\bar{u} = 0$, $\bar{r} = 1$. From Eq. (6.174),

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = \frac{\Delta\bar{t}}{(\Delta\bar{r})^2}\left[\bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}} + \bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} + \frac{\bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} - \bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}}}{2(\bar{r}/\Delta\bar{r})} - 2\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}\right] + \bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}}$$

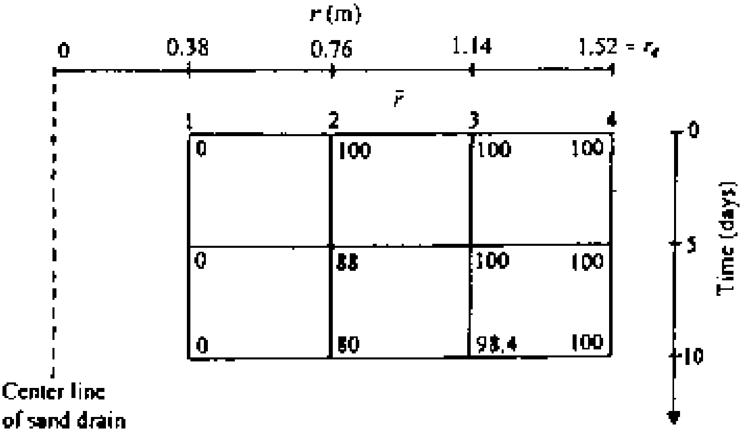


Figure 6.41 Excess pore water pressure variation with time for radial drainage.

At $\bar{r} = 2$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.16\left[0 + 100 + \frac{100-0}{2(2/1)} - 2(100)\right] + 100 = 88$$

At $\bar{r} = 3$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.16\left[100 + 100 + \frac{100-100}{2(3/1)} - 2(100)\right] + 100 = 100$$

Similarly, at $\bar{r} = 4$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 100$$

(note that, here, $\bar{u}_{3,\bar{t}} = \bar{u}_{1,\bar{t}}$).
At 10 days: At $\bar{r} = 1$, $\bar{u} = 0$.
At $\bar{r} = 2$,

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} &= 0.16\left[0 + 100 + \frac{100-0}{2(2/1)} - 2(88)\right] + 88 \\ &= 79.84 \cong 80\end{aligned}$$

At $\bar{r} = 3$,

$$\bar{u}_{0,\bar{t}+\Delta\bar{t}} = 0.16\left[88 + 100 + \frac{100-88}{2(3/1)} - 2(100)\right] + 100 = 98.4$$

At $\bar{r} = 4$,

$$\bar{u} = 100$$

$$u = \bar{u} \times u_{\mathrm{R}} = 0.5\bar{u} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

The distribution of nondimensional excess pore water pressure is shown in Figure 6.41.

6.16 General comments on sand drain problems

Figure 6.37*b* shows a triangular pattern of the layout of sand drains. In some instances, the sand drains may also be laid out in a square pattern. For all practical purposes, the magnitude of the radius of equivalent circles can be given as follows.

Triangular pattern

$$r_e = (0.525)(\text{drain spacing}) \tag{6.175}$$

Square pattern

$$r_e = (0.565)(\text{drain spacing}) \tag{6.176}$$

Wick drains and *geodrains* have recently been developed as alternatives to the sand drain for inducing vertical drainage in saturated clay deposits. They appear to be better, faster, and cheaper. They essentially consist of paper, plastic, or geotextile strips that are held in a long tube. The tube is pushed into the soft clay deposit, then withdrawn, leaving behind the strips. These strips act as vertical drains and induce rapid consolidation. Wick drains and geodrains, like sand drains, can be placed at desired spacings. The main advantage of these drains over sand drains is that they do not require drilling, and thus installation is much faster. For rectangular flexible drains the radius of the equivalent circles can be given as

$$r_w = \frac{(b+t)}{\pi} \tag{6.177}$$

where b is width of the drain and t thickness of the drain.

The relation for average degree of consolidation for *vertical drainage only* was presented in Sec. 6.2. Also the relations for the degree of consolidation due to *radial drainage only* were given in Secs 6.14 and 6.15. In reality, the drainage for the dissipation of excess pore water pressure takes place in both directions simultaneously. For such a case, Carrillo (1942) has shown that

$$U = 1 - (1 - U_v)(1 - U_r) \tag{6.178}$$

where

U = average degree of consolidation for simultaneous vertical and radial drainage

U_v = average degree of consolidation calculated on the assumption that only vertical drainage exists (note the notation U_{av} was used before in this chapter)

U_r = average degree of consolidation calculated on the assumption that only radial drainage exists

Example 6.10

A 6-m-thick clay layer is drained at the top and bottom and has some sand drains. The given data are C_v (for vertical drainage) $= 49.51 \times$

$10^{-4}\,\mathrm{m}^2/\mathrm{day}$; $k_\mathrm{v} = k_\mathrm{h}$; $d_\mathrm{w} = 0.45\,\mathrm{m}$; $d_\mathrm{e} = 3\,\mathrm{m}$; $r_\mathrm{w} = r_\mathrm{s}$ (i.e., no smear at the periphery of drain wells).

It has been estimated that a given uniform surcharge would cause a total consolidation settlement of 250 mm without the sand drains. Calculate the consolidation settlement of the clay layer with the same surcharge and sand drains at time $t = 0$, 0.2, 0.4, 0.6, 0.8, and 1 year.

SOLUTION

Vertical drainage: $C_\upsilon = 49.51 \times 10^{-4}\,\mathrm{m/day} = 1.807\,\mathrm{m/year}$.

$$T_\upsilon = \frac{C_\upsilon t}{H^2} = \frac{1.807 \times t}{(6/2)^2} = 0.2008t \cong 0.2t \qquad \text{(E6.1)}$$

Radial drainage:

$$\frac{r_\mathrm{e}}{r_\mathrm{w}} = \frac{1.5\,\mathrm{m}}{0.225\,\mathrm{m}} = 6.67 = n$$

$$F_n = \frac{n^2}{n^2-1}\ln(n) - \frac{3n^2-1}{4n^2} \quad \text{(equal strain case)}$$

$$= \left[\frac{(6.67)^2}{(6.67)^2-1}\ln\,(6.67) - \frac{3(6.67)^2-1}{4(6.67)^2}\right]$$

$$= 1.94 - 0.744 = 1.196$$

Since $k_\mathrm{v} = k_\mathrm{h}$, $C_\upsilon = C_{\upsilon\mathrm{r}}$. So,

$$T_\mathrm{r} = \frac{C_{\upsilon\mathrm{r}} t}{d_\mathrm{e}^2} = \frac{1.807 \times t}{3^2} = 0.2t \qquad \text{(E6.2)}$$

The steps in the calculation of the consolidation settlement are shown in Table 6.6. From Table 6.6, the consolidation settlement at $t = 1$ year is 217.5 mm. Without the sand drains, the consolidation settlement at the end of 1 year would have been only 126.25 mm.

Table 6.6 Steps in calculation of consolidation settlement

t (year)	T_v [Eq. (E6.1)]	U_v (Table 6.1)	$1-U_v$	T_r [Eq. (E6.2)]	$1-\exp[-8T_r/F(n)]=U_r$	$1-U_r$	$U=1-(1-U_v)(1-U_r)$	$S_c=250\times U$ (mm)
0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0
0.2	0.04	0.22	0.78	0.04	0.235	0.765	0.404	101
0.4	0.08	0.32	0.68	0.08	0.414	0.586	0.601	150.25
0.6	0.12	0.39	0.61	0.12	0.552	0.448	0.727	181.75
0.8	0.16	0.45	0.55	0.16	0.657	0.343	0.812	203
1	0.2	0.505	0.495	0.2	0.738	0.262	0.870	217.5

PROBLEMS

6.1 Consider a clay layer drained at the top and bottom as shown in Figure 6.3*a*. For the case of constant initial excess pore water pressure ($u_i = u_0$) and $T_v = 0.4$, determine the degree of consolidation U_z at $z/H_t = 0.4$. For the solution, start from Eq. (6.32).

6.2 Starting from Eq. (6.34), solve for the average degree of consolidation for linearly varying initial excess pore water pressure distribution for a clay layer with two-way drainage (Figure 6.3*d*) for $T_v = 0.6$.

6.3 Refer to Figure 6.7*a*. For the 5-m-thick clay layer, $C_v = 0.13\,\text{cm}^2/\text{min}$ and $q = 170\,\text{kN/m}^2$. Plot the variation of excess pore water pressure in the clay layer with depth after 6 months of load application.

6.4 A 25 cm total consolidation settlement of the two clay layers shown in Figure P6.1 is expected owing to the application of the uniform surcharge q. Find the duration after the load application at which 12.5 cm of total settlement would take place.

6.5 Repeat Prob. 6.4, assuming that a layer of rock is located at the bottom of the 1.5-m-thick clay layer.

6.6 Due to a certain loading condition, the initial excess pore water pressure distribution in a 4-m-thick clay layer is shown in Figure P6.2. Given that $C_v = 0.3\,\text{mm}^2/\text{s}$, determine the degree of consolidation after 100 days of load application.

6.7 A uniform surcharge of $96\,\text{kN/m}^2$ is applied at the ground surface of a soil profile, as shown in Figure P6.3. Determine the distribution of the excess pore water pressure in the 3-m-thick clay layer after 1 year of load application. Use the numerical method of calculation given in Sec. 6.4. Also calculate the average degree of consolidation at that time using the above results.

6.8 A two-layered soil is shown in Figure P6.4. At a given time $t = 0$, a uniform load was applied at the ground surface so as to increase the pore water pressure by $60\,\text{kN/m}^2$ at all depths. Divide the soil profile into six equal layers. Using the numerical analysis method, find the excess pore water pressure at depths of -3, -6, -9, -12, -15, and -18 m at $t = 25$ days. Use $\Delta t = 5$ days.

6.9 Refer to Figure P6.5. A uniform surcharge q is applied at the ground surface. The variation of q with time is shown in Figure P6.5*b*. Divide the 10-m-thick clay

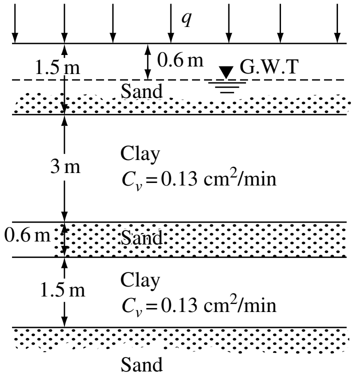


Figure P6.1

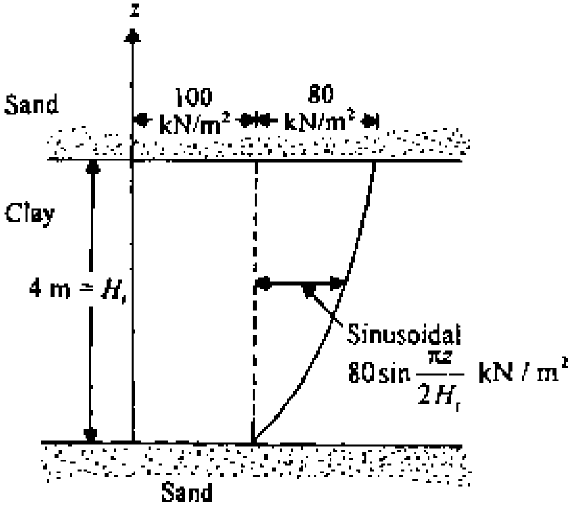


Figure P6.2

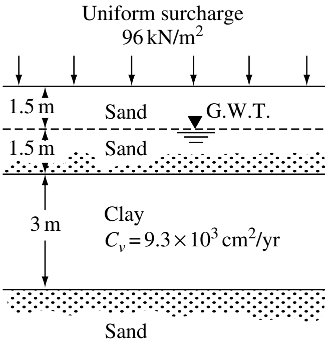


Figure P6.3

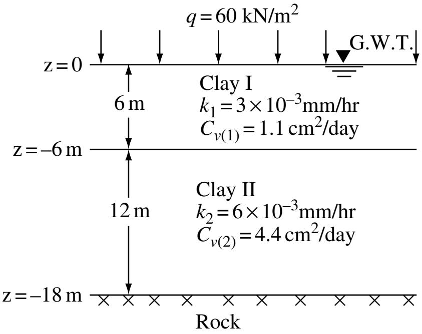


Figure P6.4

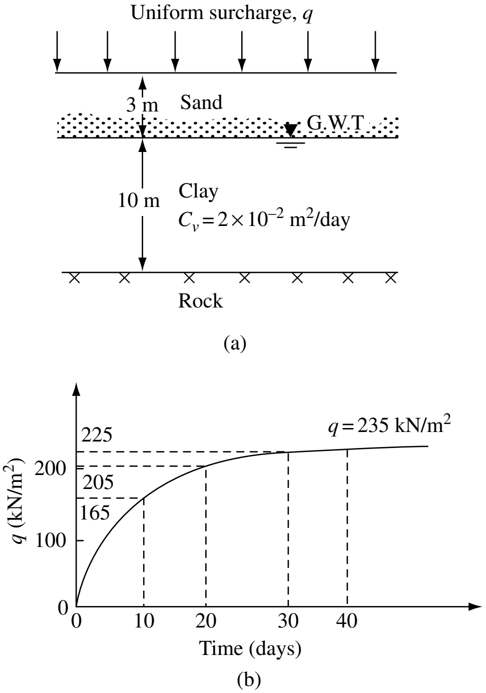


Figure P6.5

layer into five layers, each 2 m thick. Determine the excess pore water pressure in the clay layer at $t = 60$ days by the numerical method.

6.10 Refer to Figure P6.5*a*. The uniform surcharge is time dependent. Given q (kN/m^2) $= 2t$ (days) (for $t \leq 100$ days), and $q = 200\,\text{kN/m}^2$ (for $t \geq 100$ days), determine the average degree of consolidation for the clay layer at $t = 50$ days and $t = 1$ year. Use Figure 6.8*c*.

6.11 The average effective overburden pressure on a 10-m-thick clay layer in the field is $136\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$, and the average void ratio is 0.98. If a uniform surcharge of $200\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$ is applied on the ground surface, determine the consolidation settlement for the following cases, given $C_c = 0.35$ and $C_r = 0.08$:

(*a*) Preconsolidation pressure, $\sigma'_c = 350\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$
(*b*) $\sigma'_c = 200\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$

6.12 Refer to Prob. 6.11*b*.

(*a*) What is the average void ratio at the end of 100% consolidation?
(*b*) If $C_\upsilon = 1.5\,\mathrm{mm^2/min}$, how long will it take for the first 100 mm of settlement? Assume two-way drainage for the clay layer.

6.13 The results of an oedometer test on a clay layer are as follows:

$\sigma'(\mathrm{kN/m^2})$	*Void ratio, e*
385	0.95
770	0.87

The time for 90% consolidation was 10 min, and the average thickness of the clay was 23 mm (two-way drainage). Calculate the coefficient of permeability of clay in mm/s.

6.14 A 5-m-thick clay layer, drained at the top only, has some sand drains. A uniform surcharge is applied at the top of the clay layer. Calculate the average degree of consolidation for combined vertical and radial drainage after 100 days of load application, given $C_{\upsilon r} = C_\upsilon = 4\,\mathrm{mm^2/\,min}$, $d_e = 2\,\mathrm{m}$, and $r_w = 0.2\,\mathrm{m}$. Use the equal-strain solution.

6.15 Redo Prob. 6.14. Assume that there is some smear around the sand drains and that $r_s = 0.3\,\mathrm{m}$ and $k_k/k_s = 4$. (This is an equal-strain case.)

6.16 For a sand drain problem, $r_w = 0.3\,\mathrm{m}$, $r_s = 0.3\,\mathrm{m}$, $r_e = 1.8\,\mathrm{m}$, and $C_{\upsilon r} = 28\,\mathrm{cm^2/day}$. If a uniform load of $100\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$ is applied on the ground surface, find the distribution of the excess pore water pressure after 50 days of load application. Consider that there is radial drainage only. Use the numerical method.

References

Azzouz, A. S., R. J. Krizek, and R. B. Corotis, Regression Analysis of Soil Compressibility, *Soils Found.* Tokyo, vol. 16, no. 2, pp. 19–29, 1976.

Barden, L., Consolidation of Clay with Non-Linear Viscosity, *Geotechnique*, vol. 15, no. 4, pp. 345–362, 1965.

Barden, L., Primary and Secondary Consolidation of Clay and Peat, *Geotechnique*, vol. 18, pp. 1–14, 1968.

Barron, R. A., Consolidation of Fine-Grained Soils by Drain Wells, *Trans., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 113, p. 1719, 1948.

Bjerrum, L., Embankments on Soft Ground, in *Proc., Specialty Conf. Perform. Earth and Earth-Supported Structures*, vol. 2, pp. 1–54, *Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng.*, 1972.

Brummund, W. F., E. Jonas, and C. C. Ladd, Estimating *In Situ* Maximum Past (Preconsolidation) Pressure of Saturated Clays from Results of Laboratory Consolidometer Tests, *Special Report 163*, Trans. Res. Board, pp. 4–12, 1976.

Carrillo, N., Simple Two- and Three-Dimensional Cases in Theory of Consolidation of Soils, *J. Math. Phys.*, vol. 21, no. 1, 1942.

Casagrande, A., The Determination of the Preconsolidation Load and Its Practical Significance, *Proc., 1st Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, p. 60, 1936.

Casagrande, A. and R. E. Fadum, Notes on Soil Testing for Engineering Purposes, *Publ. 8*, Harvard Univ. Graduate School of Eng., 1940.

Crawford, C. B., Interpretation of the Consolidation Tests, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 90, no. SM5, pp. 93–108, 1964.

Gibson, R. E. and K. Y. Lo, A Theory of Consolidation for Soils Exhibiting Secondary Compression, Norwegian Geotechnical Institute, Publication No. 41, 1961.

Hansbo, S., A New Approach to the Determination of Shear Strength of Clay by the Fall Cone Test, *Report 14, Swedish Geotech. Inst.*, Stockholm, 1957.

Leonards, G. A. and A. G. Altschaeffl, Compressibility of Clay, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 90, no. SM5, pp. 133–156, 1964.

Lowe, J., III, E. Jonas, and V. Obrician, Controlled Gradient Consolidation Test, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 95, no. SM1, pp. 77–98, 1969.

Luscher, U., Discussion, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 91, no. SM1, pp. 190–195, 1965.

Mayne, P. W. and J. K. Mitchell, Profiling of Overconsolidation Ratio in Clays by Field Vane, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 25, no. 1, pp. 150–157, 1988.

Mesri, G., Coefficient of Secondary Compression, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 99, no. SMI, pp. 123–137, 1973.

Mesri, G. and P. M. Godlewski, Time and Stress–Compressiblity Interrelationship, *J. Geotech. Eng., J. Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 103, no. 5, pp. 417–430, 1977.

Nacci, V. A., M. C. Wang, and K. R. Demars, Engineering Behavior of Calcareous Soils, *Proc. Civ. Eng. Oceans III*, vol. 1, *Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng.,* pp. 380–400, 1975.

Nagaraj, T. and B. S. R. Murty, Prediction of the Preconsolidation Pressure and Recompression Index of Soils, *Geotech. Test. J.*, vol. 8, no. 4, pp. 199–202, 1985.

Olson, R. E., Consolidation Under Time-Dependent Loading, *J. Geotech. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 103, no. GT1, pp. 55–60, 1977.

Park, J. H. and T. Koumoto, New Compression Index Equation, *J. Geotech. and Geoenv. Engr., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 130, no. 2, pp. 223–226, 2004.

Raju, P. S. R., N. S. Pandian, and T. S. Nagaraj, Analysis and Estimation of Coefficient of Consolidation, *Geotech. Test. J.*, vol. 18, no. 2, pp. 252–258, 1995.

Rendon-Herrero, O., Universal Compression Index, *J. Geotech. Eng.*, vol. 109, no. 10, p. 1349, 1983.

Rendulic, L., Der Hydrodynamische Spannungsaugleich in Zentral Entwässerten Tonzylindern, *Wasser-wirtsch. Tech.*, vol. 2, pp. 250–253, 269–273, 1935.

Richart, F. E., Review of the Theories for Sand Drains, *Trans., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 124, pp. 709–736, 1959.

Robinson, R. G. and M. M. Allam, Determination of Coefficient of Consolidation from Early Stage of log$t$ Plot, *Geotech. Testing J.*, ASTM, vol. 19, no. 3, pp. 316–320, 1996.

Schiffman, R. L., C. C. Ladd, and A. T. Chen, The Secondary Consolidation of Clay, *I.U.T.A.M. Symposium on Rheological Soil Mechanics, Grenoble*, p. 273, 1964.

Schmertmann, J. H., Undisturbed Laboratory Behavior of Clay, *Trans., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 120, p. 1201, 1953.

Scott, R. F., *Principles of Soil Mechanics*, Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1963.

Sivaram, B. and P. Swamee, A Computational Method for Consolidation Coefficient, *Soils Found. Tokyo*, vol. 17, no. 2, pp. 48–52, 1977.

Smith, R. E. and H. E. Wahls, Consolidation Under Constant Rate of Strain, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 95, no. SM2, pp. 519–538, 1969.

Sridharan, A. and K. Prakash, Improved Rectangular Hyperbola Method for the Determination of Coefficient of Consolidation, *Geotech. Test. J.*, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 37–40, 1985.

Sridharan, A. and K. Prakash, $\delta - t/\delta$ Method for the Determination of Coefficient of Consolidation, *Geotech. Test. J.*, vol. 16, no. 1, pp. 131–134, 1993.

Stas, C. V. and F. H. Kulhawy, Critical Evaluation of Design Methods for Foundations under Axial Uplift and Compression Loading, *Report EL-3771, EPRI*, Palo Alto, California, 1984.

Su, H. L., Procedure for Rapid Consolidation Test, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 95, Proc. Pap. 1729, 1958.

Tan, T. K., Discussion, *Proc. 4th Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 3, p. 278, 1957.

Taylor, D. W., Research on Consolidation of Clays, *Publ. 82*, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1942.

Taylor, D. W. and W. Merchant, A Theory of Clay Consolidation Accounting for Secondary Compression, *J. Math. Phys.*, vol. 19, p. 167, 1940.

Terzaghi, K., Erdbaumechanik auf Boden-physicalischen Grundlagen, *Deuticke*, Vienna, 1925.

Terzaghi, K., *Theoretical Soil Mechanics*, Wiley, New York, 1943.

Terzaghi, K., and R. B. Peck, *Soil Mechanics in Engineering Practice*, 2nd ed., Wiley, New York, 1967.

Chapter 7

Shear strength of soils

7.1 Introduction

The shear strength of soils is an important aspect in many foundation engineering problems such as the bearing capacity of shallow foundations and piles, the stability of the slopes of dams and embankments, and lateral earth pressure on retaining walls. In this chapter, we will discuss the shear strength characteristics of granular and cohesive soils and the factors that control them.

7.2 Mohr–Coulomb failure criteria

In 1900, Mohr presented a theory for rupture in materials. According to this theory, failure along a plane in a material occurs by a critical combination of normal and shear stresses, and not by normal or shear stress alone. The functional relation between normal and shear stress on the failure plane can be given by

$$s = f(\sigma) \tag{7.1}$$

where s is the shear stress at failure and σ is the normal stress on the failure plane. The failure envelope defined by Eq. (7.1) is a curved line, as shown in Figure 7.1.

In 1776, Coulomb defined the function $f(\sigma)$ as

$$s = c + \sigma \tan \phi \tag{7.2}$$

where c is cohesion and ϕ is the angle of friction of the soil.

Equation (7.2) is generally referred to as the Mohr–Coulomb failure criteria. The significance of the failure envelope can be explained using Figure 7.1. If the normal and shear stresses on a plane in a soil mass are such that they plot as point A, shear failure will not occur along that plane. Shear failure along a plane will occur if the stresses plot as point B, which

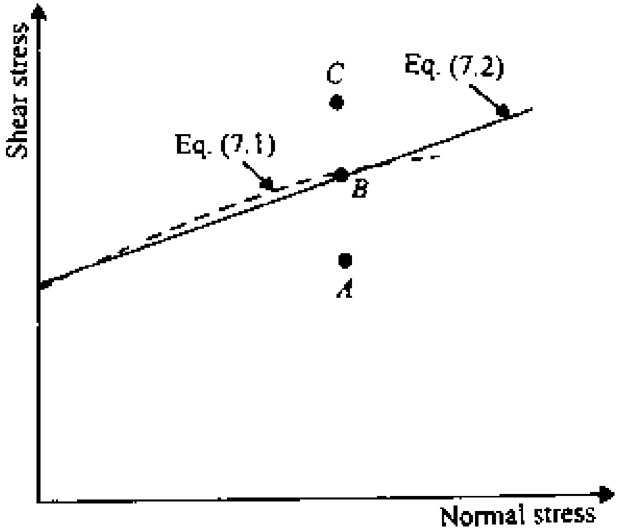


Figure 7.1 Mohr–Coulomb failure criteria.

falls on the failure envelope. A state of stress plotting as point C cannot exist, since this falls above the failure envelope; shear failure would have occurred before this condition was reached.

In saturated soils, the stress carried by the soil solids is the effective stress, and so Eq. (7.2) must be modified:

$$s = c + (\sigma - u)\tan\phi = c + \sigma' \tan\phi \tag{7.3}$$

where u is the pore water pressure and σ' the effective stress on the plane.

The term ϕ is also referred to as the drained friction angle. For sand, inorganic silts, and normally consolidated clays, $c \approx 0$. The value of c is greater than zero for overconsolidated clays.

The shear strength parameters of granular and cohesive soils will be treated separately in this chapter.

7.3 Shearing strength of granular soils

According to Eq. (7.3), the shear strength of a soil can be defined as $s = c + \sigma' \tan\phi$. For granular soils with $c = 0$,

$$s = \sigma' \tan\phi \tag{7.4}$$

The determination of the friction angle ϕ is commonly accomplished by one of two methods; the direct shear test or the triaxial test. The test procedures are given below.

Direct shear test

A schematic diagram of the direct shear test equipment is shown in Figure 7.2. Basically, the test equipment consists of a metal shear box into which the soil specimen is placed. The specimen can be square or circular in plan, about 19–25 cm^2 in area, and about 25 mm in height. The box is split horizontally into two halves. Normal force on the specimen is applied from the top of the shear box by dead weights. The normal stress on the specimens obtained by the application of dead weights can be as high as 1035 kN/m^2. Shear force is applied to the side of the top half of the box to cause failure in the soil specimen. (The two porous stones shown in Figure 7.2 are not required for tests on dry soil.) During the test, the shear displacement of the top half of the box and the change in specimen thickness are recorded by the use of horizontal and vertical dial gauges.

Figure 7.3 shows the nature of the results of typical direct shear tests in loose, medium, and dense sands. Based on Figure 7.3, the following observations can be made:

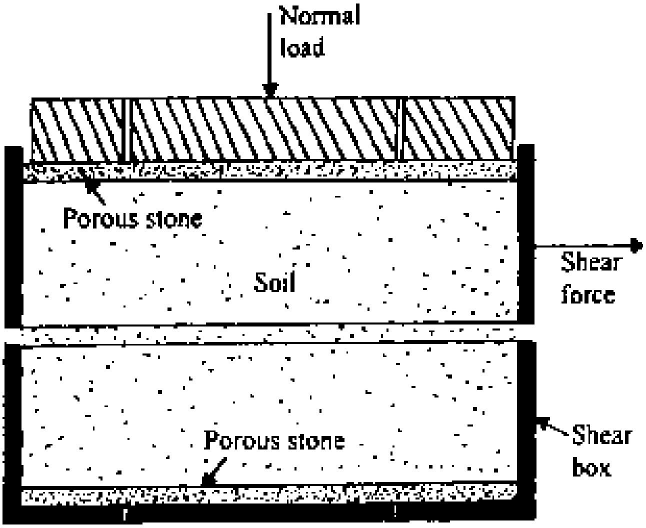


Figure 7.2 Direct shear test arrangement.

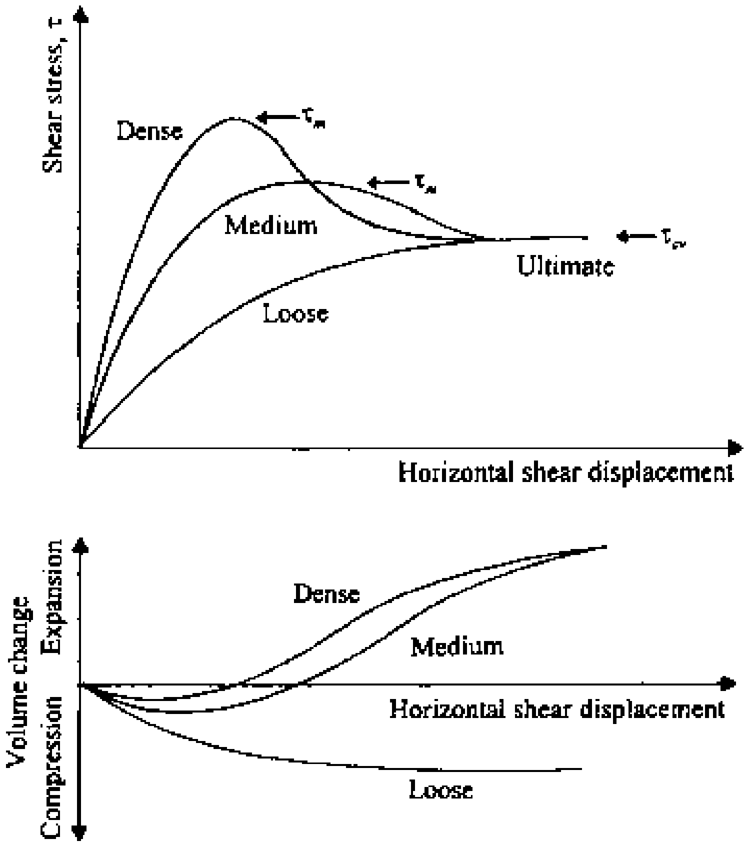


Figure 7.3 Direct shear test results in loose, medium, and dense sands.

1. In dense and medium sands, shear stress increases with shear displacement to a maximum or peak value τ_m and then decreases to an approximately constant value τ_{cv} at large shear displacements. This constant stress τ_{cv} is the ultimate shear stress.
2. For loose sands the shear stress increases with shear displacement to a maximum value and then remains constant.
3. For dense and medium sands the volume of the specimen initially decreases and then increases with shear displacement. At large values of shear displacement, the volume of the specimen remains approximately constant.
4. For loose sands the volume of the specimen gradually decreases to a certain value and remains approximately constant thereafter.

If dry sand is used for the test, the pore water pressure u is equal to zero, and so the total normal stress σ is equal to the effective stress σ'. The test may be repeated for several normal stresses. The angle of friction ϕ for the sand can be determined by plotting a graph of the maximum or peak shear stresses versus the corresponding normal stresses, as shown in Figure 7.4. The Mohr–Coulomb failure envelope can be determined by drawing a straight line through the origin and the points representing the experimental results. The slope of this line will give the peak friction angle ϕ of the soil. Similarly, the ultimate friction angle ϕ_{cv} can be determined by plotting the ultimate shear stresses τ_{cv} versus the corresponding normal stresses, as shown in Figure 7.4. The ultimate friction angle ϕ_{cv} represents a condition of shearing at constant volume of the specimen. For loose sands the peak friction angle is approximately equal to the ultimate friction angle.

If the direct shear test is being conducted on a saturated granular soil, time between the application of the normal load and the shearing force should be allowed for drainage from the soil through the porous stones. Also, the shearing force should be applied at a slow rate to allow complete drainage. Since granular soils are highly permeable, this will not pose a problem. If complete drainage is allowed, the excess pore water pressure is zero, and so $\sigma = \sigma'$.

Some typical values of ϕ and ϕ_{cv} for granular soils are given in Table 7.1.

The strains in the direct shear test take place in two directions, i.e., in the vertical direction and in the direction parallel to the applied horizontal shear force. This is similar to the plane strain condition. There are some

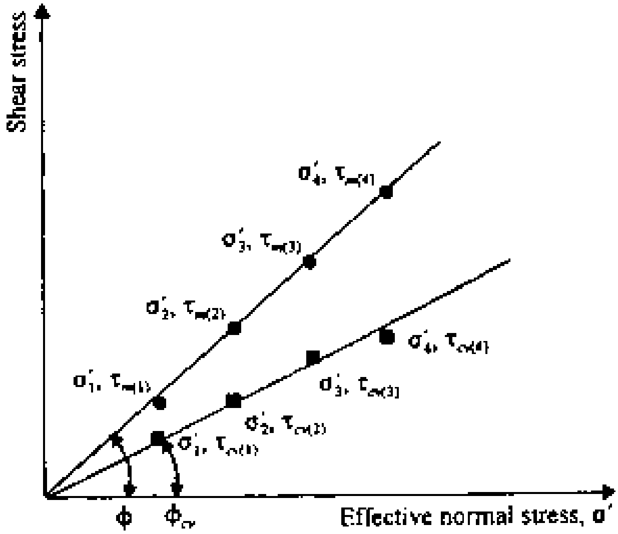


Figure 7.4 Determination of peak and ultimate friction angles from direct shear tests.

Table 7.1 Typical values of ϕ and ϕ_{cv} for granular soils

Type of soil	ϕ*(deg)*	ϕ_{cv}*(deg)*
Sand: round grains		
Loose	28–30	
Medium	30–35	26–30
Dense	35–38	
Sand: angular grains		
Loose	30–35	
Medium	35–40	30–35
Dense	40–45	
Sandy gravel	34–48	33–36

inherent shortcomings of the direct shear test. The soil is forced to shear in a predetermined plane—i.e., the horizontal plane—which is not necessarily the weakest plane. Second, there is an unequal distribution of stress over the shear surface. The stress is greater at the edges than at the center. This type of stress distribution results in progressive failure (Figure 7.5).

In the past, several attempts were made to improve the direct shear test. To that end, the Norwegian Geotechnical Institute developed a *simple shear test device*, which involves enclosing a cylindrical specimen in a rubber membrane reinforced with wire rings. As in the direct shear test, as the end plates move, the specimen distorts, as shown in Figure 7.6*a*. Although it is an improvement over the direct shear test, the shearing stresses are not uniformly distributed on the specimen. Pure shear as shown in Figure 7.6*b* only exists at the center of the specimen.

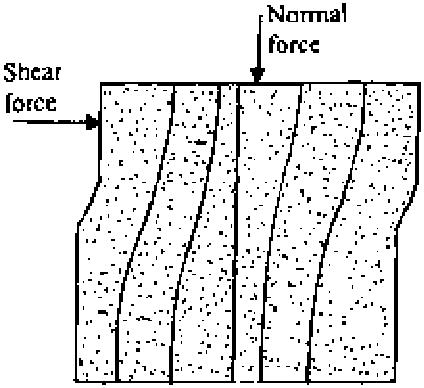


Figure 7.5 Unequal stress distribution in direct shear equipment.

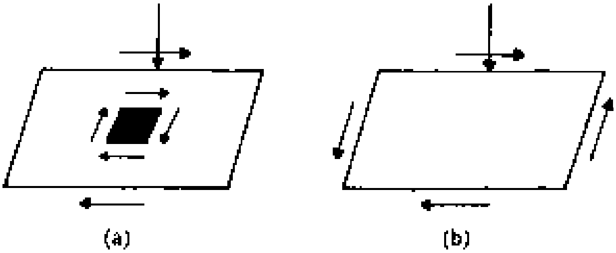


Figure 7.6 (*a*) Simple shear and (*b*) Pure shear.

Triaxial test

A schematic diagram of triaxial test equipment is shown in Figure 7.7. In this type of test, a soil specimen about 38 mm in diameter and 76 mm in length is generally used. The specimen is enclosed inside a thin rubber membrane and placed inside a cylindrical plastic chamber. For conducting the test, the chamber is usually filled with water or glycerine. The specimen

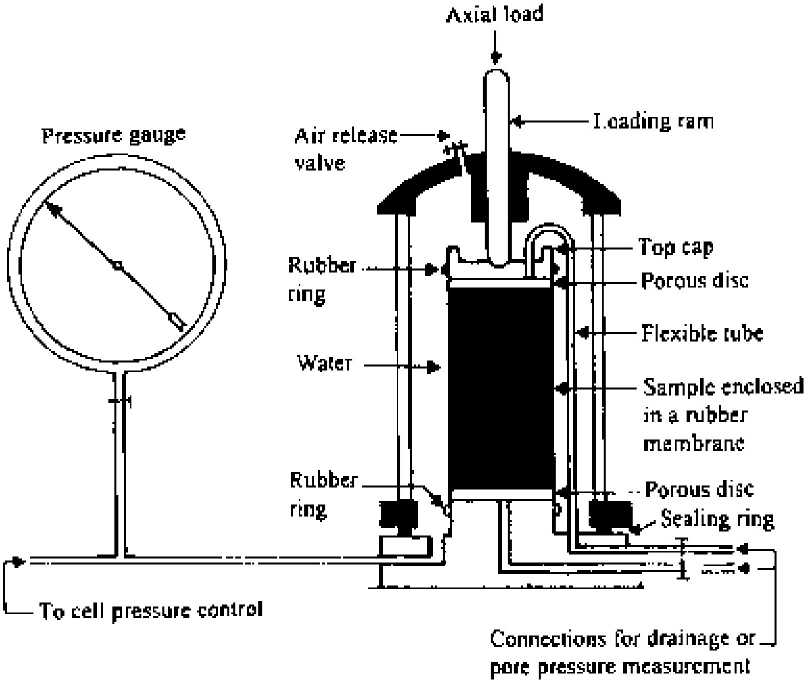


Figure 7.7 Triaxial test equipment (after Bishop and Bjerrum, 1960).

is subjected to a confining pressure σ_3 by application of pressure to the fluid in the chamber. (Air can sometimes be used as a medium for applying the confining pressure.) Connections to measure drainage into or out of the specimen or pressure in the pore water are provided. To cause shear failure in the soil, an axial stress $\Delta\sigma$ is applied through a vertical loading ram. This is also referred to as deviator stress. The axial strain is measured during the application of the deviator stress. For determination of ϕ, dry or fully saturated soil can be used. If saturated soil is used, the drainage connection is kept open during the application of the confining pressure and the deviator stress. Thus, during the test, the excess pore water pressure in the specimen is equal to zero. The volume of the water drained from the specimen during the test provides a measure of the volume change of the specimen.

For *drained tests* the total stress is equal to the effective stress. Thus the major effective principal stress is $\sigma'_1 = \sigma_1 = \sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma$; the minor effective principal stress is $\sigma'_3 = \sigma_3$; and the intermediate effective principal stress is $\sigma'_2 = \sigma'_3$.

At failure, the major effective principal stress is equal to $\sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_f$, where $\Delta\sigma_f$ is the deviator stress at failure, and the minor effective principal stress is σ_3. Figure 7.8 shows the nature of the variation of $\Delta\sigma$ with axial strain for loose and dense granular soils. Several tests with similar specimens can be conducted by using different confining pressures σ_3. The value of the soil peak friction angle ϕ can be determined by plotting effective-stress Mohr's circles for various tests and drawing a common tangent to these Mohr's circles passing through the origin. This is shown in Figure 7.9*a*. The angle that this envelope makes with the normal stress axis is equal to ϕ. It can be seen from Figure 7.9*b* that

$$\sin\phi = \frac{\overline{ab}}{\overline{oa}} = \frac{(\sigma'_1 - \sigma'_3)/2}{(\sigma'_1 + \sigma'_3)/2}$$

$$\text{or} \qquad \phi = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\sigma'_1 - \sigma'_3 - \sigma'_3}{\sigma'_1 + \sigma'_3}\right)_{\text{failure}} \tag{7.5}$$

However, it must be pointed out that in Figure 7.9*a* the failure envelope defined by the equation $s = \sigma' \tan\phi$ is an approximation to the actual curved failure envelope. The ultimate friction angle ϕ_{cv} for a given test can also be determined from the equation

$$\phi_{cv} = \sin^{-1}\left[\frac{\sigma'_{1(cv)} - \sigma'_3}{\sigma'_{1(cv)} + \sigma'_3}\right] \tag{7.6}$$

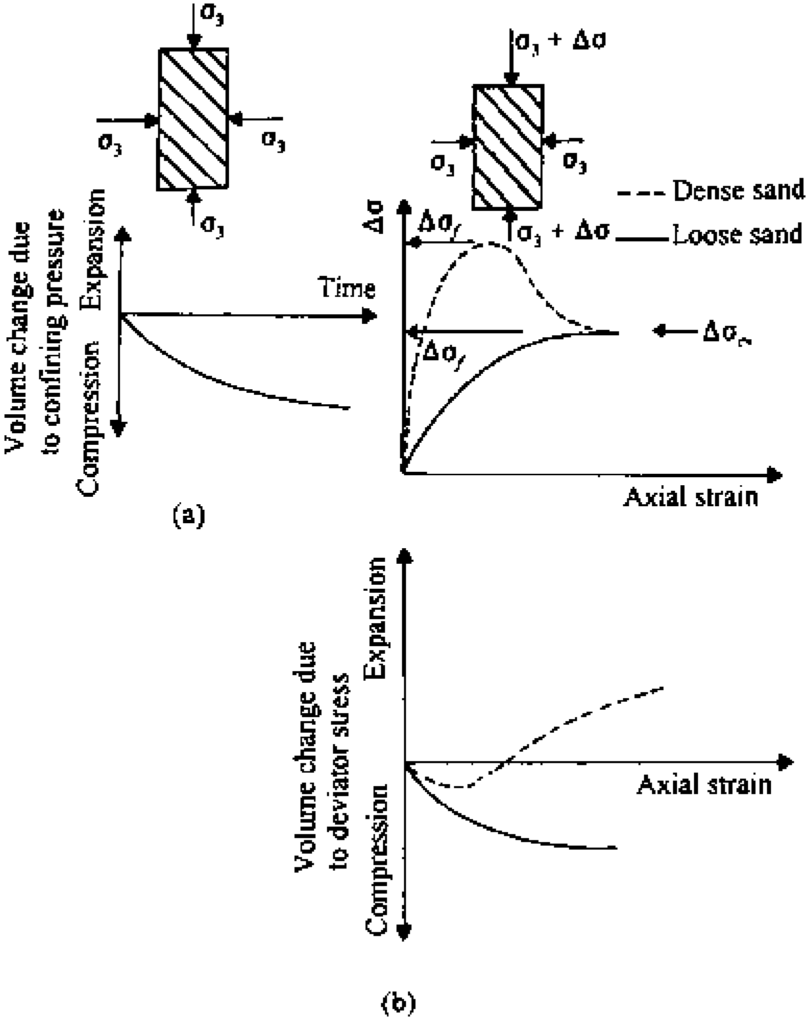


Figure 7.8 Drained triaxial test in granular soil (*a*) Application of confining pressure and (*b*) Application of deviator stress.

where $\sigma'_{1(cv)} = \sigma'_3 + \Delta\sigma_{(cv)}$. For similar soils the friction angle ϕ determined by triaxial tests is slightly lower (0–3°) than that obtained from direct shear tests.

The axial compression triaxial test described above is the conventional type. However, the loading process on the specimen in a triaxial chamber

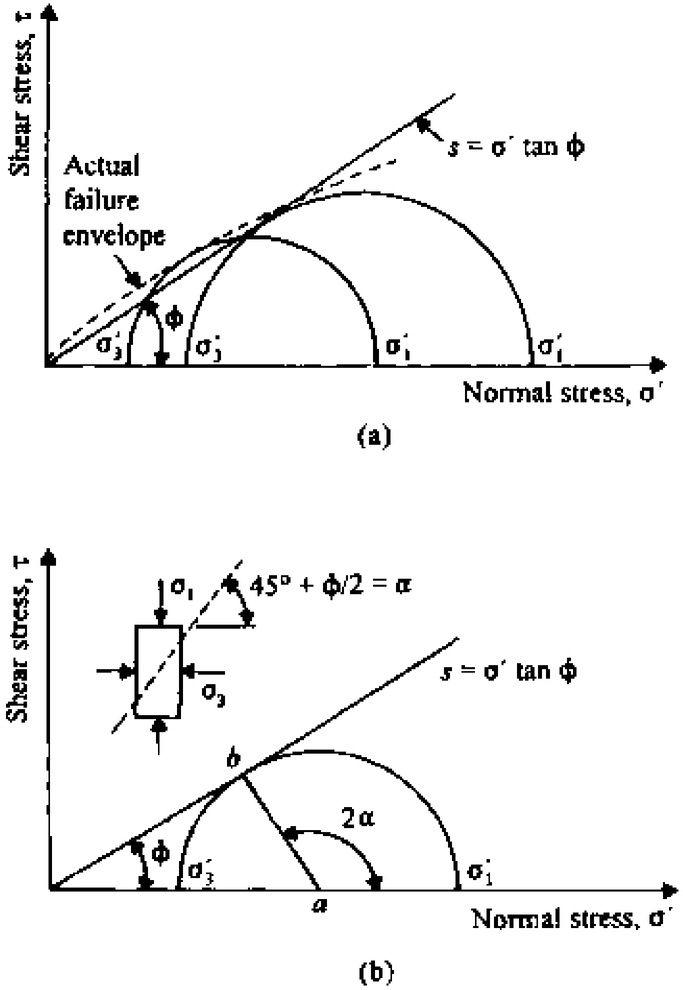


Figure 7.9 Drained triaxial test results.

can be varied in several ways. In general, the tests can be divided into two major groups: axial compression tests and axial extension tests. The following is a brief outline of each type of test (refer to Figure 7.10).

Axial compression tests

1. Radial confining stress σ_r constant and axial stress σ_a increased. This is the test procedure described above.

2. Axial stress σ_a constant and radial confining stress σ_r decreased.
3. Mean principal stress constant and radial stress decreased.

For drained compression tests, σ_a is equal to the major effective principal stress σ'_1, and σ_r is equal to the minor effective principal stress σ'_3, which is equal to the intermediate effective principal stress σ'_2. For the test listed under item 3, the mean principal stress, i.e., $(\sigma'_1+\sigma'_2+\sigma'_3)/3$, is kept constant. Or, in other words, $\sigma'_1+\sigma'_2+\sigma'_3 = J = \sigma_a + 2\sigma_r$ is kept constant by increasing σ_a and decreasing σ_r.

Axial extension tests

1. Radial stress σ_r kept constant and axial stress σ_a decreased.
2. Axial stress σ_a constant and radial stress σ_r increased.
3. Mean principal stress constant and radial stress increased.

For all *drained* extension tests at failure, σ_a is equal to the minor effective principal stress σ'_3, and σ_r is equal to the major effective principal stress σ'_1, which is equal to the intermediate effective principal stress σ'_2.

The detailed procedures for conducting these tests are beyond the scope of this text, and readers are referred to Bishop and Henkel (1969). Several investigations have been carried out to compare the peak friction angles determined by the axial compression tests to those obtained by the axial extension tests. A summary of these investigations is given by Roscoe *et al.* (1963). Some investigators found no difference in the value of ϕ from compression and extension tests; however, others reported values of ϕ

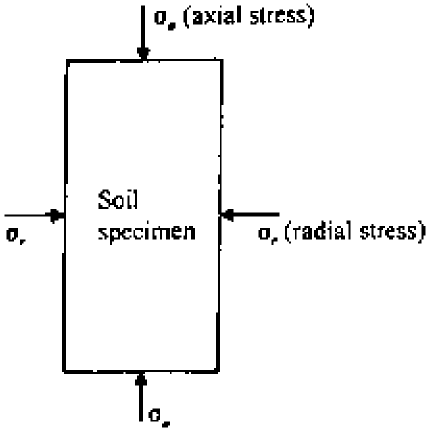


Figure 7.10 Soil specimen subjected to axial and radial stresses.

determined from the extension tests that were several degrees greater than those obtained by the compression tests.

7.4 Critical void ratio

We have seen that for shear tests in dense sands there is a tendency of the specimen to dilate as the test progresses. Similarly, in loose sand the volume gradually decreases (Figures 7.3 and 7.8). An increase or decrease of volume means a change in the void ratio of soil. The nature of the change of the void ratio with strain for loose and dense sands in shown in Figure 7.11. The void ratio for which the change of volume remains constant during shearing is called the *critical void ratio*. Figure 7.12 shows the results of some drained triaxial tests on washed Fort Peck sand. The void ratio after the application of σ_3 is plotted in the ordinate, and the change of volume, ΔV, at the peak point of the stress–strain plot, is plotted along the abscissa. For a given σ_3, the void ratio corresponding to $\Delta V = 0$ is the critical void ratio. Note that the critical void ratio is a function of the confining pressure σ_3. It is, however, necessary to recognize that, whether the volume of the soil specimen is increasing or decreasing, the critical void ratio is reached only in the shearing zone, even if it is generally calculated on the basis of the total volume change of the specimen.

The concept of critical void ratio was first introduced in 1938 by A. Casagrande to study liquefaction of granular soils. When a natural deposit of saturated sand that has a void ratio greater than the critical void ratio is subjected to a sudden shearing stress (due to an earthquake or to

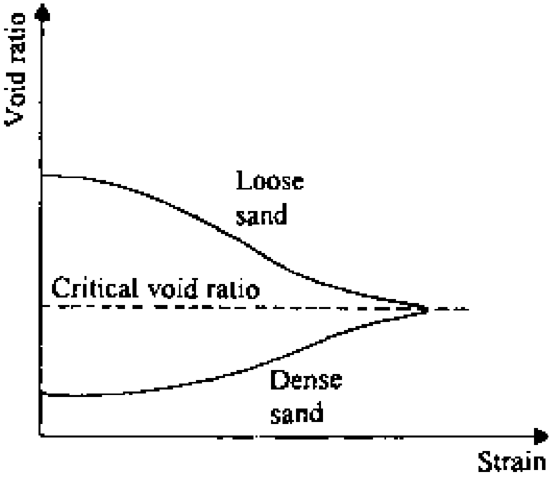


Figure 7.11 Definition of critical void ratio.

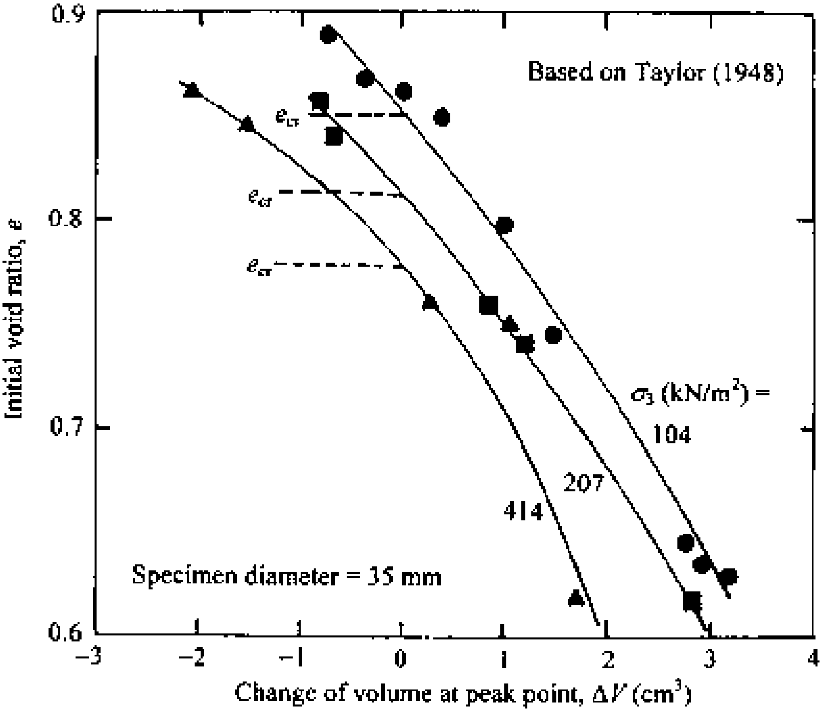


Figure 7.12 Critical void ratio from triaxial test on Fort Peck sand.

blasting, for example), the sand will undergo a decrease in volume. This will result in an increase of pore water pressure u. At a given depth, the effective stress is given by the relation $\sigma' = \sigma - u$. If σ (i.e., the total stress) remains constant and u increases, the result will be a decrease in σ'. This, in turn, will reduce the shear strength of the soil. If the shear strength is reduced to a value which is less than the applied shear stress, the soil will fail. This is called soil liquefaction. An advanced study of soil liquefaction can be obtained from the work of Seed and Lee (1966).

7.5 Curvature of the failure envelope

It was shown in Figure 7.1 that Mohr's failure envelope [Eq. (7.1)] is actually curved, and the shear strength equation ($s = c + \sigma \tan \phi$) is only a straight-line approximation for the sake of simplicity. For a drained direct shear test on sand, $\phi = \tan^{-1}(\tau_{\max}/\sigma')$. Since Mohr's envelope is actually curved, a higher effective normal stress will yield lower values of ϕ. This fact is demonstrated in Figure 7.13, which is a plot of the results of direct shear

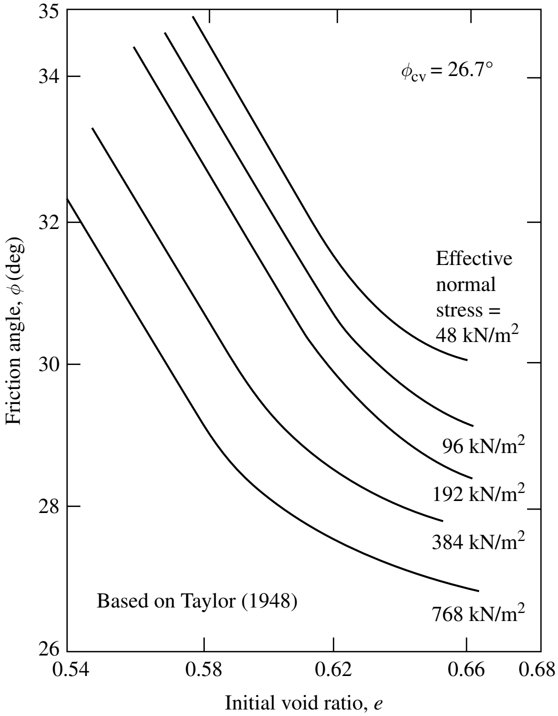


Figure 7.13 Variation of peak friction angle, ϕ, with effective normal stress on standard Ottawa sand.

tests on standard Ottawa Sand. For loose sand, the value of ϕ decreases from about 30° to less than 27° when the normal stress is increased from 48 to 768 kN/m^2. Similarly, for dense sand (initial void ratio approximately 0.56), ϕ decreases from about 36° to about 30.5° due to a sixteen-fold increase of σ'.

For high values of confining pressure (greater than about 400 kN/m^2), Mohr's failure envelope sharply deviates from the assumption given by Eq. (7.3). This is shown in Figure 7.14. Skempton (1960, 1961) introduced the concept of *angle of intrinsic friction* for a formal relation between shear strength and effective normal stress. Based on Figure 7.14, the shear strength can be defined as

$$s = k + \sigma' \tan \psi \tag{7.7}$$

where ψ is the angle of intrinsic friction. For quartz, Skempton (1961) gave the values of $k \approx 950$ kN/m^2 and $\psi \approx 13°$.

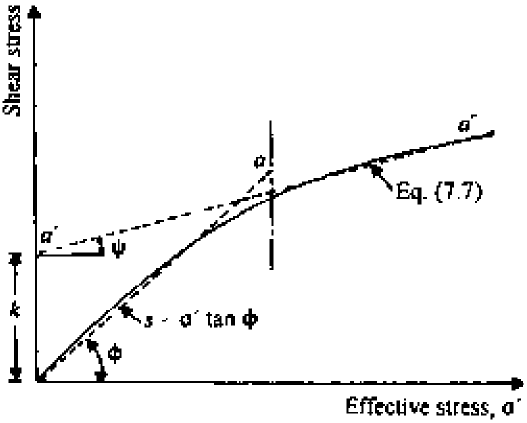


Figure 7.14 Failure envelope at high confining pressure.

7.6 General comments on the friction angle of granular soils

The soil friction angle determined by the laboratory tests is influenced by two major factors. The energy applied to a soil by the external load is used both to overcome the frictional resistance between the soil particles and also to expand the soil against the confining pressure. The soil grains are highly irregular in shape and must be lifted over one another for sliding to occur. This behavior is called *dilatency*. [A detailed study of the *stress dilatency* theory was presented by Rowe (1962)]. Hence the angle of friction ϕ can be expressed as

$$\phi = \phi_\mu + \beta \tag{7.8}$$

where ϕ_μ is the angle of sliding friction between the mineral surfaces and β is the effect of interlocking.

We saw in Table 7.1 that the friction angle of granular soils varied with the nature of the packing of the soil: the denser the packing, the higher the value of ϕ. If ϕ_μ for a given soil remains constant, from Eq. (7.8) the value of β must increase with the increase of the denseness of soil packing. This is obvious, of course, because in a denser soil more work must be done to overcome the effect of interlocking. Table 7.2 provides a comparison of experimental values of ϕ_μ and ϕ_{cv}. This table provides a summary of results of several investigators who attempted to measure the angle of sliding friction of various materials. From this table, it can be seen that, even at constant volume, the value of ϕ_μ is less than ϕ_{cv}. This means that there

Table 7.2 Experimental values of ϕ_μ and ϕ_{cv}

Reference	*Material*	ϕ_μ *(deg)*	ϕ_{cv} *(deg)*
Lee (1966)	Steel ball, 2.38 mm diameter	7	14
	Glass bollotini	17	24
	Medium-to-fine quartz sand	26	32
	Feldspar (25–200 sieves)	37	42
Horne and Deere (1962)	Quartz	24	
	Feldspar	38	
	Calcite	34	
Rowe (1962)	Medium-to-fine quartz sand	26	

must be some degree of interlocking even when the overall volume change is zero at very high strains.

Effect of angularity of soil particles. Other factors remaining constant, a soil possessing angular soil particles will show a higher friction angle ϕ than one with rounded grains because the angular soil particles will have a greater degree of interlocking and thus cause a higher value of β [Eq. (7.8)].

Effect of rate of loading during the test. The value of tan ϕ in triaxial compression tests is not greatly affected by the rate of loading. For sand, Whitman and Healy (1963) compared tests conducted in 5 min and in 5 ms and found that tan ϕ decreases at the most by about 10%.

7.7 Shear strength of granular soils under plane strain condition

The results obtained from triaxial tests are widely used for the design of structures. However, under structures such as continuous wall footings, the soils are actually subjected to a plane strain type of loading, i.e., the strain in the direction of the intermediate principal stress is equal to zero. Several investigators have attempted to evaluate the effect of plane strain type of loading (Figure 7.15) on the angle of friction of granular soils. A summary of the results obtained was compiled by Lee (1970). To discriminate the plane strain drained friction angle from the triaxial drained friction angle, the following notations have been used in the discussion in this section.

ϕ_p = drained friction angle obtained from plane strain tests
ϕ_t = drained friction angle obtained from triaxial tests

Lee (1970) also conducted some drained shear tests on a uniform sand collected from the Sacramento River near Antioch, California. Drained triaxial tests were conducted with specimens of diameter 35.56 mm and height 86.96 mm. Plane strain tests were carried out with rectangular specimens

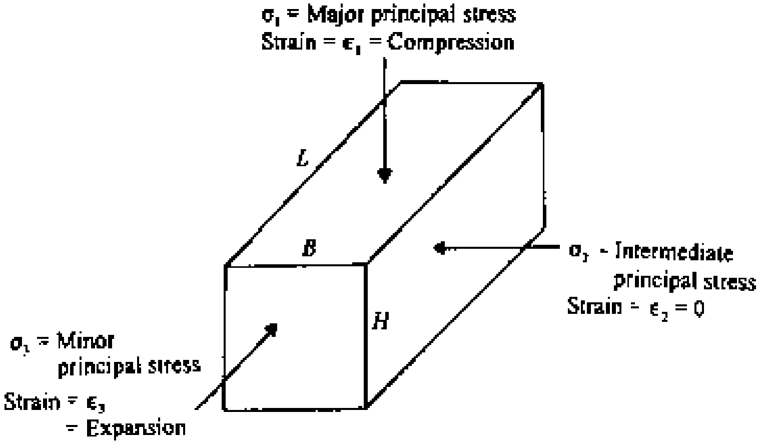


Figure 7.15 Plane strain condition.

60.96 mm high and 27.94 × 71.12 mm in cross-sectional. The plane strain condition was obtained by the use of two lubricated rigid side plates. Loading of the plane strain specimens was achieved by placing them inside a triaxial chamber. All specimens, triaxial and plane strain, were anisotropically consolidated with a ratio of major to minor principal stress of 2:

$$k_c = \frac{\sigma'_{1(\text{consolidation})}}{\sigma'_{3(\text{consolidation})}} = 2 \tag{7.9}$$

The results of this study are instructive and are summarized below.

1. For loose sand having a relative density of 38%, at low confining pressure, ϕ_p and ϕ_t were determined to be 45° and 38°, respectively. Similarly, for medium-dense sand having a relative density of 78%, ϕ_p and ϕ_t were 48° and 40°, respectively.
2. At higher confining pressure, the failure envelopes (plane strain and triaxial) flatten, and the slopes of the two envelopes become the same.
3. Figure 7.16 shows the results of the initial tangent modulus, E, for various confining pressures. For given values of σ'_3, the initial tangent modulus for plane strain loading shows a higher value than that for triaxial loading, although in both cases, E increases exponentially with the confining pressure.
4. The variation of Poisson's ratio ν with the confining pressure for plane strain and triaxial loading conditions is shown in Figure 7.17. The values of ν were calculated by measuring the change of the volume

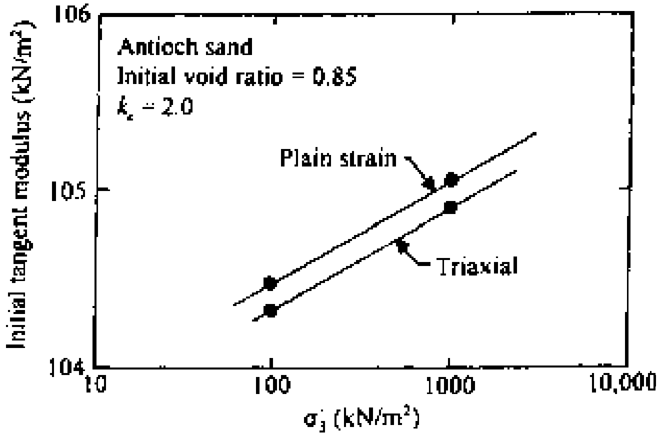


Figure 7.16 Initial tangent modulus from drained tests on Antioch sand (after Lee, 1970).

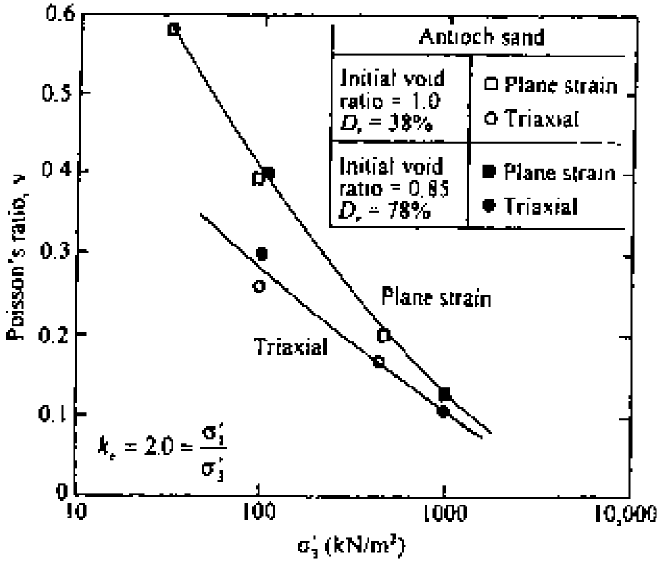


Figure 7.17 Poisson's ratio from drained tests on Antioch sand (after Lee, 1970).

of specimens and the corresponding axial strains during loading. The derivation of the equations used for finding ν can be explained with the aid of Figure 7.15. Assuming compressive strain to be positive, for the stresses shown in Figure 7.15,

$$\Delta H = H \in_1 \tag{7.10}$$

$$\Delta B = B \in_2 \tag{7.11}$$

$$\Delta L = L \in_3 \tag{7.12}$$

where

H, L, B = height, length, and width of specimen
$\Delta H, \Delta B, \Delta L$ = change in height, length, and width of specimen due to application of stresses
$\in_1, \in_2, \in_3$ = strains in direction of major, intermediate, and minor principal stresses

The volume of the specimen before load application is equal to $V = LBH$, and the volume of the specimen after the load application is equal to $V - \Delta V$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta V = V - (V - \Delta V) &= LBH - (L - \Delta L)(B - \Delta B)(H - \Delta H)\\ &= LBH - LBH(1 - \in_1)(1 - \in_2)(1 - \in_3)\end{aligned} \tag{7.13}$$

where ΔV is change in volume. Neglecting the higher order terms such as $\in_1\in_2, \in_2\in_3, \in_3\in_1$, and $\in_1\in_2\in_3$, Eq. (7.13) gives

$$v = \frac{\Delta V}{V} = \in_1 + \in_2 + \in_3 \tag{7.14}$$

where v is the change in volume per unit volume of the specimen.

For triaxial tests, $\in_2 = \in_3$, and they are expansions (negative sign). So, $\in_2 = \in_3 = -\nu \in_1$. Substituting this into Eq. (7.14), we get $v = \in_1 (1 - 2\nu)$, or

$$\nu = \frac{1}{2}\left(1 - \frac{v}{\in_1}\right) \qquad \text{(for triaxial test conditions)} \tag{7.15}$$

With plane strain loading conditions, $\in_2 = 0$ and $\in_3 = -\nu \in_1$. Hence, from Eq. (7.14), $v = \in_1 (1 - \nu)$, or

$$\nu = 1 - \frac{v}{\in_1} \qquad \text{(for plane strain conditions)} \tag{7.16}$$

Figure 7.17 shows that for a given value of σ'_3 the Poisson's ratio obtained from plane strain loading is higher than that obtained from triaxial loading.

Hence, on the basis of the available information at this time, it can be concluded that ϕ_p exceeds the value of ϕ_t by 0–8°. The greatest difference is associated with dense sands at low confining pressures. The smaller differences are associated with loose sands at all confining pressures, or dense sand at high confining pressures. Although still disputed, several suggestions have been made to use a value of $\phi \approx \phi_p = 1.1\phi_t$, for calculation of the bearing capacity of strip foundations. For rectangular foundations the stress conditions on the soil cannot be approximated by either triaxial or plane strain loadings. Meyerhof (1963) suggested for this case that the friction angle to be used for calculation of the ultimate bearing capacity should be approximated as

$$\phi = \left(1.1 - 0.1\frac{B_f}{L_f}\right)\phi_t \tag{7.17}$$

where L_f is the length of foundation and B_f the width of foundation.

After considering several experiment results, Lade and Lee (1976) gave the following approximate relations:

$$\phi_p = 1.5\phi_t - 17 \qquad \phi_t > 34° \tag{7.18}$$

$$\phi_p = \phi_t \qquad \phi_i \leq 34° \tag{7.19}$$

7.8 Shear strength of cohesive soils

The shear strength of cohesive soils can generally be determined in the laboratory by either direct shear test equipment or triaxial shear test equipment; however, the triaxial test is more commonly used. Only the shear strength of saturated cohesive soils will be treated here. The shear strength based on the effective stress can be given by [Eq. (7.3)] $s = c + \sigma' \tan\phi$. For normally consolidated clays, $c \approx 0$, and for overconsolidated clays, $c > 0$.

The basic features of the triaxial test equipment are shown in Figure 7.7. Three conventional types of tests are conducted with clay soils in the laboratory:

1. Consolidated drained test or drained test (CD test or D test).
2. Consolidated undrained test (CU test).
3. Unconsolidated undrained test (UU test).

Each of these tests will be separately considered in the following sections.

Consolidated drained test

For the consolidated drained test, the saturated soil specimen is first subjected to a confining pressure σ_3 through the chamber fluid; as a result, the pore water pressure of the specimen will increase by u_c. The connection to the drainage is kept open for complete drainage, so that u_c becomes equal

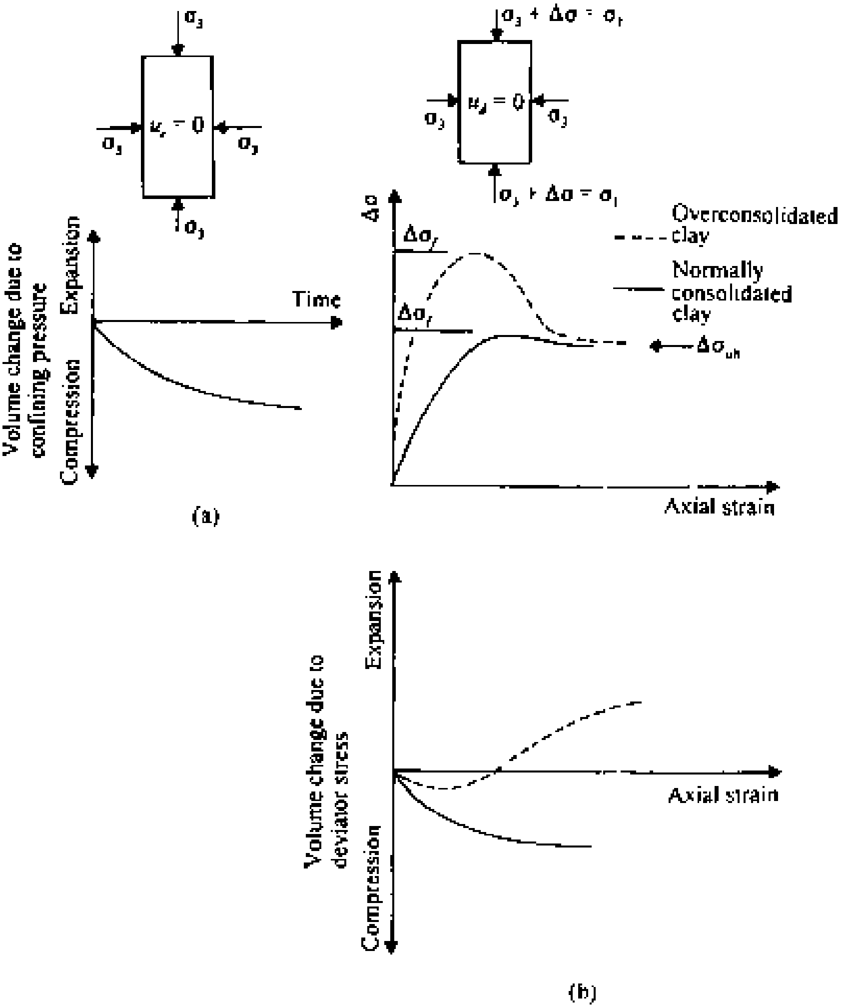


Figure 7.18 Consolidated drained triaxial test in clay (*a*) Application of confining pressure and (*b*) Application of deviator stress.

to zero. Then the deviator stress (piston stress) $\Delta\sigma$ is increased at a very slow rate, keeping the drainage valve open to allow complete dissipation of the resulting pore water pressure u_d. Figure 7.18 shows the nature of the variation of the deviator stress with axial strain. From Figure 7.18, it must also be pointed out that, during the application of the deviator stress, the volume of the specimen gradually reduces for normally consolidated clays. However, overconsolidated clays go through some reduction of volume initially but then expand. In a consolidated drained test the total stress is equal to the effective stress, since the excess pore water pressure is zero. At failure, the maximum *effective* principal stress is $\sigma_1' = \sigma_1 = \sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_\mathrm{f}$, where $\Delta\sigma_\mathrm{f}$ is the deviator stress at failure. The minimum effective principal stress is $\sigma_3' = \sigma_3$.

From the results of a number of tests conducted using several specimens, Mohr's circles at failure can be plotted as shown in Figure 7.19. The values of c and ϕ are obtained by drawing a common tangent to Mohr's circles, which is the Mohr–Coulomb envelope. For normally consolidated clays (Figure 7.19*a*), we can see that $c = 0$. Thus the equation of the Mohr–Coulomb envelope can be given by $s = \sigma' \tan\phi$. The slope of the failure

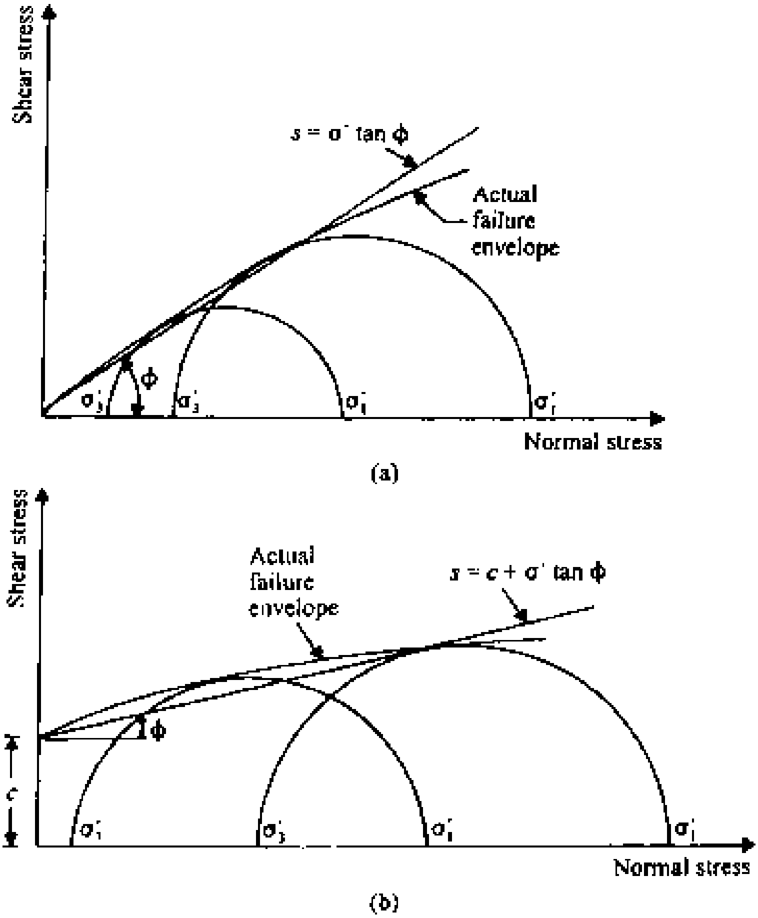


Figure 7.19 Failure envelope for (a) normally consolidated and (b) over consolidated clays from consolidated drained triaxial tests.

envelope will give us the angle of friction of the soil. As shown by Eq. (7.5), for these soils,

$$\sin\phi = \left(\frac{\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'}{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}\right)_{\text{failure}} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \sigma_1' = \sigma_3' \tan^2\left(45° + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

Figure 7.20 shows a modified form of Mohr's failure envelope of pure clay minerals. Note that it is a plot of $(\sigma_1' - \sigma_3')_{\text{failure}}/2$ versus $(\sigma_1' + \sigma_3')_{\text{failure}}/2$.

For overconsolidated clays (Figure 7.19*b*), $c \neq 0$. So the shear strength follows the equation $s = c + \sigma' \tan\phi$. The values of c and ϕ can be determined by measuring the intercept of the failure envelope on the shear stress axis and the slope of the failure envelope, respectively. To obtain a general relation between σ_1', σ_3', c, and ϕ, we refer to Figure 7.21, from which

$$\sin\phi = \frac{\overline{ac}}{\overline{bO} + \overline{Oa}} = \frac{(\sigma_1' - \sigma_3')/2}{c\ \cot\phi + (\sigma_1' + \sigma_3')/2}$$

$$\sigma_1'(1 - \sin\phi) = 2c\ \cos\phi + \sigma_3'(1 + \sin\phi) \tag{7.20}$$

or

$$\sigma_1' = \sigma_3' \frac{1 + \sin\phi}{1 - \sin\phi} + \frac{2c\cos\phi}{1 - \sin\phi}$$

$$\sigma_1' = \sigma_3' \tan^2\left(45° + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) + 2c\tan\left(45° + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{7.21}$$

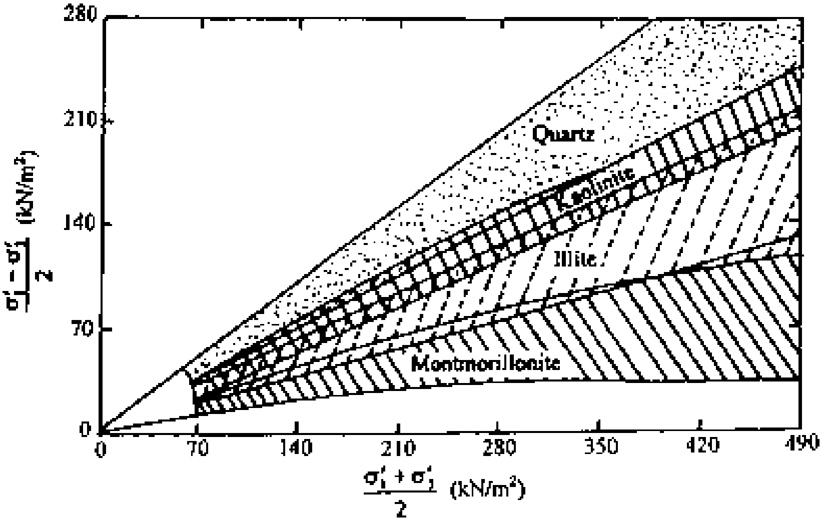


Figure 7.20 Modified Mohr's failure envelope for quartz and clay minerals (after Olson, 1974).

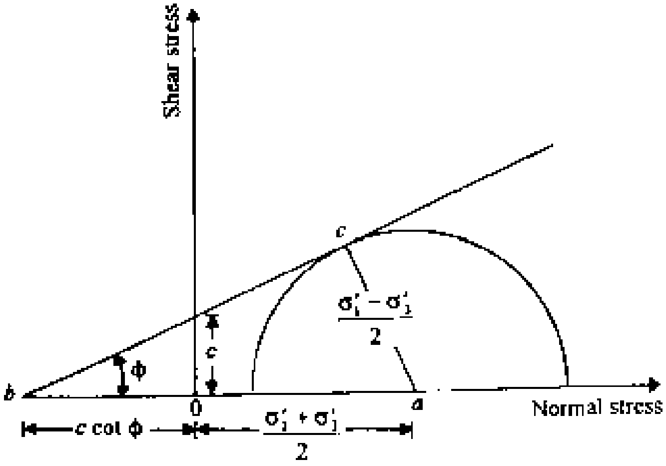


Figure 7.21 Derivation of Eq. (7.21).

Note that the plane of failure makes an angle of $45° + \phi/2$ with the major principal plane.

If a clay is initially consolidated by an encompassing chamber pressure of $\sigma_c = \sigma_c'$ and allowed to swell under a reduced chamber pressure of $\sigma_3 = \sigma_3'$, the specimen will be overconsolidated. The failure envelope obtained from consolidated drained triaxial tests of these types of specimens has two distinct branches, as shown in Figure 7.22. Portion *ab* of the failure envelope has a flatter slope with a cohesion intercept, and portion *bc* represents a normally consolidated stage following the equation $s = \sigma' \tan \phi_{bc}$.

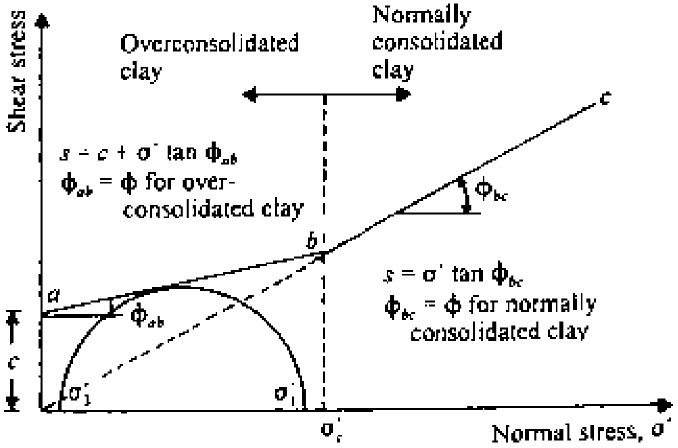


Figure 7.22 Failure envelope of a clay with preconsolidation pressure of σ_c'.

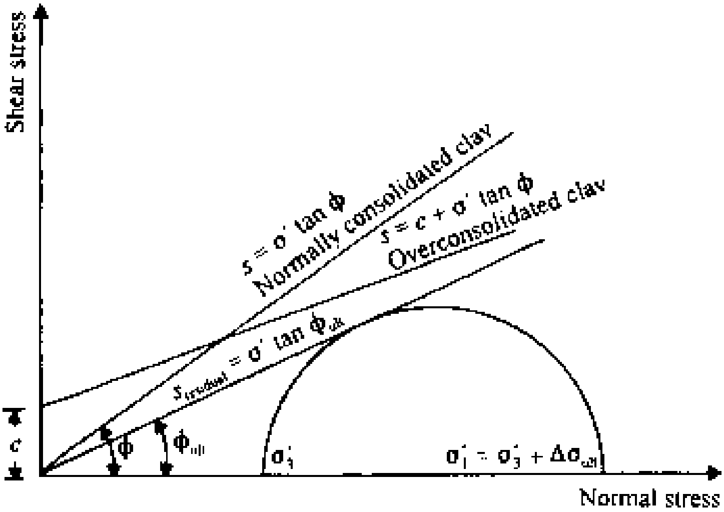


Figure 7.23 Residual shear strength of clay.

It may also be seen from Figure 7.18 that at very large strains the deviator stress reaches a constant value. The shear strength of clays at very large strains is referred to as *residual shear strength* (i.e., the ultimate shear strength). It has been proved that the residual strength of a given soil is independent of past stress history, and it can be given by the equation (see Figure 7.23).

$$s_{\text{residual}} = \sigma' \tan \phi_{\text{ult}} \tag{7.22}$$

(i.e., the *c* component is 0). For triaxial tests,

$$\phi_{\text{ult}} = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'}{\sigma' + \sigma_3'}\right)_{\text{residual}} \tag{7.23}$$

where $\sigma_1' = \sigma_3' + \Delta\sigma_{\text{ult}}$.

The residual friction angle in clays is of importance in subjects such as the long-term stability of slopes.

The consolidated drained triaxial test procedure described above is the conventional type. However, failure in the soil specimens can be produced by any one of the methods of axial compression or axial extension as described in Sec. 7.3 (with reference to Figure 7.10) allowing full drainage condition.

Consolidated undrained test

In the consolidated undrained test, the soil specimen is first consolidated by a chamber-confining pressure σ_3; full drainage from the specimen is allowed. After complete dissipation of excess pore water pressure, u_c, generated by the confining pressure, the deviator stress $\Delta\sigma$ is increased to cause failure of the specimen. During this phase of loading, the drainage line from the specimen is closed. Since drainage is not permitted, the pore water pressure (pore water pressure due to deviator stress u_d) in the specimen increases. Simultaneous measurements of $\Delta\sigma$ and u_d are made during the test. Figure 7.24 shows the nature of the variation of $\Delta\sigma$ and u_d with axial strain; also shown is the nature of the variation of the pore water pressure parameter $A[A = u_d/\Delta\sigma$; see Eq. (4.9)] with axial strain. The value of A at failure, A_f, is positive for normally consolidated clays and becomes negative for overconsolidated clays (also see Table 4.2). Thus A_f is dependent on the overconsolidation ratio. The overconsolidation ratio, OCR, for triaxial test conditions may be defined as

$$\mathrm{OCR} = \frac{\sigma'_c}{\sigma_3} \tag{7.24}$$

where $\sigma'_c = \sigma_c$ is the maximum chamber pressure at which the specimen is consolidated and then allowed to rebound under a chamber pressure of σ_3.

The typical nature of the variation of A_f with the overconsolidation ratio for Weald clay is shown in Figure 4.11.

At failure,

total major principal stress $= \sigma_1 = \sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_f$
total minor principal stress $= \sigma_3$
pore water pressure at failure $= u_{d(\text{failure})} = A_f\Delta\sigma_f$
effective major principal stress $= \sigma_1 - A_f\Delta\sigma_f = \sigma'_1$
effective minor principal stress $= \sigma_3 - A_f\Delta\sigma_f = \sigma'_3$

Consolidated undrained tests on a number of specimens can be conducted to determine the shear strength parameters of a soil, as shown for the case of a normally consolidated clay in Figure 7.25. The total-stress Mohr's circles (circles A and B) for two tests are shown by dashed lines. The effective-stress Mohr's circles C and D correspond to the total-stress circles A and B, respectively. Since C and D are effective-stress circles at failure, a common tangent drawn to these circles will give the Mohr–Coulomb failure envelope given by the equation $s = \sigma' \tan\phi$. If we draw a common tangent to the total-stress circles, it will be a straight line passing through the origin. This is the total-stress failure envelope, and it may be given by

$$s = \sigma \tan\phi_{cu} \tag{7.25}$$

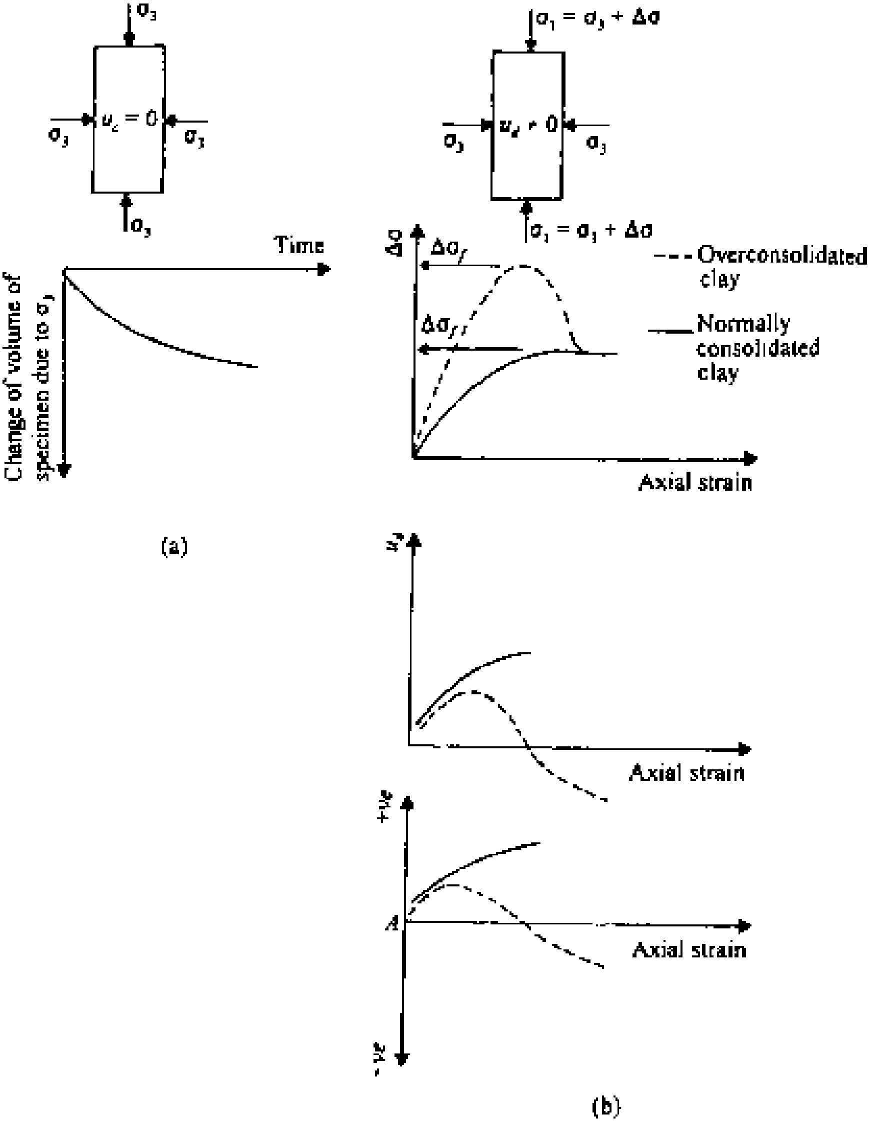


Figure 7.24 Consolidated undrained triaxial test (*a*) Application of confining pressure and (*b*) Application of deviator stress.

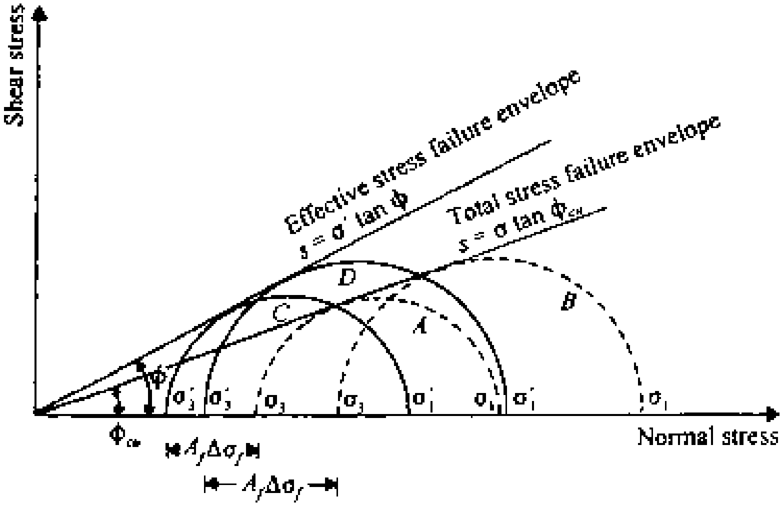


Figure 7.25 Consolidated undrained test results—normally consolidated clay.

where ϕ_{cu} is the consolidated undrained angle of friction.

The total-stress failure envelope for an overconsolidated clay will be of the nature shown in Figure 7.26 and can be given by the relation

$$s = c_{\text{cu}} + \sigma \tan \phi_{\text{cu}} \tag{7.26}$$

where c_{cu} is the intercept of the total-stress failure envelope along the shear stress axis.

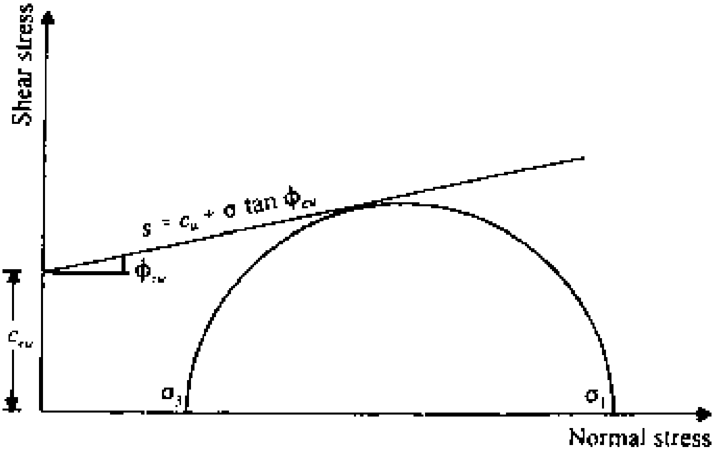


Figure 7.26 Consolidated undrained test—total stress envelope for overconsolidated clay.

The shear strength parameters for overconsolidated clay based on effective stress, i.e., c and ϕ, can be obtained by plotting the effective-stress Mohr's circle and then drawing a common tangent.

As in consolidated drained tests, shear failure in the specimen can be produced by axial compression or extension by changing the loading conditions.

Unconsolidated undrained test

In unconsolidated undrained triaxial tests, drainage from the specimen is not allowed at any stage. First, the chamber-confining pressure σ_3 is applied, after which the deviator stress $\Delta\sigma$ is increased until failure occurs. For these tests,

total major principal stress $= \sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_f = \sigma_1$
total minor principal stress $= \sigma_3$

Tests of this type can be performed quickly, since drainage is not allowed. For a saturated soil the deviator stress failure, $\Delta\sigma_f$, is practically the same, irrespective of the confining pressure σ_3 (Figure 7.27). So the total-stress failure envelope can be assumed to be a horizontal line, and $\phi = 0$. The undrained shear strength can be expressed as

$$s = S_u = \frac{\Delta\sigma_f}{2} \tag{7.27}$$

This is generally referred to as the shear strength based on the $\phi = 0$ concept.

The fact that the strength of saturated clays in unconsolidated undrained loading conditions is the same, irrespective of the confining pressure σ_3

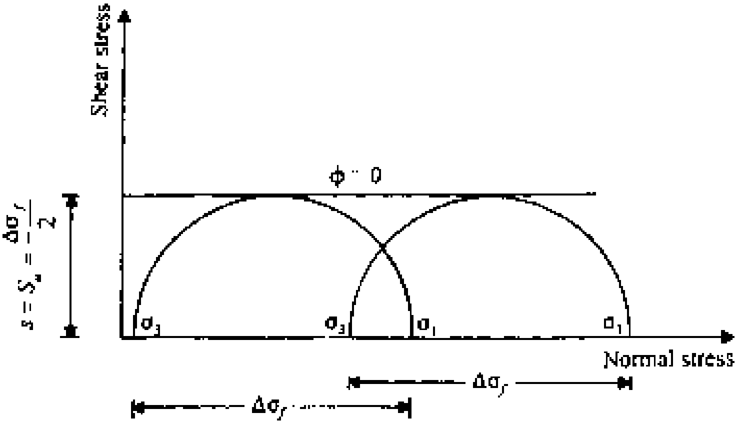


Figure 7.27 Unconsolidated undrained triaxial test.

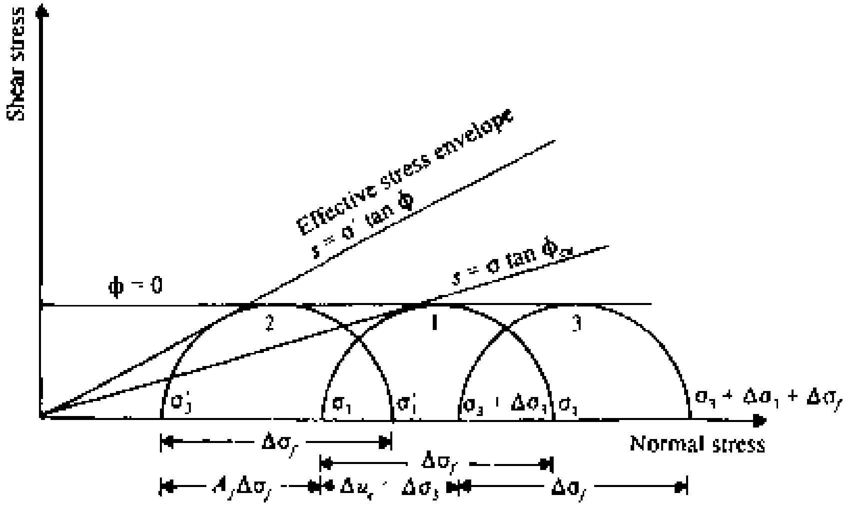


Figure 7.28 Effective- and total-stress Mohr's circles for unconsolidated undrained tests.

can be explained with the help of Figure 7.28. If a saturated clay specimen *A* is consolidated under a chamber-confining pressure of σ_3 and then sheared to failure under undrained conditions, Mohr's circle at failure will be represented by circle no. 1. The effective-stress Mohr's circle corresponding to circle no. 1 is circle no. 2, which touches the effective-stress failure envelope. If a similar soil specimen *B*, consolidated under a chamber-confining pressure of σ_3, is subjected to an additional confining pressure of $\Delta\sigma_3$ without allowing drainage, the pore water pressure will increase by Δu_c. We saw in Chap. 4 that $\Delta u_c = B\Delta\sigma_3$ and, for saturated soils, $B = 1$. So, $\Delta u_c = \Delta\sigma_3$.

Since the effective confining pressure of specimen *B* is the same as specimen *A*, it will fail with the same deviator stress, $\Delta\sigma_f$. The total-stress Mohr's circle for this specimen (i.e., *B*) at failure can be given by circle no. 3. So, at failure, for specimen *B*,

$$\text{Total minor principal stress} = \sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_3$$

$$\text{Total minor principal stress} = \sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_f$$

The effective stresses for the specimen are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Effective major principal stress} &= (\sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_f) - (\Delta u_c + A_f\Delta\sigma_f)\\ &= (\sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_f) - A_f\Delta\sigma_f\\ &= \sigma_1 - A_f\Delta\sigma_f = \sigma_1'\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Effective minor principal stress} = (\sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_3) - (\Delta u_c + A_f \Delta\sigma_f)$$
$$= \sigma_3 - A_f \Delta\sigma_f = \sigma_3'$$

The above principal stresses are the same as those we had for specimen *A*. Thus the effective-stress Mohr's circle at failure for specimen *B* will be the same as that for specimen *A*, i.e., circle no. 1.

The value of $\Delta\sigma_3$ could be of any magnitude in specimen *B*; in all cases, $\Delta\sigma_f$ would be the same.

EXAMPLE 7.1

Consolidated drained triaxial tests on two specimens of a soil gave the following results:

Test no.	*Confining pressure* $\sigma_3 (kN/m^2)$	*Deviator stress at failure* $\Delta\sigma_f (kN/m^2)$
1	70	440.4
2	92	474.7

Determine the values of c and ϕ for the soil.

SOLUTION From Eq. (7.21), $\sigma_1 = \sigma_3 \tan^2(45° + \phi/2) + 2c \tan\ (45° + \phi/2)$. For test 1, $\sigma_3 = 70\,\text{kN/m}^2$; $\sigma_1 = \sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_f = 70 + 440.4 = 510.4\,\text{kN/m}^2$. So,

$$510.4 = 70 \tan^2\left(45° + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) + 2c \tan\left(45° + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{E7.1}$$

Similarly, for test 2, $\sigma_3 = 92\,\text{kN/m}^2$; $\sigma_1 = 92 + 474.7 = 566.7\,\text{kN/m}^2$. Thus

$$566.7 = 92 \tan^2\left(45° + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) + 2c \tan\left(45° + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{E7.2}$$

Subtracting Eq. (E7.1) from Eq. (E7.2) gives

$$56.3 = 22 \tan^2\left(45° + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

$$\phi = 2\left[\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{56.3}{22}\right)^{1/2} - 45°\right] = 26°$$

Substituting $\phi = 26°$ in Eq. (E7.1) gives

$$c = \frac{510.4 - 70\tan^2(45° + 26/2)}{2\tan(45° + 25/2)} = \frac{510.4 - 70(2.56)}{2(1.6)} = 103.5\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

EXAMPLE 7.2

A normally consolidated clay specimen was subjected to a consolidated undrained test. At failure, $\sigma_3 = 100\,\text{kN/m}^2$, $\sigma_1 = 204\,\text{kN/m}^2$, and $u_\text{d} = 50\,\text{kN/m}^2$. Determine ϕ_cu and ϕ.

SOLUTION Referring to Figure 7.29,

$$\sin\phi_\text{cu} = \frac{\overline{ab}}{\overline{Oa}} = \frac{(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)/2}{(\sigma_1 + \sigma_3)/2} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{\sigma_1 + \sigma_3} = \frac{204 - 100}{204 + 100} = \frac{104}{304}$$

Hence

$$\phi_\text{cu} = 20°$$

Again,

$$\sin\phi = \frac{\overline{cd}}{\overline{Oc}} = \frac{\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'}{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}$$

$$\sigma_3' = 100 - 50 = 50\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\sigma_1' = 204 - 50 = 154\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

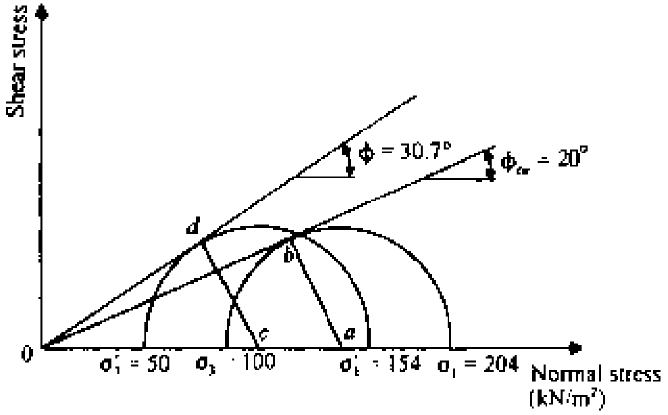


Figure 7.29 Total- and effective-stress Mohr's circles.

So,

$$\sin\phi = \frac{154-50}{154+54} = \frac{104}{204}$$

Hence

$$\phi = 30.7°$$

7.9 Unconfined compression test

The unconfined compression test is a special case of the unconsolidated undrained triaxial test. In this case no confining pressure to the specimen is applied (i.e., $\sigma_3 = 0$). For such conditions, for saturated clays, the pore water pressure in the specimen at the beginning of the test is negative (capillary pressure). Axial stress on the specimen is gradually increased until the specimen fails (Figure 7.30). At failure, $\sigma_3 = 0$ and so

$$\sigma_1 = \sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma_f = \Delta\sigma_f = q_u \tag{7.28}$$

where q_u is the unconfined compression strength.

Theoretically, the value of $\Delta\sigma_f$ of a saturated clay should be the same as that obtained from unconsolidated undrained tests using similar

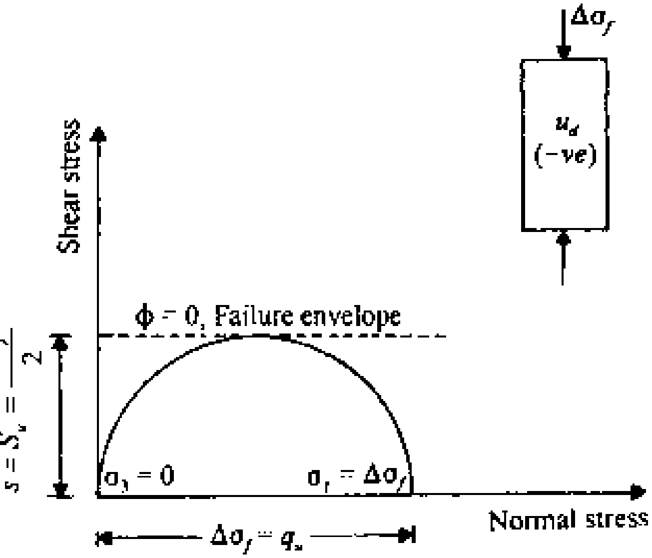


Figure 7.30 Unconfined compression strength.

Table 7.3 Consistency and unconfined compression strength of clays

Consistency	q_u (kN/m^2)
Very soft	0–24
Soft	24–48
Medium	48–96
Stiff	96–192
Very stiff	192–383
Hard	>383

specimens. Thus $s = S_u = q_u/2$. However, this seldom provides high-quality results.

The general relation between consistency and unconfined compression strength of clays is given in Table 7.3.

7.10 Modulus of elasticity and Poisson's ratio from triaxial tests

For calculation of soil settlement and distribution of stress in a soil mass, it may be required to know the magnitudes of the modulus of elasticity and Poisson's ratio of soil. These values can be determined from a triaxial test. Figure 7.31 shows a plot of $\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'$ versus axial strain $\in$ for a triaxial test,

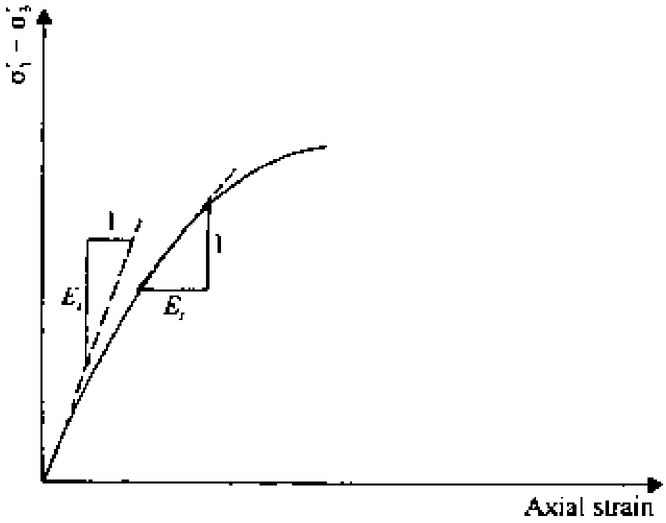


Figure 7.31 Definition of E_i and E_t.

where σ_3 is kept constant. The definitions of the initial tangent modulus E_i and the tangent modulus E_t at a certain stress level are also shown in the figure. Janbu (1963) showed that the initial tangent modulus can be estimated as

$$E_i = Kp_a \left(\frac{\sigma'_3}{p_a}\right)^n \tag{7.29}$$

where

σ'_3 = minor effective principal stress
p_a = atmospheric pressure (same pressure units as E_i and σ'_3)
K = modulus number
n = exponent determining the rate of variation of E_i with σ'_3

For a given soil, the magnitudes of K and n can be determined from the results of a number of triaxial tests and then plotting E_i versus σ'_3 on log–log scales. The magnitude of K for various soils usually falls in the range of 300–2000. Similarly, the range of n is between 0.3 and 0.6.

The tangent modulus E_t can be determined as

$$E_t = \frac{\partial\,(\sigma'_1 - \sigma'_3)}{\partial \in} \tag{7.30}$$

Duncan and Chang (1970) showed that

$$E_t = \left[1 - \frac{R_f(1 - \sin\phi)(\sigma'_1 - \sigma'_3)}{2c\cos\phi + 2\phi'_3 \sin\phi}\right]^2 Kp_a \left(\frac{\sigma'_3}{p_a}\right)^n \tag{7.31}$$

where R_f is the failure ratio. For most soils, the magnitude of R_f falls between 0.75 and 1.

The value of Poisson's ratio (ν) can be determined by the same type of triaxial test (i.e., σ_3 constant) as

$$\nu = \frac{\Delta \in_a - \Delta \in_\upsilon}{2\Delta \in_a} \tag{7.32}$$

where

$\Delta\in_a$ = increase in axial strain
$\Delta\in_\upsilon$ = volumetric strain = $\Delta\in_a + 2\Delta\in_r$
$\Delta\in_r$ = lateral strain

So

$$\nu = \frac{\Delta\in_a - (\Delta\in_a + 2\Delta\in_r)}{2\Delta\in_a} = -\frac{\Delta\in_r}{\Delta\in_a} \tag{7.33}$$

7.11 Friction angles ϕ and ϕ_{cu}

Figure 7.32 shows plots of the friction angle ϕ versus plasticity index PI of several clays compiled by Kenney (1959). In general, this figure shows an almost linear relationship between sin ϕ and log (PI).

Figure 7.33 shows the variation of the magnitude of ϕ_{ult} for several clays with the percentage of clay-size fraction present. ϕ_{ult} gradually decreases with the increase of clay-size fraction. At very high clay content, ϕ_{ult} approached the value of ϕ_{μ} (angle of sliding friction) for sheet minerals. For highly plastic sodium montmorillonites, the value of ϕ_{ult} can be as low as 3–4°.

7.12 Effect of rate of strain on the undrained shear strength

Casagrande and Wilson (1949, 1951) studied the problem of the effect of rate of strain on the undrained shear strength of saturated clays and clay shales. The time of loading ranged from 1 to 10^4 min. Using a time of loading of 1 min as the reference, the undrained strength of some clays decreased by as much as 20%. The nature of the variation of the undrained shear strength and time to cause failure, t, can be approximated by a straight

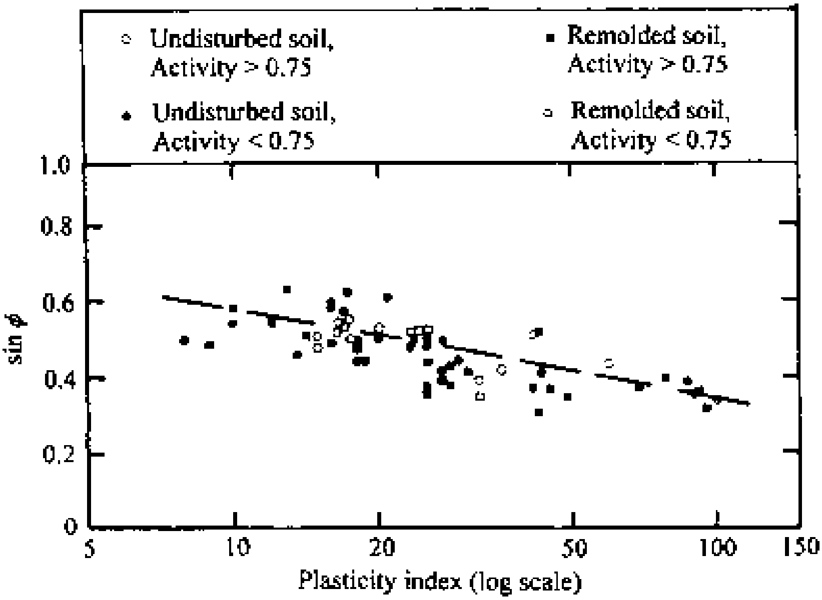


Figure 7.32 Relationship between sin ϕ and plasticity index for normally consolidated clays (after Kenney, 1959).

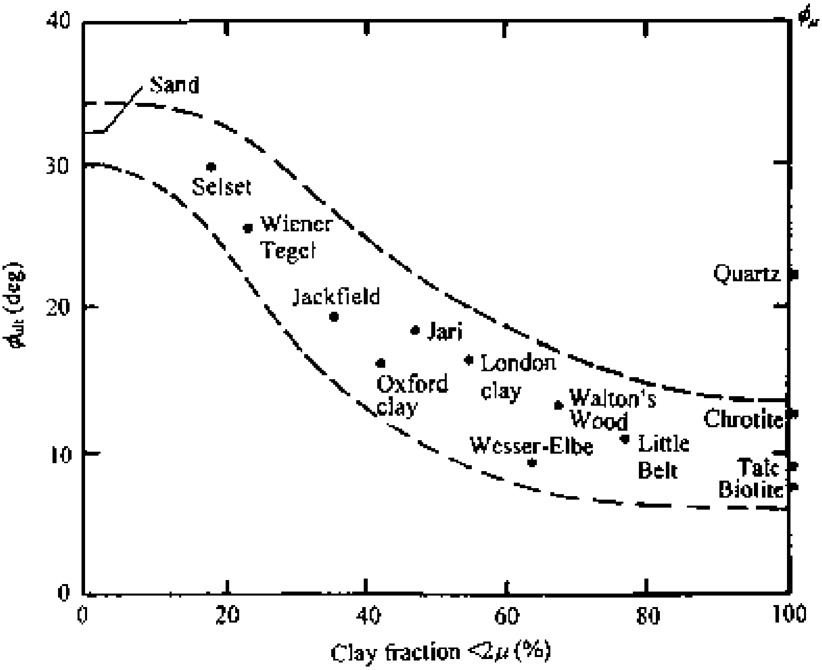


Figure 7.33 Variation of ϕ_{ult} with percentage of clay content (after Skempton, 1964).

line in a plot of S_u versus $\log t$, as shown in Figure 7.34. Based on this, Hvorslev (1960) gave the following relation:

$$S_{u(t)} = S_{u(a)} \left[1 - \rho_a \log \left(\frac{t}{t_a} \right) \right] \tag{7.34}$$

where

$S_{u(t)}$ = undrained shear strength with time, t, to cause failure
$S_{u(a)}$ = undrained shear strength with time, t_a, to cause failure
ρ_a = coefficient for decrease of strength with time

In view of the time duration, Hvorslev suggested that the reference time be taken as 1000 min. In that case,

$$S_{u(t)} = S_{u(m)} \left[1 - \rho_m \log \left(\frac{t \text{ min}}{1000 \text{ min}} \right) \right] \tag{7.35}$$

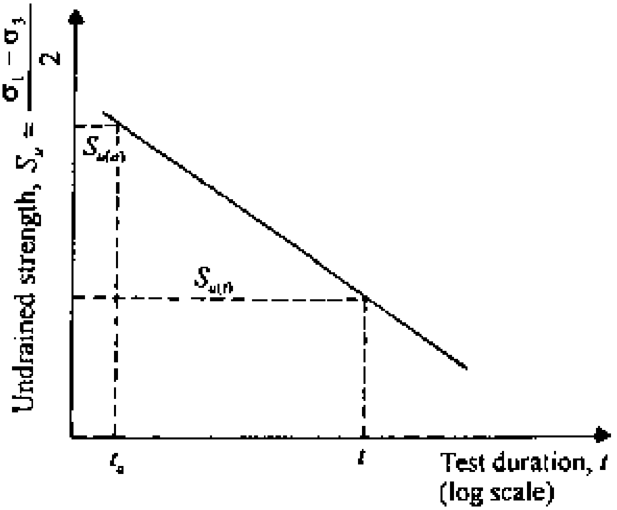


Figure 7.34 Effect of rate of strain on undrained shear strength.

where

$S_{u(m)}$ = undrained shear strength at time 1000 min
ρ_m = coefficient for decrease of strength with reference time of 1000 min

The relation between ρ_a in Eq. (7.34) and ρ_m in Eq. (7.35) can be given by

$$\rho_m = \frac{\rho_a}{1 - \rho_a \log[(1000 \text{ min}) / (t_a \text{ min})]} \tag{7.36}$$

For $t_a = 1$ min, Eq. (7.36) gives

$$\rho_m = \frac{\rho_1}{1 - 3\rho_1} \tag{7.37}$$

Hvorslev's analysis of the results of Casagrande and Wilson (1951) yielded the following results: general range $\rho_1 = 0.04$–0.09 and $\rho_m = 0.05$–0.13; Cucaracha clay-shale $\rho_1 = 0.07$–0.19 and $\rho_m = 0.09$–0.46. The study of the strength–time relation of Bjerrum *et al.* (1958) for a normally consolidated marine clay (consolidated undrained test) yielded a value of ρ_m in the range 0.06–0.07.

7.13 Effect of temperature on the undrained shear strength

A number of investigations have been conducted to determine the effect of temperature on the shear strength of saturated clay. Most studies indicate that a decrease of temperature will cause an increase of shear strength. Figure 7.35 shows the variation of the unconfined compression strength ($q_u = 2S_u$) of kaolinite with temperature. Note that for a given moisture content the value of q_u decreases with increase of temperature. A similar trend has been observed for San Francisco Bay mud (Mitchell, 1964), as shown in Figure 7.36. The undrained shear strength $[S_u = (\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)/2]$ varies linearly with temperature. The results are for specimens with equal mean effective stress and similar structure. From these tests,

$$\frac{dS_u}{dT} \approx 0.59\,\text{kN}/\left(\text{m}^2 \cdot {}^\circ\text{C}\right) \tag{7.38}$$

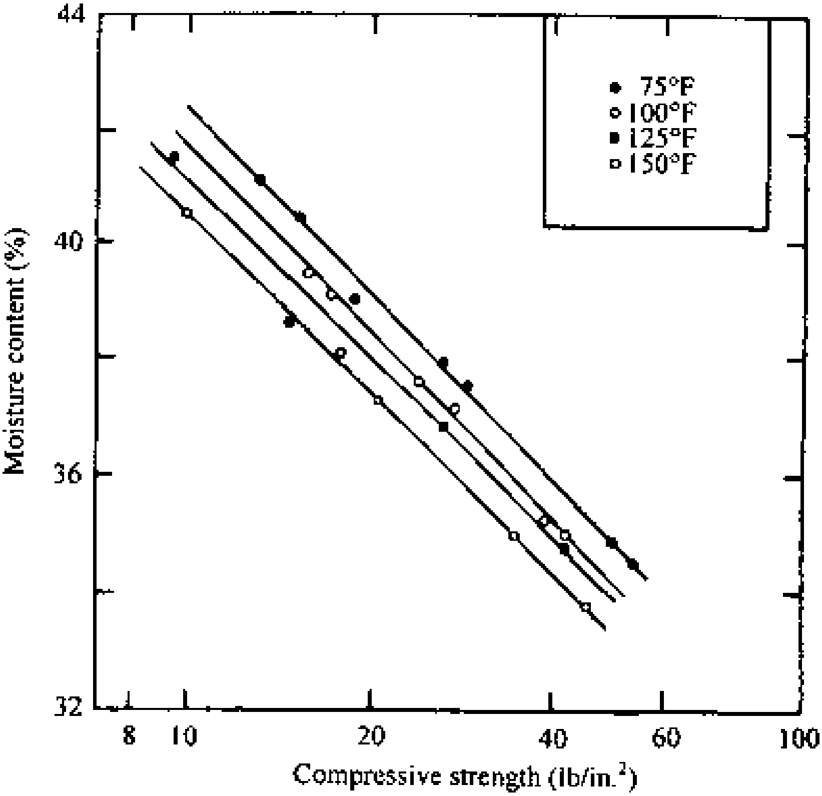


Figure 7.35 Unconfined compression strength of kaolinite—effect of temperature (After Sherif and Burrous, 1969). (*Note*: 1 lb/in.^{2} = 6.9 kN/m^2.)

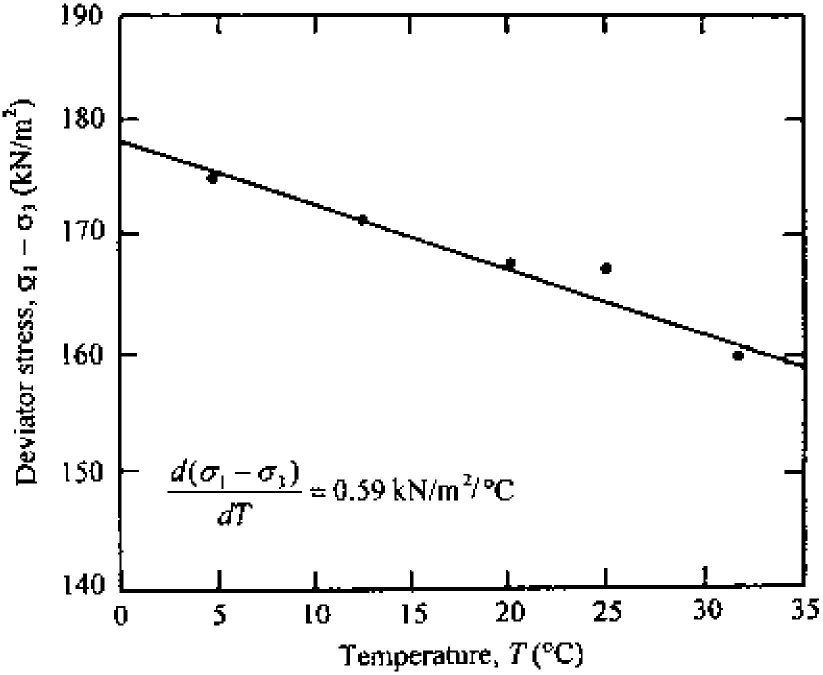


Figure 7.36 Effect of temperature on shear strength of San Francisco Bay mud (after Mitchell, 1964).

Kelly (1978) also studied the effect of temperature on the undrained shear strength of some undisturbed marine clay samples and commercial illite and montmorillonite. Undrained shear strengths at 4 and 20°C were determined. Based on the laboratory test results, Kelly proposed the following correlation:

$$\frac{\Delta S_u}{\Delta T} = 0.213 + 0.00747\ S_{u(\text{average})} \tag{7.39}$$

where $S_{u(\text{average})} = (S_{u(4°C)} + S_{u(20°C)})/2$ in lb/ft^2 and T is the temperature in °C.

Example 7.3

The following are the results of an unconsolidated undrained test: $\sigma_3 = 70\,\text{kN/m}^2$, $\sigma_1 = 210\,\text{kN/m}^2$. The temperature of the test was 12°C. Estimate the undrained shear strength of the soil at a temperature of 20°C.

SOLUTION

$$S_{u(12°C)} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2} = \frac{210 - 70}{2} = 70 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Since 47.88 $\text{N/m}^2 = 1 \text{ lb/ft}^2$,

$$S_{u(average)} = \frac{S_{u(4°C)} + S_{u(20°C)}}{2} = S_{u(12°C)} = \frac{(70)(1000)}{47.88} = 1462 \text{ lb/ft}^2$$

From Eq. (7.39),

$$\Delta S_u = \Delta T \left[0.213 + 0.00747 S_{u(average)}\right].$$

Now,

$$\Delta T = 20 - 12 = 8°\text{C}$$

and

$$\Delta S_u = 8\,[0.213 + 0.00747\,(1462)] = 89.07 \text{ lb/ft}^2.$$

Hence,

$$S_{u(20°C)} = 1462 - 89.07 = 1372.93 \text{ lb/ft}^2 = 65.74 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

7.14 Stress path

Results of triaxial tests can be represented by diagrams called *stress paths*. A stress path is a line connecting a series of points, each point representing a successive stress state experienced by a soil specimen during the progress of a test. There are several ways in which the stress path can be drawn, two of which are discussed below.

Rendulic plot

A Rendulic plot is a plot representing the stress path for triaxial tests originally suggested by Rendulic (1937) and later developed by Henkel (1960). It is a plot of the state of stress during triaxial tests on a plane *Oabc*, as shown in Figure 7.37.

Along *Oa*, we plot $\sqrt{2}\sigma'_r$, and along *Oc*, we plot σ'_a (σ'_r is the effective radial stress and σ'_a the effective axial stress). Line *Od* in Figure 7.38

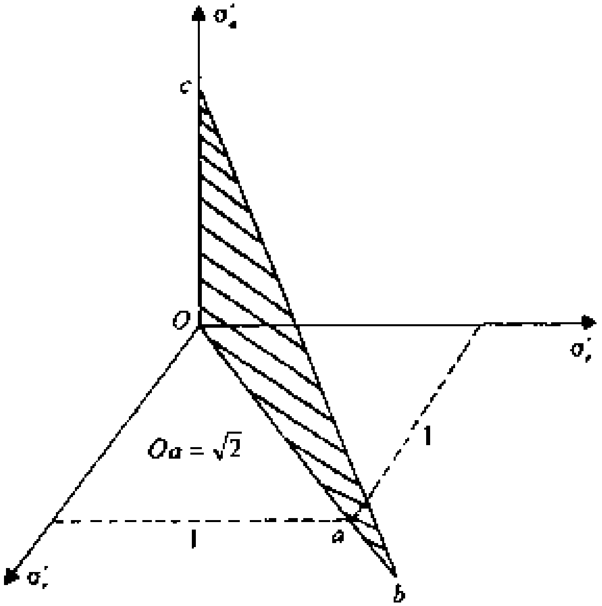


Figure 7.37 Rendulic plot.

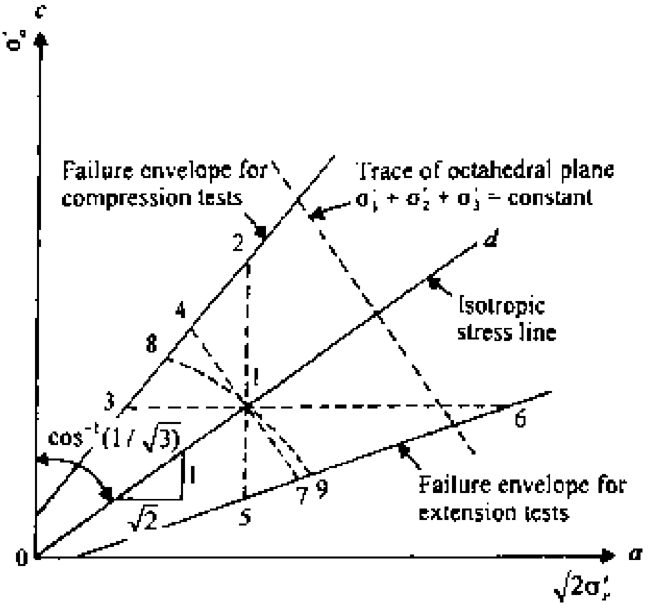


Figure 7.38 Rendulic diagram.

represents the isotropic stress line. The direction cosines of this line are $1/\sqrt{3},\ 1/\sqrt{3},\ 1/\sqrt{3}$. Line Od in Figure 7.38 will have a slope of 1 vertical to $\sqrt{2}$ horizontal. Note that the trace of the octahedral plane ($\sigma'_1+\sigma'_2+\sigma'_3=$ const) will be at right angles to the line Od.

In triaxial equipment, if a soil specimen is hydrostatically consolidated (i.e., $\sigma'_a=\sigma'_r$), it may be represented by point 1 on the line Od. If this specimen is subjected to a drained axial compression test by increasing σ'_a and keeping σ'_r constant, the stress path can be represented by the line 1–2. Point 2 represents the state of stress at failure. Similarly,

Line 1–3 will represent a drained axial compression test conducted by keeping σ'_a constant and reducing σ'_r.
Line 1–4 will represent a drained axial compression test where the mean principal stress (or $J=\sigma'_1+\sigma'_2+\sigma'_3$) is kept constant.
Line 1–5 will represent a drained axial extension test conducted by keeping σ'_r constant and reducing σ'_a.
Line 1–6 will represent a drained axial extension test conducted by keeping σ'_a constant and increasing σ'_r.
Line 1–7 will represent a drained axial extension test with $J=\sigma'_1+\sigma'_2+\sigma'_3$ constant (i.e., $J=\sigma'_a+2\sigma'_r$ constant).
Curve 1–8 will represent an undrained compression test.
Curve 1–9 will represent an undrained extension test.
Curves 1–8 and 1–9 are independent of the total stress combination, since the pore water pressure is adjusted to follow the stress path shown.

If we are given the effective stress path from a triaxial test in which failure of the specimen was caused by loading in an undrained condition, the pore water pressure at a given state during the loading can be easily determined. This can be explained with the aid of Figure 7.39. Consider a soil specimen consolidated with an encompassing pressure σ_r and with failure caused in the undrained condition by increasing the axial stress σ_a. Let acb be the effective stress path for this test. We are required to find the excess pore water pressures that were generated at points c and b (i.e., at failure). For this type of triaxial test, we know that the *total stress path* will follow a vertical line such as ae. To find the excess pore water pressure at c, we draw a line cf parallel to the isotropic stress line. Line cf intersects line ae at d. The pore water pressure u_d at c is the *vertical distance* between points c and d. The pore water pressure $u_{d(\text{failure})}$ at b can similarly be found by drawing bg parallel to the isotropic stress line and measuring the vertical distance between points b and g.

Lambe's stress path

Lambe (1964) suggested another type of stress path in which are plotted the successive effective normal and shear stresses on a plane making an

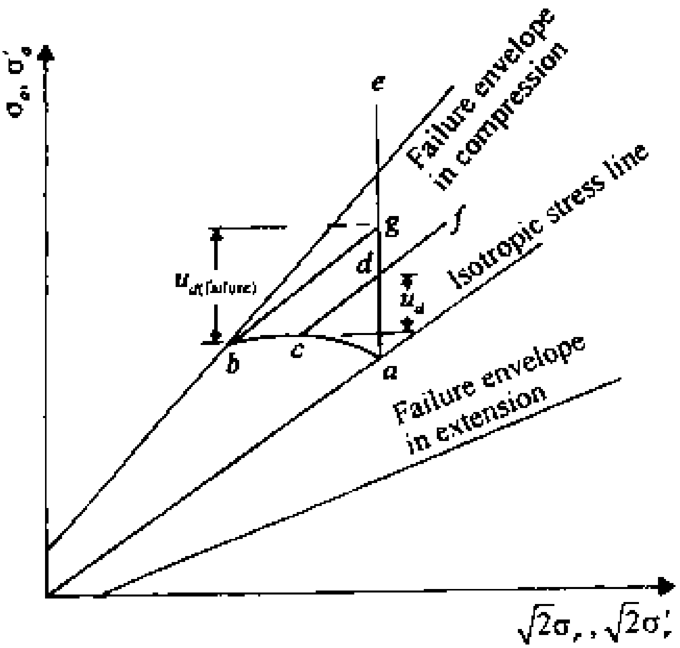


Figure 7.39 Determination of pore water pressure in a Rendulic plot.

angle of 45° to the major principal plane. To understand what a stress path is, consider a normally consolidated clay specimen subjected to a consolidated drained triaxial test (Figure 7.40*a*). At any time during the test, the stress condition in the specimen can be represented by Mohr's circle (Figure 7.40*b*). Note here that, in a drained test, total stress is equal to effective stress. So

$$\sigma_3 = \sigma'_3 \qquad \text{(minor principal stress)}$$

$$\sigma_1 = \sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma = \sigma'_1 \quad \text{(major principal stress)}$$

At failure, Mohr's circle will touch a line that is the Mohr–Coulomb failure envelope; this makes an angle ϕ with the normal stress axis (ϕ is the soil friction angle).

We now consider the effective normal and shear stresses on a plane making an angle of 45° with the major principal plane. Thus

$$\text{Effective normal stress, } p' = \frac{\sigma'_1 + \sigma'_3}{2} \tag{7.40}$$

$$\text{Shear stress, } q' = \frac{\sigma'_1 - \sigma'_3}{2} \tag{7.41}$$

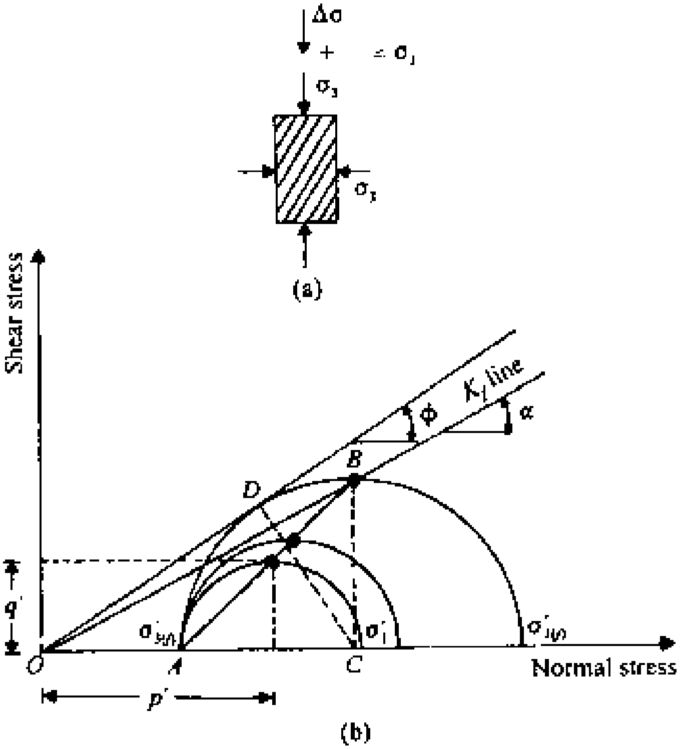


Figure 7.40 Definition of stress path.

The points on Mohr's circle having coordinates p' and q' are shown in Figure 7.40*b*. If the points with p' and q' coordinates of all Mohr's circles are joined, this will result in the line *AB*. This line is called a stress path. The straight line joining the origin and point *B* will be defined here as the K_f line. The K_f line makes an angle α with the normal stress axis. Now

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{BC}{OC} = \frac{\left(\sigma'_{1(\mathrm{f})} - \sigma'_{3(\mathrm{f})}\right)/2}{\left(\sigma'_{1(\mathrm{f})} + \sigma'_{3(\mathrm{f})}\right)/2} \tag{7.42}$$

where $\sigma'_{1(\mathrm{f})}$ and $\sigma'_{3(\mathrm{f})}$ are the effective major and minor principal stresses at failure.

Similarly,

$$\sin\phi = \frac{DC}{OC} = \frac{\left(\sigma'_{1(\mathrm{f})} - \sigma'_{3(\mathrm{f})}\right)/2}{\left(\sigma'_{1(\mathrm{f})} + \sigma'_{3(\mathrm{f})}\right)/2} \tag{7.43}$$

From Eqs. (7.42) and (7.43), we obtain

$$\tan\alpha = \sin\phi \tag{7.44}$$

For a consolidated undrained test, consider a clay specimen consolidated under an isotropic stress $\sigma_3 = \sigma_3'$ in a triaxial test. When a deviator stress $\Delta\sigma$ is applied on the specimen and drainage is not permitted, there will be an increase in the pore water pressure, Δu (Figure 7.41*a*):

$$\Delta u = A\Delta\sigma \tag{7.45}$$

where A is the pore water pressure parameter.

At this time the effective major and minor principal stresses can be given by

$$\text{Minor effective principal stress} = \sigma_3' = \sigma_3 - \Delta u$$

$$\text{Major effective principal stress} = \sigma_1' = \sigma_1 - \Delta u = (\sigma_3 + \Delta\sigma) - \Delta u$$

Mohr's circles for the total and effective stress at any time of deviator stress application are shown in Figure 7.41*b*. (Mohr's circle no. 1 is for total stress and no. 2 for effective stress.) Point B on the effective-stress Mohr's circle has the coordinates p' and q'. If the deviator stress is increased until failure occurs, the effective-stress Mohr's circle at failure will be represented by circle no. 3, as shown in Figure 7.41*b*, and the effective-stress path will be represented by the curve ABC.

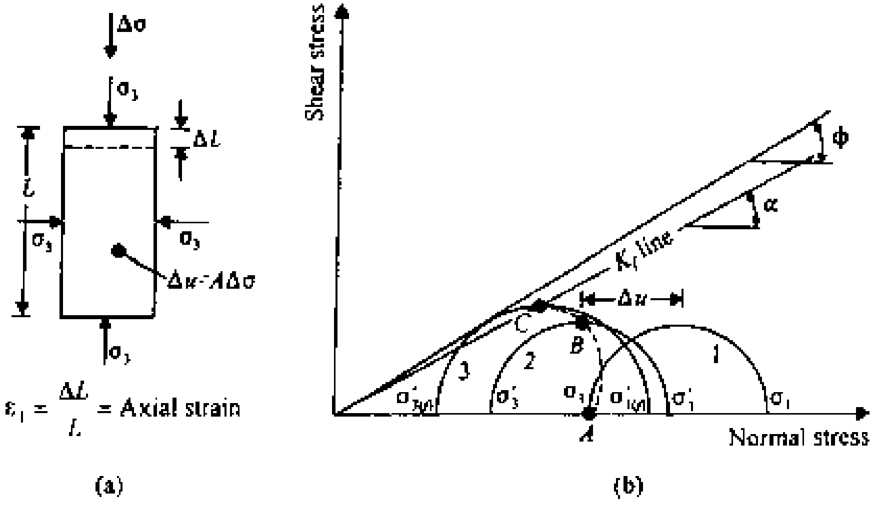


Figure 7.41 Stress path for consolidated undrained triaxial test.

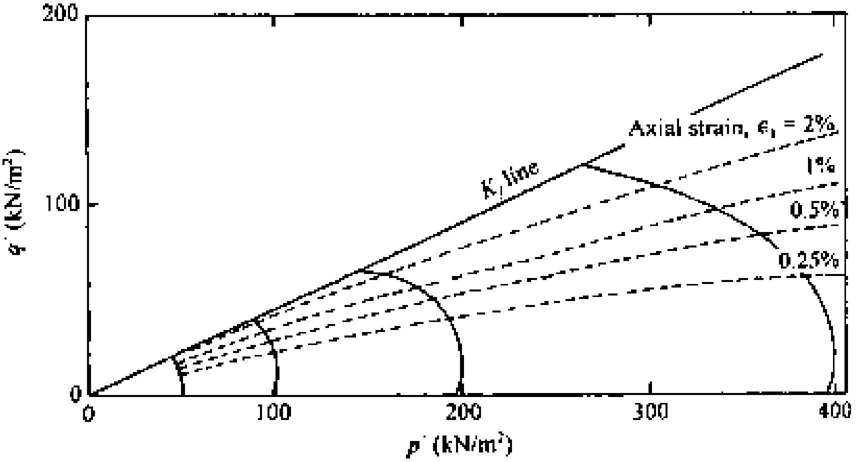


Figure 7.42 Stress path for Lagunilla clay (after Lambe, 1964).

The general nature of the effective-stress path will depend on the value of A. Figure 7.42 shows the stress path in a p' versus q' plot for Lagunilla clay (Lambe, 1964). In any particular problem, if a stress path is given in a p' versus q' plot, we should be able to determine the values of the major and minor effective principal stresses for any given point on the stress path. This is demonstrated in Figure 7.43, in which ABC is an effective stress path.

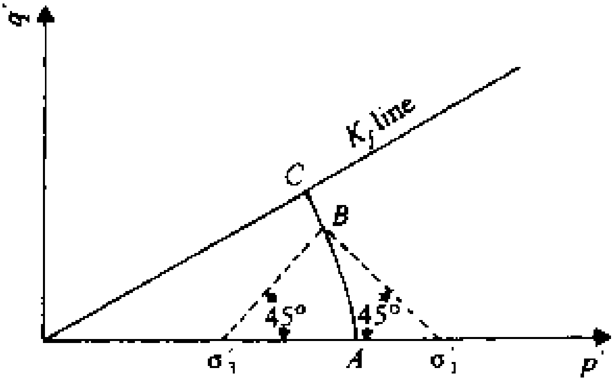


Figure 7.43 Determination of major and minor principal stresses for a point on a stress path.

From Figure 7.42, two important aspects of effective stress path can be summarized as follows:

1. The stress paths for a given normally consolidated soil are geometrically similar.
2. The axial strain in a CU test may be defined as $\in_1 = \Delta L/L$ as shown in Figure 7.41*a*. For a given soil, if the points representing equal strain in a number of stress paths are joined, they will be approximately straight lines passing through the origin. This is also shown in Figure 7.42.

EXAMPLE 7.4

Given below are the loading conditions of a number of consolidated *drained* triaxial tests on a remolded clay ($\phi = 25°$, $c = 0$).

Test no.	*Consolidation pressure* (kN/m^2)	*Type of loading applied to cause failure*
1	400	σ_a increased; σ_r constant
2	400	σ_a constant; σ_r increased
3	400	σ_a decreased; σ_r constant
4	400	σ_a constant; σ_r decreased
5	400	$\sigma_a + 2\sigma_r$ constant; increased σ_d and decreased σ_r
6	400	$\sigma_a + 2\sigma_r$ constant; decreased σ_d and increased σ_r

(a) Draw the isotropic stress line.
(b) Draw the failure envelopes for compression and extension tests.
(c) Draw the stress paths for tests 1–6.

SOLUTION *Part a*: The isotropic stress line will make an angle $\theta = \cos^{-1} 1/\sqrt{3}$ with the σ'_a axis, so $\theta = 54.8°$. This is shown in Figure 7.44 as line *Oa*.
Part b:

$$\sin\phi = \left(\frac{\sigma'_1 - \sigma'_3}{\sigma'_1 + \sigma'_3}\right)_{\text{failure}} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \left(\frac{\sigma'_1}{\sigma'_3}\right)_{\text{failure}} = \frac{1 + \sin\phi}{1 - \sin\phi}$$

where σ'_1 and σ'_3 are the major and minor principal stresses. For *compression tests*, $\sigma'_1 = \sigma'_a$ and $\sigma'_3 = \sigma'_r$. Thus

$$\left(\frac{\sigma'_a}{\sigma'_r}\right)_{\text{failure}} = \frac{1 + \sin 25°}{1 - \sin 25°} = 2.46 \quad \text{or} \quad (\sigma'_a)_{\text{failure}} = 2.46\,(\sigma'_r)_{\text{failure}}$$

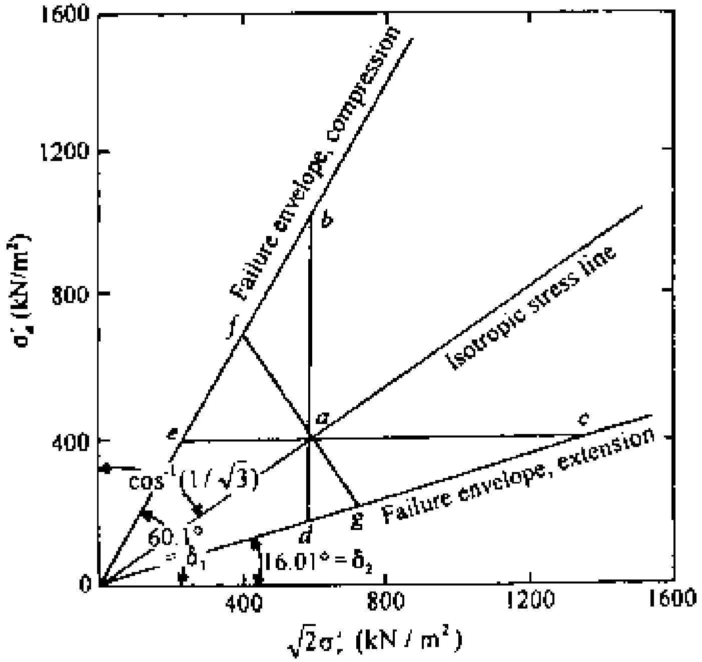


Figure 7.44 Stress paths for tests 1–6 in Example 7.4.

The slope of the failure envelope is

$$\tan\delta_1 = \frac{\sigma'_a}{\sqrt{2}\sigma'_r} = \frac{2.46\sigma'_r}{\sqrt{2}\sigma'_r} = 1.74$$

Hence, $\delta_1 = 60.1°$. The failure envelope for the compression tests is shown in Figure 7.44.

For *extension tests*, $\sigma'_1 = \sigma'_r$ and $\sigma'_3 = \sigma'_a$. So,

$$\left(\frac{\sigma'_a}{\sigma'_r}\right)_{\text{failure}} = \frac{1-\sin 25}{1+\sin 25} = 0.406 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \sigma'_a = 0.406\sigma'_r$$

The slope of the failure envelope for extension tests is

$$\tan\delta_2 = \frac{\sigma'_a}{\sqrt{2}\sigma'_r} = \frac{0.406\sigma'_r}{\sqrt{2}\sigma'_r} = 0.287$$

Hence $\delta_2 = 16.01°$. The failure envelope is shown in Figure 7.44.

Part c: Point *a* on the isotropic stress line represents the point where $\sigma'_a = \sigma'_r$ (or $\sigma'_1 = \sigma'_2 = \sigma'_3$). The stress paths of the test are plotted in Figure 7.44.

Test no.	*Stress path in Figure 7.44*
1	*ab*
2	*ac*
3	*ad*
4	*ae*
5	*af*
6	*ag*

EXAMPLE 7.5

For a saturated clay soil, the following are the results of some consolidated, drained triaxial tests at failure:

Test no.	$p' = \dfrac{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}{2}$ (kN/m^2)	$q' = \dfrac{\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'}{2}$ (kN/m^2)
1	420	179.2
2	630	255.5
3	770	308.0
4	1260	467.0

Draw a p' versus q' diagram, and from that, determine c and ϕ for the soil.

SOLUTION The diagram of q' versus p' is shown in Figure 7.45; this is a straight line, and the equation of it may be written in the form

$$q' = m + p' \tan\alpha \tag{E7.3}$$

Also,

$$\frac{\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'}{2} = c\cos\phi + \frac{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}{2}\sin\phi \tag{E7.4}$$

Comparing Eqs. (E7.3) and (E7.4), we find $m = c\cos\phi$ or $c = m/\cos\phi$ and $\tan\alpha = \sin\phi$. From Figure 7.45, $m = 23.8\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and $\alpha = 20°$. So

$$\phi = \sin^{-1}(\tan 20°) = 21.34°$$

and

$$c = \frac{m}{\cos\alpha} = \frac{23.8}{\cos 21.34°} = 25.55\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

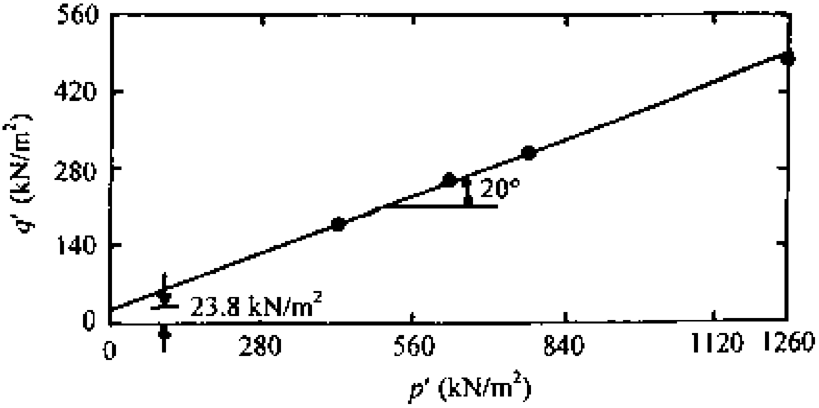


Figure 7.45 Plot of q' versus p' diagram.

7.15 Hvorslev's parameters

Considering cohesion to be the result of physicochemical bond forces (thus the interparticle spacing and hence void ratio), Hvorslev (1937) expressed the shear strength of a soil in the form

$$s = c_e + \sigma' \tan \phi_e \tag{7.46}$$

where c_e and ϕ_e are "true cohesion" and "true angle of friction," respectively, which are dependent on void ratio.

The procedure for determination of the above parameters can be explained with the aid of Figure 7.46, which shows the relation of the moisture content (i.e., void ratio) with effective consolidation pressure. Points 2 and 3 represent normally consolidated stages of a soil, and point 1 represents the overconsolidation stage. We now test the soil specimens represented by points 1, 2, and 3 in an undrained condition. The effective-stress Mohr's circles at failure are given in Figure 7.46*b*.

The soil specimens at points 1 and 2 in Figure 7.46*a* have the same moisture content and hence the same void ratio. If we draw a common tangent to Mohr's circles 1 and 2, the slope of the tangent will give ϕ_e, and the intercept on the shear stress axis will give c_e.

Gibson (1953) found that ϕ_e varies slightly with void ratio. The *true angle of internal friction* decreases with the plasticity index of soil, as shown in Figure 7.47. The variation of the effective cohesion c_e with void ratio may be given by the relation (Hvorslev, 1960).

$$c_e = c_0 \exp(-Be) \tag{7.47}$$

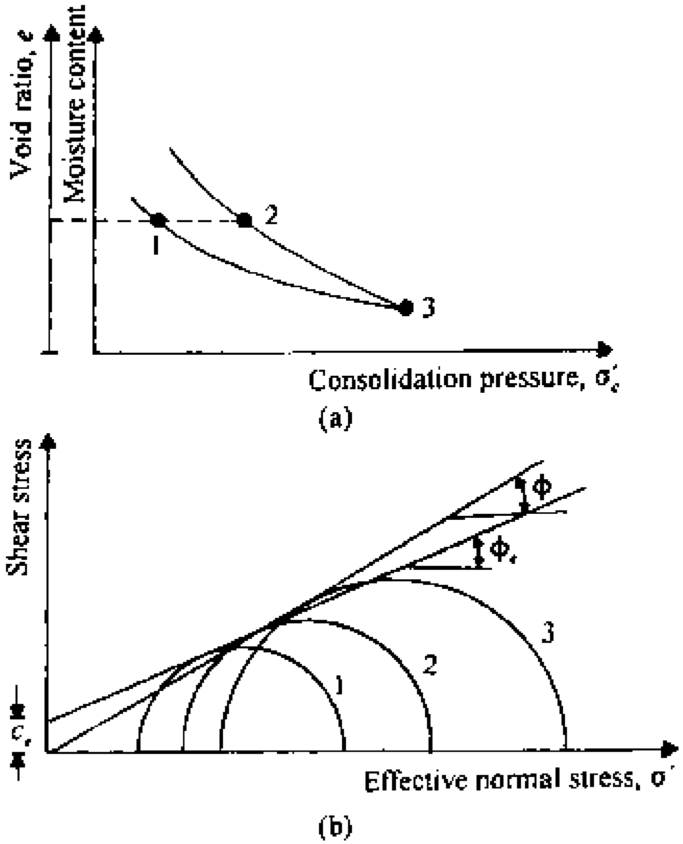


Figure 7.46 Determination of C_e and ϕ_e.

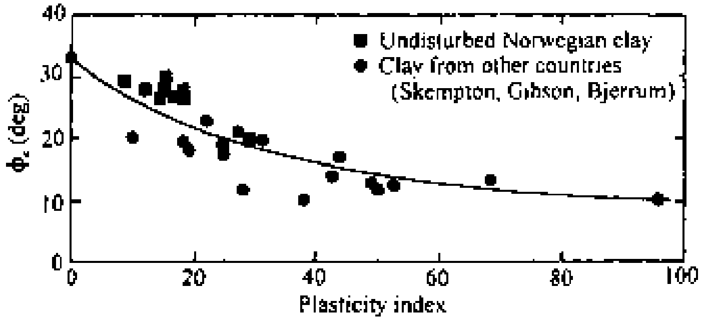


Figure 7.47 Variation of true angle of friction with plasticity index (after Bjerrum and Simons, 1960).

where

c_0 = true cohesion at zero void ratio
e = void ratio at failure
B = slope of plot of ln c_e versus void ratio at failure

EXAMPLE 7.6

A clay soil specimen was subjected to confining pressures $\sigma_3 = \sigma_3'$ in a triaxial chamber. The moisture content versus σ_3' relation is shown in Figure 7.48*a*.

A *normally consolidated* specimen of the same soil was subjected to a consolidated undrained triaxial test. The results are as follows: $\sigma_3 = 440\ \mathrm{kN/m^2}$; $\sigma_1 = 840\ \mathrm{kN/m^2}$; moisture content at failure, 27%; $u_d = 240\ \mathrm{kN/m^2}$.

An overconsolidated specimen of the same soil was subjected to a consolidated undrained test. The results are as follows: overconsolidation pressure, $\sigma_c' = 550\ \mathrm{kN/m^2}$; $\sigma_3 = 100\ \mathrm{kN/m^2}$; $\sigma_1 = 434\ \mathrm{kN/m^2}$; $u_d = -18\ \mathrm{kN/m^2}$; initial and final moisture content, 27%.

Determine ϕ_e, C_e for a moisture content of 27%; also determine ϕ.

SOLUTION For the normally consolidated specimen,

$$\sigma_3' = 440 - 240 = 200\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\sigma_1' = 840 - 240 = 600\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\phi = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'}{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}\right) = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{600-200}{600+200}\right) = 30^\circ$$

The failure envelope is shown in Figure 7.48*b*.

For the overconsolidated specimen,

$$\sigma_3' = 100 - (-18) = 118\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\sigma_1' = 434 - (-18) = 452\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

Mohr's circle at failure is shown in Figure 7.48*b*; from this,

$$C_e = 110\,\mathrm{kN/m^2} \qquad \phi_e = 15^\circ$$

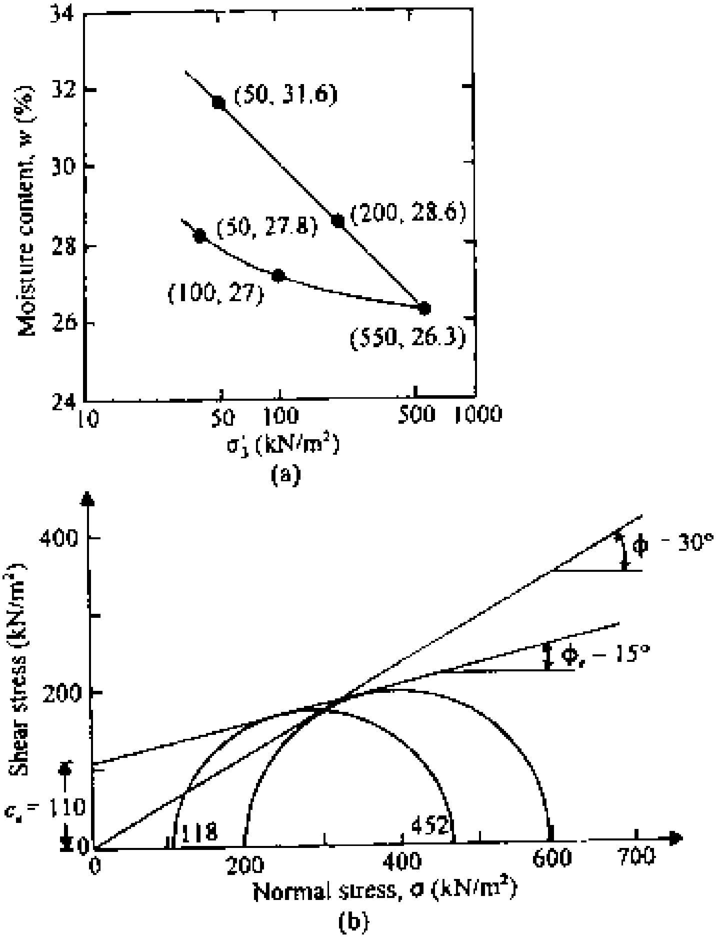


Figure 7.48 Determination of Hvorslev's parameters.

7.16 Relations between moisture content, effective stress, and strength for clay soils

Relations between water content and strength

The strength of a soil at failure [i.e., $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\text{failure}}$ or $(\sigma_1' - \sigma_3')_{\text{failure}}$] is dependent on the moisture content at failure. Henkel (1960) pointed out that there is a unique relation between the moisture content w at failure and the strength of a clayey soil. This is shown in Figure 7.49 and 7.50 for Weald clay.

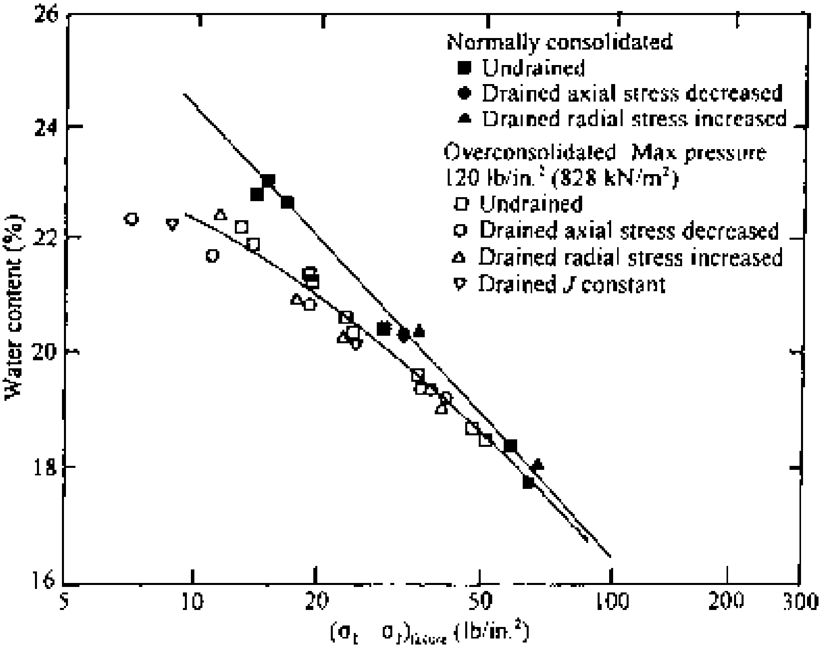


Figure 7.49 Water content versus $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\text{failure}}$ for Weald clay—extension tests [*Note*: 1 lb/in^2 = 6.9 kN/m^2; after Henkel (1960)].

For normally consolidated clays the variation of w versus $\log(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\text{failure}}$ is approximately linear. For overconsolidated clays this relation is not linear but lies slightly below the relation of normally consolidated specimens. The curves merge when the strength approaches the overconsolidation pressure. Also note that slightly different relations for w versus $\log(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\text{failure}}$ are obtained for axial compression and axial extension tests.

Unique effective stress failure envelope

When Mohr's envelope is used to obtain the relation for normal and shear stress at failure (from triaxial test results), separate envelopes need to be drawn for separate preconsolidation pressures, σ'_c. This is shown in Figure 7.51. For a soil with a preconsolidation pressure of σ'_{c1}, $s = c_1 + \sigma' \tan \phi_{c(1)}$; similarly, for a preconsolidation pressure of σ'_{c2}, $s = c_2 + \sigma' \tan \phi_{c(2)}$.

Henkel (1960) showed that a single, general failure envelope for normally consolidated and preconsolidated (irrespective of preconsolidation pressure) soils can be obtained by plotting the ratio of the major to minor

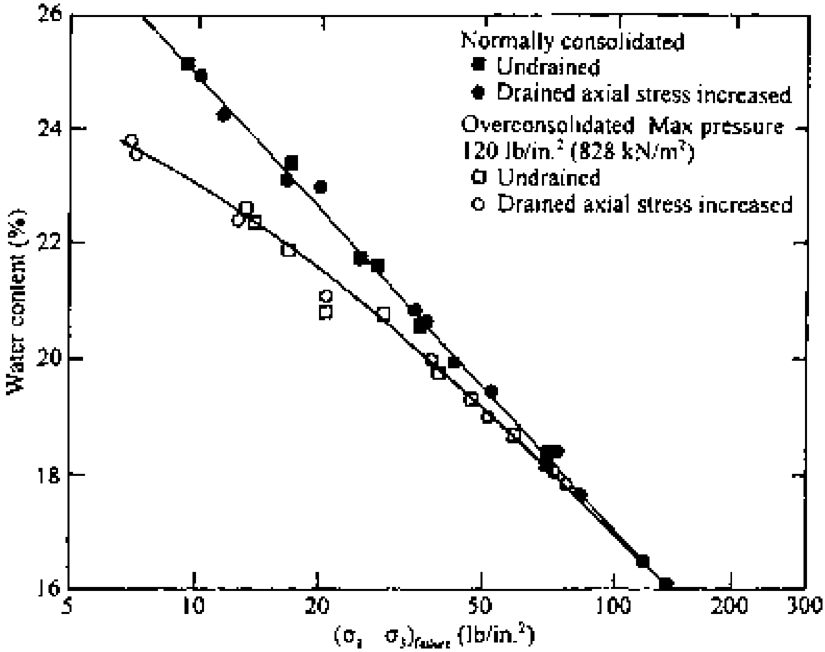


Figure 7.50 Water content versus $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\text{failure}}$ for Weald clay—compression tests [*Note*: 1 lb/in^2 = 6.9 kN/m^2; after Henkel (1960)].

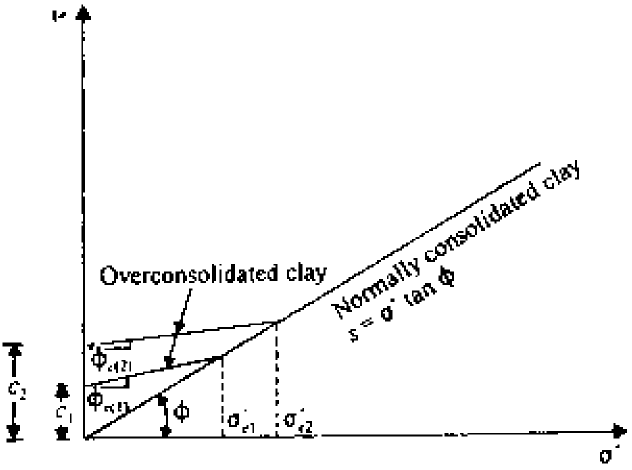


Figure 7.51 Mohr's envelope for overconsolidated clay.

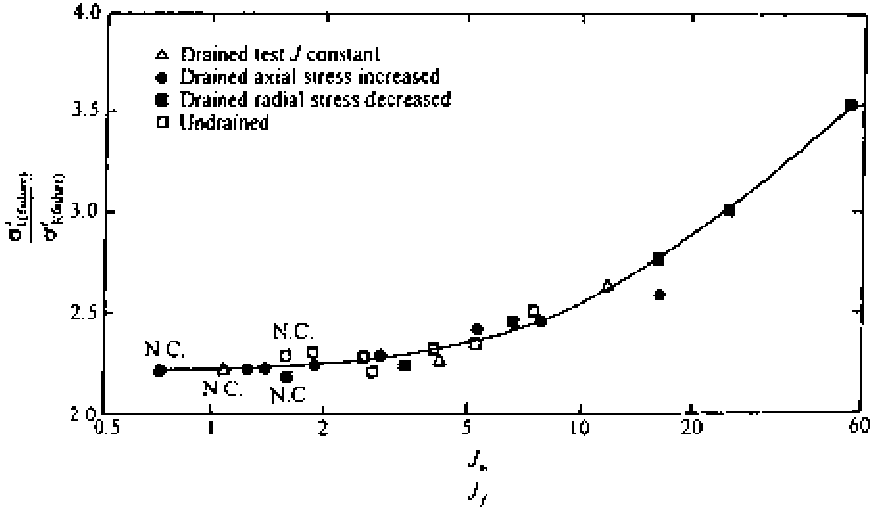


Figure 7.52 Plot of $\sigma'_{1(\text{failure})}/\sigma'_{3(\text{failure})}$ against J_m/J_f for Weald clay—compression tests (after Henkel, 1960).

effective stress at failure against the ratio of the maximum consolidation pressure to the average effective stress at failure. This fact is demonstrated in Figure 7.52, which gives the results of triaxial compression tests for Weald clay. In Figure 7.52,

$$J_m = \text{maximum consolidation pressure} = \sigma'_c$$

$$J_f = \text{average effective stress at failure}$$

$$= \frac{\sigma'_{1(\text{failure})} + \sigma'_{2(\text{failure})} + \sigma'_{3(\text{failure})}}{3}$$

$$= \frac{\sigma'_a + 2\sigma'_r}{3}$$

The results shown in Figure 7.52 are obtained from normally consolidated specimens and overconsolidated specimens having a maximum preconsolidation pressure of 828 kN/m^2. Similarly, a unique failure envelope can be obtained from extension tests. Note, however, that the failure envelopes for compression tests and extension tests are slightly different.

Unique relation between water content and effective stress

There is a unique relation between the water content of a soil and the effective stresses to which it is being subjected, provided that normally consolidated

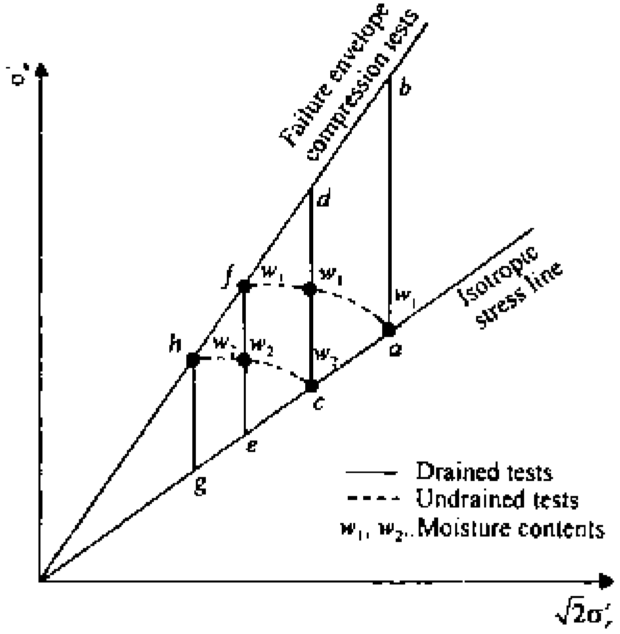


Figure 7.53 Unique relation between water content and effective stress.

specimens and specimens with common maximum consolidation pressures are considered separately. This can be explained with the aid of Figure 7.53, In which a Rendulic plot for a normally consolidated clay is shown. Consider several specimens consolidated at various confining pressures in a triaxial chamber; the states of stress of these specimens are represented by the points *a, c, e, g*, etc., located on the isotropic stress lines. When these specimens are sheared to failure by drained compressions, the corresponding stress paths will be represented by lines such as *ab, cd, ef*, and *gh*. During drained tests, the moisture contents of the specimens change. We can determine the moisture contents of the specimens during the tests, such as w_1, w_2, . . . , as shown in Figure 7.53. If these points of equal moisture contents on the drained stress paths are joined, we obtain contours of stress paths of equal moisture contents (for moisture contents w_1, w_2, . . .).

Now, if we take a soil specimen and consolidate it in a triaxial chamber under a state of stress as defined by point *a* and shear it to failure in an undrained condition, it will follow the effective stress path *af*, since the moisture content of the specimen during shearing is w_1. Similarly, a specimen consolidated in a triaxial chamber under a state of stress represented by point *c* (moisture content w_2) will follow a stress path *ch* (which is the stress contour of moisture content w_2) when sheared to failure in an

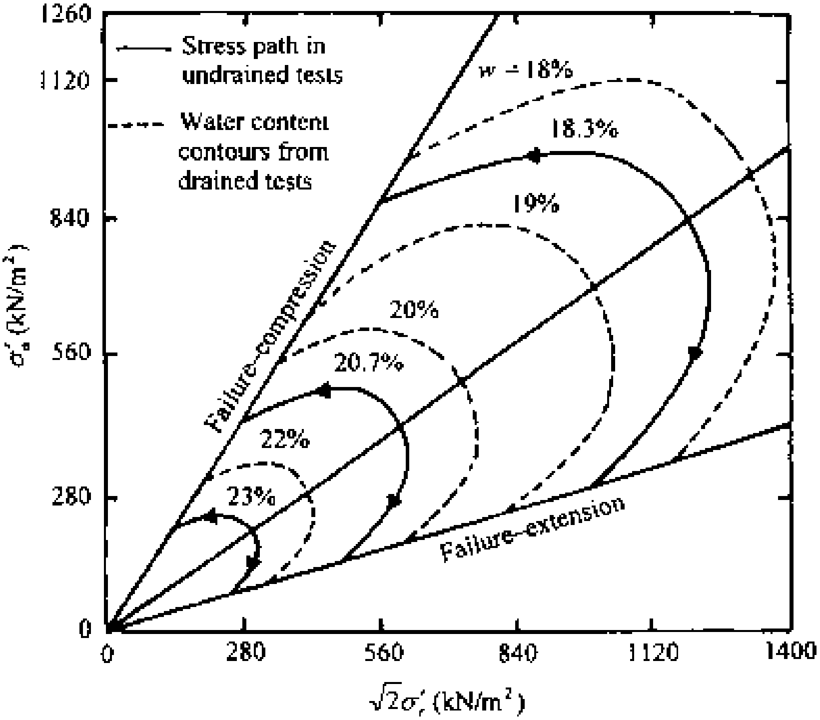


Figure 7.54 Weald clay—normally consolidated (after Henkel, 1960).

undrained state. This means that a unique relation exists between water content and effective stress.

Figures 7.54 and 7.55 show the stress paths for equal water contents for normally consolidated and overconsolidated Weald clay. Note the similarity of shape of the stress paths for normally consolidated clay in Figure 7.55. For overconsolidated clay the shape of the stress path gradually changes, depending on the overconsolidation ratio.

7.17 Correlations for effective stress friction angle

It is difficult in practice to obtain undisturbed samples of sand and gravelly soils to determine the shear strength parameters. For that reason, several approximate correlations were developed over the years to determine the soil friction angle based on field test results, such as standard penetration number (*N*) and cone penetration resistance (q_c). In granular soils, *N* and q_c are dependent on the effective-stress level. Schmertmann (1975) provided a correlation between the standard penetration resistance, drained triaxial friction angle

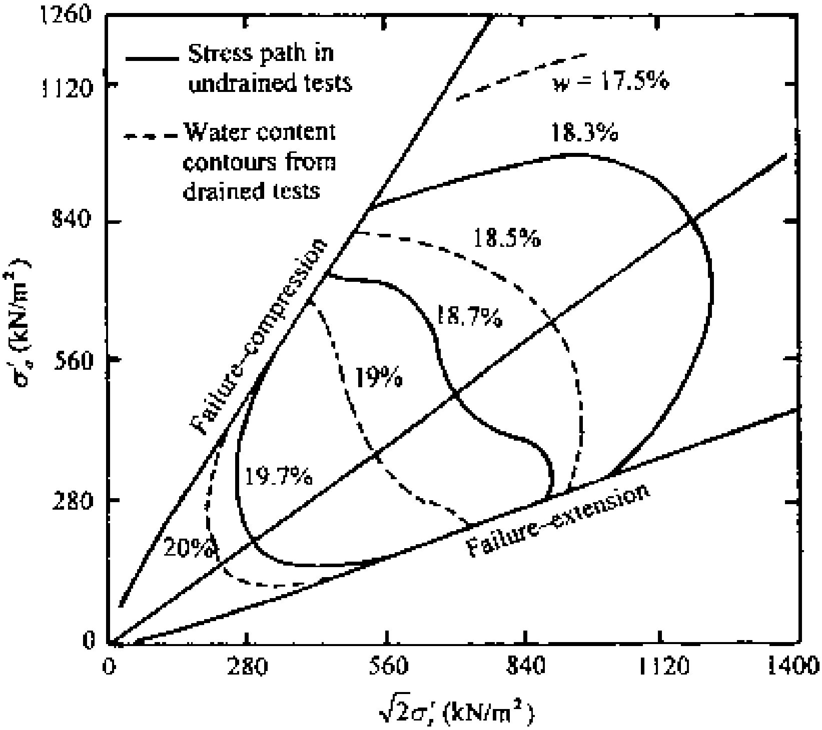


Figure 7.55 Weald clay—overconsolidated; maximum consolidation pressure = 828 kN/m² (after Henkel, 1960).

obtained from axial compression tests ($\phi = \phi_{\text{tc}}$), and the vertical effective stress (σ'_0). This correlation can be approximated as (Kulhawy and Mayne, 1990)

$$\phi_{\text{tc}} = \tan^{-1}\left[\frac{N}{12.2 + 20.3\,(\sigma'_O/p_a)}\right]^{0.34} \quad \text{for granular soils} \qquad (7.48)$$

where p_a is atmospheric pressure (in the same units as σ'_o). In a similar manner, the correlation between ϕ_{tc}, σ'_o, and q_c was provided by Robertson and Campanella (1983), which can be approximated as (Kulhawy and Mayne, 1990)

$$\phi_{\text{tc}} = \tan^{-1}\left[0.9 + 0.38\log\left(\frac{q_c}{\sigma'_0}\right)\right] \quad \text{(for granular soils)} \qquad (7.49)$$

Kulhawy and Mayne (1990) also provided the approximate relations between the triaxial drained friction angle (ϕ_{tc}) obtained from triaxial compression tests with the drained friction angle obtained from other types

Table 7.4 Relative values of drained friction angle [compiled from Kulhawy and Mayne (1990)]

Test type	*Drained friction angle*	
	Cohesionless soil	*Cohesive soil*
Triaxial compression	$1.0\,\phi_{\mathrm{tc}}$	$1.0\,\phi_{\mathrm{tc}}$
Triaxial extension	$1.12\,\phi_{\mathrm{tc}}$	$1.22\,\phi_{\mathrm{tc}}$
Plane strain compression	$1.12\,\phi_{\mathrm{tc}}$	$1.10\,\phi_{\mathrm{tc}}$
Plane strain extension	$1.25\,\phi_{\mathrm{tc}}$	$1.34\,\phi_{\mathrm{tc}}$
Direct shear	$\tan^{-1}[\tan(1.12\phi_{\mathrm{tc}})\cos\phi_{\mathrm{cv}}]$	$\tan^{-1}\,[\tan(1.1\phi_{\mathrm{tc}})\cos\phi_{\mathrm{ult}}]$

of tests for cohesionless and cohesive soils. Their findings are summarized in Table 7.4.

Following are some other correlations generally found in recent literature.

- Wolff (1989)

$$\phi_{\mathrm{tc}} = 27.1 + 0.3N - 0.00054\,(N)^2 \quad \text{(for granular soil)}$$

- Hatanaka and Uchida (1996)

$$\phi_{\mathrm{t}v} = \sqrt{20N_1} + 20 \quad \text{(for granular soil)}$$

where $N_1 = \sqrt{\frac{98}{\sigma'_{\mathrm{o}}}}N$

(*Note*: σ'_{o} is vertical stress in kN/m^2.)

- Ricceri *et al.* (2002)

$$\phi_{\mathrm{tc}} = \tan^{-1}\left[0.38 + 0.27\log\left(\frac{q_{\mathrm{c}}}{\sigma'_{\mathrm{o}}}\right)\right]\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{for silt with low plasticity,}\\ \text{poorly graded sand, and silty}\\ \text{sand}\end{array}\right)$$

- Ricceri *et al.* (2002)

$$\phi_{\mathrm{tc}} = 31 + \frac{K_{\mathrm{D}}}{0.236 + 0.066K_{\mathrm{D}}}\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{for silt with low plasticty, poorly}\\ \text{graded sand, and silty sand}\end{array}\right)$$

where K_{D} = horizontal stress index in dilatometer test.

7.18 Anisotropy in undrained shear strength

Owing to the nature of the deposition of cohesive soils and subsequent consolidation, clay particles tend to become oriented perpendicular to the

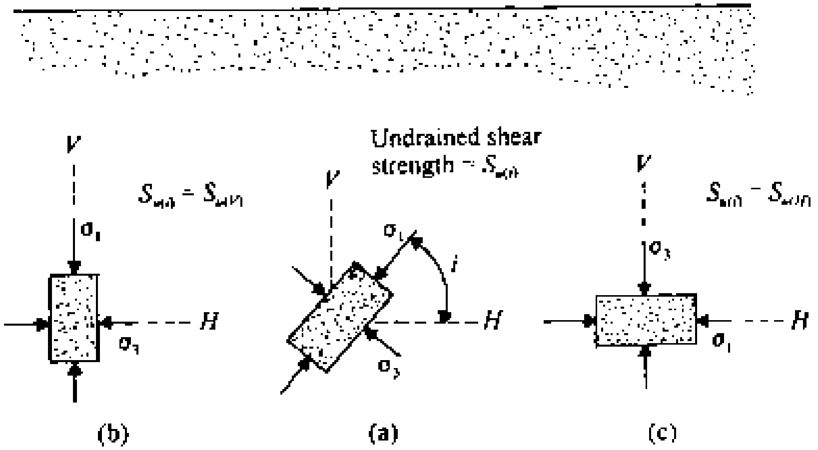


Figure 7.56 Strength anisotropy in clay.

direction of the major principal stress. Parallel orientation of clay particles could cause the strength of the clay to vary with direction, or in other words, the clay could be anisotropic with respect to strength. This fact can be demonstrated with the aid of Figure 7.56, in which *V* and *H* are vertical and horizontal directions that coincide with lines perpendicular and parallel to the bedding planes of a soil deposit. If a soil specimen with its axis inclined at an angle *i* with the horizontal is collected and subjected to an undrained test, the undrained shear strength can be given by

$$S_{\mathrm{u(i)}} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2} \tag{7.50}$$

where $S_{\mathrm{u(i)}}$ is the undrained shear strength when the major principal stress makes an angle *i* with the horizontal.

Let the undrained shear strength of a soil specimen with its axis vertical [i.e., $S_{\mathrm{u(i=90°)}}$] be referred to as $S_{\mathrm{u(V)}}$ (Figure 7.56*a*); similarly, let the undrained shear strength with its axis horizontal [i.e., $S_{\mathrm{u(i=0°)}}$] be referred to as $S_{\mathrm{u(H)}}$ (Figure 7.56*c*). If $S_{\mathrm{u(V)}} = S_{\mathrm{u(i)}} = S_{\mathrm{u(H)}}$, the soil is isotropic with respect to strength, and the variation of undrained shear strength can be represented by a circle in a polar diagram, as shown by curve *a* in Figure 7.57. However, if the soil is anisotropic, $S_{\mathrm{u(i)}}$ will change with direction. Casagrande and Carrillo (1944) proposed the following equation for the directional variation of the undrained shear strength:

$$S_{\mathrm{u(i)}} = S_{\mathrm{u(H)}} + \left[S_{\mathrm{u(V)}} - S_{\mathrm{u(H)}}\right]\sin^2 i \tag{7.51}$$

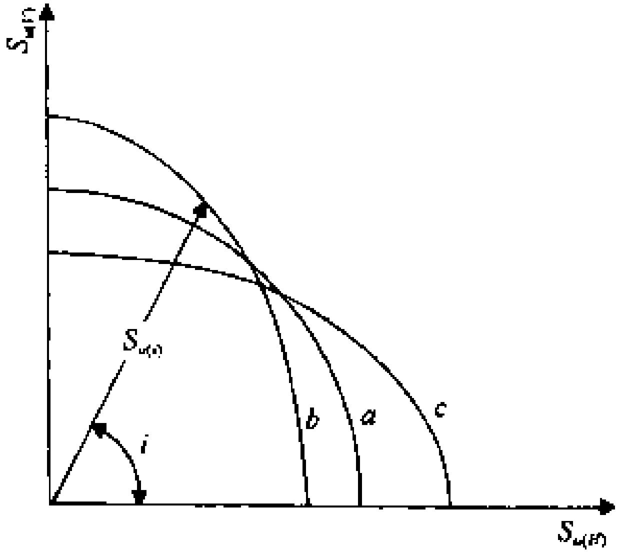


Figure 7.57 Directional variation of undrained strength of clay.

When $S_{u(V)} > S_{u(H)}$, the nature of variation of $S_{u(i)}$ can be represented by curve b in Figure 7.57. Again, if $S_{u(V)} < S_{u(H)}$, the variation of $S_{u(i)}$ is given by curve c. The coefficient of anisotropy can be defined as

$$K = \frac{S_{u(V)}}{S_{u(H)}} \tag{7.52}$$

In the case of natural soil deposits, the value of K can vary from 0.75 to 2.0. K is generally less than 1 in overconsolidated clays. An example of the directional variation of the undrained shear strength $S_{u(i)}$ for a clay is shown in Figure 7.58.

Richardson *et al.* (1975) made a study regarding the anisotropic strength of a soft deposit of marine clay (Thailand). The undrained strength was determined by field vane shear tests. Both rectangular and triangular vanes were used for this investigation. Based on the experimental results (Figure 7.59), Richardson *et al.* concluded that $S_{u(i)}$ can be given by the following relation:

$$S_{u(i)} = \frac{S_{u(H)} S_{u(V)}}{\sqrt{S^2_{u(H)} \sin^2 i + S^2_{u(V)} \cos^2 i}} \tag{7.53}$$

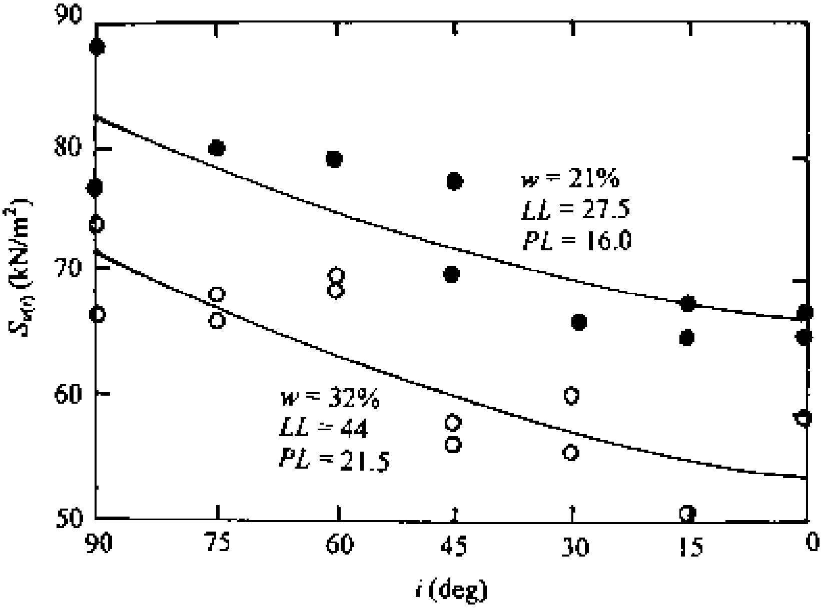


Figure 7.58 Directional variation of undrained shear strength of Welland Clay, Ontario, Canada (after Lo, 1965).

7.19 Sensitivity and thixotropic characteristics of clays

Most undisturbed natural clayey soil deposits show a pronounced reduction of strength when they are remolded. This characteristic of saturated cohesive soils is generally expressed quantitatively by a term referred to as *sensitivity*. Thus

$$\text{Sensitivity} = \frac{S_{\text{u(undisturbed)}}}{S_{\text{u(remolded)}}} \tag{7.54}$$

The classification of clays based on sensitivity is as follows:

Sensitivity	*Clay*
≈ 1	Insensitive
1–2	Low sensitivity
2–4	Medium sensitivity
4–8	Sensitive
8–16	Extra sensitive
> 16	Quick

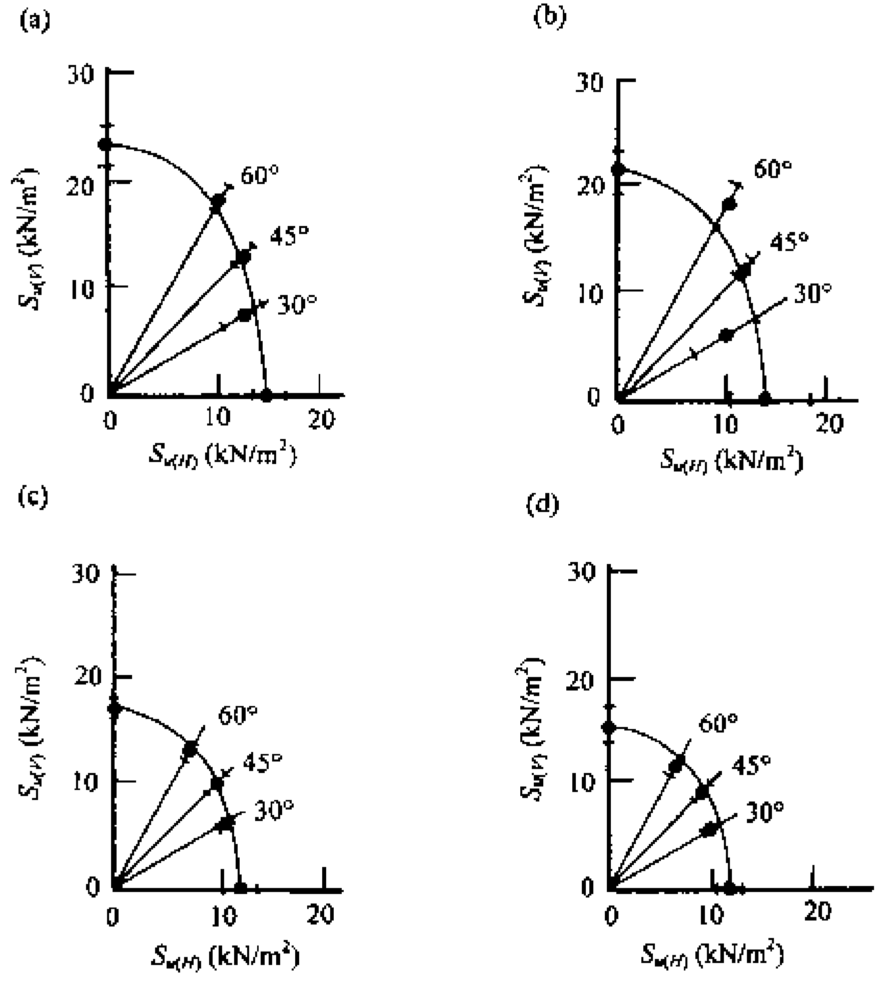


Figure 7.59 Vane shear strength polar diagrams for a soft marine clay in Thailand. (*a*) Depth = 1 m; (*b*) depth = 2 m; (*c*) depth = 3 m; (*d*) depth = 4 m (after Richardson *et al.*, 1975).

The sensitivity of most clays generally falls in a range 1–8. However, sensitivity as high as 150 for a clay deposit at St Thurible, Canada, was reported by Peck *et al.* (1951).

The loss of strength of saturated clays may be due to the breakdown of the original structure of natural deposits and thixotropy. *Thixotropy* is defined as an isothermal, reversible, time-dependent process that occurs under constant composition and volume, whereby a material softens as a result of remolding and then gradually returns to its original strength when

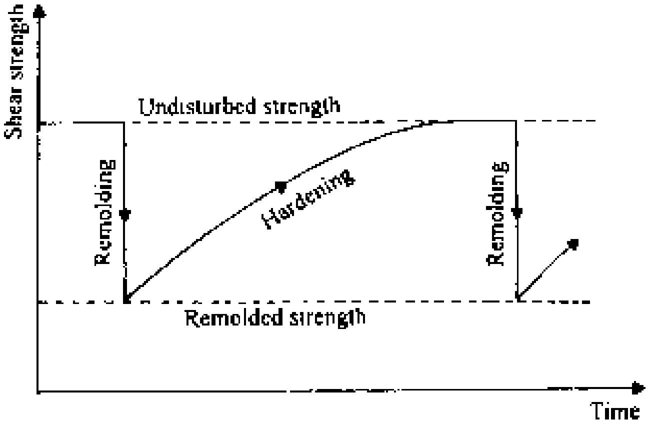


Figure 7.60 Thixotropy of a material.

allowed to rest. This is shown in Figure 7.60. A general review of the thixotropic nature of soils is given by Seed and Chan (1959).

Figure 7.61, which is based on the work of Moretto (1948), shows the thixotropic strength regain of a Laurentian clay with a liquidity index of 0.99 (i.e., the natural water content was approximately equal to the liquid limit). In Figure 7.62, the acquired sensitivity is defined as

$$\text{Acquired sensitivity} = \frac{S_{\text{u(t)}}}{S_{\text{u(remolded)}}} \tag{7.54a}$$

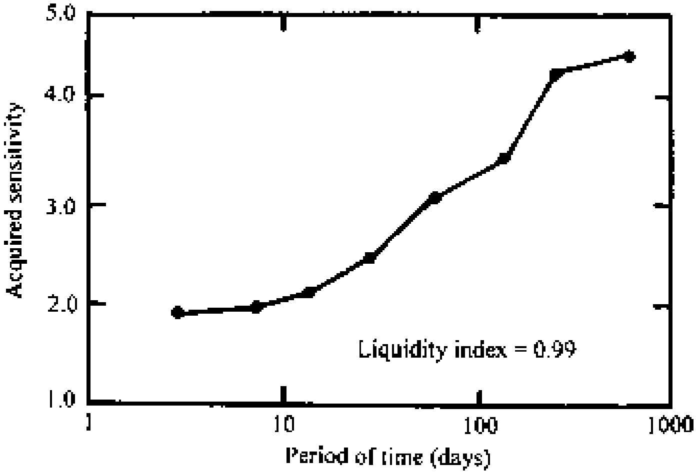


Figure 7.61 Acquired sensitivity for Laurentian clay (after Seed and Chan, 1959).

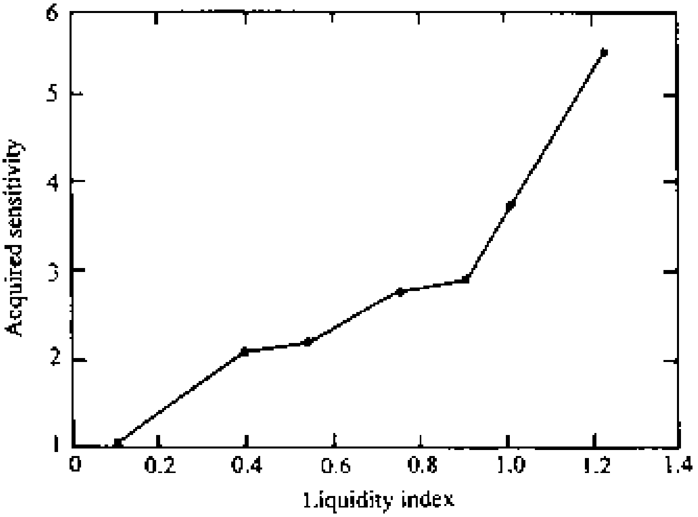


Figure 7.62 Variation of sensitivity with liquidity index for Laurentian clay (after Seed and Chan, 1959).

where $S_{u(t)}$ is the undrained shear strength after a time t from remolding.

Acquired sensitivity generally decreases with the liquidity index (i.e., the natural water content of soil), and this is demonstrated in Figure 7.62. It can also be seen from this figure that the acquired sensitivity of clays with a liquidity index approaching zero (i.e., natural water content equal to the plastic limit) is approximately one. Thus, thixotropy in the case of overconsolidated clay is very small.

There are some clays that show that sensitivity cannot be entirely accounted for by thixotropy (Berger and Gnaedinger, 1949). This means that only a part of the strength loss due to remolding can be recovered by hardening with time. The other part of the strength loss is due to the breakdown of the original structure of the clay. The general nature of the strength regain of a partially thixotropic material is shown in Figure 7.63.

Seed and Chan (1959) conducted several tests on three compacted clays with a water content near or below the plastic limit to study their thixotropic strength-regain characteristics. Figure 7.64 shows their thixotropic strength ratio with time. The thixotropic strength ratio is defined as follows:

$$\text{Thixotropic strength ratio} = \frac{S_{u(t)}}{S_{u(\text{compacted at } t=0)}} \tag{7.55}$$

where $S_{u(t)}$ is the undrained strength at time t after compaction.

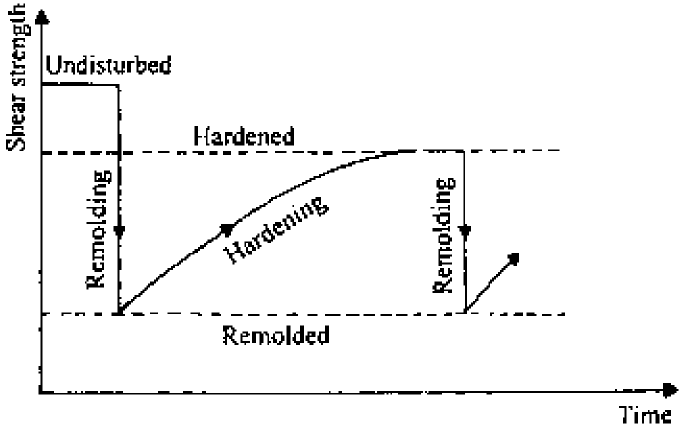


Figure 7.63 Regained strength of a partially thixotropic material.

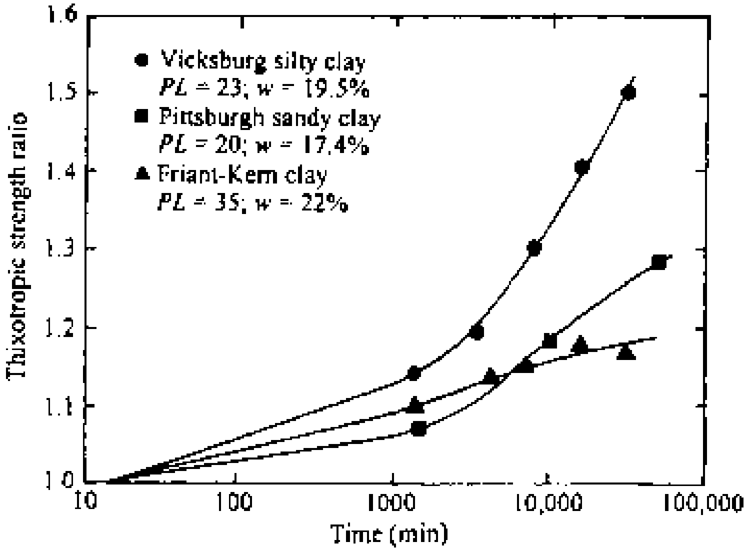


Figure 7.64 Increase of thixotropic strength with time for three compacted clays (after Seed and Chan, 1959).

These test results demonstrate that thixotropic strength-regain is also possible for soils with a water content at or near the plastic limit.

Figure 7.65 shows a general relation between sensitivity, liquidity index, and effective vertical pressure for natural soil deposits.

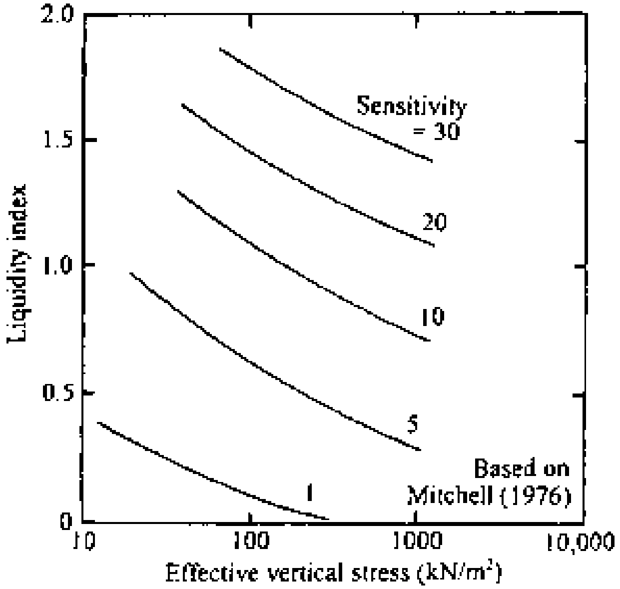


Figure 7.65 General relation between sensitivity, liquidity index, and effective vertical stress.

7.20 Vane shear test

Method

The field vane shear test is another method of obtaining the undrained shear strength of cohesive soils. The common shear vane usually consists of four thin steel plates of equal size welded to a steel torque rod (Figure 7.66*a*). To perform the test, the vane is pushed into the soil and torque is applied at the top of the torque rod. The torque is gradually increased until the cylindrical soil of height H and diameter D fails (Figure 7.66*b*). The maximum torque T applied to cause failure is the sum of the resisting moment at the top, M_T, and bottom, M_B, of the soil cylinder, plus the resisting moment at the sides of the cylinder, M_S. Thus

$$T = M_S + M_T + M_B \tag{7.56}$$

However,

$$M_S = \pi DH\frac{D}{2}S_u \qquad \text{and} \qquad M_T = M_B = \frac{\pi D^2}{4}\frac{2}{3}\frac{D}{2}S_u$$

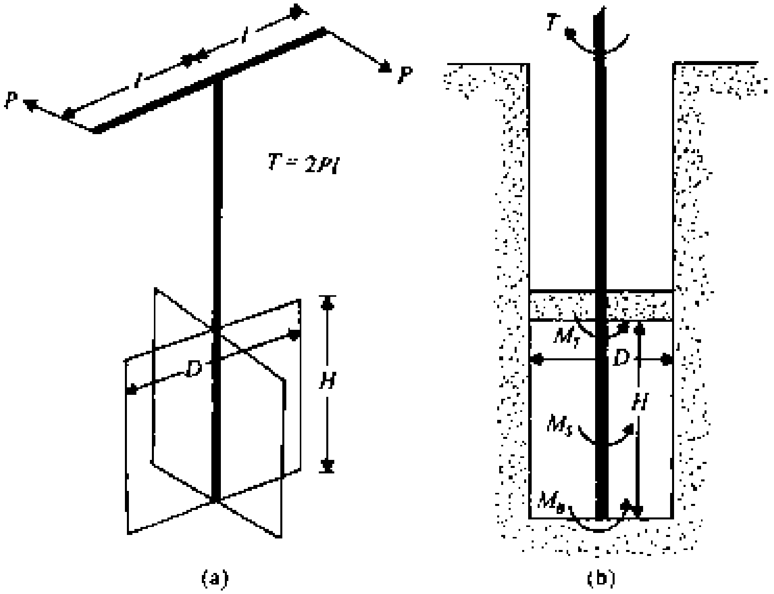


Figure 7.66 Vane shear test.

[assuming uniform undrained shear strength distribution at the ends; see Carlson (1948)]. So,

$$T = \pi S_u \left[\left(\pi DH \frac{D}{2} \right) + 2 \left(\frac{\pi D^2}{4} \frac{2}{3} \frac{D}{2} \right) \right]$$

or

$$S_u = \frac{T}{\pi (D^2 H/2 + D^3/6)} \tag{7.57}$$

If only one end of the vane (i.e., the bottom) is engaged in shearing the clay, $T = M_S + M_B$. So,

$$S_u = \frac{T}{\pi(D^2 H/2 + D^3/12)} \tag{7.58}$$

Standard vanes used in field investigations have $H/D = 2$. In such cases, Eq. (7.57) simplifies to the form

$$S_u = 0.273 \frac{T}{D^3} \tag{7.59}$$

The American Society for Testing and Materials (1992) recommends the following dimensions for field vanes:

D(mm)	*H(mm)*	*Thickness of blades(mm)*
38.1	76.2	1.6
50.8	101.6	1.6
63.5	127.0	3.2
92.1	184.2	3.2

If the undrained shear strength is different in the vertical $[S_{u(V)}]$ and horizontal $[S_{u(H)}]$ directions, then Eq. (7.57) translates to

$$T = \pi D^2 \left[\frac{H}{2} S_{u(V)} + \frac{D}{6} S_{u(H)} \right] \tag{7.60}$$

In addition to rectangular vanes, triangular vanes can be used in the field (Richardson *et al.*, 1975) to determine the directional variation of the undrained shear strength. Figure 7.67*a* shows a triangular vane. For this vane,

$$S_{u(i)} = \frac{T}{\frac{4}{3}\pi L^3 \cos^2 i} \tag{7.61}$$

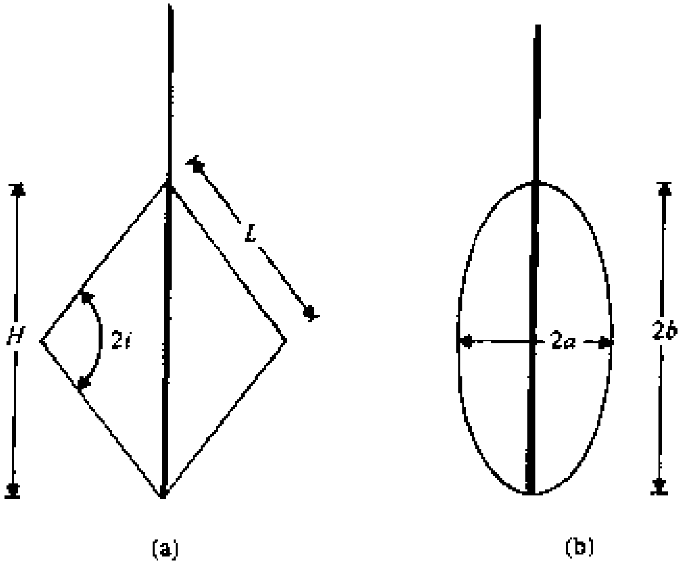


Figure 7.67 (*a*) Triangular vane and (*b*) Elliptical vane.

The term $S_{u(i)}$ was defined in Eq. (7.50).

More recently, Silvestri and Tabib (1992) analyzed elliptical vanes (Figure 7.67*b*). For uniform shear stress distribution,

$$S_u = C\frac{T}{8a^3} \tag{7.62}$$

where $C = f(a/b)$. The variation of C with a/b is shown in Figure 7.68.

Bjerrum (1972) studied a number of slope failures and concluded that the undrained shear strength obtained by vane shear is too high. He proposed that the vane shear test results obtained from the field should be corrected for the actual design. Thus

$$S_{u(\text{design})} = \lambda S_{u(\text{field vane})} \tag{7.63}$$

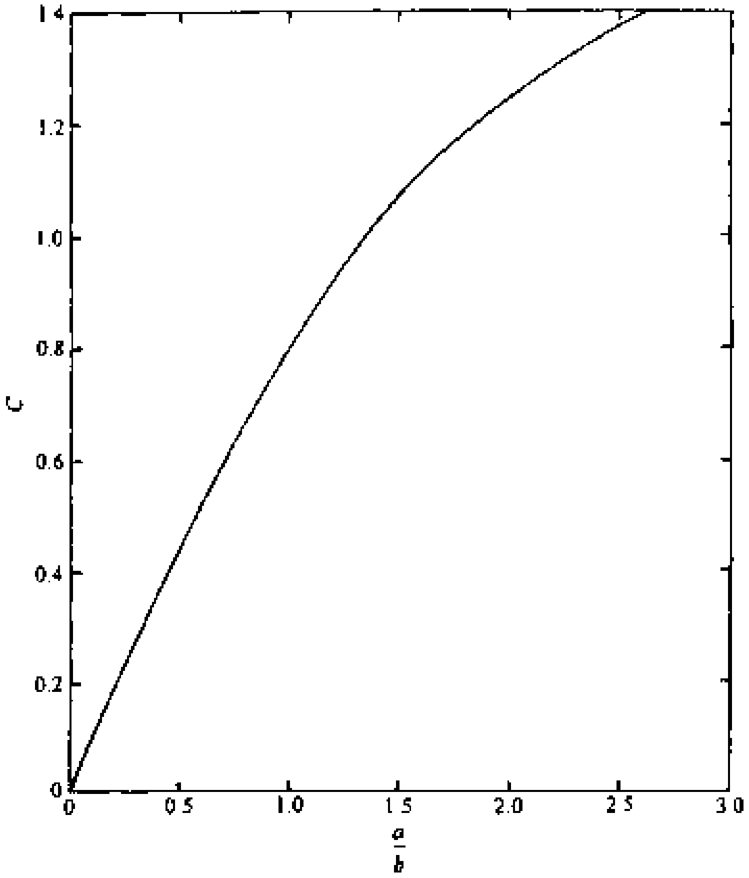


Figure 7.68 Variation of *C* with *a*/*b* [Eq. (7.62)].

where λ is a correction factor, which may be expressed as

$$\lambda = 1.7 - 0.54 \log(\mathrm{PI}) \tag{7.64}$$

where PI is the plasticity index (%).

More recently, Morris and Williams (1994) gave the following correlations of λ:

$$\lambda = 1.18e^{-0.08(\mathrm{PI})} + 0.57 \qquad \mathrm{PI} > 5 \tag{7.65}$$

and

$$\lambda = 7.01e^{-0.08(\mathrm{LL})} + 0.57 \qquad \mathrm{LL} > 20 \tag{7.66}$$

where LL is liquid limit (%).

7.21 Relation of undrained shear strength (*S*$_\mathrm{u}$) and effective overburden pressure (*p*′)

A relation between S_u, p', and the drained friction angle can also be derived as follows. Referring to Figure 7.69*a*, consider a soil specimen at *A*. The major and minor effective principal stresses at *A* can be given by p' and $K_\mathrm{o}p'$, respectively (where K_o is the coefficient of at-rest earth pressure). Let this soil specimen be subjected to a UU triaxial test. As shown in Figure 7.69*b*, at failure the *total major* principal stress is $\sigma_1 = p' + \Delta\sigma_1$; the *total minor* principal stress is $\sigma_3 = K_\mathrm{o}p' + \Delta\sigma_3$; and the *excess* pore water pressure is Δu. So, the *effective* major and minor principal stresses can be given by $\sigma_1' = \sigma_1 - \Delta u$ and $\sigma_3' = \sigma_3 - \Delta u$, respectively. The total- and effective-stress Mohr's circles for this test, at failure, are shown in Figure 7.69*c*. From this, we can write

$$\frac{S_\mathrm{u}}{c\cot\,\phi + (\sigma_1' + \sigma_3')/2} = \sin\phi$$

where ϕ is the drained friction angle, or

$$\begin{aligned} S_\mathrm{u} &= c\cos\phi + \frac{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}{2}\sin\phi \\ &= c\cos\phi + \left(\frac{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}{2} - \sigma_3'\right)\sin\phi + \sigma_3'\sin\phi \end{aligned}$$

However,

$$\frac{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}{2} - \sigma_3' = \frac{\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'}{2} = S_\mathrm{u}$$

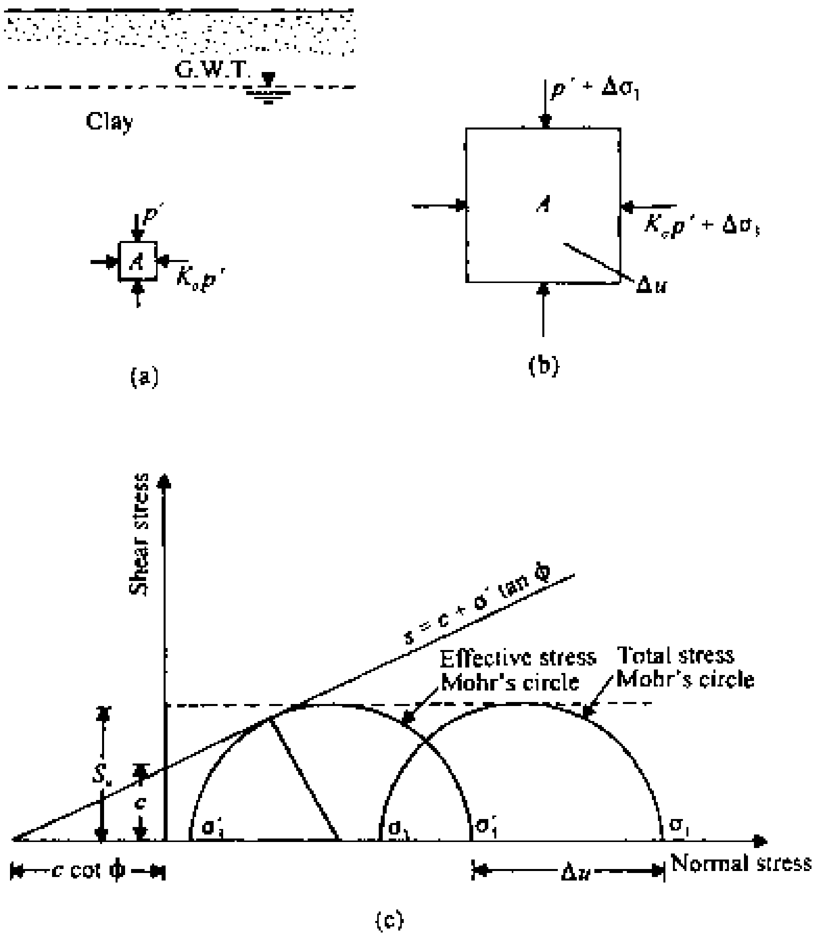


Figure 7.69 Relation between the undrained strength of clay and the effective overburden pressure.

So, $S_u = c\cos\phi + S_u \sin\phi + \sigma_3' \sin\phi$

$$S_u(1-\sin\phi) = c\cos\phi + \sigma_3'\sin\phi \tag{7.67}$$

$$\sigma_3' = \sigma_3 - \Delta u = K_o p' + \Delta\sigma_3 - \Delta u \tag{7.68}$$

However (Chap. 4),

$$\Delta u = B\Delta\sigma_3 + A_f(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3)$$

For saturated clays, $B = 1$. Substituting the preceding equation into Eq. (7.68),

$$\sigma_3' = K_o p' + \Delta\sigma_3 - [\Delta\sigma_3 + A_f(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3)]$$
$$= K_o p' - A_f(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) \tag{7.69}$$

Again, from Figure 7.69,

$$S_u = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2} = \frac{(p' + \Delta\sigma_1) - (K_o p' + \Delta\sigma_3)}{2}$$
$$\text{or} \qquad 2S_u = (\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) + (p' - K_o p')$$
$$\text{or} \qquad (\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) = 2S_u - (p' - K_o p') \tag{7.70}$$

Substituting Eq. (7.70) into Eq. (7.69), we obtain

$$\sigma_3' = K_o p' - 2S_u A_f + A_f p'(1 - K_o) \tag{7.71}$$

Substituting of Eq. (7.71) into the right-hand side of Eq. (7.67) and simplification yields

$$S_u = \frac{c\cos\phi + p'\sin\phi[K_o + A_f(1 - K_o)]}{1 + (2A_f - 1)\sin\phi} \tag{7.72}$$

For normally consolidated clays, $c = 0$; hence Eq. (7.72) becomes

$$\frac{S_u}{p'} = \frac{\sin\phi[K_o + A_f(1 - K_o)]}{1 + (2A_f - 1)\sin\phi} \tag{7.73}$$

There are also several empirical relations between S_u and p' suggested by various investigators. These are given in Table 7.5 (Figure 7.70).

EXAMPLE 7.7

A soil profile is shown in Figure 7.71. From a laboratory consolidation test, the preconsolidation pressure of a soil specimen obtained from a depth of 8 m below the ground surface was found to be 140 kN/m^2. Estimate the undrained shear strength of the clay at that depth. Use Skempton's and Ladd *et al.*'s relations from Table 7.5 and Eq. (7.64).

SOLUTION

$$\gamma_{\text{sat(clay)}} = \frac{G_s\gamma_w + wG_s\gamma_w}{1 + wG_s} = \frac{(2.7)(9.81)(1 + 0.3)}{1 + 0.3(2.7)}$$
$$= 19.02\,\text{kN/m}^3$$

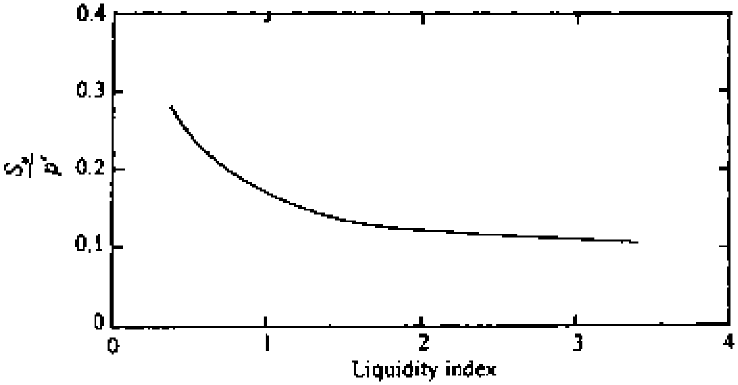


Figure 7.70 Variation of S_u/p' with liquidity index (see Table 7.5 for Bjerrum and Simons' relation).

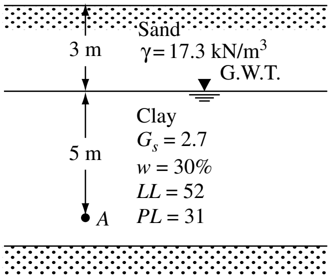


Figure 7.71 Undrained shear strength of a clay deposit.

The effective overburden pressure at A is

$$p' = 3\,(17.3) + 5\,(19.02 - 9.81) = 51.9 + 46.05 = 97.95\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

Thus the overconsolidation ratio is

$$\text{OCR} = \frac{140}{97.95} = 1.43$$

From Table 7.5,

$$\left(\frac{S_u}{p'}\right)_{\text{OC}} = \left(\frac{S_u}{p'}\right)_{\text{NC}} (\text{OCR})^{0.8} \tag{E7.5}$$

Table 7.5 Empirical equations related to S_u and p'

Reference	*Relation*	*Remarks*
Skempton (1957)	$S_{u(VST)}/p' = 0.11 + 0.0037\ \text{PI}$	For normally consolidated clay
Chandler (1988)	$S_{u(VST)}/p'_c = 0.11 + 0.0037\ \text{PI}$	Can be used in overconsolidated soil; accuracy ±25%; not valid for sensitive and fissured clays.
Jamiolkowski *et al.* (1985)	$S_u/p'_c = 0.23 \pm 0.04$	For low overconsolidated clays.
Mesri (1989)	$S_u/p' = 0.22$	
Bjerrum and Simons (1960)	$S_u/p' = f(\text{LI})$	See Figure 7.70; for normally consolidated clays
Ladd *et al.* (1977)	$\dfrac{(S_u/p')_{\text{overconsolidated}}}{(S_u/p')_{\text{normally consolidated}}} = (\text{OCR})^{0.8}$	

PI, plasticity index (%); $S_{u(VST)}$, undrained shear strength from vane shear test; p'_c, preconsolidation pressure; LI, liquidity index; and OCR, overconsolidation ratio.

However, from Table 7.5,

$$\left(\frac{S_{u(VST)}}{p'}\right)_{NC} = 0.11 + 0.037\ \text{PI} \tag{E7.6}$$

From Eq. (7.64),

$$\begin{aligned} S_u &= \lambda S_{u(VST)} = [1.7 - 0.54 \log(\text{PI})]\, S_{u(VST)} \\ &= [1.7 - (0.54) \log(52 - 31)] S_{u(VST)} = 0.986 S_{u(VST)} \end{aligned}$$

$$S_{u(VST)} = \frac{S_u}{0.986} \tag{E7.7}$$

Combining Eqs. (E7.6) and (E7.7),

$$\left(\frac{S_u}{0.986p'}\right)_{NC} = 0.11 + 0.0037\ \text{PI}$$

$$\left(\frac{S_u}{p'}\right)_{NC} = (0.986)[0.11 + 0.0037(52 - 31)] = 0.185 \tag{E7.8}$$

From Eqs. (E7.5) and (E7.6),

$$S_{u(OC)} = (0.185)\,(1.43)^{0.8}\,(97.95) = 24.12\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

7.22 Creep in soils

Like metals and concrete, most soils exhibit creep, i.e., continued deformation under a sustained loading (Figure 7.72). In order to understand Figure 7.72, consider several similar clay specimens subjected to standard undrained loading. For specimen no. 1, if a deviator stress $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_1 < (\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\text{failure}}$ is applied, the strain versus time ($\in$ versus t) relation will be similar to that shown by curve 1. If specimen no. 2 is subjected to a deviator stress $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_2 < (\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_1 < (\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\text{failure}}$, the strain versus time relation may be similar to that shown by curve 2. After the occurrence of a large strain, creep failure will take place in the specimen.

In general, the strain versus time plot for a given soil can be divided into three parts: primary, secondary, and tertiary. The primary part is the transient stage; this is followed by a steady state, which is secondary creep. The tertiary part is the stage during which there is a rapid strain which results in failure. These three steps are shown in Figure 7.72. Although the secondary stage is referred to as steady-state creep, in reality a true steady-state creep may not really exist (Singh and Mitchell, 1968).

It was observed by Singh and Mitchell (1968) that for most soils (i.e., sand, clay—dry, wet, normally consolidated, and overconsolidated) the logarithm of strain rate has an approximately linear relation with the logarithm of time. This fact is illustrated in Figure 7.73 for remolded San Francisco Bay mud. The strain rate is defined as

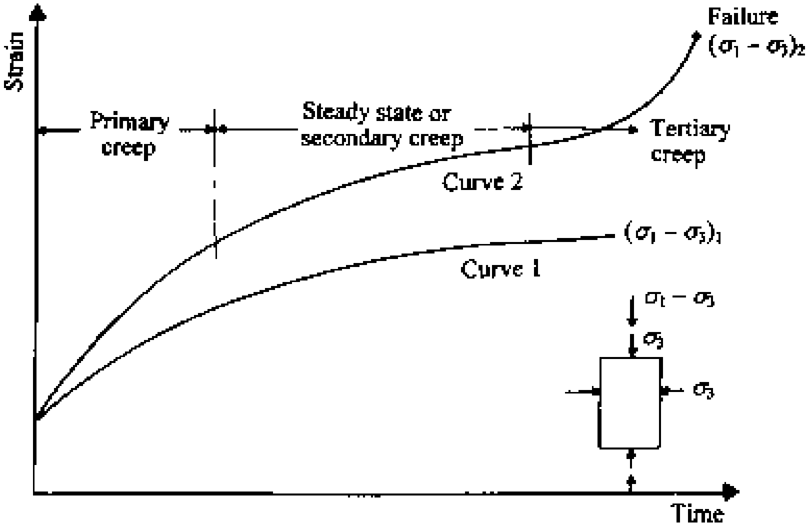


Figure 7.72 Creep in soils.

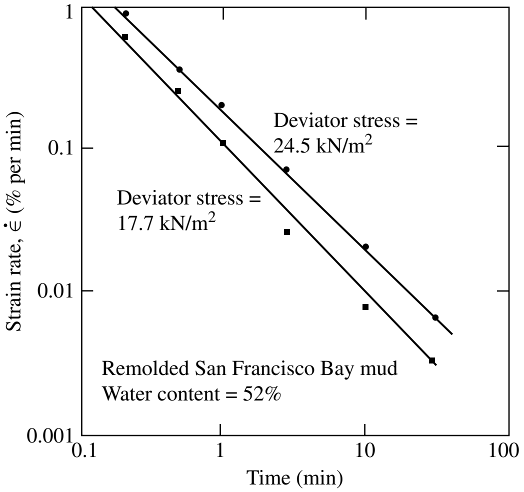


Figure 7.73 Plot of log $\dot{\in}$ versus log *t* during undrained creep of remolded San Francisco Bay mud (after Singh and Mitchell, 1968).

$$\dot{\in} = \frac{\Delta\varepsilon}{\Delta t} \tag{7.74}$$

where

$\dot{\in}$ = strain rate
ε = strain
t = time

From Figure 7.73, it is apparent that the slope of the log $\dot{\in}$ versus log t plot for a given soil is constant irrespective of the level of the deviator stress. When the failure stage due to creep at a given deviator stress level is reached, the log $\dot{\in}$ versus log t plot will show a reversal of slope as shown in Figure 7.74.

Figure 7.75 shows the nature of the variation of the creep strain rate with deviator stress $D = \sigma_1 - \sigma_3$ at a given time t after the start of the creep. For small values of the deviator stress, the curve of log $\dot{\in}$ versus D is convex upward. Beyond this portion, log $\dot{\in}$ versus D is approximately a straight line. When the value of D approximately reaches the strength of the soil, the curve takes an upward turn, signalling impending failure.

For a mathematical interpretation of the variation of strain rate with the deviator stress, several investigators (e.g., Christensen and Wu, 1964; Mitchell *et al.*, 1968) have used the *rate-process theory*. Christensen and Das (1973) also used the rate-process theory to predict the rate of erosion of cohesive soils.

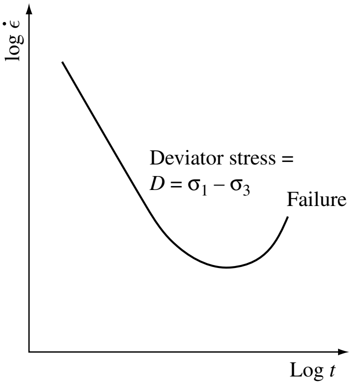


Figure 7.74 Nature of variation of log $\dot{\epsilon}$ versus log t for a given deviator stress showing the failure stage at large strains.

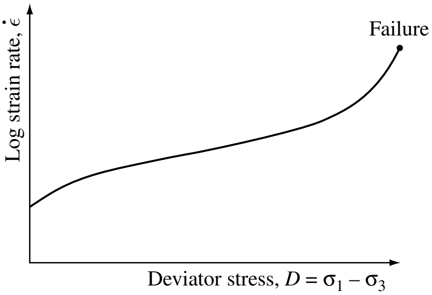


Figure 7.75 Variation of the strain rate $\dot{\epsilon}$ with deviator stress at a given time t after the start of the test.

The fundamentals of the rate-process theory can be explained as follows. Consider the soil specimen shown in Figure 7.76. The deviator stress on the specimen is $D = \sigma_1 - \sigma_3$. Let the shear stress along a plane AA in the specimen be equal to τ. The shear stress is resisted by the bonds at the points of contact of the particles along AA. Due to the shear stress $\grave{\tau}$ the weaker bonds will be overcome, with the result that shear displacement occurs at these localities. As this displacement proceeds, the force carried by the weaker bonds is transmitted partly or fully to stronger bonds. The effect of applied shear stress can thus be considered as making some flow units cross the energy barriers as shown in Figure 7.77, in which ΔF is equal to the activation energy (in cal/mole of flow unit). The frequency of activation of the flow units to overcome the energy barriers can be given by

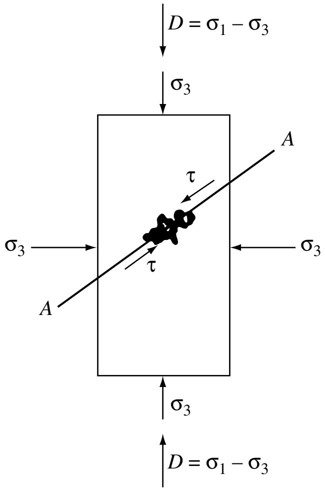


Figure 7.76 Fundamentals of rate-process theory.

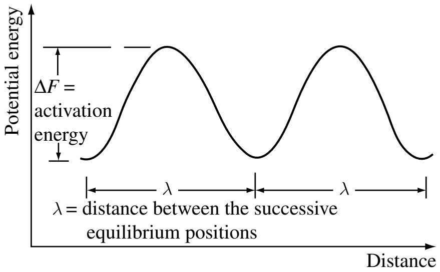


Figure 7.77 Definition of activation energy.

$$k' = \frac{kT}{h} \exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F}{RT}\right) = \frac{kT}{h} \exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F}{NkT}\right) \tag{7.75}$$

where

k' = frequency of activation
k = Boltzmann's constant = 1.38×10^{-16} erg/K = 3.29×10^{-24} cal/K
T = absolute temperature
h = Plank's constant = 6.624×10^{-27} erg/s
ΔF = free energy of activation, cal/mole
R = universal gas constant
N = Avogadro's number = 6.02×10^{23}

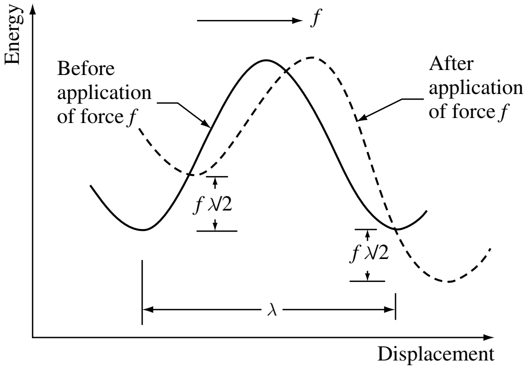


Figure 7.78 Derivation of Eq. (7.86).

Now, referring to Figure 7.78, when a force f is applied across a flow unit, the energy-barrier height is reduced by $f\lambda/2$ in the direction of the force and increased by $f\lambda/2$ in the opposite direction. By this, the frequency of activation in the direction of the force is

$$\underset{\rightarrow}{k'} = \frac{kT}{h}\exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F/N - f\lambda/2}{kT}\right) \tag{7.76}$$

and, similarly, the frequency of activation in the opposite direction becomes

$$\underset{\leftarrow}{k'} = \frac{kT}{h}\exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F/N + \lambda f/2}{kT}\right) \tag{7.77}$$

where λ is the distance between successive equilibrium positions.

So, the net frequency of activation in the direction of the force is equal to

$$\begin{aligned}\underset{\rightarrow}{k'} - \underset{\leftarrow}{k'} &= \frac{kT}{h}\left[\exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F/N - f\lambda/2}{kT}\right) - \exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F/N + f\lambda/2}{kT}\right)\right]\\ &= \frac{2kT}{h}\exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F}{RT}\right)\sinh\left(\frac{f\lambda}{2kT}\right)\end{aligned} \tag{7.78}$$

The rate of strain in the direction of the applied force can be given by

$$\dot{\epsilon} = x\left(\underset{\rightarrow}{k'} - \underset{\leftarrow}{k'}\right) \tag{7.79}$$

where x is a constant depending on the successful barrier crossings. So,

$$\dot{\epsilon} = 2x\frac{kT}{h}\exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F}{RT}\right)\sinh\left(\frac{f\lambda}{2kT}\right) \tag{7.80}$$

In the above equation,

$$f = \frac{\tau}{S} \tag{7.81}$$

where τ is the shear stress and S the number of flow units per unit area.

For triaxial shear test conditions as shown in Figure 7.76,

$$\tau_{\max} = \frac{D}{2} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2} \tag{7.82}$$

Combining Eqs. (7.81) and (7.82),

$$f = \frac{D}{2S} \tag{7.83}$$

Substituting Eq. (7.83) into Eq. (7.80), we get

$$\dot{\epsilon} = 2x\frac{kT}{h}\exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F}{RT}\right)\sinh\left(\frac{D\lambda}{4kST}\right) \tag{7.84}$$

For large stresses to cause significant creep—i.e., $D > 0.25 \cdot D_{\max} = 0.25(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\max}$ (Mitchell *et al.*, 1968)—$D\lambda/4kST$ is greater than 1. So, in that case,

$$\sinh\frac{D\lambda}{4kST} \approx \frac{1}{2}\exp\left(\frac{D\lambda}{4kST}\right) \tag{7.85}$$

Hence, from Eqs. (7.84) and (7.85),

$$\dot{\epsilon} = x\frac{kT}{h}\exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F}{RT}\right)\exp\left(\frac{D\lambda}{4kST}\right) \tag{7.86}$$

$$\dot{\epsilon} = A\exp(BD) \tag{7.87}$$

where

$$A = x\frac{kT}{h}\exp\left(-\frac{\Delta F}{RT}\right) \tag{7.88}$$

and

$$B = \frac{\lambda}{4kST} \tag{7.89}$$

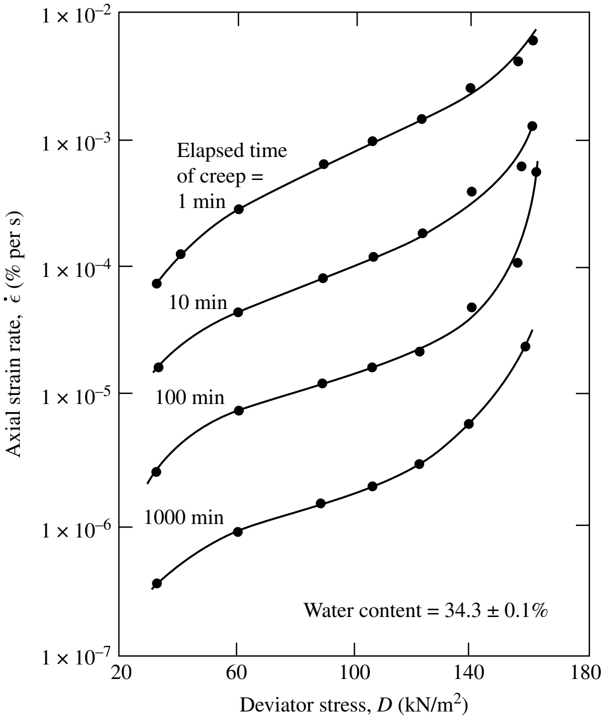


Figure 7.79 Variation of strain rate with deviator stress for undrained creep of remolded illite (after Mitchell *et al.*, 1969).

The quantity A is likely to vary with time because of the variation of x and ΔF with time. B is a constant for a given value of the effective consolidation pressure.

Figure 7.79 shows the variation of the undrained creep rate $\dot{\epsilon}$ with the deviator stress D for remolded illite at elapsed times t equal to 1, 10, 100, and 1000 min. From this, note that at any given time the following apply:

1. For $D < 49\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$, the $\log \dot{\epsilon}$ versus D plot is convex upward following the relation given by Eq. (7.84), $\dot{\epsilon} = 2A \sinh (BD)$. For this case, $D\lambda/4SkT < 1$.
2. For $128\,\mathrm{kN/m^2} > D > 49\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$, the $\log \dot{\epsilon}$ versus D plot is approximately a straight line following the relation given by Eq. (7.87), $\dot{\epsilon} = Ae^{BD}$. For this case, $D\lambda/4SkT > 1$.
3. For $D > 128\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$, the failure stage is reached when the strain rate rapidly increases; this stage cannot be predicted by Eqs. (7.84) and (7.87).

Table 7.6 Values of ΔF for some soils

Soil	ΔF*(kcal/mole)*
Saturated, remolded illite; water content 30–43%	25–40
Dried illite, samples air-dried from saturation then evacuated over dessicant	37
Undisturbed San Francisco Bay mud	25–32
Dry Sacramento River sand	$\sim$25

After Mitchell *et al*., 1969.

Table 7.6 gives the values of the experimental activation energy ΔF for four different soils.

7.23 Other theoretical considerations—yield surfaces in three dimensions

Comprehensive failure conditions or yield criteria were first developed for metals, rocks, and concrete. In this section, we will examine the application of these theories to soil and determine the yield surfaces in the principal stress space. The notations σ_1', σ_2', and σ_3' will be used for effective principal stresses without attaching an order of magnitude—i.e., σ_1', σ_2', and σ_3' are not necessarily major, intermediate, and minor principal stresses, respectively.

Von Mises (1913) proposed a simple yield function, which may be stated as

$$F = (\sigma_1' - \sigma_2')^2 + (\sigma_2' - \sigma_3')^2 + (\sigma_3' - \sigma_1')^2 - 2Y^2 = 0 \tag{7.90}$$

where Y is the yield stress obtained in axial tension. However, the octahedral shear stress can be given by the relation

$$\tau_{\text{oct}} = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{(\sigma_1' - \sigma_2')^2 + (\sigma_2' - \sigma_3')^2 + (\sigma_3' - \sigma_1')^2}$$

Thus Eq. (7.90) may be written as

$$3\tau_{\text{oct}}^2 = 2Y^2$$

$$\text{or} \quad \tau_{\text{oct}} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}Y \tag{7.91}$$

Equation (7.91) means that failure will take place when the octahedral shear stress reaches a constant value equal to $\sqrt{2/3}Y$. Let us plot this

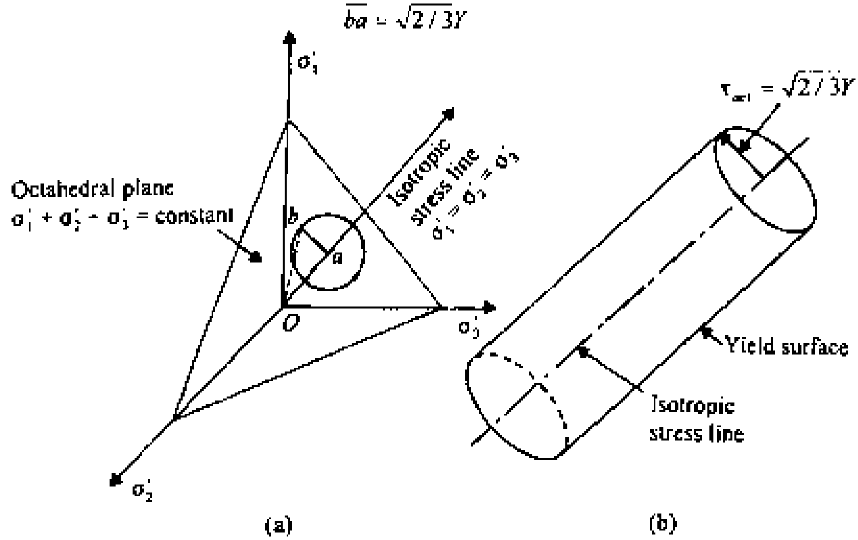


Figure 7.80 Yield surface—Von Mises criteria.

on the octahedral plane ($\sigma'_1 + \sigma'_2 + \sigma'_3 = \text{const}$), as shown in Figure 7.80. The locus will be a circle with a radius equal to $\tau_{\text{oct}} = \sqrt{2/3}Y$ and with its center at point a. In Figure 7.80*a*, Oa is the octahedral normal stress $(\sigma'_1 + \sigma'_2 + \sigma'_3)/3 = \sigma'_{\text{oct}}$; also, $ab = \tau_{\text{oct}}$, and $Ob = \sqrt{\sigma'^2_{\text{oct}} + \tau^2_{\text{oct}}}$. Note that the locus is unaffected by the value of σ'_{oct}. Thus, various values of σ'_{oct} will generate a circular cylinder coaxial with the hydrostatic axis, which is a yield surface (Figure 7.80*b*).

Another yield function suggested by Tresca (1868) can be expressed in the form

$$\sigma_{\text{max}} - \sigma_{\text{min}} = 2k \tag{7.92}$$

Equation (7.92) assumes that failure takes place when the maximum shear stress reaches a constant critical value. The factor k of Eq. (7.92) is defined for the case of simple tension by Mohr's circle shown in Figure 7.81. Note that for soils this is actually the $\phi = 0$ condition. In Figure 7.81 the yield function is plotted on the octahedral plane ($\sigma'_1 + \sigma'_2 + \sigma'_3 = \text{const}$). The locus is a regular hexagon. Point a is the point of intersection of the *hydrostatic axis* or *isotropic stress line* with octahedral plane, and so it represents the octahedral normal stress. Point b represents the failure condition in compression for $\sigma'_1 > \sigma'_2 = \sigma'_3$, and point e represents the failure condition in extension with $\sigma'_2 = \sigma'_3 > \sigma'_1$. Similarly, point d represents the

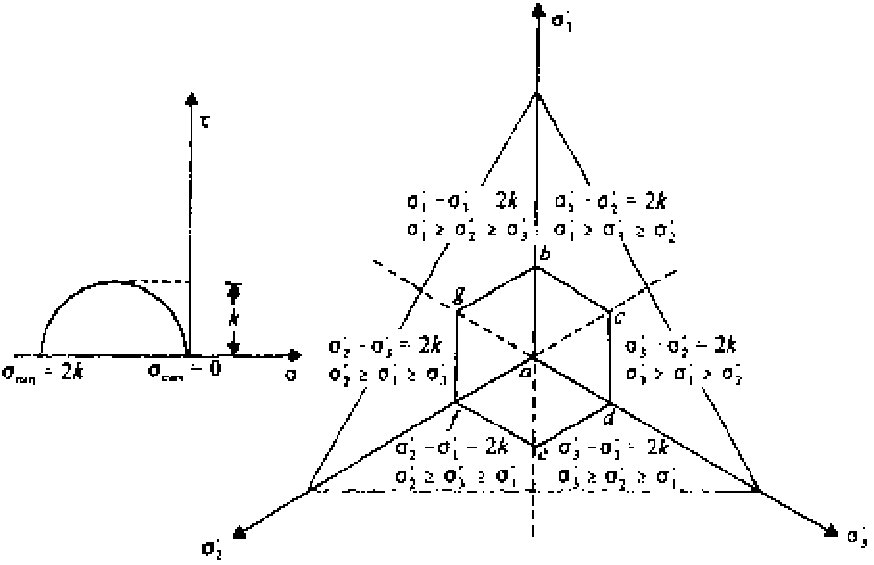


Figure 7.81 Yield surface—Tresca criteria.

failure condition for $\sigma_3' > \sigma_1' = \sigma_2'$, point g for $\sigma_1' = \sigma_2' > \sigma_3'$, point f for $\sigma_2' > \sigma_3' = \sigma_1'$, and point c for $\sigma_3' = \sigma_1' > \sigma_2'$. Since the locus is unaffected by the value of σ_{oct}', the yield surface will be a hexagonal cylinder.

We have seen from Eq. (7.20) that, for the Mohr–Coulomb condition of failure, $(\sigma_1' - \sigma_3') = 2c\cos\phi + (\sigma_1' + \sigma_3')\sin\phi$, or $(\sigma_1' - \sigma_3')^2 = [2c\cos\phi + (\sigma_1' + \sigma_3')\sin\phi]^2$. In its most general form, this can be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\{(\sigma_1' - \sigma_2')^2 - [2c\cos\phi + (\sigma_1' + \sigma_2')\sin\phi]\right\}^2\\ &\times \left\{(\sigma_2' - \sigma_3')^2 - [2c\cos\phi + (\sigma_2' + \sigma_3')\sin\phi]\right\}^2\\ &\times \{(\sigma_3' - \sigma_1') - [2c\cos\phi + (\sigma_3' + \sigma_1')\sin\phi]\}^2 = 0 \qquad (7.93)\end{aligned}$$

When the yield surface defined by Eq. (7.93) is plotted on the octahedral plane, it will appear as shown in Figure 7.82. This is an irregular hexagon in section with nonparallel sides of equal length. Point a in Figure 7.82 is the point of intersection of the hydrostatic axis with the octahedral plane. Thus the yield surface will be a hexagonal cylinder coaxial with the isotropic stress line.

Figure 7.83 shows a comparison of the three yield functions described above. In a Rendulic-type plot, the failure envelopes will appear in a manner

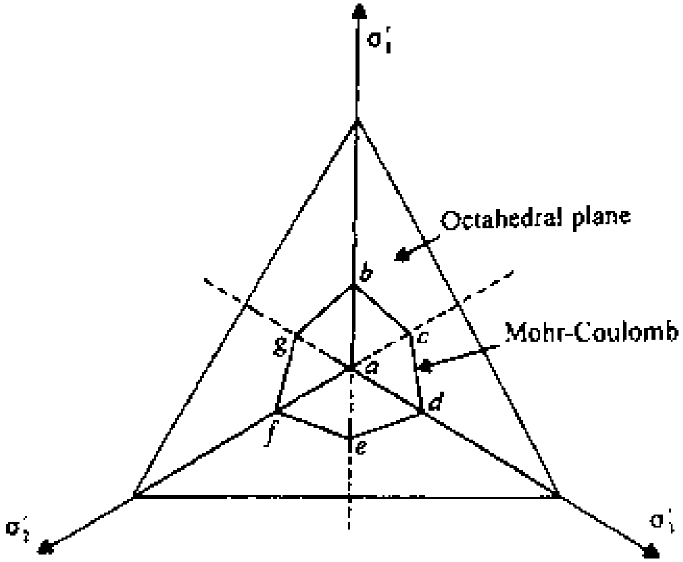


Figure 7.82 Mohr–Coulomb failure criteria.

shown in Figure 7.83*b*. At point *a*, $\sigma_1' = \sigma_2' = \sigma_3' = \sigma'$ (say). At point *b*, $\sigma_1' = \sigma' + \overline{ba'} = \sigma' + ab\ \sin\theta$, where $\theta = \cos^{-1}(1/\sqrt{3})$. Thus

$$\sigma_1' = \sigma' + \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\overline{ab} \tag{7.94}$$

$$\sigma_2' = \sigma_3' = \sigma' - \frac{aa'}{\sqrt{2}} = \sigma' - \frac{\overline{ab}\ \cos\theta}{\sqrt{2}} = \sigma' - \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\overline{ab} \tag{7.95}$$

For the Mohr–Coulomb failure criterion, $\sigma_1' - \sigma_3' = 2c\cos\phi + (\sigma_1' + \sigma_3')\sin\phi$. Substituting Eqs. (7.94) and (7.95) in the preceding equation, we obtain

$$\left(\sigma' + \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\overline{ab} - \sigma' + \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\overline{ab}\right) = 2c\cos\phi$$

$$+ \left(\sigma' + \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\overline{ab} + \sigma' - \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\overline{ab}\right)\sin\phi$$

or

$$\overline{ab}\left[\left(\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\right) - \left(\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\right)\sin\phi\right] = 2\left(c\cos\phi + \sigma'\sin\phi\right)$$

or $$\overline{ab}\frac{3}{\sqrt{6}}\left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\sin\phi\right) = 2\left(c\cos\phi + \sigma'\sin\phi\right) \tag{7.96}$$

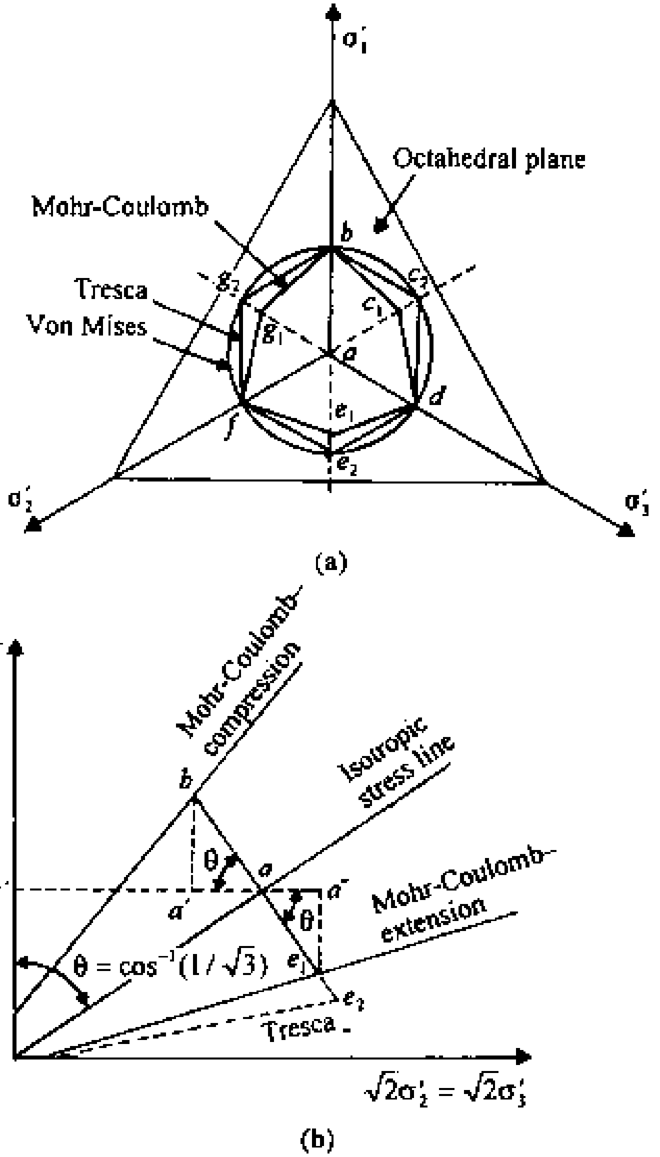


Figure 7.83 Comparison of Von Mises, Tresca, and Mohr–Coulomb yield functions.

Similarly, for *extension* (i.e., at point e_1),

$$\sigma_1' = \sigma' - \overline{e_1 a''} = \sigma' - \overline{ae}_1 \sin\theta = \sigma' - \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\overline{ae}_1 \tag{7.97}$$

$$\sigma_2' = \sigma_3' = \sigma' + \frac{\overline{aa''}}{\sqrt{2}} = \sigma' + \frac{\overline{ae}_1 \cos\theta}{\sqrt{2}} = \sigma' + \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} ae_1 \tag{7.98}$$

Now $\sigma_3' - \sigma_1' = 2c\cos\phi + (\sigma_3' + \sigma_1')\sin\phi$. Substituting Eqs. (7.97) and (7.98) into the preceding equation, we get

$$ae_1 \left[\left(\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} \right) + \left(\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} \right) \sin\phi \right] = 2\,(c\cos\phi + \sigma' \sin\phi) \tag{7.99}$$

or

$$\overline{ae}_1 \frac{3}{\sqrt{6}} \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\sin\phi \right) = 2\,(c\cos\phi + \sigma' \sin\phi) \tag{7.100}$$

Equating Eqs. (7.96) and (7.100),

$$\frac{\overline{ab}}{\overline{ae}_1} = \frac{1 + \dfrac{1}{3}\sin\phi}{1 - \dfrac{1}{3}\sin\phi} \tag{7.101}$$

Table 7.7 gives the ratios of $\overline{ab}$ to $\overline{ae}_1$ for various values of ϕ. Note that this ratio is not dependent on the value of cohesion, c.

It can be seen from Figure 7.83*a* that the Mohr–Coulomb and the Tresca yield functions coincide for the case $\phi = 0$.

Von Mises' yield function [Eq. (7.90)] can be modified to the form

$$(\sigma_1' - \sigma_2')^2 + (\sigma_2' - \sigma_3')^2 + (\sigma_3' - \sigma_1')^2 = \left[c + \frac{k_2}{3}\,(\sigma_1' + \sigma_2' + \sigma_3') \right]^2$$

$$\text{or} \qquad (\sigma_1' - \sigma_2')^2 + (\sigma_2' - \sigma_3')^2 + (\sigma_3' - \sigma_1')^2 = (c + k_2 \sigma_{\text{oct}}')^2 \tag{7.102}$$

Table 7.7 Ratio of $\overline{ab}$ to $\overline{ae}_1$ [Eq. (7.101)]

ϕ	$\overline{ab}/\overline{ae}_1$
40	0.647
30	0.715
20	0.796
10	0.889
0	1.0

where k_2 is a function of sin ϕ, and c is cohesion. Eq. (7.102) is called the extended Von Mises' yield criterion.

Similarly, Tresca's yield function [Eq. (7.75)] can be modified to the form

$$\begin{aligned}&\left[(\sigma_1' - \sigma_2')^2 - (c + k_3\sigma_{\text{oct}}')^2\right]\\ &\quad\times\left[(\sigma_2' - \sigma_3') - (c + k_3\sigma_{\text{oct}}')^2\right]\\ &\quad\times\left[(\sigma_3' - \sigma_1')^2 - (c + k_3\sigma_{\text{oct}}')^2\right] = 0 \qquad (7.103)\end{aligned}$$

where k_3 is a function of sin ϕ and c is cohesion. Equation (7.103) is generally referred to as the extended Tresca criterion.

7.24 Experimental results to compare the yield functions

Kirkpatrick (1957) devised a special shear test procedure for soils, called the *hollow cylinder test*, which provides the means for obtaining the variation in the three principal stresses. The results from this test can be used to compare the validity of the various yield criteria suggested in the preceding section.

A schematic diagram of the laboratory arrangement for the hollow cylinder test is shown in Figure 7.84*a*. A soil specimen in the shape of a hollow cylinder is placed inside a test chamber. The specimen is encased by both an inside and an outside membrane. As in the case of a triaxial test, radial pressure on the soil specimen can be applied through water. However, in this type of test, the pressures applied to the inside and outside of the specimen can be controlled separately. Axial pressure on the specimen is applied by a piston. In the original work of Kirkpatrick, the axial pressure was obtained from load differences applied to the cap by the fluid on top of the specimen [i.e., piston pressure was not used; see Eq. (7.110)].

The relations for the principal stresses in the soil specimen can be obtained as follows (see Figure 7.84*b*). Let σ_{o} and σ_{i} be the outside and inside fluid pressures, respectively. For *drained tests* the total stresses σ_{o} and σ_{i} are equal to the effective stresses, σ_{o}' and σ_{i}'. For an axially symmetrical case the equation of continuity for a given point in the soil specimen can be given by

$$\frac{d\sigma_{\text{r}}'}{dr} + \frac{\sigma_{\text{r}}' - \sigma_\theta'}{r} = 0 \qquad (7.104)$$

where σ_{r}' and σ_θ' are the radial and tangential stresses, respectively, and r is the radial distance from the center of the specimen to the point.

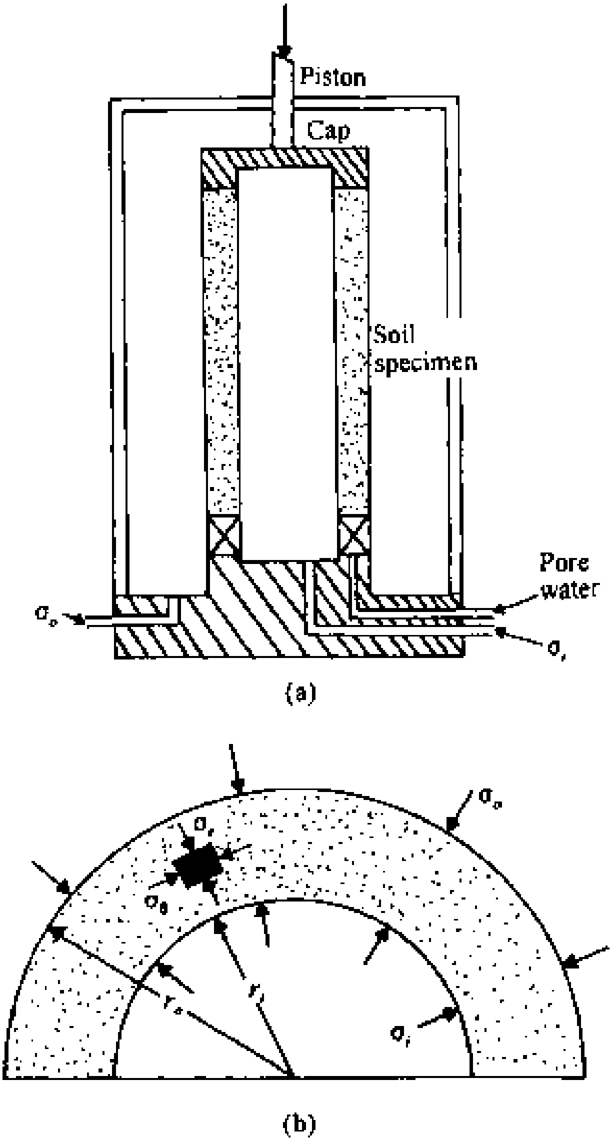


Figure 7.84 Hollow cylinder test.

We will consider a case where the failure in the specimen is caused by increasing σ_i' and keeping σ_o' constant. Let

$$\sigma_\theta' = \lambda\sigma_r' \tag{7.105}$$

Substituting Eq. (7.105) in Eq. (7.104), we get

$$\frac{d\sigma_r'}{dr} + \frac{\sigma_r'(1-\lambda)}{r} = 0$$

$$\text{or} \quad \frac{1}{\lambda-1}\int\frac{d\sigma_r'}{\sigma_r'} = \int\frac{dr}{r}$$

$$\sigma_r' = Ar^{\lambda-1} \tag{7.106}$$

where A is a constant.

However, $\sigma_r' = \sigma_o'$ at $r = r_o$, which is the outside radius of the specimen. So,

$$A = \frac{\sigma_o'}{r_o^{\lambda-1}} \tag{7.107}$$

Combining Eqs. (7.106) and (7.107),

$$\sigma_r' = \sigma_o'\left(\frac{r}{r_o}\right)^{\lambda-1} \tag{7.108}$$

Again, from Eqs. (7.105) and (7.108),

$$\sigma_\theta' = \lambda\sigma_o'\left(\frac{r}{r_o}\right)^{\lambda-1} \tag{7.109}$$

The effective axial stress σ_a' can be given by the equation

$$\sigma_a' = \frac{\sigma_o'\left(\pi r_o^2\right) - \sigma_i'\left(\pi r_i^2\right)}{\pi r_o^2 - \pi r_i^2} = \frac{\sigma_o' r_o^2 - \sigma_i' r_i^2}{r_o^2 - r_i^2} \tag{7.110}$$

where r_i is the inside radius of the specimen.

At failure, the radial and tangential stresses at the inside face of the specimen can be obtained from Eqs. (7.108) and (7.109):

$$\sigma_{r(\text{inside})}' = (\sigma_i')_{\text{failure}} = \sigma_o'\left(\frac{r_i}{r_o}\right)^{\lambda-1} \tag{7.111}$$

$$\text{or} \quad \left(\frac{\sigma_i'}{\sigma_o'}\right)_{\text{failure}} = \left(\frac{r_i}{r_o}\right)^{\lambda-1} \tag{7.112}$$

$$\sigma_{\theta(\text{inside})}' = (\sigma_\theta')_{\text{failure}} = \lambda\sigma_o'\left(\frac{r_i}{r_o}\right)^{\lambda-1} \tag{7.113}$$

To obtain σ'_a at failure, we can substitute Eq. (7.111) into Eq. (7.110):

$$(\sigma'_\mathrm{a})_\mathrm{failure} = \frac{\sigma'_\mathrm{o}\left[(r_\mathrm{o}/r_\mathrm{o})^2 - (\sigma'_\mathrm{i}/\sigma'_\mathrm{o})\right]}{(r_\mathrm{o}/r_\mathrm{i})^2 - 1}$$

$$= \frac{\sigma'_\mathrm{o}\left[(r_\mathrm{o}/r_\mathrm{i})^2 - (r_\mathrm{o}/r_\mathrm{i})^{1-\lambda}\right]}{(r_\mathrm{o}/r_\mathrm{i})^2 - 1} \tag{7.114}$$

From the above derivations, it is obvious that for this type of test (i.e., increasing σ'_i to cause failure and keeping σ'_o constant) the major and minor principal stresses are σ'_r and σ'_θ. The intermediate principal stress is σ'_a. For granular soils the value of the cohesion c is 0, and from the Mohr–Coulomb failure criterion,

$$\left(\frac{\text{Minor principal stress}}{\text{Major principal stress}}\right)_\mathrm{failure} = \frac{1-\sin\phi}{1+\sin\phi}$$

$$\text{or}\quad \left(\frac{\sigma'_\theta}{\sigma'_\mathrm{r}}\right)_\mathrm{failure} = \frac{1-\sin\phi}{1+\sin\phi} \tag{7.115}$$

Comparing Eqs. (7.105) and (7.115),

$$\frac{1-\sin\phi}{1+\sin\phi} = \tan^2\left(45^\circ - \frac{\phi}{2}\right) = \lambda \tag{7.116}$$

The results of some hollow cylinder tests conducted by Kirkpatrick (1957) on a sand are given in Table 7.8, together with the calculated values of λ, $(\sigma'_\mathrm{a})_\mathrm{failure}$, $(\sigma'_\mathrm{r})_\mathrm{failure}$, and $(\sigma'_\theta)_\mathrm{failure}$.

A comparison of the yield functions on the octahedral plane and the results of Kirkpatrick is given in Figure 7.85. The results of triaxial compression and extension tests conducted on the same sand by Kirkpatrick are also shown in Figure 7.85. The experimental results indicate that the Mohr–Coulomb criterion gives a better representation for soils than the extended Tresca and Von Mises criteria. However, the hollow cylinder tests produced slightly higher values of ϕ than those from the triaxial tests.

Wu *et al.* (1963) also conducted a type of hollow cylinder shear test with sand and clay specimens. In these tests, failure was produced by increasing the inside, outside, and axial stresses on the specimens in various combinations. The axial stress increase was accomplished by the application of a force P on the cap through the piston as shown in Figure 7.84. Triaxial compression and extension tests were also conducted. Out of a total of six series of tests, there were two in which failure was caused by increasing the outside pressure. For those two series of tests, $\sigma'_\theta > \sigma'_\mathrm{a} > \sigma'_\mathrm{r}$. Note that this is

Table 7.8 Results of Kirkpatrick's hollow cylinder test on a sand

Test no.	$(\sigma'_i)_{\text{failure}}$[*] *(lb/in^2)*	σ'_o, [†] *(lb/in^2)*	*λ [from Eq. (7.112)]*[‡]	$\sigma'_{\theta(\text{inside})}$ *at failure* [§] *(lb/in^2)*	$\sigma'_{\theta(\text{outside})}$ at failure [¶] *(lb/in^2)*	σ'_a *[from Eq. (7.110) (lb/in^2)*
1	21.21	14.40	0.196	4.16	2.82	10.50
2	27.18	18.70	0.208	5.65	3.89	13.30
3	44.08	30.60	0.216	9.52	6.61	22.30
4	55.68	38.50	0.215	11.95	8.28	27.95
5	65.75	45.80	0.192	12.61	8.80	32.30
6	68.63	47.92	0.198	13.60	9.48	34.05
7	72.88	50.30	0.215	15.63	10.81	35.90
8	77.16	54.02	0.219	16.90	11.83	38.90
9	78.43	54.80	0.197	15.4	10.80	38.20

[*] $(\sigma'_i)_{\text{failure}} = \sigma'_{r(\text{inside})}$ at failure.

[†] $(\sigma'_o) = \sigma'_{r(\text{outside})}$ at failure.

[‡] For these tests, $r_o = 2$ in. (50.8 mm) and $r_i = 1.25$ in. (31.75 mm).

[§] $\sigma'_{\theta(\text{inside})} = \lambda(\sigma'_i)_{\text{failure}}$.

[¶] $\sigma'_{\theta(\text{outside})} = \lambda(\sigma'_o)_{\text{failure}}$.

Note: 1 lb/in^2 = 6.9 kN/m^2.

opposite to Kirkpatrick's tests, in which $\sigma'_r > \sigma'_a > \sigma'_\theta$. Based on the Mohr–Coulomb criterion, we can write [see Eq. (7.21)] $\sigma'_{\max} = \sigma'_{\min}N + 2cN^{1/2}$. So, for the case where $\sigma'_\theta > \sigma'_a > \sigma'_r$,

$$\sigma'_\theta = \sigma'_r N + 2cN^{1/2} \tag{7.117}$$

The value of N in the above equation is $\tan^2(45° + \phi/2)$, and so the λ in Eq. (7.105) is equal to $1/N$. From Eq. (7.104),

$$\frac{d\sigma'_r}{dr} = \frac{\sigma'_\theta - \sigma'_r}{r}$$

Combining the preceding equation and Eq. (7.117), we get

$$\frac{d\sigma'_r}{dr} = \frac{1}{r}\left[\sigma'_r(N-1) + 2cN^{1/2}\right] \tag{7.118}$$

Using the boundary condition that, at $r = r_i$, $\sigma'_r = \sigma'_i$, Eq. (7.118) gives the following relation:

$$\sigma'_r = \left(\sigma'_i + \frac{2cN^{1/2}}{N-1}\right)\left(\frac{r}{r_i}\right)^{N-1} - \frac{2cN^{1/2}}{N-1} \tag{7.119}$$

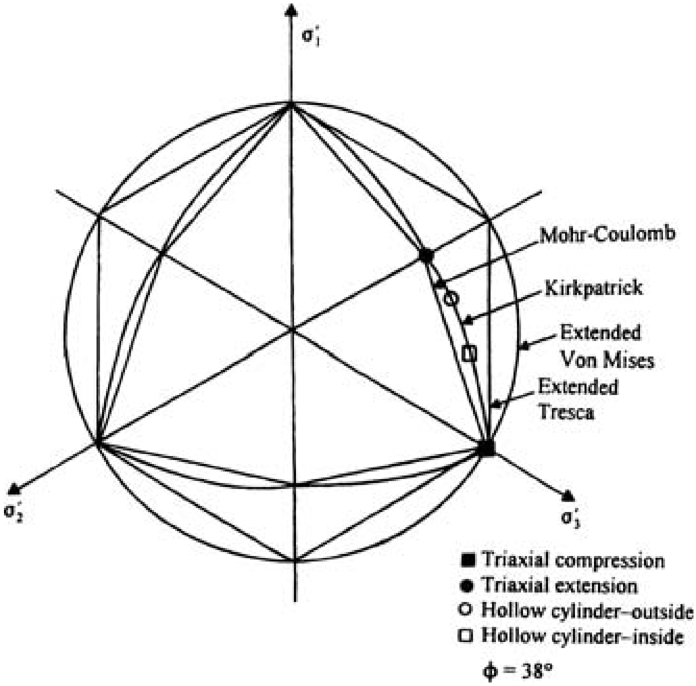


Figure 7.85 Comparison of the yield functions on the octahedral plane along with the results of Kirkpatrick.

Also, combining Eqs. (7.117) and (7.119),

$$\sigma'_\theta = \left(\sigma'_\mathrm{i} N + \frac{2cN^{3/2}}{N-1}\right)\left(\frac{r}{r_\mathrm{i}}\right)^{N-1} - \frac{2cN^{1/2}}{N-1} \tag{7.120}$$

At failure, $\sigma'_{\mathrm{r(outside)}} = (\sigma'_\mathrm{o})_{\mathrm{failure}}$. So,

$$(\sigma'_\mathrm{o})_{\mathrm{failure}} = \left(\sigma'_\mathrm{i} + \frac{2cN^{1/2}}{N-1}\right)\left(\frac{r_\mathrm{o}}{r_\mathrm{i}}\right)^{N-1} - \frac{2cN^{1/2}}{N-1} \tag{7.121}$$

For granular soils and normally consolidated clays, $c = 0$. So, at failure, Eqs. (7.119) and (7.120) simplify to the form

$$(\sigma'_\mathrm{r})_{\mathrm{outside\ at\ failure}} = (\sigma'_\mathrm{o})_{\mathrm{failure}} = \sigma'_\mathrm{i}\left(\frac{r_\mathrm{o}}{r_\mathrm{i}}\right)^{N-1} \tag{7.122}$$

and $$(\sigma'_\theta)_{\mathrm{outside\ at\ failure}} = \sigma'_\mathrm{i} N\left(\frac{r_\mathrm{o}}{r_\mathrm{i}}\right)^{N-1} \tag{7.123}$$

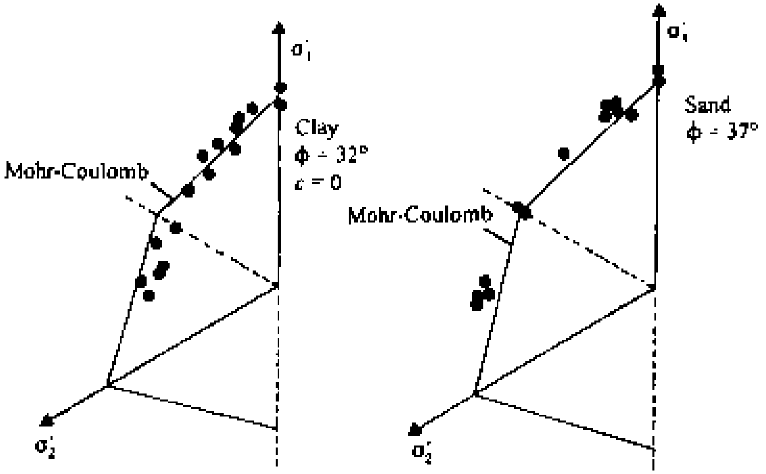


Figure 7.86 Results of hollow cylinder tests plotted on octahedral plane $\sigma_1' + \sigma_2' + \sigma_3' = 1$ (after Wu *et al.*, 1963).

$$\text{Hence} \quad \left(\frac{\sigma_r'}{\sigma_\theta'}\right)_{\text{failure}} = \frac{\text{minor principal effective stress}}{\text{major principal effective stress}} = \frac{1}{N} = \lambda \tag{7.124}$$

Compare Eqs. (7.105) and (7.124).

Wu *et al.* also derived equations for σ_r' and σ_θ' for the case $\sigma_a' > \sigma_\theta' > \sigma_r'$. Figure 7.86 shows the results of Wu *et al.* plotted on the octahedral plane $\sigma_1' + \sigma_2' + \sigma_3' = 1$. The Mohr–Coulomb yield criterion has been plotted by using the triaxial compression and extension test results. The results of other hollow cylinder tests are plotted as points. In general, there is good agreement between the experimental results and the yield surface predicted by the Mohr–Coulomb theory. However, as in Kirkpatrick's test, hollow cylinder tests indicated somewhat higher values of ϕ than triaxial tests in the case of sand. In the case of clay, the opposite trend is generally observed.

PROBLEMS

7.1 The results of two consolidated drained triaxial tests are as follows:

Test	σ_3(kN/m^2)	$\Delta\sigma_f$(kN/m^2)
1	66	134.77
2	91	169.1

Determine c and ϕ. Also determine the magnitudes of the normal and shear stress on the planes of failure for the two specimens used in the tests.

7.2 A specimen of normally consolidated clay ($\phi = 28°$) was consolidated under a chamber-confining pressure of $280\,\text{kN/m}^2$. For a drained test, by how much does the axial stress have to be reduced to cause failure by axial extension?

7.3 A normally consolidated clay specimen ($\phi = 31°$) was consolidated under a chamber-confining pressure of $132\,\text{kN/m}^2$. Failure of the specimen was caused by an added axial stress of $158.1\,\text{kN/m}^2$ in an undrained condition. Determine ϕ_{cu}, A_{f}, and the pore water pressure in the specimen at failure.

7.4 A normally consolidated clay is consolidated under a triaxial chamber confining pressure of $495\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and $\phi = 29°$. In a Rendulic-type diagram, draw the stress path the specimen would follow if sheared to failure in a *drained condition* in the following ways:

(*a*) By increasing the axial stress and keeping the radial stress constant.
(*b*) By reducing the axial stress and keeping the axial stress constant.
(*c*) By increasing the axial stress and keeping the radial stress such that $\sigma'_{\text{a}} + 2\sigma'_{\text{r}} = \text{const.}$
(*d*) By reducing the axial stress and keeping the radial stress constant.
(*e*) By increasing the radial stress and keeping the axial stress constant.
(*f*) By reducing the axial stress and increasing the radial stress such that $\sigma'_{\text{a}} + 2\sigma'_{\text{r}} = \text{const.}$

7.5 The results of a consolidated undrained test, in which $\sigma_3 = 392\,\text{kN/m}^2$, on a normally consolidated clay are given next:

Axial strain (%)	$\Delta\sigma(kN/m^2)$	$u_d(kN/m^2)$
0	0	0
0.5	156	99
0.75	196	120
1	226	132
1.3	235	147
2	250	161
3	245	170
4	240	173
4.5	235	175

Draw the K_{f} line in a p' versus q' diagram. Also draw the stress path for this test in the diagram.

7.6 For the following consolidated drained triaxial tests on a clay, draw a p' versus q' diagram and determine c and ϕ.

Test	$p'(kN/m^2)$	$q'(kN/m^2)$
1	28.75	35.46
2	38.33	37.38
3	73.79	49.83
4	101.6	64.2
5	134.2	76.7

7.7 The stress path for a normally consolidated clay is shown in Figure P7.1 (Rendulic plot). The stress path is for a consolidated undrained triaxial test where failure was caused by increasing the axial stress while keeping the radial stress constant. Determine

(*a*) ϕ for the soil,
(*b*) The pore water pressure induced at *A*,
(*c*) The pore water pressure at failure, and
(*d*) The value of A_f.

7.8 The results of some drained triaxial tests on a clay soil are given below. Failure of each specimen was caused by increasing the axial stress while the radial stress was kept constant.

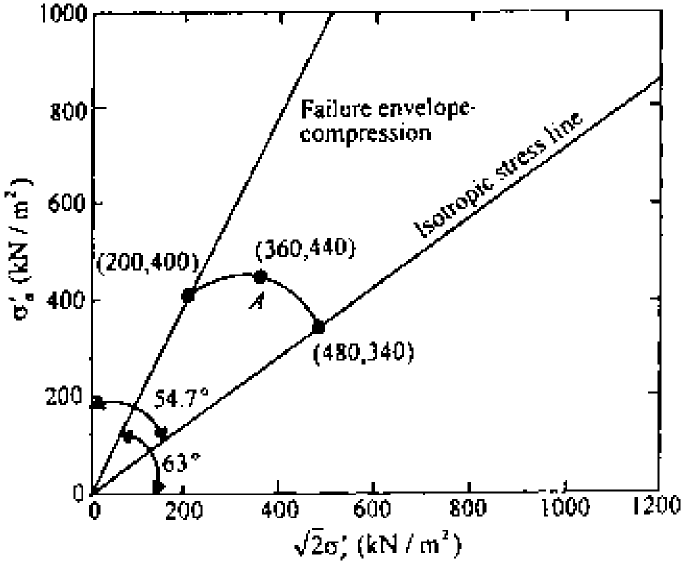


Figure P7.1

(*a*) Determine ϕ for the soil.
(*b*) Determine Hvorslev's parameters ϕ_e and c_e at moisture contents of 24.2, 22.1, and 18.1%.

Test no.	*Chamber consolidation pressure* σ'_c (kN/m^2)	σ'_3 (kN/m^2)	$\Delta\sigma_f$ (kN/m^2)	*Moisture content of specimen at failure (%)*
1	105	105	154	24.2
2	120	120	176	22.1
3	162	162	237	18.1
4	250	35	109	24.2
5	250	61	137	22.1
6	250	140	229	18.1

7.9 A specimen of soil was collected from a depth of 12 m in a deposit of clay. The ground water table coincides with the ground surface. For the soil, LL = 68, PL = 29, and $\gamma_{sat} = 17.8\,\text{kN/m}^3$. Estimate the undrained shear strength S_u of this clay for the following cases.

(*a*) If the clay is normally consolidated.
(*b*) If the preconsolidation pressure is 191 kN/m^2.

Use Skempton's (1957) and Ladd *et al.*'s (1977) relations (Table 7.5).

7.10 A specimen of clay was collected from the field from a depth of 16 m (Figure P7.2). A consolidated undrained triaxial test yielded the following results: $\phi = 32°$, $A_f = 0.8$. Estimate the undrained shear strength S_u of the clay.

7.11 For an anisotropic clay deposit the results from unconfined compression tests were $S_{u(i=30°)} = 102\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and $S_{u(i=60°)} = 123\,\text{kN/m}^2$. Find the anisotropy coefficient K of the soil based on the Casagrande–Carillo equation [Eq. (7.52)].

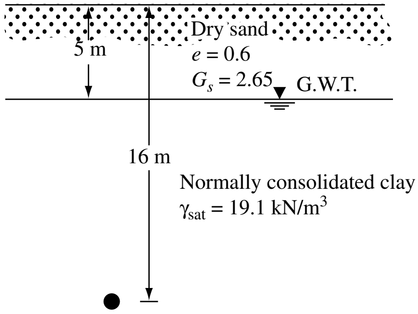


Figure P7.2

7.12 A sand specimen was subjected to a drained shear test using hollow cylinder test equipment. Failure was caused by increasing the inside pressure while keeping the outside pressure constant. At failure, $\sigma_o = 193\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and $\sigma_i = 264\,\text{kN/m}^2$. The inside and outside radii of the specimen were 40 and 60 mm, respectively.

(*a*) Calculate the soil friction angle.
(*b*) Calculate the axial stress on the specimen at failure.

References

American Society for Testing and Materials, *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, vol. 04.08, Philadelphia, Pa., 1992.

Berger, L. and J. Gnaedinger, Strength Regain of Clays, *ASTM Bull.*, Sept. 1949.

Bishop, A. W. and L. Bjerrum, The Relevance of the Triaxial Test to the Solution of Stability Problems, in *Proc. Res. Conf. Shear Strength of Cohesive Soils, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng.*, pp. 437–501, 1960.

Bishop, A. W. and D. J. Henkel, *The Measurement of Soil Properties in the Triaxial Test*, 2nd ed., Edward Arnold, London, 1969.

Bjerrum, L., Embankments on Soft Ground, in *Proc. Specialty Conf. Earth and Earth-Supported Struct.*, vol. 2, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng., pp. 1–54, 1972.

Bjerrum, L. and N. E. Simons, Comparison of Shear Strength Characteristics of Normally Consolidated Clay, in *Proc. Res. Conf. Shear Strength Cohesive Soils*, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng., pp. 711–726, 1960.

Carlson, L., Determination of the *In Situ* Shear Strength of Undisturbed Clay by Means of a Rotating Auger, in *Proc. II Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 1, pp. 265–270, 1948.

Casagrande, A. and N. Carrillo, Shear Failure of Anisotropic Materials, in *Contribution to Soil Mechanics 1941–1953*, Boston Society of Civil Engineers, Boston, Mass., 1944.

Casagrande, A. and S. D. Wilson, *Investigation of the Effects of the Long-Time Loading on the Shear Strength of Clays and Shales at Constant Water Content*, Report to the U.S. Waterways Experiment Station, Harvard University, 1949.

Casagrande, A. and S. D. Wilson, Effect of the Rate of Loading on the Strength of Clays and Shales at Constant Water Content, *Geotechnique*, vol. 1, pp. 251–263, 1951.

Chandler, R. J., The *In Situ* Measurement of the Undrained Shear Strength of Clays Using the Field Vane, *STP1014, Vane Shear Strength Testing in Soils: Field and Laboratory Studies*, ASTM, pp. 13–44, 1988.

Christensen, R. W. and B. M. Das, Hydraulic Erosion of Remolded Cohesive Soils. Highway Research Board, *Special Report 135*, pp. 9–19, 1973.

Christensen, R. W. and T. H. Wu, Analysis of Clay Deformation as a Rate Process, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 90, no. SM6, pp. 125–157, 1964.

Coulomb, C. A., Essai Sur une Application des regles des Maximis et Minimis a Quelques Problemes des Statique Relatifs a L'Architecture, *Mem. Acad. R. Pres. Divers Savants*, Paris, vol. 7, 1776.

Duncan, J. M. and C. Y. Chang, Nonlinear Analysis of Stress and Strain in Soils, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 96, no. 5, pp. 1629–1653, 1970.

Hatanaka, M. and A. Uchida, Empirical Correlation between Penetration Resistance and Internal Friction Angle of Sandy Soils, *Soils and Found.*, vol. 36, no. 4, pp. 1–10, 1996.

Gibson, R. E., Experimental Determination of True Cohesion and True Angle of Internal Friction in Clay, in *Proc. III Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 1, p. 126, 1953.

Henkel, D. J., The Shearing Strength of Saturated Remolded Clays, *Proc. Res. Conf. Shear Strength of Cohesive Soils*, ASCE, pp. 533–554, 1960.

Horne, H. M. and D. U. Deere, Frictional Characteristics of Minerals, *Geotechnique*, vol. 12, pp. 319–335, 1962.

Hvorslev, J., Physical Component of the Shear Strength of Saturated Clays, in *Proc. Res. Conf. Shear Strength of Cohesive Soils, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng.*, pp. 169–273, 1960.

Hvorslev, M. J., Uber Die Festigheitseigen-schaften Gestorter Bindinger Boden, in *Ingeniorvidenskabelige Skrifter*, no. 45, Danmarks Naturvidenskabelige Samfund, Kovenhavn, 1937.

Jamiolkowski, M., C. C. Ladd, J. T. Germaine, and R. Lancellotta, New Developments in Field and Laboratory Testing of Soils, in *Proc. XI Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 1, pp. 57–153, 1985.

Janbu, N., Soil Compressibility as Determined by Oedometer and Triaxial Tests, *Proc. Eur. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 1, pp. 259–263, 1963.

Kelly, W. E., Correcting Shear Strength for Temperature, *J. Geotech. Eng. Div., ASCE*, vol. 104, no. GT5, pp. 664–667, 1978.

Kenney, T. C., Discussion, *Proc., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 85, no. SM3, pp. 67–79, 1959.

Kirkpatrick, W. M., The Condition of Failure in Sands, *Proc. IV Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 1, pp. 172–178, 1957.

Kulhawy, F. H. and P. W. Mayne, *Manual on Estimating Soil Properties in Foundation Design*, Elect. Power Res. Inst., Palo Alto, Calif., 1990.

Ladd, C. C., R. Foote, K. Ishihara, F. Schlosser, and H. G. Poulos, Stress-Deformation and Strength Characteristics, *IX Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 2, pp. 421–494, 1977.

Lade, P. V. and K. L. Lee, Engineering Properties of Soils, *Report UCLA-ENG-7652*, 1976.

Lambe, T. W., Methods of Estimating Settlement, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 90, no. 5, p. 43, 1964.

Lee, I. K., Stress-Dilatency Performance of Feldspar, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 92, no. SM2, pp. 79–103, 1966.

Lee, K. L., Comparison of Plane Strain and Triaxial Tests on Sand, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 96, no. SM3, pp. 901–923, 1970.

Lo, K. Y., Stability of Slopes in Anisotropic Soils, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 91, no. SM4, pp. 85–106, 1965.

Mesri, G., A Re-evaluation of $s_{u(\mathrm{mob})} \approx 0.22\sigma_p$ Using Laboratory Shear Tests, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 26, no. 1, pp. 162–164, 1989.

Meyerhof, G. G., Some Recent Research on the Bearing Capacity of Foundations, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 1, no. 1, pp. 16–26, 1963.

Mitchell, J. K., Shearing Resistance of Soils as a Rate Process, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 90, no. SM1, pp. 29–61, 1964.

Mitchell, J. K., R. G. Campanella, and A. Singh, Soil Creep as a Rate Process, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 94, no. SM1, pp. 231–253, 1968.

Mitchell, J. K., A. Singh, and R. G. Campanella, Bonding, Effective Stresses, and Strength of Soils, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 95, no. SM5, pp. 1219–1246, 1969.

Mohr, O., Welche Umstände Bedingen die Elastizitätsgrenze und den Bruch eines Materiales?, *Zeitschrift des Vereines Deutscher Ingenieure*, vol. 44, pp. 1524–1530, 1572–1577, 1900.

Moretto, O., Effect of Natural Hardening on the Unconfined Strength of Remolded Clays, *Proc. 2d Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 1, pp. 218–222, 1948.

Morris, P. M. and D. J. Williams, Effective Stress Vane Shear Strength Correction Factor Correlations, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 31, no. 3, pp. 335–342, 1994.

Olson, R. E., Shearing Strength of Kaolinite, Illite, and Montmorillonite, *J. Geotech. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 100, no. GT11, pp. 1215–1230, 1974.

Peck, R. B., H. O. Ireland, and T. S. Fry, Studies of Soil Characteristics: The Earth Flows of St. Thuribe, Quebec, *Soil Mechanics Series No. 1*, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1951.

Rendulic, L., Ein Grundgesetzder tonmechanik und sein experimentaller beweis, *Bauingenieur*, vol. 18, pp. 459–467, 1937.

Ricceri, G., P. Simonini, and S. Cola, Applicability of Piezocone and Dilatometer to Characterize the Soils of the Venice Lagoon, *Geotech. Geol. Engg*, vol. 20, no. 2, pp. 89–121, 2002.

Richardson, A. M., E. W. Brand, and A. Menon, *In Situ* Determination of Anisotropy of a Soft Clay, *Proc. Conf. In Situ Measure. Soil Prop.*, vol. 1, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng., pp. 336–349, 1975.

Robertson, P. K. and R. G. Campanella, Interpretation of Cone Penetration Tests. Part I: Sand, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 20, no. 4, pp. 718–733, 1983.

Roscoe, K. H., A. N. Schofield, and A. Thurairajah, An Evaluation of Test Data for Selecting a Yield Criterion for Soils, *STP 361, Proc. Symp. Lab. Shear Test. Soils, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng.*, pp. 111–133, 1963.

Rowe, P. W., The Stress-Dilatency Relation for Static Equilibrium of an Assembly of Particles in Contact, *Proc. Ry. Soc. London, Ser. A*, vol. 269, pp. 500–527, 1962.

Schmertmann, J. H., Measurement of *In Situ* Shear Strength, *Proc. Spec. Conf. In Situ Measure. Soil Prop.*, vol. 2, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng., pp. 57–138, 1975.

Seed, H. B. and C. K. Chan, Thixotropic Characteristics of Compacted Clays, *Trans., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 124, pp. 894–916, 1959.

Seed, H. B. and K. L. Lee, Liquefaction of Saturated Sands During Cyclic Loading, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 92, no. SM6, pp. 105–134, 1966.

Sherif, M. A. and C. M. Burrous, Temperature Effect on the Unconfined Shear Strength of Saturated Cohesive Soils, Special Report 103, Highway Research Board, pp. 267–272, 1969.

Silvestri, V. and C. Tabib, Analysis of Elliptic Vanes, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 29, no. 6, pp. 993–997, 1992.

Simons, N. E., The Effect of Overconsolidation on the Shear Strength Characteristics of an Undisturbed Oslo Clay, *Proc. Res. Conf. Shear Strength Cohesive Soils*, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng., pp. 747–763, 1960.

Singh, A. and J. K. Mitchell, General Stress-Strain-Time Functions for Soils, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 94, no. SM1, pp. 21–46, 1968.

Skempton, A. W., Discussion: The Planning and Design of New Hong Kong Airport, *Proc. Inst. Civil. Eng.*, vol. 7, pp. 305–307, 1957.

Skempton, A. W., Correspondence, *Geotechnique*, vol. 10, no. 4, p. 186, 1960.

Skempton, A. W., Effective Stress in Soils, Concrete and Rock, in *Pore Pressure and Suction in Soils*, Butterworths, London, pp. 4–16, 1961.

Skempton, A. W., Long-Term Stability of Clay Slopes, Geotechnique, vol. 14, p. 77, 1964.

Tresca, H., Memoire sur L'Ecoulement des Corps Solids, *Men, Pre. Par Div. Sav*, vol. 18, 1868.

Von Mises, R., Mechanik der festen Korper in Plastichdeformablen Zustand, *Goettinger-Nachr. Math-Phys. Kl.*, 1913.

Whitman, R. V. and K. A. Healey, Shear Strength of Sand During Rapid Loadings, *Trans., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 128, pp. 1553–1594, 1963.

Wolff, T. F., Pile Capacity Predicting Using Parameter Functions, in *Predicted and Observed Axial Behavior of Piles, Results of a Pile Prediction Symposium*, sponsored by the Geotechnical Engineering Division, ASCE, Evanston, IL, June 1989, *Geotech. Spec. Pub. 23 Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, pp. 96–106, 1989.

Wu, T. H., A. K. Loh, and L. E. Malvern, Study of Failure Envelope of Soils, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 89, no. SM1, pp. 145–181, 1963.

Chapter 8

Settlement of shallow foundations

8.1 Introduction

The increase of stress in soil layers due to the load imposed by various structures at the foundation level will always be accompanied by some strain, which will result in the settlement of the structures. The various aspects of settlement calculation are analyzed in this chapter.

In general, the total settlement S of a foundation can be given as

$$S = S_e + S_c + S_s \tag{8.1}$$

where

S_e = elastic settlement
S_c = primary consolidation settlement
S_s = secondary consolidation settlement

In granular soils elastic settlement is the predominant part of the settlement, whereas in saturated inorganic silts and clays the primary consolidation settlement probably predominates. The secondary consolidation settlement forms the major part of the total settlement in highly organic soils and peats. We will consider the analysis of each component of the total settlement separately in some detail.

ELASTIC SETTLEMENT

8.2 Modulus of elasticity and Poisson's ratio

For calculation of elastic settlement, relations for the theory of elasticity are used in most cases. These relations contain parameters such as modulus of elasticity E and Poisson's ratio ν. In elastic materials, these parameters are determined from uniaxial load tests. However, soil is not truly an elastic material. Parameters E and ν for soils can be obtained from laboratory triaxial tests.

Figure 8.1 shows the nature of variation of the deviator stress with the axial strain ($\in_a$) for laboratory triaxial compression tests. The modulus of elasticity can be defined as

1. Initial tangent modulus E_i
2. Tangent modulus at a given stress level E_t
3. Secant modulus at a given stress level E_s

These are shown in Figure 8.1. In ordinary situations when the modulus of elasticity for a given soil is quoted, it is the secant modulus from zero to about half the maximum deviator stress. Poisson's ratio ν can be calculated by measuring the axial (compressive) strain and the lateral strain during triaxial testing.

Another elastic material parameter is the shear modulus G. The shear modulus was defined in Chap. 2 as

$$G = \frac{E}{2(1+\nu)} \tag{8.2}$$

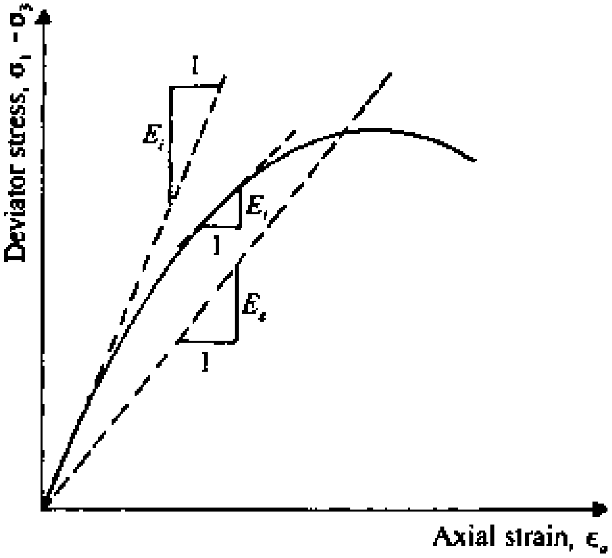


Figure 8.1 Definition of soil modulus from triaxial test results.

So, if the shear modulus and Poisson's ratio for a soil are known, the modulus of elasticity can also be estimated.

Poisson's ratio

For saturated cohesive soils, volume change does not occur during *undrained loading*, and ν may be assumed to be equal to 0.5. For drained conditions, Wroth (1975) provided the experimental values of Poisson's ratio for several *lightly overconsolidated clays*. Based on experimental values presented by Worth, it appears that

$$\nu \approx 0.25 + 0.00225(\mathrm{PI}) \tag{8.3}$$

where PI is the plasticity index.

For granular soils, a general range of Poisson's ratio is shown in Table 8.1. Trautmann and Kulhawy (1987) also provided the following approximation for drained Poisson's ratio.

$$\nu = 0.1 + 0.3\left(\frac{\phi'_{\mathrm{t}} - 25^\circ}{45^\circ - 25^\circ}\right) \tag{8.4}$$

where ϕ'_{t} is the drained friction angle in the triaxial compression test.

Modulus of elasticity—clay soil

The *undrained secant modulus* of clay soils can generally be expressed as

$$E = \beta S_{\mathrm{u}} \tag{8.5}$$

where S_{u} is undrained shear strength. Some typical values of β determined from large-scale field tests are given in Table 8.2. Also, Figure 8.2 shows the variation of the undrained secant modulus for three clays. Based on the information available, the following comments can be made on the magnitudes of β and E.

Table 8.1 General range of Poisson's ratio for granular soils

Soil type	*Range of Poisson's ratio*
Loose sand	0.2–0.4
Medium dense sand	0.25–0.4
Dense sand	0.3–0.45
Silty sand	0.2–0.4
Sand and gravel	0.15–0.35

Table 8.2 Values of β from various case studies of elastic settlement

Case study	*Location of structure*	*Clay properties*			E_{field} *(ton/m²)*	β	*Source of* S_u^*
		Plasticity index	*Sensitivity*	*Over-consolidation ratio*			
1	Oslo: Nine-story building	15	2	3.5	7,600	1200	CIU
2	Asrum I: Circular load	16	100	2.5	990	1000	Field vane
						1200	CIU
3	Asrum II: Circular load test	14	100	1.7	880	1000	Field vane
						1100	CIU
4	Mastemyr: Circular load test	14	—	1.5	1,300	1200	Field vane
						1700	Bearing capacity
5	Portsmouth: Highway embankment	15	10	1.3	3,000	2000	Field vane
						1700	Bearing capacity
6	Boston: Highway embankment	24	5	1.5	10,000	1600	Field vane
						1200	CK_oU
				1.0	13,000	2500	Field vane
						1500	CK_oU
7	Drammen: Circular load test	28	10	1.4	3,200	1400	Field vane
						1100	CK_oU
8	Kawasaki: Circular load test	38	6 ± 3	1.0	2,200	400	Field vane
							CIU
9	Venezuela: Oil tanks	37	8 ± 2	1.0	500	800	CIU
10	Maine: Rectangular load test[†]	33 ± 2	4	1.5–4.5	100–200	80–160	UU and Bearing capacity

After D'Appolonia *et al.* (1971).

[*] Average value at a depth equal to the width of foundation. CIU = isotropically consolidated undrained shear test; UU = consolidated undrained shear test; CK_oU = consolidated undrained shear test with sample consolidated in K_o condition.

[†] Slightly organic plastic clay.

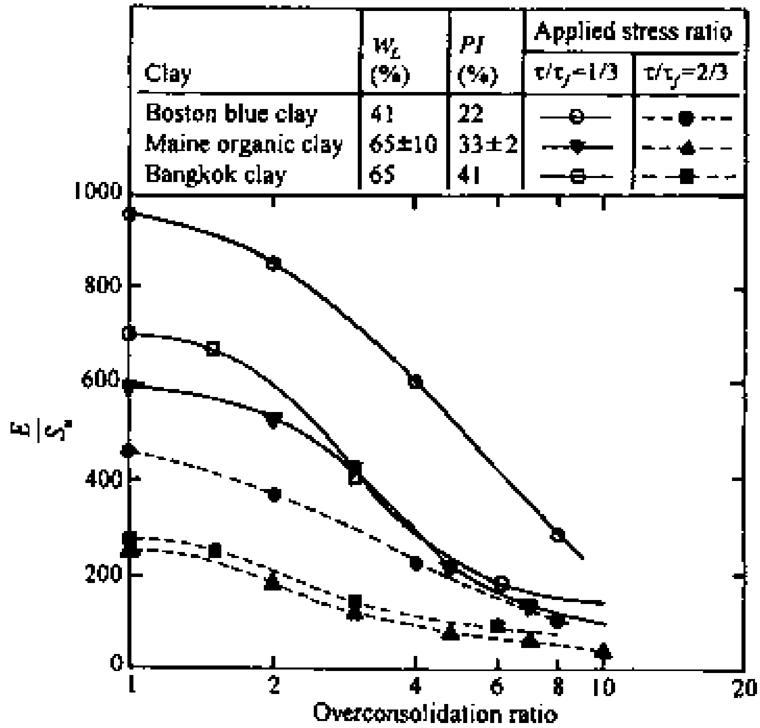


Figure 8.2 Relation between E/S_u and overconsolidation ratio from consolidated undrained tests on three clays determined from CK_0U type direct shear tests (after D'Appolonia *et al.*, 1971).

1. The value of β decreases with the increase in the overconsolidation ratio of the clay. This is shown for three clays in Figure 8.2.
2. The value of β generally decreases with the increase in the PI of the soil.
3. The value of β decreases with the organic content in the soil.
4. For highly plastic clays, consolidated undrained tests yield E values that are generally indicative of field behavior.
5. The values of E determined from unconfined compression tests and unconsolidated undrained triaxial tests are generally low.
6. For most cases, CIU of CK_0U (Table 8.2) types of tests on undisturbed specimens yield values of E that are more representative of field behavior.

Duncan and Buchignani (1976) compiled the results of the variation of β with PI and overconsolidation ratio (OCR) for a number of soils. Table 8.3 gives a summary of these results.

Table 8.3 Variation of β with plasticity index and overconsolidation ratio [compiled from Duncan and Buchignani (1976)]

OCR	*PI range*	*Range of β*
1	PI < 30	1500–600
	30 < PI < 50	600–300
	PI > 50	300–125
2	PI < 30	1450–575
	30 < PI < 50	575–275
	PI > 50	275–115
4	PI < 30	975–400
	30 < PI < 50	400–185
	PI > 50	185–70
6	PI < 30	600–250
	30 < PI < 50	250–115
	PI > 50	115–60

The modulus of elasticity can also be calculated from shear modulus G via Eq. (8.2). For undrained loading condition, $\nu = 0.5$; hence $E \approx 3G$. For shear strain levels of less than 10^{-5} (Hardin and Drnevich, 1972),

$$\underset{\underset{\text{kN/m}^2}{\uparrow}}{G_{\max}} = \frac{3230(2.97-e)^2}{1+e}(\text{OCR})^K \underset{\uparrow\text{kN/m}^2}{\overline{\sigma}_{\text{o}}^{1/2}} \tag{8.6}$$

where

$\text{e} =$ void ratio

$\overline{\sigma}_{\text{o}} =$ effective octahedral stress $= (\sigma'_{\text{o}}/3)(3 - 2\sin\phi)$ (8.7)

$\sigma'_{\text{o}} =$ effective vertical stress

$\phi =$ drained friction angle

$K = f(\text{PI})$

Table 8.4 gives the variation of K with plasticity index.

For static loading conditions,

$$G \approx (0.1 - 0.05)G_{\max} \tag{8.8}$$

For normally and lightly overconsolidated clays of high to medium plasticity, Larsson and Mulabdic (1991) gave the following correlation for $G_{\max}$:

$$G_{\max} = \left[\frac{208}{(\text{PI}/100)} + 250\right] S_{\text{u}} \tag{8.9}$$

Table 8.4 Variation of *K* with PI

PI	*K*
0	0
20	0.18
40	0.3
60	0.41
80	0.48
$\geq$100	0.5

where PI = plasticity index

Geregen and Pramborg (1990) also obtained the following correlation for very stiff dry-crust clay

$$G_{\max} = 6S_u^2 + 500S_u \quad (\text{for } S_u = 140\text{–}300\,\text{kN/m}^2) \tag{8.10}$$

where $G_{\max}$ and S_u are in kN/m^2

Modulus of elasticity—granular soil

Table 8.5 gives a general range of the modulus of elasticity for granular soils.

The modulus of elasticity has been correlated to the field standard penetration number N and also the cone penetration resistance q_c by various investigators. Schmertmann (1970) indicated that

$$E(\text{kN/m}^2) = 766N \tag{8.11}$$

Similarly, Schmertmann *et al.* (1978) gave the following correlations:

$$E = 2.5q_c \quad (\text{for square and circular foundations}) \tag{8.12}$$

$$E = 3.5q_c \quad (\text{for strip foundations}) \tag{8.13}$$

Table 8.5 Modulus of elasticity for granular soils

Type of soil	*E* (MN/m^2)
Loose sand	10.35–24.15
Silty sand	10.35–17.25
Medium-dense sand	17.25–27.60
Dense sand	34.5–55.2
Sand and gravel	69.0–172.5

8.3 Settlement based on theory of elasticity

Consider a foundation measuring $L \times B$ ($L =$ length; $B =$ width) located at a depth D_f below the ground surface (Figure 8.3). A rigid layer is located at a depth H below the bottom of the foundation. Theoretically, if the foundation is perfectly flexible (Bowles, 1987), the settlement may be expressed as

$$S_{e(\text{flexible})} = q(\alpha B')\frac{1-\nu^2}{E} I_s I_f \tag{8.14}$$

where

$q =$ net applied pressure on the foundation
$\nu =$ Poisson's ratio of soil
$E =$ average modulus of elasticity of the soil under the foundation, measured from $z = 0$ to about $z = 4B$
$B' = B/2$ for center of foundation
$= B$ for corner of foundation

$$I_s = \text{Shape factor (Steinbrenner, 1934)} = F_1 + \frac{1-2\nu}{1-\nu} F_2 \tag{8.15}$$

$$F_1 = \frac{1}{\pi}(A_0 + A_1) \tag{8.16}$$

$$F_2 = \frac{n'}{2\pi}\tan^{-1} A_2 \tag{8.17}$$

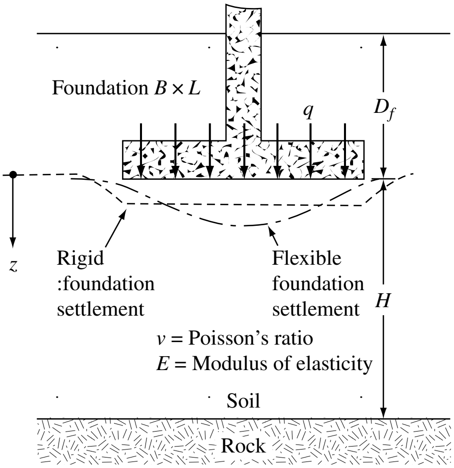


Figure 8.3 Elastic settlement of flexible and rigid foundations.

$$A_0 = m' \ln \frac{\left(1+\sqrt{m'^2+1}\right)\sqrt{m'^2+n'^2}}{m'\left(1+\sqrt{m'^2+n'^2+1}\right)} \tag{8.18}$$

$$A_1 = \ln \frac{\left(m'+\sqrt{m'^2+1}\right)\sqrt{1+n'^2}}{m'+\sqrt{m'^2+n'^2+1}} \tag{8.19}$$

$$A_2 = \frac{m'}{n'\sqrt{m'^2+n'^2+1}} \tag{8.20}$$

$$I_f = \text{depth factor (Fox, 1948)} = f\left(\frac{D_f}{B}, \nu, \text{ and } \frac{L}{B}\right) \tag{8.21}$$

α = a factor that depends on the location on the foundation where settlement is being calculated

Note that Eq. (8.14) is in a similar form as Eq. (3.90).

To calculate settlement at the *center* of the foundation, we use

$$\alpha = 4$$

$$m' = \frac{L}{B}$$

and

$$n' = \frac{H}{\left(\frac{B}{2}\right)}$$

To calculate settlement at a *corner* of the foundation, use

$$\alpha = 1$$

$$m' = \frac{L}{B}$$

and

$$n' = \frac{H}{B}$$

The variations of F_1 and F_2 with m' and n' are given in Tables 8.6 through 8.9, respectively. The variation of I_f with D_f/B and ν is shown in Figure 8.4 (for $L/B = 1$, 2, and 5), which is based on Fox (1948).

Table 8.6 Variation of F_1 with m' and n'

n'	m'									
	1.0	*1.2*	*1.4*	*1.6*	*1.8*	*2.0*	*2.5*	*3.0*	*3.5*	*4.0*
0.25	0.014	0.013	0.012	0.011	0.011	0.011	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010
0.50	0.049	0.046	0.044	0.042	0.041	0.040	0.038	0.038	0.037	0.037
0.75	0.095	0.090	0.087	0.084	0.082	0.080	0.077	0.076	0.074	0.074
1.00	0.142	0.138	0.134	0.130	0.127	0.125	0.121	0.118	0.116	0.115
1.25	0.186	0.183	0.179	0.176	0.173	0.170	0.165	0.161	0.158	0.157
1.50	0.224	0.224	0.222	0.219	0.216	0.213	0.207	0.203	0.199	0.197
1.75	0.257	0.259	0.259	0.258	0.255	0.253	0.247	0.242	0.238	0.235
2.00	0.285	0.290	0.292	0.292	0.291	0.289	0.284	0.279	0.275	0.271
2.25	0.309	0.317	0.321	0.323	0.323	0.322	0.317	0.313	0.308	0.305
2.50	0.330	0.341	0.347	0.350	0.351	0.351	0.348	0.344	0.340	0.336
2.75	0.348	0.361	0.369	0.374	0.377	0.378	0.377	0.373	0.369	0.365
3.00	0.363	0.379	0.389	0.396	0.400	0.402	0.402	0.400	0.396	0.392
3.25	0.376	0.394	0.406	0.415	0.420	0.423	0.426	0.424	0.421	0.418
3.50	0.388	0.408	0.422	0.431	0.438	0.442	0.447	0.447	0.444	0.441
3.75	0.399	0.420	0.436	0.447	0.454	0.460	0.467	0.458	0.466	0.464
4.00	0.408	0.431	0.448	0.460	0.469	0.476	0.484	0.487	0.486	0.484
4.25	0.417	0.440	0.458	0.472	0.481	0.484	0.495	0.514	0.515	0.515
4.50	0.424	0.450	0.469	0.484	0.495	0.503	0.516	0.521	0.522	0.522
4.75	0.431	0.458	0.478	0.494	0.506	0.515	0.530	0.536	0.539	0.539
5.00	0.437	0.465	0.487	0.503	0.516	0.526	0.543	0.551	0.554	0.554
5.25	0.443	0.472	0.494	0.512	0.526	0.537	0.555	0.564	0.568	0.569
5.50	0.448	0.478	0.501	0.520	0.534	0.546	0.566	0.576	0.581	0.584
5.75	0.453	0.483	0.508	0.527	0.542	0.555	0.576	0.588	0.594	0.597
6.00	0.457	0.489	0.514	0.534	0.550	0.563	0.585	0.598	0.606	0.609
6.25	0.461	0.493	0.519	0.540	0.557	0.570	0.594	0.609	0.617	0.621
6.50	0.465	0.498	0.524	0.546	0.563	0.577	0.603	0.618	0.627	0.632
6.75	0.468	0.502	0.529	0.551	0.569	0.584	0.610	0.627	0.637	0.643
7.00	0.471	0.506	0.533	0.556	0.575	0.590	0.618	0.635	0.646	0.653
7.25	0.474	0.509	0.538	0.561	0.580	0.596	0.625	0.643	0.655	0.662
7.50	0.477	0.513	0.541	0.565	0.585	0.601	0.631	0.650	0.663	0.671
7.75	0.480	0.516	0.545	0.569	0.589	0.606	0.637	0.658	0.671	0.680
8.00	0.482	0.519	0.549	0.573	0.594	0.611	0.643	0.664	0.678	0.688
8.25	0.485	0.522	0.552	0.577	0.598	0.615	0.648	0.670	0.685	0.695
8.50	0.487	0.524	0.555	0.580	0.601	0.619	0.653	0.676	0.692	0.703
8.75	0.489	0.527	0.558	0.583	0.605	0.623	0.658	0.682	0.698	0.710
9.00	0.491	0.529	0.560	0.587	0.609	0.627	0.663	0.687	0.705	0.716
9.25	0.493	0.531	0.563	0.589	0.612	0.631	0.667	0.693	0.710	0.723
9.50	0.495	0.533	0.565	0.592	0.615	0.634	0.671	0.697	0.716	0.719
9.75	0.496	0.536	0.568	0.595	0.618	0.638	0.675	0.702	0.721	0.735
10.00	0.498	0.537	0.570	0.597	0.621	0.641	0.679	0.707	0.726	0.740
20.00	0.529	0.575	0.614	0.647	0.677	0.702	0.756	0.797	0.830	0.858
50.00	0.548	0.598	0.640	0.678	0.711	0.740	0.803	0.853	0.895	0.931
100.00	0.555	0.605	0.649	0.688	0.722	0.753	0.819	0.872	0.918	0.956

Table 8.7 Variation of F_1 with m' and n'

n'	m'									
	4.5	*5.0*	*6.0*	*7.0*	*8.0*	*9.0*	*10.0*	*25.0*	*50.0*	*100.0*
0.25	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010
0.50	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036
0.75	0.073	0.073	0.072	0.072	0.072	0.072	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071
1.00	0.114	0.113	0.112	0.112	0.112	0.111	0.111	0.110	0.110	0.110
1.25	0.155	0.154	0.153	0.152	0.152	0.151	0.151	0.150	0.150	0.150
1.50	0.195	0.194	0.192	0.191	0.190	0.190	0.189	0.188	0.188	0.188
1.75	0.233	0.232	0.229	0.228	0.227	0.226	0.225	0.223	0.223	0.223
2.00	0.269	0.267	0.264	0.262	0.261	0.260	0.259	0.257	0.256	0.256
2.25	0.302	0.300	0.296	0.294	0.293	0.291	0.291	0.287	0.287	0.287
2.50	0.333	0.331	0.327	0.324	0.322	0.321	0.320	0.316	0.315	0.315
2.75	0.362	0.359	0.355	0.352	0.350	0.348	0.347	0.343	0.342	0.342
3.00	0.389	0.386	0.382	0.378	0.376	0.374	0.373	0.368	0.367	0.367
3.25	0.415	0.412	0.407	0.403	0.401	0.399	0.397	0.391	0.390	0.390
3.50	0.438	0.435	0.430	0.427	0.424	0.421	0.420	0.413	0.412	0.411
3.75	0.461	0.458	0.453	0.449	0.446	0.443	0.441	0.433	0.432	0.432
4.00	0.482	0.479	0.474	0.470	0.466	0.464	0.462	0.453	0.451	0.451
4.25	0.516	0.496	0.484	0.473	0.471	0.471	0.470	0.468	0.462	0.460
4.50	0.520	0.517	0.513	0.508	0.505	0.502	0.499	0.489	0.487	0.487
4.75	0.537	0.535	0.530	0.526	0.523	0.519	0.517	0.506	0.504	0.503
5.00	0.554	0.552	0.548	0.543	0.540	0.536	0.534	0.522	0.519	0.519
5.25	0.569	0.568	0.564	0.560	0.556	0.553	0.550	0.537	0.534	0.534
5.50	0.584	0.583	0.579	0.575	0.571	0.568	0.585	0.551	0.549	0.548
5.75	0.597	0.597	0.594	0.590	0.586	0.583	0.580	0.565	0.583	0.562
6.00	0.611	0.610	0.608	0.604	0.601	0.598	0.595	0.579	0.576	0.575
6.25	0.623	0.623	0.621	0.618	0.615	0.611	0.608	0.592	0.589	0.588
6.50	0.635	0.635	0.634	0.631	0.628	0.625	0.622	0.605	0.601	0.600
6.75	0.646	0.647	0.646	0.644	0.641	0.637	0.634	0.617	0.613	0.612
7.00	0.656	0.658	0.658	0.656	0.653	0.650	0.647	0.628	0.624	0.623
7.25	0.666	0.669	0.669	0.668	0.665	0.662	0.659	0.640	0.635	0.634
7.50	0.676	0.679	0.680	0.679	0.676	0.673	0.670	0.651	0.646	0.645
7.75	0.685	0.688	0.690	0.689	0.687	0.684	0.681	0.661	0.656	0.655
8.00	0.694	0.697	0.700	0.700	0.698	0.695	0.692	0.672	0.666	0.665
8.25	0.702	0.706	0.710	0.710	0.708	0.705	0.703	0.682	0.676	0.675
8.50	0.710	0.714	0.719	0.719	0.718	0.715	0.713	0.692	0.686	0.684
8.75	0.717	0.722	0.727	0.728	0.727	0.725	0.723	0.701	0.695	0.693
9.00	0.725	0.730	0.736	0.737	0.736	0.735	0.732	0.710	0.704	0.702
9.25	0.731	0.737	0.744	0.746	0.745	0.744	0.742	0.719	0.713	0.711
9.50	0.738	0.744	0.752	0.754	0.754	0.753	0.751	0.728	0.721	0.719
9.75	0.744	0.751	0.759	0.762	0.762	0.761	0.759	0.737	0.729	0.727
10.00	0.750	0.758	0.766	0.770	0.770	0.770	0.768	0.745	0.738	0.735
20.00	0.878	0.896	0.925	0.945	0.959	0.969	0.977	0.982	0.965	0.957
50.00	0.962	0.989	1.034	1.070	1.100	1.125	1.146	1.265	1.279	1.261
100.00	0.990	1.020	1.072	1.114	1.150	1.182	1.209	1.408	1.489	1.499

Table 8.8 Variation of F_2 with m' and n'

n'	m'									
	1.0	*1.2*	*1.4*	*1.6*	*1.8*	*2.0*	*2.5*	*3.0*	*3.5*	*4.0*
0.25	0.049	0.050	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.052	0.052	0.052	0.052	0.052
0.50	0.074	0.077	0.080	0.081	0.083	0.084	0.086	0.086	0.0878	0.087
0.75	0.083	0.089	0.093	0.097	0.099	0.101	0.104	0.106	0.107	0.108
1.00	0.083	0.091	0.098	0.102	0.106	0.109	0.114	0.117	0.119	0.120
1.25	0.080	0.089	0.096	0.102	0.107	0.111	0.118	0.122	0.125	0.127
1.50	0.075	0.084	0.093	0.099	0.105	0.110	0.118	0.124	0.128	0.130
1.75	0.069	0.079	0.088	0.095	0.101	0.107	0.117	0.123	0.128	0.131
2.00	0.064	0.074	0.083	0.090	0.097	0.102	0.114	0.121	0.127	0.131
2.25	0.059	0.069	0.077	0.085	0.092	0.098	0.110	0.119	0.125	0.130
2.50	0.055	0.064	0.073	0.080	0.087	0.093	0.106	0.115	0.122	0.127
2.75	0.051	0.060	0.068	0.076	0.082	0.089	0.102	0.111	0.119	0.125
3.00	0.048	0.056	0.064	0.071	0.078	0.084	0.097	0.108	0.116	0.122
3.25	0.045	0.053	0.060	0.067	0.074	0.080	0.093	0.104	0.112	0.119
3.50	0.042	0.050	0.057	0.064	0.070	0.076	0.089	0.100	0.109	0.116
3.75	0.040	0.047	0.054	0.060	0.067	0.073	0.086	0.096	0.105	0.113
4.00	0.037	0.044	0.051	0.057	0.063	0.069	0.082	0.093	0.102	0.110
4.25	0.036	0.042	0.049	0.055	0.061	0.066	0.079	0.090	0.099	0.107
4.50	0.034	0.040	0.046	0.052	0.058	0.063	0.076	0.086	0.096	0.104
4.75	0.032	0.038	0.044	0.050	0.055	0.061	0.073	0.083	0.093	0.101
5.00	0.031	0.036	0.042	0.048	0.053	0.058	0.070	0.080	0.090	0.098
5.25	0.029	0.035	0.040	0.046	0.051	0.056	0.067	0.078	0.087	0.095
5.50	0.028	0.033	0.039	0.044	0.049	0.054	0.065	0.075	0.084	0.092
5.75	0.027	0.032	0.037	0.042	0.047	0.052	0.063	0.073	0.082	0.090
6.00	0.026	0.031	0.036	0.040	0.045	0.050	0.060	0.070	0.079	0.087
6.25	0.025	0.030	0.034	0.039	0.044	0.048	0.058	0.068	0.077	0.085
6.50	0.024	0.029	0.033	0.038	0.042	0.046	0.056	0.066	0.075	0.083
6.75	0.023	0.028	0.032	0.036	0.041	0.045	0.055	0.064	0.073	0.080
7.00	0.022	0.027	0.031	0.035	0.039	0.043	0.053	0.062	0.071	0.078
7.25	0.022	0.026	0.030	0.034	0.038	0.042	0.051	0.060	0.069	0.076
7.50	0.021	0.025	0.029	0.033	0.037	0.041	0.050	0.059	0.067	0.074
7.75	0.020	0.024	0.028	0.032	0.036	0.039	0.048	0.057	0.065	0.072
8.00	0.020	0.023	0.027	0.031	0.035	0.038	0.047	0.055	0.063	0.071
8.25	0.019	0.023	0.026	0.030	0.034	0.037	0.046	0.054	0.062	0.069
8.50	0.018	0.022	0.026	0.029	0.033	0.036	0.045	0.053	0.060	0.067
8.75	0.018	0.021	0.025	0.028	0.032	0.035	0.043	0.051	0.059	0.066
9.00	0.017	0.021	0.024	0.028	0.031	0.034	0.042	0.050	0.057	0.064
9.25	0.017	0.020	0.024	0.027	0.030	0.033	0.041	0.049	0.056	0.063
9.50	0.017	0.020	0.023	0.026	0.029	0.033	0.040	0.048	0.055	0.061
9.75	0.016	0.019	0.023	0.026	0.029	0.032	0.039	0.047	0.054	0.060
10.00	0.016	0.019	0.022	0.025	0.028	0.031	0.038	0.046	0.052	0.059
20.00	0.008	0.010	0.011	0.013	0.014	0.016	0.020	0.024	0.027	0.031
50.00	0.003	0.004	0.004	0.005	0.006	0.006	0.008	0.010	0.011	0.013
100.00	0.002	0.002	0.002	0.003	0.003	0.003	0.004	0.005	0.006	0.006

Table 8.9 Variation of F_2 with m' and n'

n'	m'									
	4.5	*5.0*	*6.0*	*7.0*	*8.0*	*9.0*	*10.0*	*25.0*	*50.0*	*100.0*
0.25	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053
0.50	0.087	0.087	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088
0.75	0.109	0.109	0.109	0.110	0.110	0.110	0.110	0.111	0.111	0.111
1.00	0.121	0.122	0.123	0.123	0.124	0.124	0.124	0.125	0.125	0.125
1.25	0.128	0.130	0.131	0.132	0.132	0.133	0.133	0.134	0.134	0.134
1.50	0.132	0.134	0.136	0.137	0.138	0.138	0.139	0.140	0.140	0.140
1.75	0.134	0.136	0.138	0.140	0.141	0.142	0.142	0.144	0.144	0.145
2.00	0.134	0.136	0.139	0.141	0.143	0.144	0.145	0.147	0.147	0.148
2.25	0.133	0.136	0.140	0.142	0.144	0.145	0.146	0.149	0.150	0.150
2.50	0.132	0.135	0.139	0.142	0.144	0.146	0.147	0.151	0.151	0.151
2.75	0.130	0.133	0.138	0.142	0.144	0.146	0.147	0.152	0.152	0.153
3.00	0.127	0.131	0.137	0.141	0.144	0.145	0.147	0.152	0.153	0.154
3.25	0.125	0.129	0.135	0.140	0.143	0.145	0.147	0.153	0.154	0.154
3.50	0.122	0.126	0.133	0.138	0.142	0.144	0.146	0.153	0.155	0.155
3.75	0.119	0.124	0.131	0.137	0.141	0.143	0.145	0.154	0.155	0.155
4.00	0.116	0.121	0.129	0.135	0.139	0.142	0.145	0.154	0.155	0.156
4.25	0.113	0.119	0.127	0.133	0.138	0.141	0.144	0.154	0.156	0.156
4.50	0.110	0.116	0.125	0.131	0.136	0.140	0.143	0.154	0.156	0.156
4.75	0.107	0.113	0.123	0.130	0.135	0.139	0.142	0.154	0.156	0.157
5.00	0.105	0.111	0.120	0.128	0.133	0.137	0.140	0.154	0.156	0.157
5.25	0.102	0.108	0.118	0.126	0.131	0.136	0.139	0.154	0.156	0.157
5.50	0.099	0.106	0.116	0.124	0.130	0.134	0.138	0.154	0.156	0.157
5.75	0.097	0.103	0.113	0.122	0.128	0.133	0.136	0.154	0.157	0.157
6.00	0.094	0.101	0.111	0.120	0.126	0.131	0.135	0.153	0.157	0.157
6.25	0.092	0.098	0.109	0.118	0.124	0.129	0.134	0.153	0.157	0.158
6.50	0.090	0.096	0.107	0.116	0.122	0.128	0.132	0.153	0.157	0.158
6.75	0.087	0.094	0.105	0.114	0.121	0.126	0.131	0.153	0.157	0.158
7.00	0.085	0.092	0.103	0.112	0.119	0.125	0.129	0.152	0.157	0.158
7.25	0.083	0.090	0.101	0.110	0.117	0.123	0.128	0.152	0.157	0.158
7.50	0.081	0.088	0.099	0.108	0.115	0.121	0.126	0.152	0.156	0.158
7.75	0.079	0.086	0.097	0.106	0.114	0.120	0.125	0.151	0.156	0.158
8.00	0.077	0.084	0.095	0.104	0.112	0.118	0.124	0.151	0.156	0.158
8.25	0.076	0.082	0.093	0.102	0.110	0.117	0.122	0.150	0.156	0.158
8.50	0.074	0.080	0.091	0.101	0.108	0.115	0.121	0.150	0.156	0.158
8.75	0.072	0.078	0.089	0.099	0.107	0.114	0.119	0.150	0.156	0.158
9.00	0.071	0.077	0.088	0.097	0.105	0.112	0.118	0.149	0.156	0.158
9.25	0.069	0.075	0.086	0.096	0.104	0.110	0.116	0.149	0.156	0.158
9.50	0.068	0.074	0.085	0.094	0.102	0.109	0.115	0.148	0.156	0.158
9.75	0.066	0.072	0.083	0.092	0.100	0.107	0.113	0.148	0.156	0.158
10.00	0.065	0.071	0.082	0.091	0.099	0.106	0.112	0.147	0.156	0.158
20.00	0.035	0.039	0.046	0.053	0.059	0.065	0.071	0.124	0.148	0.156
50.00	0.014	0.016	0.019	0.022	0.025	0.028	0.031	0.071	0.113	0.142
100.00	0.007	0.008	0.010	0.011	0.013	0.014	0.016	0.039	0.071	0.113

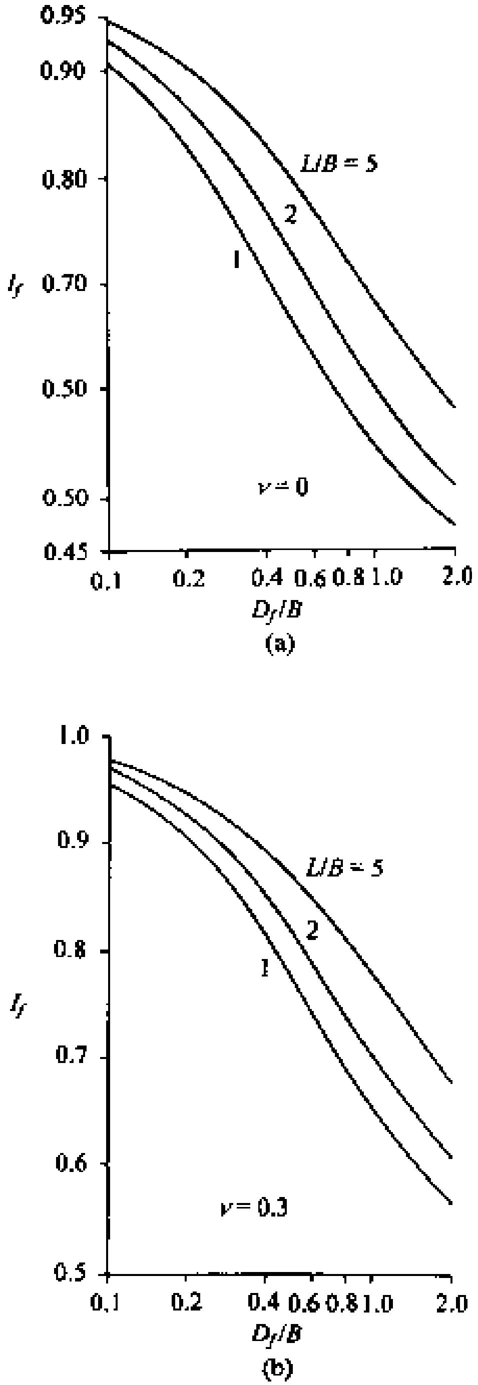


Figure 8.4 Variation of I_f with D_f/B, L/B, and ν.

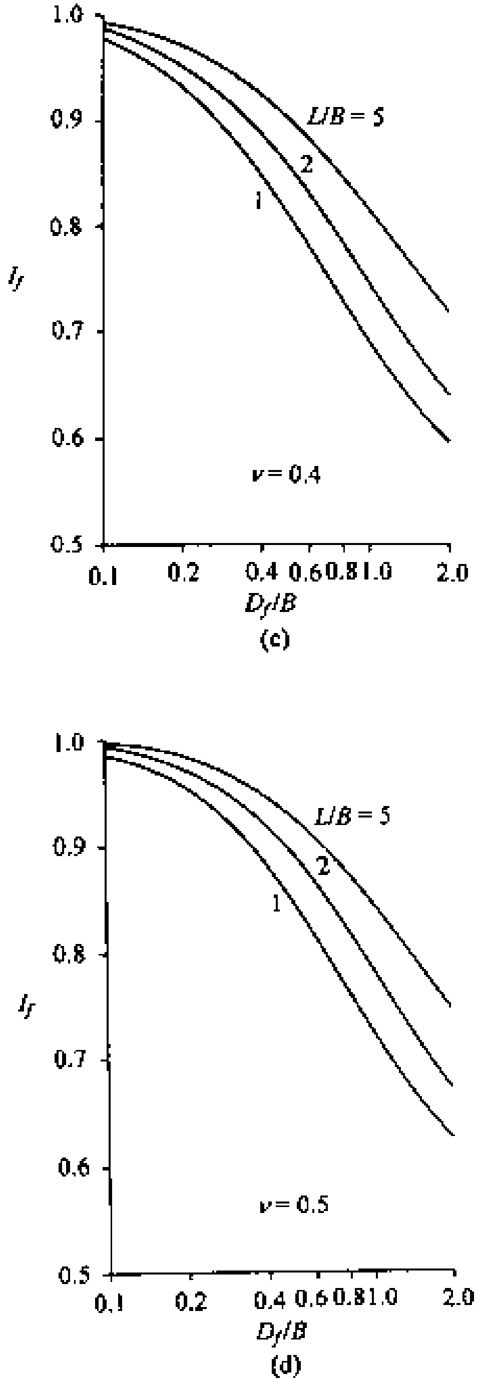


Figure 8.4 (Continued)

Due to the nonhomogeneous nature of soil deposits, the magnitude of E may vary with depth. For that reason, Bowles (1987) recommended using a weighted average of E in Eq. (8.14), or

$$E = \frac{\sum E_{(i)} \Delta z}{\bar{z}} \tag{8.22}$$

where

$E_{(i)}$ = soil modulus of elasticity within a depth Δz
$\bar{z} = H$ or $5B$, whichever is smaller

For a rigid foundation

$$S_{e(\text{rigid})} \approx 0.93 S_{e(\text{flexible, center})} \tag{8.23}$$

EXAMPLE 8.1

A rigid shallow foundation $1 \times 2\,\text{m}$ is shown in Figure 8.5. Calculate the elastic settlement at the center of the foundation.

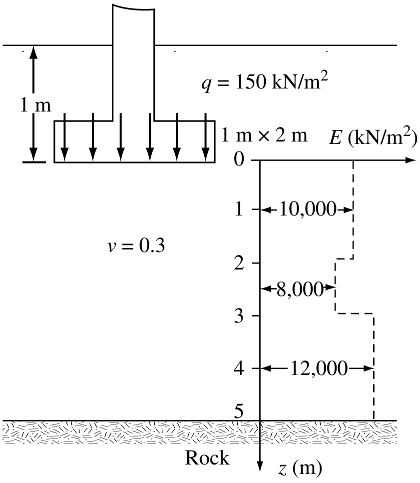


Figure 8.5 Elastic settlement for a rigid shallow foundation.

SOLUTION Given $B = 1\,\text{m}$ and $L = 2\,\text{m}$. Note that $\bar{z} = 5\,\text{m} = 5B$. From Eq. (8.22)

$$E = \frac{\sum E_{(i)}\Delta z}{\bar{z}} = \frac{(10{,}000)(2) + (8000)(1) + (12{,}000)(2)}{5} = 10{,}400\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

For the center of the foundation

$$\alpha = 4$$

$$m' = \frac{L}{B} = \frac{2}{1} = 2$$

and

$$n' = \frac{H}{\left(\frac{B}{2}\right)} = \frac{5}{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)} = 10$$

From Tables 8.6 and 8.8, $F_1 = 0.641$ and $F_2 = 0.031$. From Eq. (8.15)

$$I_s = F_1 + \frac{1-2\nu}{1-\nu}F_2 = 0.641 + \frac{2-0.3}{1-0.3}(0.031) = 0.716$$

Again, $D_f/B = 1/1 = 1$, $L/B = 2$, and $\nu = 0.3$. From Figure 8.4b, $I_f = 0.709$. Hence

$$S_{e(\text{flexible})} = q\,(\alpha B')\,\frac{1-\nu^2}{E}I_s I_f$$

$$= (150)\left(4 \times \frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1-0.3^2}{10,400}\right)(0.716)\,(0.709) = 0.0133\,\text{m} = 13.3\,\text{m}$$

Since the foundation is rigid, from Eq. (8.23) we obtain

$$S_{e(\text{rigid})} = (0.93)\,(13.3) = 12.4\,\text{mm}$$

8.4 Generalized average elastic settlement equation

Janbu *et al.* (1956) proposed a generalized equation for average elastic settlement for uniformly loaded flexible foundation in the form

$$S_e(\text{average}) = \mu_1\mu_0\frac{qB}{E} \quad (\nu = 0.5) \tag{8.24}$$

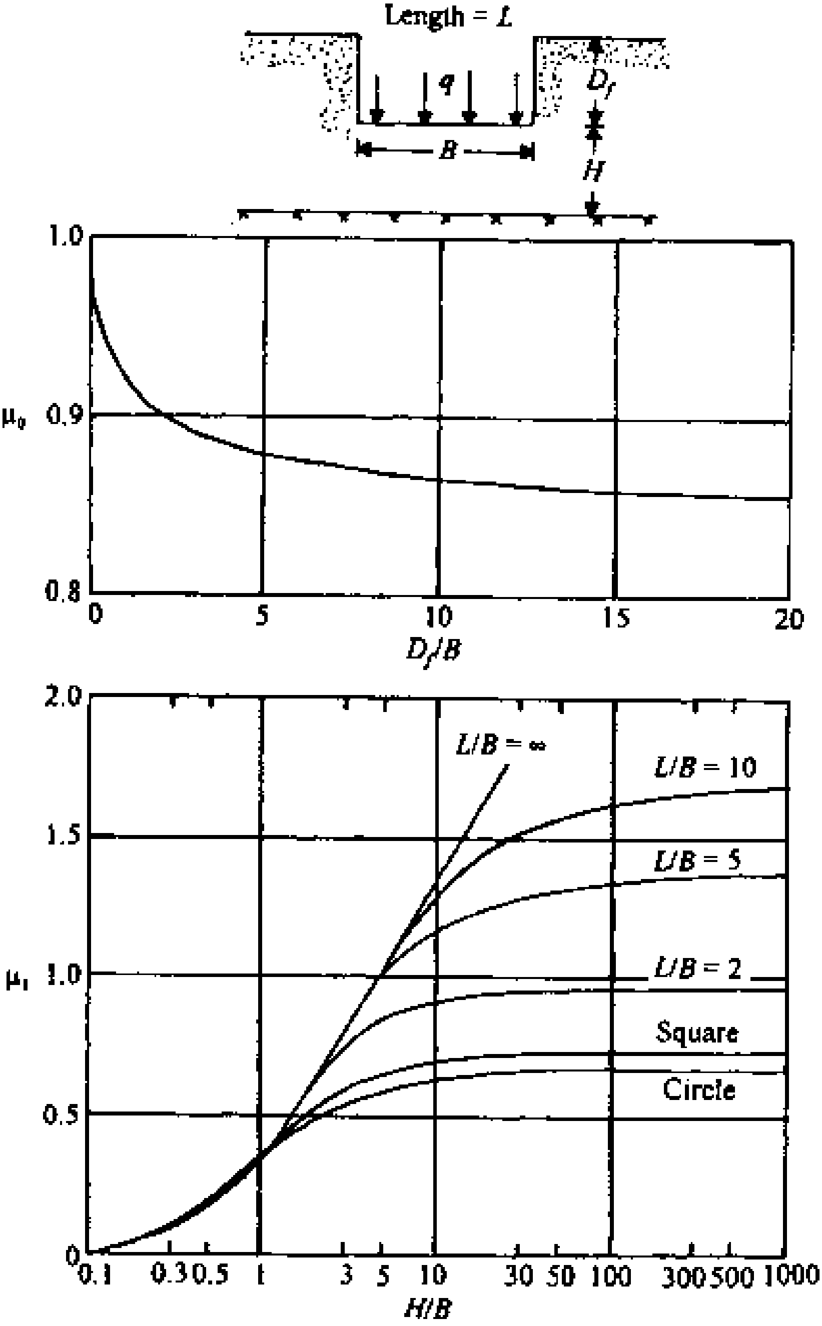


Figure 8.6 Improved chart for use in Eq. (8.24) (after Christian and Carrier, 1978).

where

μ_1 = correction factor for finite thickness of elastic soil layer, H, as shown in Figure 8.6
μ_0 = correction factor for depth of embedment of foundation, D_f, as shown in Figure 8.6
B = width of rectangular loaded area or diameter of circular loaded foundation

Christian and Carrier (1978) made a critical evaluation of Eq. (8.24), the details of which will not be presented here. However, they suggested that for $\nu = 0.5$, Eq. (8.24) could be retained for elastic settlement calculations with a modification of the values of μ_1 and μ_0. The modified values of μ_1 are based on the work of Giroud (1972), and those for μ_0 are based on the work of Burland (1970). These are shown in Figure 8.6. It must be pointed out that the values of μ_0 and μ_1 given in Figure 8.6 were actually obtained for flexible circular loaded foundation. Christian and Carrier, after a careful analysis, inferred that these values are generally adequate for circular and rectangular foundations.

8.5 Improved equation for elastic settlement

Mayne and Poulos (1999) presented an improved formula for calculating the elastic settlement of foundations. The formula takes into account the rigidity of the foundation, the depth of embedment of the foundation, the increase in the modulus of elasticity of the soil with depth, and the location of rigid layers at a limited depth. To use Mayne and Poulos's equation, one needs to determine the equivalent diameter B_e of a rectangular foundation, or

$$B_e = \sqrt{\frac{4BL}{\pi}} \tag{8.25}$$

where

B = width of foundation
L = length of foundation

For circular foundations

$$B_e = B \tag{8.26}$$

where B = diameter of foundation

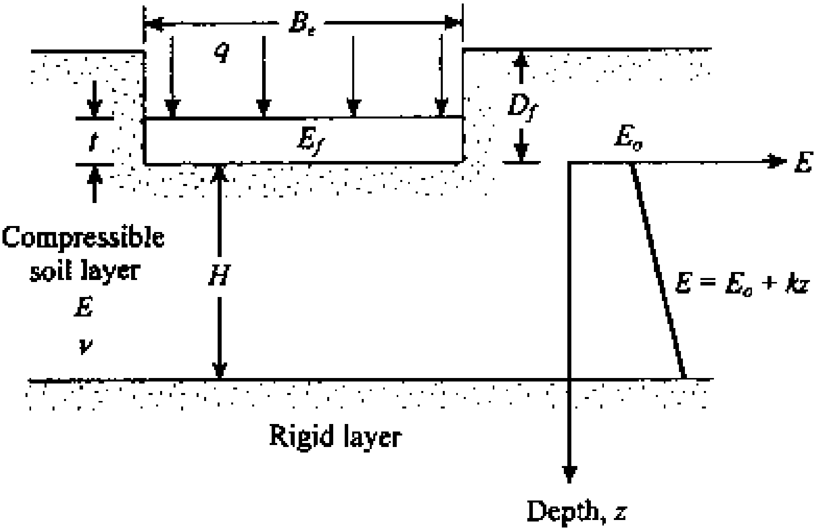


Figure 8.7 Improved equation for calculating elastic settlement—general parameters.

Figure 8.7 shows a foundation with an equivalent diameter B_e located at a depth D_f below the ground surface. Let the thickness of the foundation be t and the modulus of elasticity of the foundation material be E_f. A rigid layer is located at a depth H below the bottom of the foundation. The modulus of elasticity of the compressible soil layer can be given as

$$E = E_o + kz \tag{8.27}$$

With the preceding parameters defined, the elastic settlement below the center of the foundation is

$$S_e = \frac{qB_e I_G I_F I_E}{E_o}\left(1 - \nu^2\right) \tag{8.28}$$

where I_G = influence factor for the variation of E with depth

$$= f\left(\beta' = \frac{E_o}{kB_e}, \frac{H}{B_e}\right)$$

I_F = foundation rigidity correction factor
I_E = foundation embedment correction factor

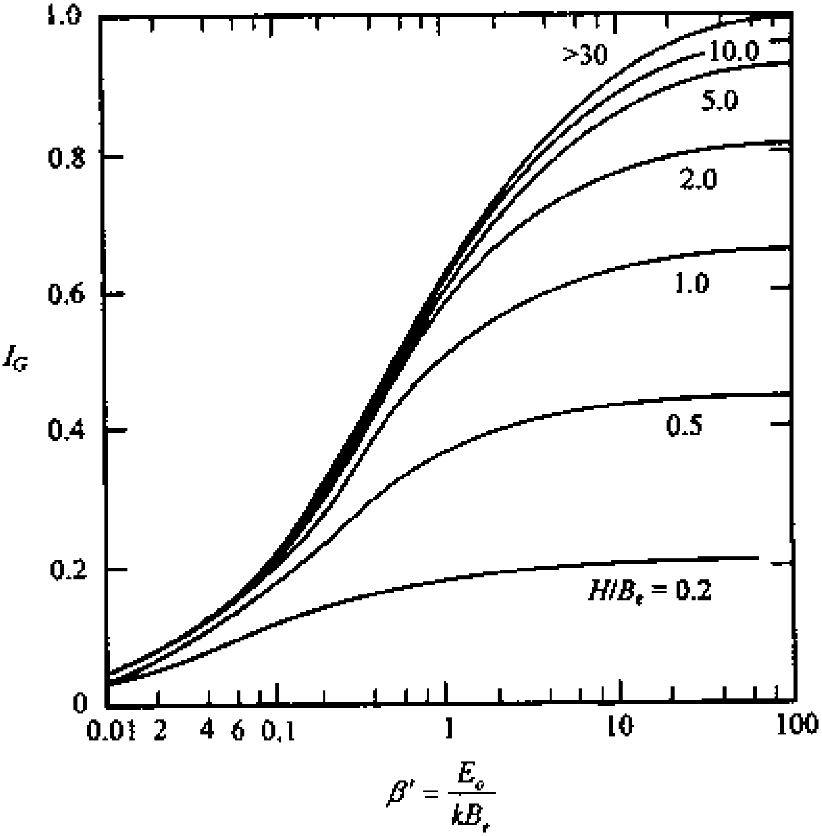


Figure 8.8 Variation of I_G with β'.

Figure 8.8 shows the variation of I_G with $\beta' = E_o/kB_e$ and H/B_e. The foundation rigidity correction factor can be expressed as

$$I_F = \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{4.6 + 10\left(\frac{E_F}{E_o + \frac{B_e}{2}k}\right)\left(\frac{2t}{B_e}\right)^3} \tag{8.29}$$

Similarly, the embedment correction factor is

$$I_E = 1 - \frac{1}{3.5\exp(1.22\nu - 0.4)\left(\frac{B_e}{D_f} + 1.6\right)} \tag{8.30}$$

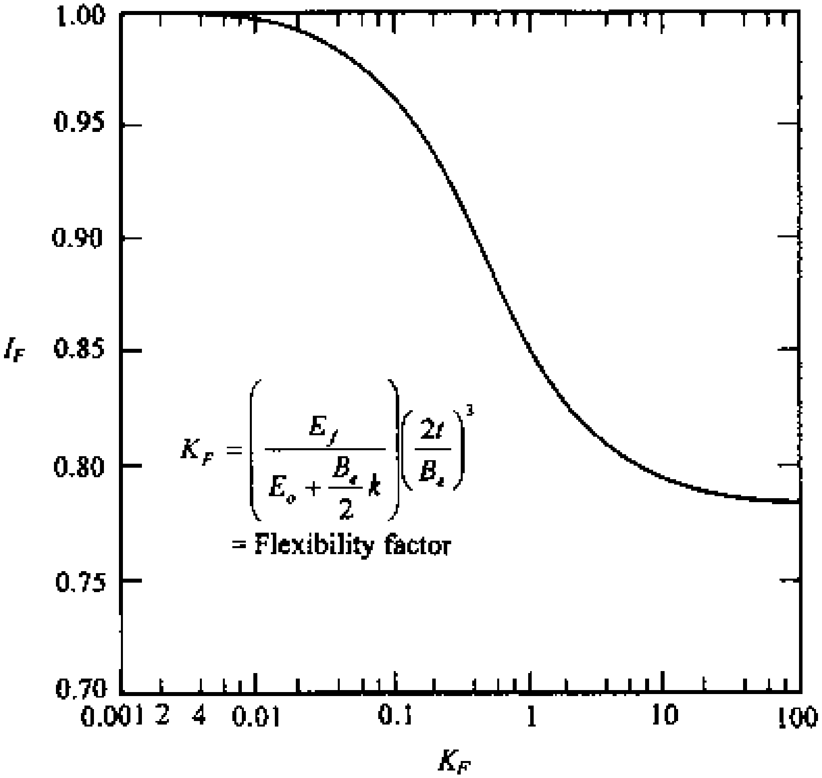


Figure 8.9 Variation of rigidity correction factor I_F with flexibility factor K_F [Eq. (8.29)].

Figures 8.9 and 8.10 show the variation of I_E and I_F with terms expressed in Eqs. (8.29) and (8.30).

EXAMPLE 8.2

For a shallow foundation supported by a silty clay as shown in Figure 8.7,

$\text{Length} = L = 1.5\,\text{m}$

$\text{Width} = B = 1\,\text{m}$

$\text{Depth of foundation} = D_f = 1\,\text{m}$

$\text{Thickness of foundation} = t = 0.23\,\text{m}$

$\text{Load per unit area} = q = 190\,\text{kN/m}^2$

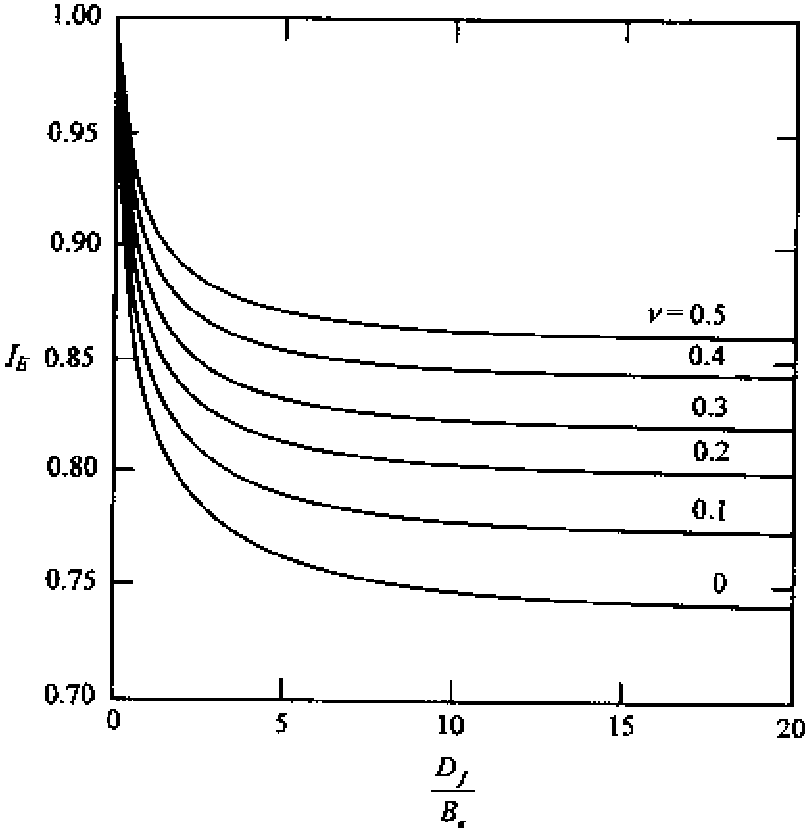


Figure 8.10 Variation of embedment correction factor I_E with D_f/B_e [Eq. (8.30)].

$E_f = 15 \times 10^6\,\text{kN/m}^2$

The silty clay soil has the following properties:

$H = 2\,\text{m}$

$\nu = 0.3$

$E_o = 9000\,\text{kN/m}^2$

$k = 500\,\text{kN/m}^2/\text{m}$

Estimate the elastic settlement of the foundation.

SOLUTION From Eq. (8.25), the equivalent diameter is

$$B_e = \sqrt{\frac{4BL}{\pi}} = \sqrt{\frac{(4)(1.5)(1)}{\pi}} = 1.38\,\mathrm{m}$$

so

$$\beta = \frac{E_o}{kB_e} = \frac{9000}{(500)(1.38)} = 13.04$$

and

$$\frac{H}{B_e} = \frac{2}{1.38} = 1.45$$

From Figure 8.8, for $\beta' = 13.04$ and $H/B_e = 1.45$, the value of $I_G \approx 0.74$. From Eq. (8.29)

$$I_F = \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{4.6 + 10\left(\dfrac{E_f}{E_o + \dfrac{B_e}{2}k}\right)\left(\dfrac{2t}{B_e}\right)^3}$$

$$= \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{4.6 + 10\left[\dfrac{15 \times 10^6}{9000 + \left(\dfrac{1.38}{2}\right)(500)}\right]\left[\dfrac{(2)(0.23)}{1.38}\right]^3} = 0.787$$

From Eq. (8.30)

$$I_E = 1 - \frac{1}{3.5\exp(1.22\nu - 0.4)\left(\dfrac{B_e}{D_f} + 1.6\right)}$$

$$= 1 - \frac{1}{3.5\exp[(1.22)(0.3) - 0.4]\left(\dfrac{1.38}{1} + 1.6\right)} = 0.907$$

From Eq. (8.28)

$$S_e = \frac{qB_eI_GI_FI_E}{E_o}(1 - \nu^2)$$

So, with $q = 190\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$, it follows that

$$S_e = \frac{(190)(1.38)(0.74)(0.787)(0.907)}{9000}(1-0.3^2) = 0.014\,\text{m} \approx 14\,\text{mm}$$

8.6 Calculation of elastic settlement in granular soil using simplified strain influence factor

The equation for vertical strain $\in_z$ under the center of a flexible circular load was given in Eq. (3.82) as

$$\in_z = \frac{q(1+\nu)}{E}\,[(1-2\nu)\,A' + B']$$

$$\text{or} \qquad I_z = \frac{\in_z E}{q} = (1+\nu)\,[(1-2\nu)\,A' + B'] \tag{8.31}$$

where I_z is the strain influence factor.

Based on several experimental results, Schmertmann (1970) and later Schmertmann *et al.* (1978) suggested empirical strain influence factors for square ($L/B = 1$) and strip foundations ($L/B \geq 10$) as shown in Figure 8.11. Interpolations can be made for L/B values between 1 and 10. The elastic settlement of the foundation using the strain influence factor can be estimated as

$$S_e = C_1 C_2 (\bar{q} - q') \sum \frac{I_z}{E} \Delta z \tag{8.32}$$

where

$\bar{q}$ = stress at the level of the foundation
$q' = \gamma D_f$
γ = effective unit weight of soil
C_1 = correction factor for the depth of the foundation

$$= 1 - 0.5\left(\frac{q'}{\bar{q} - q'}\right) \tag{8.33}$$

C_2 = correction factor to account from creep in soil

$$= 1 + 0.2\log(t/0.1) \tag{8.34}$$

where t is time, in years.

The procedure for calculating S_e using the strain influence factor is shown in Figure 8.12. Figure 8.12*a* shows the plot of I_z with depth. Similarly, Figure 8.12*b* shows the plot of q_c (cone penetration resistance) with depth. Now the following steps can be taken to calculate S_e.

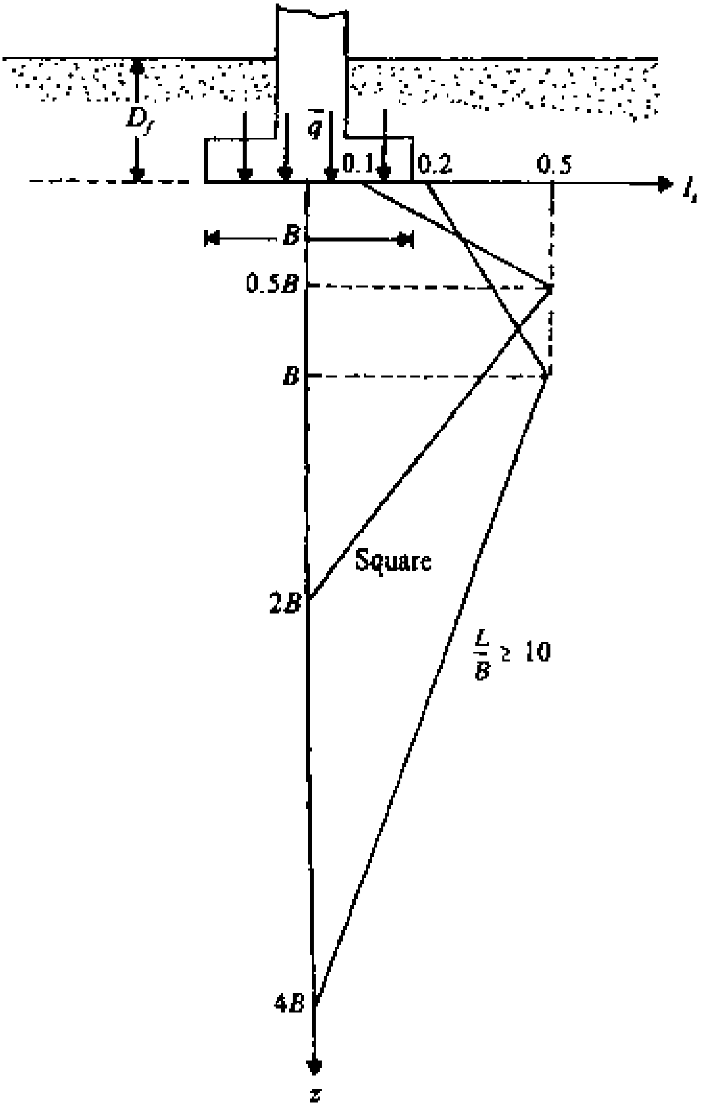


Figure 8.11 Strain influence factor.

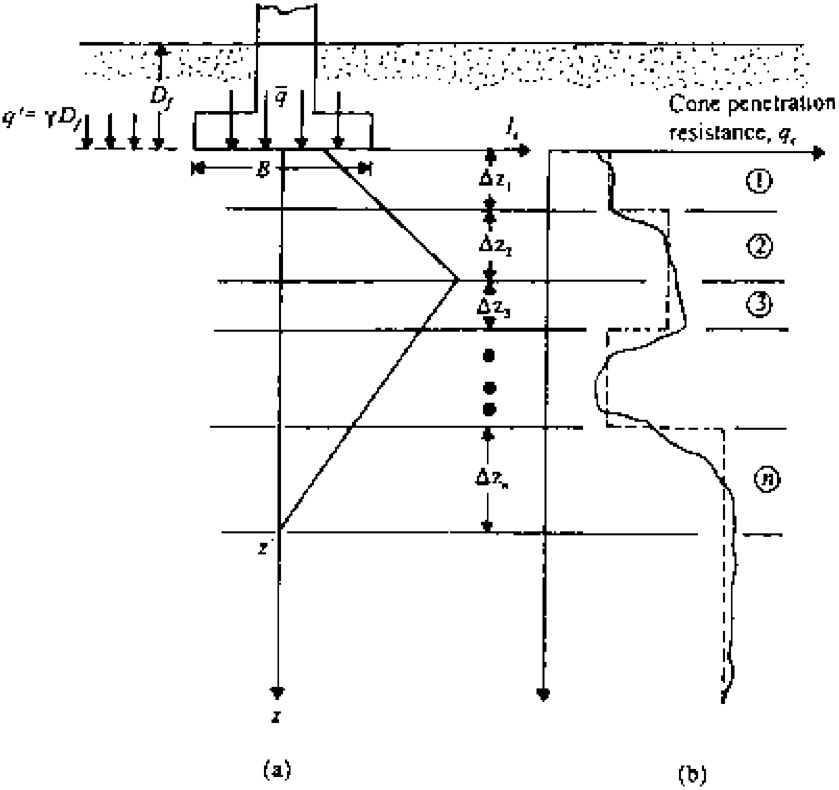


Figure 8.12 Calculation of S_e from strain influence factor.

1. On the basis of the actual variation of q_c, assume a number of layers having a constant value of q_c. This is shown by the dashed lines in Figure 8.12*b*.
2. Divide the soil located between $z = 0$ and $z = z'$ into several layers, depending on the discontinuities in the strain influence factor diagram (Figure 8.12*a*) and the idealized variation of q_c (i.e., dashed lines in Figure 8.12*b*). The layer thicknesses are $\Delta z_1, \Delta z_2, \ldots \Delta z_n$.
3. Prepare a table (e.g., Table 8.10) and calculate $\Sigma\ (I_z/E)\Delta z$.
4. Calculate C_1 and C_2 from Eqs. (8.33) and (8.34). In Eq. (8.34), assume t to be 5–10 years.
5. Calculate S_e from Eq. (8.32).

Table 8.10 Calculation procedure of $\Sigma\ (I_z/E)\Delta z$

Layer	Δz	q_c	$E^{\dagger}$	*Average value of I_z at the center of layer*	$(I_z/E)\Delta z$
1	Δz_1	$q_{c(1)}$	E_1	$I_{z(1)}$	.
2	Δz_2	$q_{c(2)}$	E_2	$I_{z(2)}$	.
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
n	Δz_n	$q_{c(n)}$	E_n	$I_{z(n)}$	.

† From Eqs. (8.12) or (8.13).

EXAMPLE 8.3

The idealized variation of the cone penetration resistance below a bridge pier foundation is shown in Figure 8.13. The foundation plan is $20 \times 2\,\text{m}$. Given $D_f = 2\,\text{m}$, unit weight of soil $\gamma = 16\,\text{kN/m}^3$, and $\bar{q} = 150\,\text{kN/m}^2$, calculate the elastic settlement using the strain influence factor method.

SOLUTION Refer to Figure 8.13, which is a strip foundation, since $L/B = 20/2 = 10$. The soil between the strain influence factor zone has been divided into five layers. The following table can now be prepared.

Layer	Δz *(m)*	q_c *(kN/m²)*	$E^{\dagger}$ *(kN/m²)*	*Average I_z at midlayer*	$(I_z/E)\Delta z$ *(m³/kN)*
1	1.0	2,000	7,000	0.275	3.92×10^{-5}
2	1.0	4,000	14,000	0.425	3.03×10^{-5}
3	1.0	4,000	14,000	0.417	2.95×10^{-5}
4	1.5	3,000	10,500	0.30	4.28×10^{-5}
5	3.5	6,000	21,000	0.133	2.21×10^{-5}

$\Sigma = 16.41 \times 10^{-5}\,\text{m}^3/\text{kN}$.
† Eq. (8.13); $E = 3.5q_c$

Calculate

$$C_1 = 1 - 0.5\left(\frac{q'}{\bar{q} - q'}\right) = 1 - 0.5\left[\frac{2 \times 16}{150 - (2 \times 16)}\right] = 0.864$$

$$C_2 = 1 + 0.2\log\left(\frac{t}{0.1}\right)$$

Use $t = 10$ years. So,

$$C_2 = 1 + 0.2\log\left(\frac{10}{0.1}\right) = 1.4$$

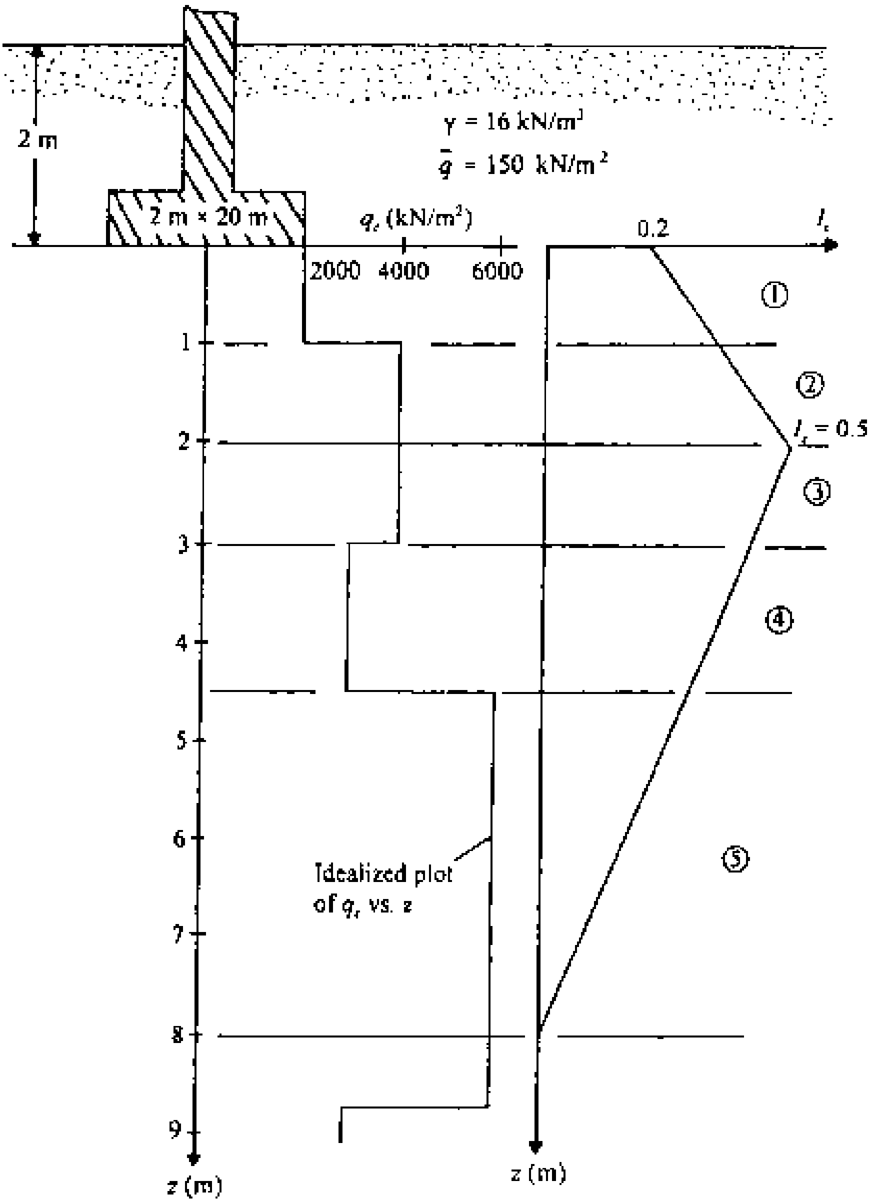


Figure 8.13 Settlement calculation under a pier foundation.

$$S_e = C_1 C_2 (\bar{q} - q) \sum \frac{I_z}{E} \Delta z = (0.864)\,(1.4)(150 - 32)(16.41 \times 10^{-5})$$
$$= 0.0234\,\text{m} = 23.4\,\text{mm}$$

CONSOLIDATION SETTLEMENT

8.7 One-dimensional primary consolidation settlement calculation

Based on Eq. (6.76) in Sec. 6.9, the settlement for one-dimensional consolidation can be given by,

$$S_c = \Delta H_t = \frac{\Delta e}{1 + e_0} H_t \tag{6.76$'$}$$

where

$$\Delta e = C_c \log \frac{\sigma'_0 + \Delta\sigma}{\sigma'_0} \quad \text{(for normally consolidated clays)} \tag{6.77$'$}$$

$$\Delta e = C_r \log \frac{\sigma'_0 + \Delta\sigma}{\sigma'_0} \quad \text{(for overconsolidated clays, } \sigma'_0 + \Delta\sigma \le \sigma'_c) \tag{6.78$'$}$$

$$\Delta e = C_r \log \frac{\sigma'_c}{\sigma'_0} + C_c \log \frac{\sigma'_0 + \Delta\sigma}{\sigma'_c} \quad \text{(for } \sigma'_0 < \sigma'_c < \sigma'_0 + \Delta\sigma) \tag{6.79$'$}$$

where σ'_c is the preconsolidation pressure.

When a load is applied over a limited area, the increase of pressure due to the applied load will decrease with depth, as shown in Figure 8.14. So, for a more realistic settlement prediction, we can use the following methods.

Method A

1. Calculate the average effective pressure σ'_0 on the clay layer before the application of the load under consideration.
2. Calculate the increase of stress due to the applied load at the top, middle, and bottom of the clay layer. This can be done by using theories developed in Chap. 3. The average increase of stress in the clay layer can be estimated by Simpson's rule,

$$\Delta\sigma_{av} = \frac{1}{6}(\Delta\sigma_t + 4\Delta\sigma_m + \Delta\sigma_b) \tag{8.35}$$

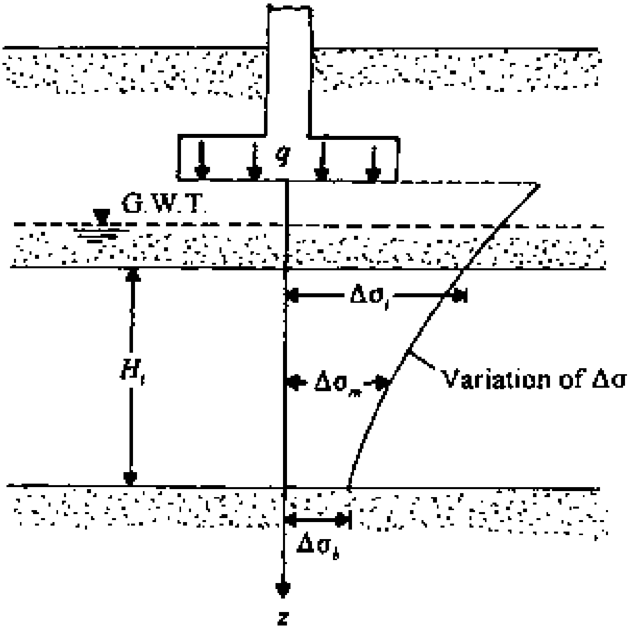


Figure 8.14 Calculation of consolidation settlement—method A.

where $\Delta\sigma_t$, $\Delta\sigma_m$, and $\Delta\sigma_b$ are stress increases at the top, middle, and bottom of the clay layer, respectively.

3. Using the σ'_0 and $\Delta\sigma_{av}$ calculated above, obtain Δe from Eqs. (6.77′), (6.78′), or (6.79′), whichever is applicable.
4. Calculate the settlement by using Eq. (6.76′).

Method B

1. Better results in settlement calculation may be obtained by dividing a given clay layer into n layers as shown in Figure 8.15.
2. Calculate the effective stress $\sigma'_{0(i)}$ at the middle of each layer.
3. Calculate the increase of stress at the middle of each layer $\Delta\sigma_i$ due to the applied load.
4. Calculate Δe_i for each layer from Eqs. (6.77′), (6.78′), or (6.79′), whichever is applicable.
5. Total settlement for the entire clay layer can be given by

$$S_c = \sum_{i=1}^{i=n} \Delta S_c = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{\Delta e_i}{1+e_0} \Delta H_i \qquad (8.36)$$

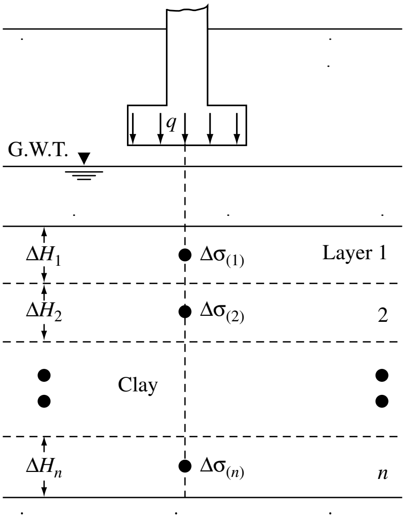


Figure 8.15 Calculation of consolidation settlement—method B.

EXAMPLE 8.4

A circular foundation 2 m in diameter is shown in Figure 8.16*a*. A normally consolidated clay layer 5 m thick is located below the foundation. Determine the consolidation settlement of the clay. Use method B (Sec. 8.7).

SOLUTION We divide the clay layer into five layers, each 1 m thick. *Calculation of* $\sigma'_{0(\mathrm{i})}$: The effective stress at the middle of layer 1 is

$$\sigma'_{0(1)} = 17(1.5) + (19 - 9.81)(0.5) + (18.5 - 9.81)(0.5) = 34.44\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

The effective stress at the middle of the second layer is

$$\sigma'_{0(2)} = 34.44 + (18.5 - 9.81)\,(1) = 34.44 + 8.69 = 43.13\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

Similarly,

$$\sigma'_{0(3)} = 43.13 + 8.69 = 51.81\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

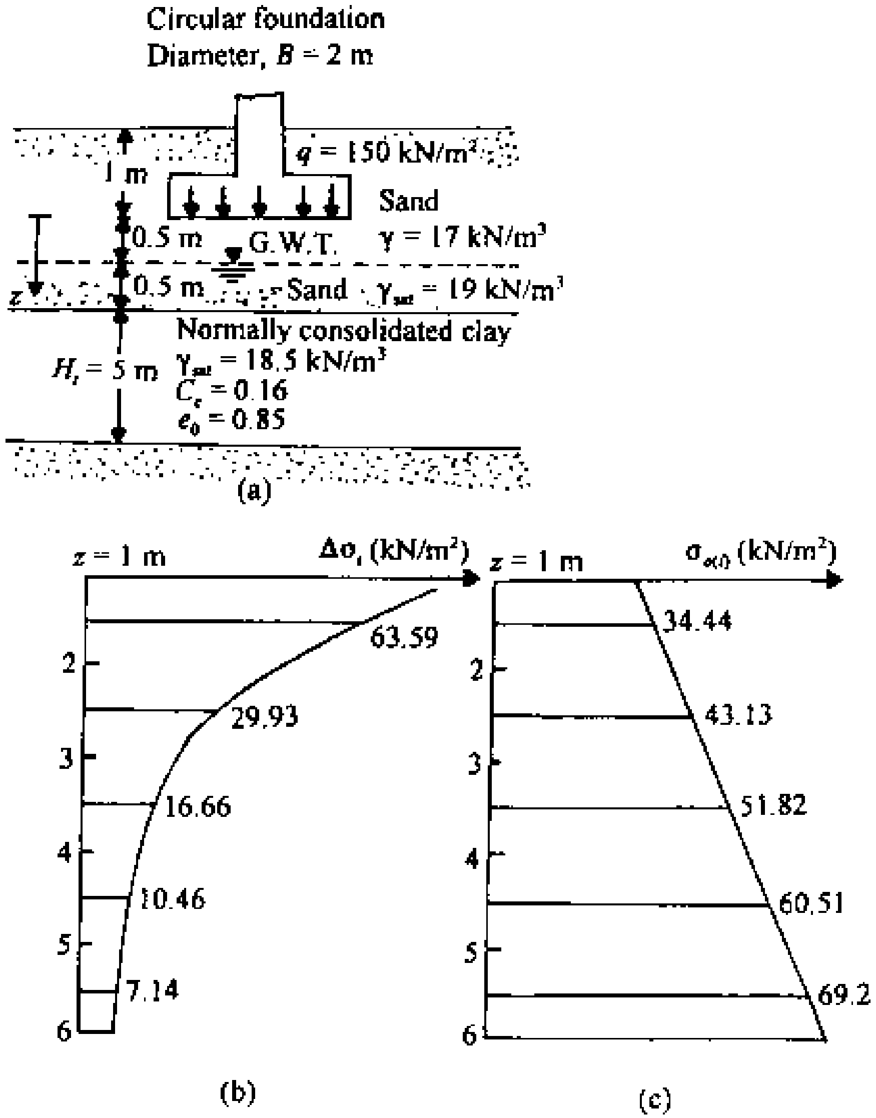


Figure 8.16 Consolidation settlement calculation from layers of finite thickness.

$$\sigma'_{0(4)} = 51.82 + 8.69 = 60.51\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\sigma'_{0(5)} = 60.51 + 8.69 = 69.2\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

Calculation of $\Delta\sigma_{\mathrm{i}}$: For a circular loaded foundation, the increase of stress below the center is given by Eq. (3.74), and so,

$$\Delta\sigma_{\mathrm{i}} = q\left\{1 - \frac{1}{\left[(b/z)^2 + 1\right]^{3/2}}\right\}$$

where b is the radius of the circular foundation, 1 m. Hence

$$\Delta\sigma_1 = 150\left\{1 - \frac{1}{\left[(1/1.5)^2 + 1\right]^{3/2}}\right\} = 63.59\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\Delta\sigma_2 = 150\left\{1 - \frac{1}{\left[(1/2.5)^2 + 1\right]^{3/2}}\right\} = 29.93\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\Delta\sigma_3 = 150\left\{1 - \frac{1}{\left[(1/3.5)^2 + 1\right]^{3/2}}\right\} = 16.66\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\Delta\sigma_4 = 150\left\{1 - \frac{1}{\left[(1/4.5)^2 + 1\right]^{3/2}}\right\} = 10.46\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\Delta\sigma_5 = 150\left\{1 - \frac{1}{\left[(1/5.5)^2 + 1\right]^{3/2}}\right\} = 7.14\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

Calculation of consolidation settlement S_{c}: The steps in the calculation are given in the following table (see also Figures 8.16*b* and *c*);

Layer	ΔH_i (*m*)	$\sigma'_{0(i)}$ (kN/m^2)	$\Delta\sigma_i$ (kN/m^2)	Δe^*	$\dfrac{\Delta e}{1+e_0}\Delta H_i$ (*m*)
1	1	34.44	63.59	0.0727	0.0393
2	1	43.13	29.93	0.0366	0.0198
3	1	51.82	16.66	0.0194	0.0105
4	1	60.51	10.46	0.0111	0.0060
5	1	69.2	7.14	0.00682	0.0037
					$\Sigma = 0.0793$

* $\Delta e = C_c \log \frac{\sigma'_{0(i)}+\Delta\sigma_i}{\sigma'_{0(i)}}$; $C_c = 0.16$

So, $S_c = 0.0793\,\text{m} = 79.3\,\text{mm}$.

8.8 Skempton–Bjerrum modification for calculation of consolidation settlement

In one-dimensional consolidation tests, there is no lateral yield of the soil specimen and the ratio of the minor to major principal effective stresses, K_o, remains constant. In that case the increase of pore water pressure due to an increase of vertical stress is equal in magnitude to the latter; or

$$\Delta u = \Delta\sigma \tag{8.37}$$

where Δu is the increase of pore water pressure and $\Delta\sigma$ is the increase of vertical stress.

However, in reality, the final increase of major and minor principal stresses due to a given loading condition at a given point in a clay layer does not maintain a ratio equal to K_o. This causes a lateral yield of soil. The increase of pore water pressure at a point due to a given load is (Figure 8.17) (See Chap. 4).

$$\Delta u = \Delta\sigma_3 + A\,(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3)$$

Skempton and Bjerrum (1957) proposed that the vertical compression of a soil element of thickness dz due to an increase of pore water pressure Δu may be given by

$$dS_c = m_v \Delta u\ dz \tag{8.38}$$

where m_v is coefficient of volume compressibility (Sec. 6.2), or

$$dS_c = m_v\left[\Delta\sigma_3 + A\,(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3)\right] dz = m_v \Delta\sigma_1 \left[A + \frac{\Delta\sigma_3}{\Delta\sigma_1}(1-A)\right] dz$$

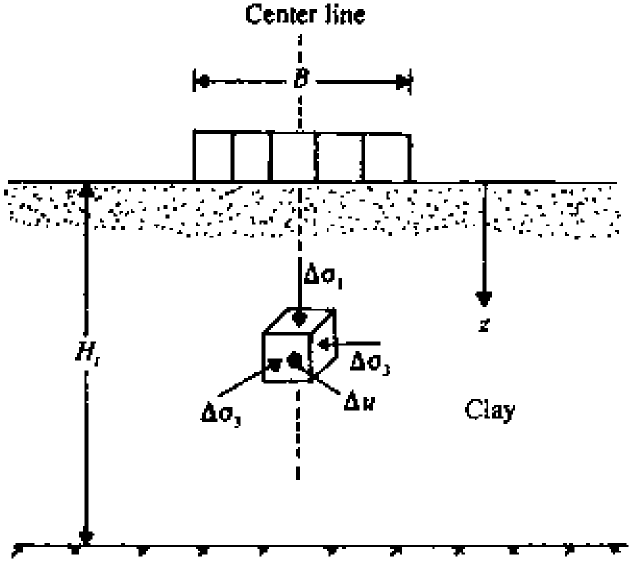


Figure 8.17 Development of excess pore water pressure below the centerline of a circular loaded foundation.

The preceding equation can be integrated to obtain the total consolidation settlement:

$$S_c = \int_0^{H_t} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 \left[A + \frac{\Delta\sigma_3}{\Delta\sigma_1}(1-A) \right] dz \tag{8.39}$$

For conventional one-dimensional consolidation (K_o condition),

$$S_{c(oed)} = \int_0^{H_t} \frac{\Delta e}{1+e_0} dz = \int_0^{H_t} \frac{\Delta e}{\Delta\sigma_1} \frac{1}{1+e_0} \Delta\sigma_1 dz = \int_0^{H_t} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 dz \tag{8.40}$$

(Note that Eq. (8.40) is the same as that used for settlement calculation in Sec. 8.7). Thus

$$\text{Settlement ratio, } \rho_{\text{circle}} = \frac{S_c}{S_{c\,(oed)}}$$
$$= \frac{\int_0^{H_t} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 \left[A + (\Delta\sigma_3/\Delta\sigma_1)(1-A)\right] dz}{\int_0^{H_t} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 dz}$$

$$= A + (1 - A) \frac{\int_0^{H_t} \Delta\sigma_3 dz}{\int_0^{H_t} \Delta\sigma_1 \, dz}$$

$$= A + (1 - A) M_1 \tag{8.41}$$

where

$$M_1 = \frac{\int_0^{H_t} \Delta\sigma_3 dz}{\int_0^{H_t} \Delta\sigma_1 \, dz} \tag{8.42}$$

We can also develop an expression similar to Eq. (8.41) for consolidation under the center of a strip load (Scott, 1963) of width *B*. From Chap. 4,

$$\Delta u = \Delta\sigma_3 + \left[\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(A - \frac{1}{3}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\right](\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) \qquad v = 0.5$$

$$\text{So,} \qquad S_c = \int_0^{H_t} m_v \Delta u \, dz = \int_0^{H_t} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 \left[N + (1 - N)\frac{\Delta\sigma_3}{\Delta\sigma_1}\right] dz \tag{8.43}$$

where

$$N = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(A - \frac{1}{3}\right) + \frac{1}{2}$$

Hence,

$$\text{Settlement ratio, } \rho_{\text{strip}} = \frac{S_c}{S_{c(\text{oed})}}$$

$$= \frac{\int_0^{H_t} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 [N + (1 - N)(\Delta\sigma_3 / \Delta\sigma_1)] dz}{\int_0^{H_t} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 dz}$$

$$= N + (1 - N) M_2 \tag{8.44}$$

where

$$M_2 = \frac{\int_0^{H_t} \Delta\sigma_3 dz}{\int_0^{H_t} \Delta\sigma_1 dz} \tag{8.45}$$

The values of ρ_{circle} and ρ_{strip} for different values of the pore pressure parameter *A* are given in Figure 8.18.

It must be pointed out that the settlement ratio obtained in Eqs. (8.41) and (8.44) can only be used for settlement calculation along the axes of

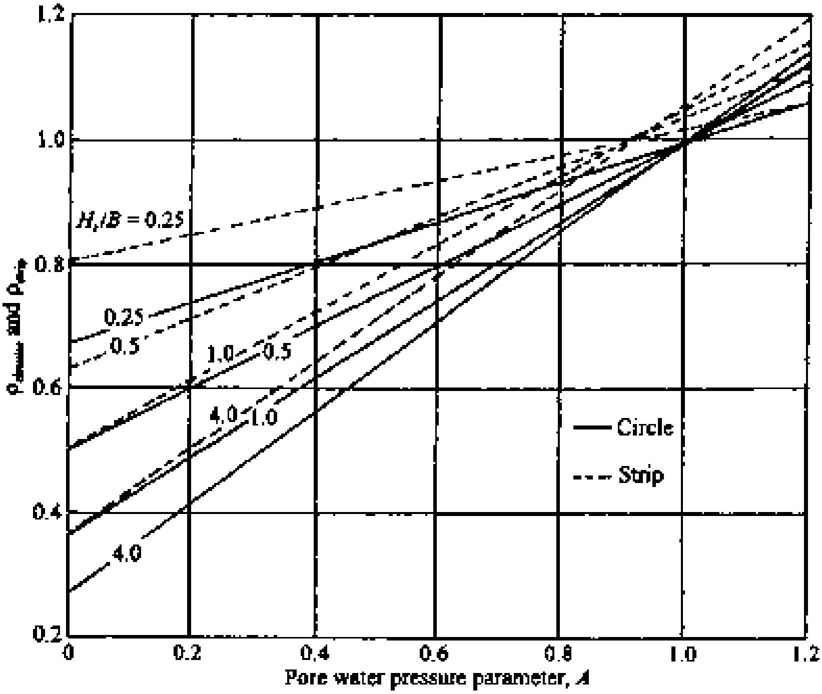


Figure 8.18 Settlement ratio for strip and circular loading.

symmetry. Away from the axes of symmetry, the principal stresses are no longer in vertical and horizontal directions.

EXAMPLE 8.5

The average representative value of the pore water pressure parameter A (as determined from triaxial tests on undisturbed samples) for the clay layer shown in Figure 8.19 is about 0.6. Estimate the consolidation settlement of the circular tank.

SOLUTION The average effective overburden pressure for the 6-m-thick clay layer is $\sigma'_0 = (6/2)(19.24 - 9.81) = 28.29\,\text{kN/m}^2$. We will use Eq. (8.35) to obtain the average pressure increase:

$$\Delta\sigma_{\text{av}} = \frac{1}{6}(\Delta\sigma_{\text{t}} + 4\Delta\sigma_{\text{m}} + \Delta\sigma_{\text{b}})$$

$$\Delta\sigma_{\text{t}} = 100\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

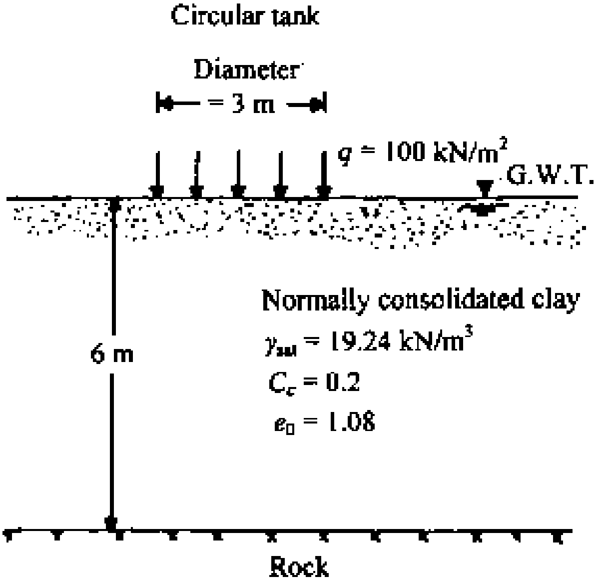


Figure 8.19 Consolidation settlement under a circular tank.

From Eq. (3.74),

$$\Delta\sigma_{\mathrm{m}} = 100\left\{1 - \frac{1}{[(1.5/3)^2+1]^{3/2}}\right\} = 28.45\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\Delta\sigma_{\mathrm{b}} = 100\left\{1 - \frac{1}{[(1.5/6)^2+1]^{3/2}}\right\} = 8.69\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\Delta\sigma_{\mathrm{av}} = \frac{1}{6}\Big[100 + 4(28.45) + 8.69\Big] = 37.1\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$$

$$\Delta e = C_{\mathrm{c}}\log\frac{\sigma_0' + \Delta\sigma_{\mathrm{av}}}{\sigma_0'} = 0.2\log\left(\frac{28.29+37.1}{28.29}\right) = 0.073$$

$$e_0 = 1.08$$

$$S_{\mathrm{c(oed)}} = \frac{\Delta e H_{\mathrm{t}}}{1+e_0} = \frac{0.073\times 6}{1+1.08} = 0.21\,\mathrm{m} = 210\,\mathrm{mm}$$

From Figure 8.18 the settlement ratio ρ_{circular} is approximately 0.73 (note that $H_t/B = 2$), so

$$S_c = \rho_{\text{circular}} S_{c(\text{oed})} = 0.73\,(210) = 153.3\,\text{mm}$$

8.9 Settlement of overconsolidated clays

Settlement of structures founded on overconsolidated clay can be calculated by dividing the clay layer into a finite number of layers of smaller thicknesses as outlined in method B in Sec. 8.7. Thus

$$S_{c(\text{oed})} = \sum \frac{C_{r\Delta H_i}}{1+e_0} \log \frac{\sigma'_{0(i)} + \Delta\sigma_i}{\sigma'_{0(i)}} \tag{8.46}$$

To account for the small departure from one-dimensional consolidation as discussed in Sec. 8.8, Leonards (1976) proposed a correction factor, λ:

$$S_c = \lambda S_{c(\text{oed})} \tag{8.47}$$

The values of the correction factor λ are given in Figure 8.20 and are a function of the average value of σ'_c/σ'_0 and B/H_t (B is the width of the foundation and H_t the thickness of the clay layer, as shown in Figure 8.20). According to Leonards, if $B > 4H_t$, $\lambda = 1$ may be used. Also, if the depth to the top of the clay stratum exceeds twice the width of the loaded area, $\lambda = 1$ should be used in Eq. (8.47).

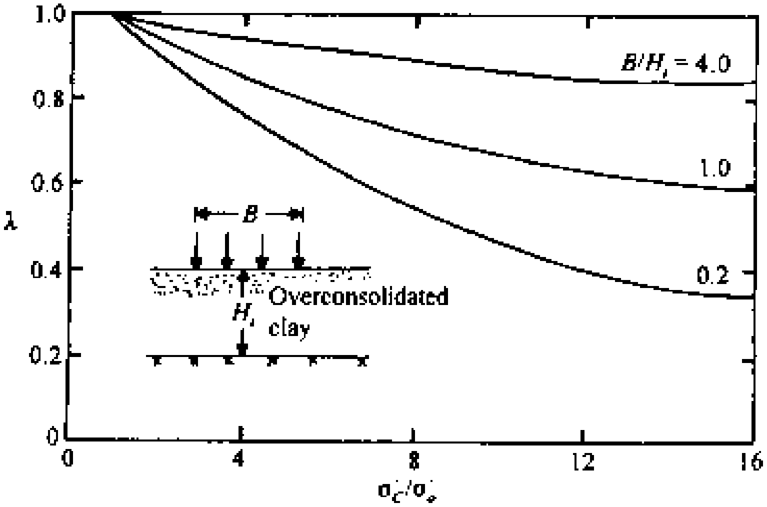


Figure 8.20 Settlement ratio in overconsolidated clay (after Leonards, 1976).

8.10 Settlement calculation using stress path

Lambe's (1964) stress path was explained in Sec. 7.15. Based on Figure 7.42, it was also concluded that

1. the stress paths for a given *normally consolidated* clay are geometrically similar, and
2. when the points representing equal axial strain ($\in_1$) are joined, they will be approximate straight lines passing through the origin.

Let us consider a case where a soil specimen is subjected to an oedometer (one-dimensional consolidation) type of loading (Figure 8.21). For this case, we can write

$$\sigma_3' = K_o \sigma_1' \tag{8.48}$$

where K_o is the at-rest earth pressure coefficient and can be given by the expression (Jaky, 1944)

$$K_o = 1 - \sin\phi \tag{8.49}$$

For Mohr's circle shown in Figure 8.21, the coordinates of point E can be given by

$$q' = \frac{\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'}{2} = \frac{\sigma_1'(1 - K_o)}{2}$$

$$p' = \frac{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}{2} = \frac{\sigma_1'(1 + K_o)}{2}$$

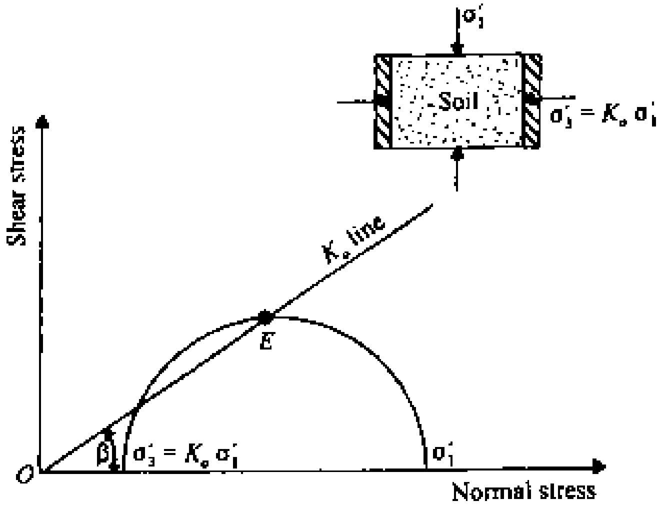


Figure 8.21 Determination of the slope of K_o line.

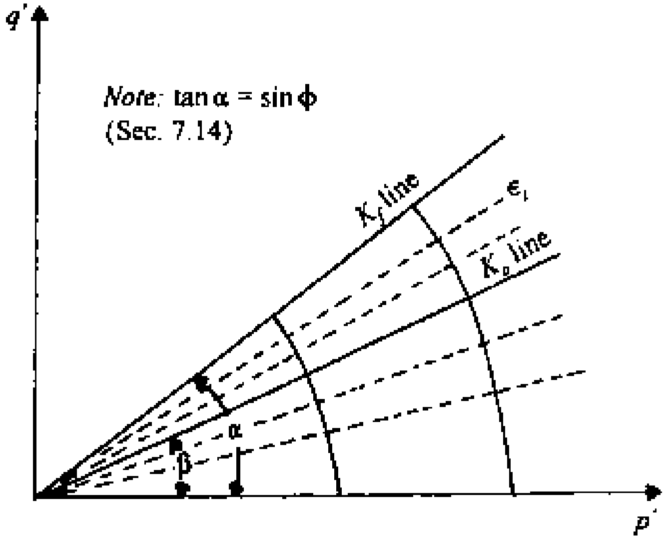


Figure 8.22 Plot of p' versus q' with K_o and K_f lines.

Thus

$$\beta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{q'}{p'}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1-K_o}{1+K_o}\right) \tag{8.50}$$

where β is the angle that the line OE (K_o line) makes with the normal stress axis.

Figure 8.22 shows a q' versus p' plot for a soil specimen in which the K_o line has also been incorporated. Note that the K_o line also corresponds to a certain value of $\in_1$.

To obtain a general idea of the nature of distortion in soil specimens derived from the application of an axial stress, we consider a soil specimen. If $\sigma'_1 = \sigma'_3$ (i.e., hydrostatic compression) and the specimen is subjected to a hydrostatic stress increase of $\Delta\sigma$ under drained conditions (i.e., $\Delta\sigma = \Delta\sigma'$), then the drained stress path would be *EF*, as shown in Figure 8.23. There would be uniform strain in all directions. If $\sigma'_3 = K_o\sigma'_1$ (at-rest pressure) and the specimen is subjected to an axial stress increase of $\Delta\sigma$ under drained conditions (i.e., $\Delta\sigma = \Delta\sigma'$), the specimen deformation would depend on the stress path it follows. For stress path *AC*, which is along the K_o line, there will be axial deformation only and no lateral deformation. For stress path *AB* there will be lateral expansion, and so the axial strain at *B* will be greater than that at *C*. For stress path *AD* there will be some lateral compression, and the axial strain at *D* will be more than at *F* but less than that at *C*. Note that the axial strain is gradually increasing as we go from *F* to *B*.

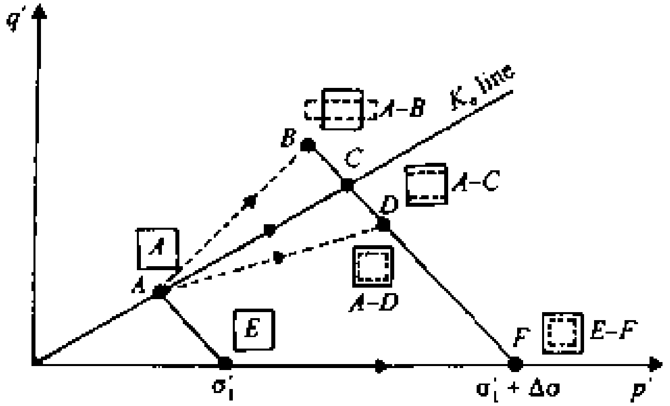


Figure 8.23 Stress path and specimen distortion.

In all cases, the effective major principal stress is $\sigma_1 + \Delta\sigma'$. However, the lateral strain is compressive at *F* and zero at *C*, and we get lateral expansion at *B*. This is due to the nature of the lateral effective stress to which the specimen is subjected during the loading.

In the calculation of settlement from stress paths, it is assumed that, for normally consolidated clays, the volume change between any two points on a p' versus q' plot is independent of the path followed. This is explained in Figure 8.24. For a soil specimen, the volume changes between stress paths *AB*, *GH*, *CD*, and *CI*, for example, are all the same. However, the axial strains will be different. With this basic assumption, we can now proceed to determine the settlement.

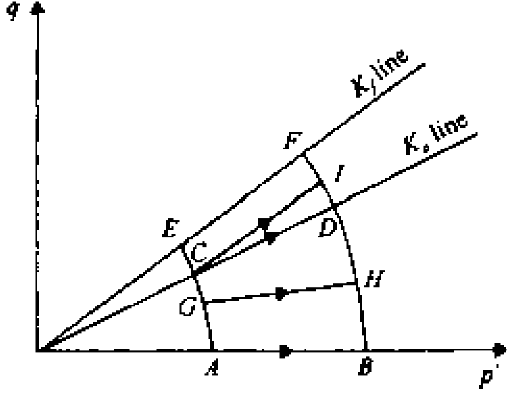


Figure 8.24 Volume change between two points of a p' versus q' plot.

For ease in understanding, the procedure for settlement calculation will be explained with the aid of an example. For settlement calculation in a normally consolidated clay, undisturbed specimens from representative depths are obtained. Consolidated undrained triaxial tests on these specimens at several confining pressures, σ_3, are conducted, along with a standard one-dimensional consolidated test. The stress–strain contours are plotted on the basis of the consolidated undrained triaxial test results. The standard one-dimensional consolidation test results will give us the values of compression index C_c. For example, let Figure 8.25 represent the stress–strain contours for a given normally consolidated clay specimen obtained from an *average depth* of a clay layer. Also let $C_c = 0.25$ and $e_0 = 0.9$. The drained friction angle ϕ (determined from consolidated undrained tests) is 30°. From Eq. (8.50),

$$\beta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1-K_o}{1+K_o}\right)$$

and $K_o = 1 - \sin\phi = 1 - \sin 30° = 0.5$. So,

$$\beta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1-0.5}{1+0.5}\right) = 18.43°$$

Knowing the value of β, we can now plot the K_o line in Figure 8.25. Also note that $\tan\alpha = \sin\phi$. Since $\phi = 30°$, $\tan\alpha = 0.5$. So $\alpha = 26.57°$. Let us calculate the settlement in the clay layer for the following conditions (Figure 8.25):

1. In situ average effective overburden pressure $= \sigma'_1 = 75\,\text{kN/m}^2$.
2. Total thickness of clay layer $= H_t = 3\,\text{m}$.

Owing to the construction of a structure, the increase of the total major and minor principal stresses at an average depth are

$$\Delta\sigma_1 = 40\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\Delta\sigma_3 = 25\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

(assuming that the load is applied instantaneously). The in situ minor principal stress (at-rest pressure) is $\sigma_3 = \sigma'_3 = K_o\sigma'_1 = 0.5(75) = 37.5\,\text{kN/m}^2$.

So, before loading,

$$p' = \frac{\sigma'_1 + \sigma'_3}{2} = \frac{75 + 37.5}{2} = 56.25\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$q' = \frac{\sigma'_1 - \sigma'_3}{2} = \frac{75 - 37.5}{2} = 18.75\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

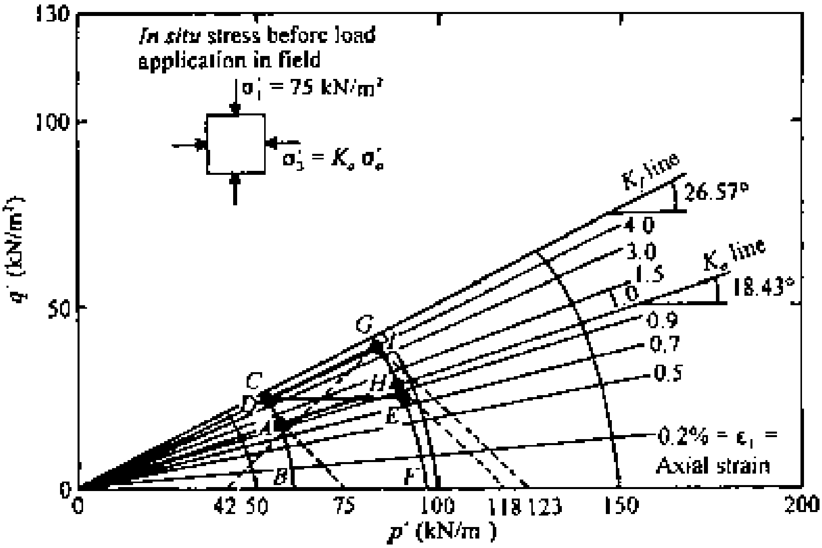


Figure 8.25 Use of stress path to calculate settlement.

The stress conditions before loading can now be plotted in Figure 8.25 from the above values of p' and q'. This is point A.

Since the stress paths are geometrically similar, we can plot BAC, which is the stress path through A. Also, since the loading is instantaneous (i.e., undrained), the stress conditions in clay, represented by the p' versus q' plot immediately after loading, will fall on the stress path BAC. Immediately after loading,

$$\sigma_1 = 75 + 40 = 115\,\text{kN/m}^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_3 = 37.5 + 25 = 62.5\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\text{So,} \qquad q' = \frac{\sigma_1' - \sigma_3'}{2} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2} = \frac{115 - 62.5}{2} = 26.25\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

With this value of q', we locate point D. At the end of consolidation,

$$\sigma_1' = \sigma_1 = 115\,\text{kN/m}^2 \qquad \sigma_3' = \sigma_3 = 62.5\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\text{So,} \qquad p' = \frac{\sigma_1' + \sigma_3'}{2} = \frac{115 + 62.5}{2} = 88.75\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\text{and} \qquad q' = 26.25\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

The preceding values of p' and q' are plotted as point E. FEG is a geometrically similar stress path drawn through E. ADE is the effective stress path that a soil element, at average depth of the clay layer, will follow.

AD represents the elastic settlement, and *DE* represents the consolidation settlement.

For elastic settlement (stress path *A* to *D*),

$$S_e = [(\in_1 \text{ at } D) - (\in_1 \text{ at } A)]H_t = (0.04 - 0.01)\,3 = 0.09 \text{ m}$$

For consolidation settlement (stress path *D* to *E*), based on our previous assumption, the volumetric strain between *D* and *E* is the same as the volumetric strain between *A* and *H*. Note that *H* is on the K_o line. For point *A*, $\sigma_1' = 75\,\text{kN/m}^2$, and for point *H*, $\sigma_1' = 118\,\text{kN/m}^2$. So the volumetric strain, $\in_v$, is

$$\in_v = \frac{\Delta e}{1+e_0} = \frac{C_c \log(118/75)}{1+0.9} = \frac{0.25\log(118/75)}{1.9} = 0.026$$

The axial strain $\in_1$ along a horizontal stress path is about one-third the volumetric strain along the K_o line, or

$$\in_1 = \frac{1}{3}\in_v = \frac{1}{3}(0.026) = 0.0087$$

So, the consolidation settlement is

$$S_c = 0.0087H_t = 0.0087(3) = 0.0261\,\text{m}$$

and hence the total settlement is

$$S_e + S_c = 0.09 + 0.0261 = 0.116\,\text{m}$$

Another type of loading condition is also of some interest. Suppose that the stress increase at the average depth of the clay layer was carried out in two steps: (1) instantaneous load application, resulting in stress increases of $\Delta\sigma_1 = 40\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and $\Delta\sigma_3 = 25\,\text{kN/m}^2$ (stress path *AD*), followed by (2) a gradual load increase, which results in a stress path *DI* (Figure 8.25). As before, the undrained shear along stress path *AD* will produce an axial strain of 0.03. The volumetric strains for stress paths *DI* and *AH* will be the same; so $\in_v = 0.026$. The axial strain $\in_1$ for the stress path *DI* can be given by the relation (based on the theory of elasticity)

$$\frac{\in_1}{\in_0} = \frac{1+K_o-2KK_o}{(1-K_o)(1+2K)} \tag{8.51}$$

where $K = \sigma_3'/\sigma_1'$ for the point *I*. In this case, $\sigma_3' = 42\,\text{kN/m}^2$ and $\sigma_1' = 123\,\text{kN/m}^2$. So,

$$K = \frac{42}{123} = 0.341$$

$$\frac{\in_1}{\in_\upsilon} = \frac{\in_1}{0.026} = \frac{1+0.5-2(0.341)(0.5)}{(1-0.5)[1+2(0.341)]} = 1.38$$

or $\in_1 = (0.026)(1.38) = 0.036$

Hence the total settlement due to the loading is equal to

$$S = [(\in_1 \text{ along } AD) + (\in_1 \text{ along } DI)]H_t$$
$$= (0.03 + 0.036)\,H_t = 0.066H_t$$

8.11 Comparison of primary consolidation settlement calculation procedures

It is of interest at this point to compare the primary settlement calculation procedures outlined in Secs 8.7 and 8.8 with the stress path technique described in Sec. 8.10 (Figure 8.26).

Based on the one-dimensional consolidation procedure outlined in Sec. 8.7, essentially we calculate the settlement along the stress path *AE*, i.e., along the K_o line. *A* is the initial at-rest condition of the soil, and *E* is the final stress condition (at rest) of soil at the end of consolidation. According to the Skempton–Bjerrum modification, the consolidation settlement is calculated for stress path *DE*. *AB* is the elastic settlement. However, Lambe's stress path method gives the consolidation settlement for stress path *BC*. *AB* is the elastic settlement. Although the stress path technique provides us with a better insight into the fundamentals of settlement calculation, it is more time consuming because of the elaborate laboratory tests involved.

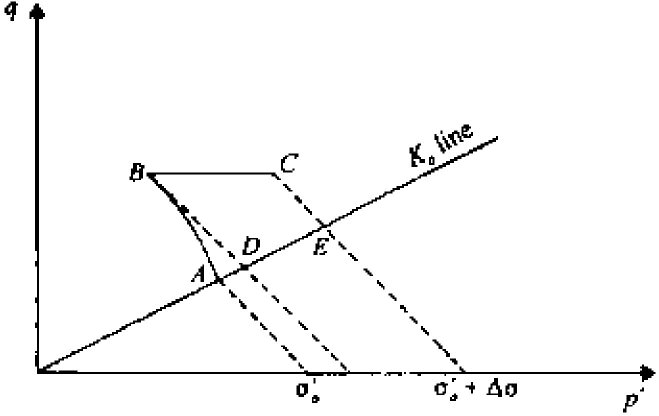


Figure 8.26 Comparison of consolidation settlement calculation procedures.

A number of works have been published that compare the observed and predicted settlements of various structures. Terzaghi and Peck (1967) pointed out that the field consolidation settlement is approximately one-dimensional when a comparatively thin layer of clay is located between two stiff layers of soil. Peck and Uyanik (1955) analyzed the settlement of eight structures in Chicago located over thick deposits of soft clay. The settlements of these structures were predicted by the method outlined in Sec. 8.7. Elastic settlements were not calculated. For this investigation, the ratio of the settlements observed to that calculated had an average value of 0.85. Skempton and Bjerrum (1957) also analyzed the settlements of four structures in the Chicago area (auditorium, Masonic temple, Monadnock block, Isle of Grain oil tank) located on overconsolidated clays. The predicted settlements included the elastic settlements and the consolidation settlements (by the method given in Sec. 8.8). The ratio of the observed to the predicted settlements varied from 0.92 to 1.17. Settlement analysis of Amuya Dam, Venezuela (Lambe, 1963), by the stress path method showed very good agreement with the observed settlement.

However, there are several instances where the predicted settlements vary widely from the observed settlements. The discrepancies can be attributed to deviation of the actual field conditions from those assumed in the theory, difficulty in obtaining undisturbed samples for laboratory tests, and so forth.

8.12 Secondary consolidation settlement

The coefficient of secondary consolidation C_α was defined in Sec. 6.7 as

$$C_\alpha = \frac{\Delta H_{\mathrm{t}}/H_{\mathrm{t}}}{\Delta \log t}$$

where t is time and H_{t} the thickness of the clay layer.

It has been reasonably established that C_α decreases with time in a logarithmic manner and is directly proportional to the total thickness of the clay layer at the beginning of secondary consolidation. Thus secondary consolidation settlement can be given by

$$S_{\mathrm{s}} = C_\alpha H_{\mathrm{ts}} \log \frac{t}{t_{\mathrm{p}}} \tag{8.52}$$

where

H_{ts} = thickness of clay layer at beginning of secondary consolidation = $H_{\mathrm{t}} - S_{\mathrm{c}}$

t = time at which secondary compression is required

t_{p} = time at end of primary consolidation

Actual field measurements of secondary settlements are relatively scarce. However, good agreement of measured and estimated settlements has been reported by some observers, e.g., Horn and Lambe (1964), Crawford and Sutherland (1971), and Su and Prysock (1972).

8.13 Precompression for improving foundation soils

In instances when it appears that too much consolidation settlement is likely to occur due to the construction of foundations, it may be desirable to apply some surcharge loading before foundation construction in order to eliminate or reduce the postconstruction settlement. This technique has been used with success in many large construction projects (Johnson, 1970). In this section, the fundamental concept of surcharge application for elimination of primary consolidation of compressible clay layers is presented.

Let us consider the case where a given construction will require a permanent uniform loading of intensity σ_f, as shown in Figure 8.27. The total primary consolidation settlement due to loading is estimated to be equal to

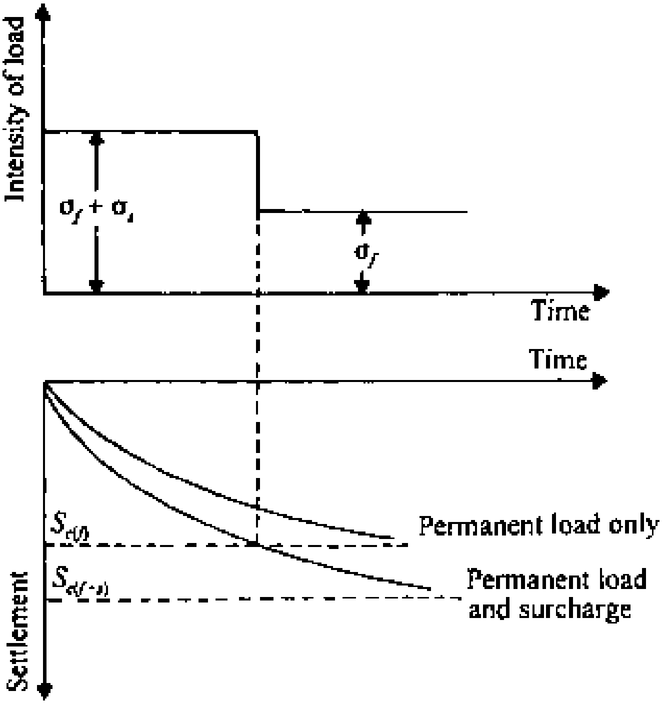


Figure 8.27 Concept of precompression technique.

$S_{c(f)}$. If we want to eliminate the expected settlement due to primary consolidation, we will have to apply a total uniform load of intensity $\sigma = \sigma_f + \sigma_s$. This load will cause a faster rate of settlement of the underlying compressible layer; when a total settlement of $S_{c(f)}$ has been reached, the surcharge can be removed for actual construction.

For a quantitative evaluation of the magnitude of σ_s and the time it should be kept on, we need to recognize the nature of the variation of the degree of consolidation at any time after loading for the underlying clay layer, as shown in Figure 8.28. The degree of consolidation U_z will vary with depth and will be minimum at midplane, i.e., at $z = H$. If the average degree of consolidation U_{av} is used as the criterion for surcharge load removal, then after removal of the surcharge, the clay close to the midplane will continue to settle, and the clay close to the previous layer(s) will tend to swell. This will probably result in a net consolidation settlement. To avoid this problem, we need to take a more conservative approach and use the midplane degree of consolidation $U_{z=H}$ as the criterion for our calculation. Using the procedure outlined by Johnson (1970),

$$S_{c(f)} = \left(\frac{H_t}{1+e_0}\right) C_c \log\left(\frac{\sigma'_0 + \sigma_f}{\sigma'_0}\right) \tag{8.53}$$

and $$S_{c(f+s)} = \left(\frac{H_t}{1+e_0}\right) C_c \log\left(\frac{\sigma'_0 + \sigma_f + \sigma_s}{\sigma'_0}\right) \tag{8.54}$$

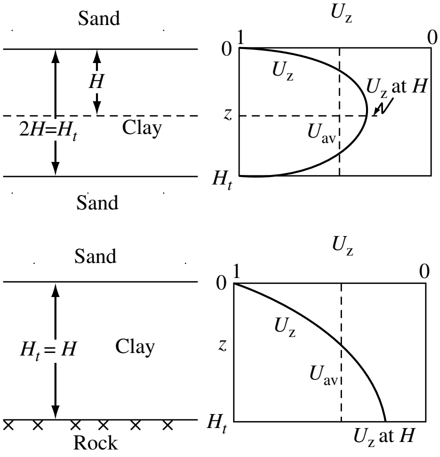


Figure 8.28 Choice of degree of consolidation for calculation of precompression.

where σ'_0 is the initial average in situ effective overburden pressure and $S_{c(f)}$ and $S_{c(f+s)}$ are the primary consolidation settlements due to load intensities of σ_f and $\sigma_f + \sigma_s$ respectively. However,

$$S_{c(f)} = U_{(f+s)} S_{c(f+s)} \tag{8.55}$$

where $U_{(f+s)}$ is the degree of consolidation due to the loading of $\sigma_f + \sigma_s$. As explained above, this is conservatively taken as the midplane ($z = H$) degree of consolidation. Thus

$$U_{(f+s)} = \frac{S_{c(f)}}{S_{c(f+s)}} \tag{8.56}$$

Combining Eqs. (8.53), (8.54), and (8.56),

$$U_{(f+s)} = \frac{\log[1 + (\sigma_f/\sigma'_0)]}{\log\{1 + (\sigma_f/\sigma'_0)[1 + (\sigma_s/\sigma_f)]\}} \tag{8.57}$$

The values of $U_{(f+s)}$ for several combinations of σ_f/σ'_0 and σ_s/σ_f are given in Figure 8.29. Once $U_{(f+s)}$ is known, we can evaluate the nondimensional time factor T_v from Figure 6.4. (Note that $U_{(f+s)} = U_z$ at $z = H$ of Figure 6.4, based on our assumption.) For convenience, a plot of $U_{(f+s)}$ versus T_v is given in Figure 8.30. So the time for surcharge load removal, t, is

$$t = \frac{T_v H^2}{C_v} \tag{8.58}$$

where C_v is the coefficient of consolidation and H the length of the maximum drainage path.

A similar approach may be adopted to estimate the intensity of the surcharge fill and the time for its removal to eliminate or reduce postconstruction settlement due to secondary consolidation.

EXAMPLE 8.6

The soil profile shown in Figure 8.31 is in an area where an airfield is to be constructed. The entire area has to support a permanent surcharge of 58 kN/m^2 due to the fills that will be placed. It is desired to eliminate all the primary consolidation in 6 months by precompression before the start of construction. Estimate the total surcharge ($q = q_s + q_f$) that will be required for achieving the desired goal.

SOLUTION

$$t = \frac{T_v H^2}{C_v} \qquad \text{or} \qquad T_v = \frac{tC_v}{H^2}$$

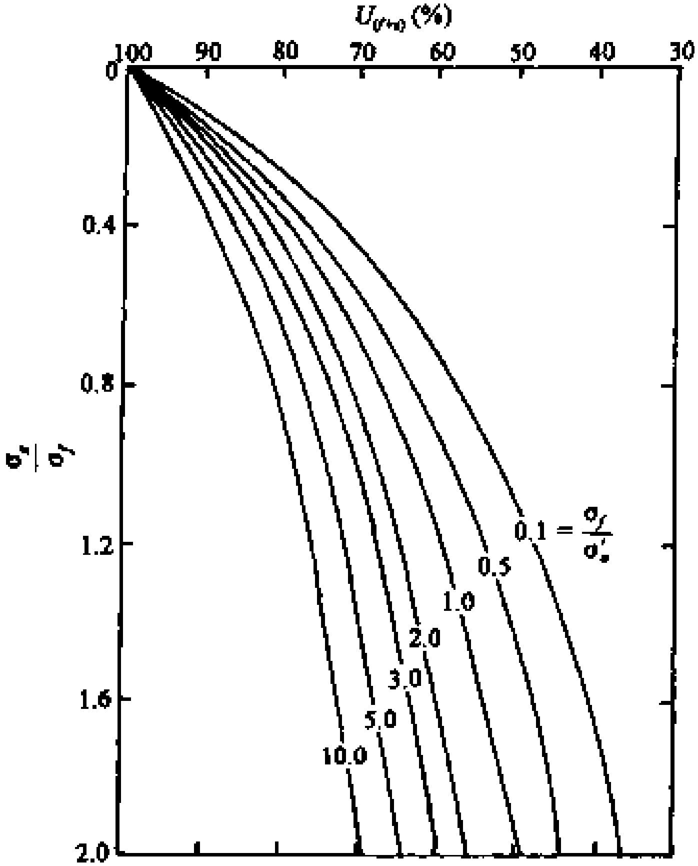


Figure 8.29 Variation of $U_{(f+s)}$ with σ_s/σ_f and σ_f/σ'_0.

For two-way drainage,

$$H = H_t/2 = 2.25\,\mathrm{m} = 225\,\mathrm{cm}.$$

We are given that

$$t = 6 \times 30 \times 24 \times 60 \text{ min}$$

So,

$$T_v = \frac{(6 \times 30 \times 24 \times 60)(9.7 \times 10^{-2})}{(225)^2} = 0.497$$

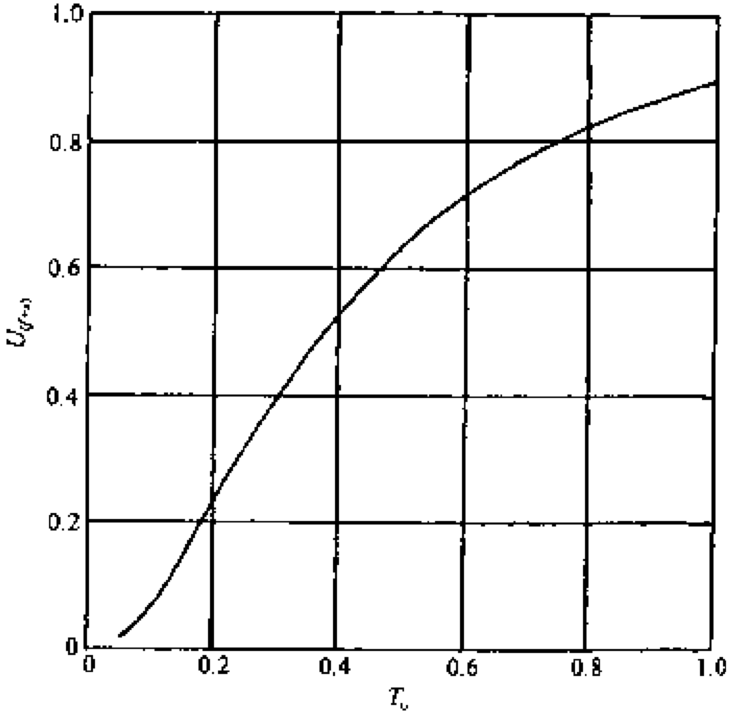


Figure 8.30 Plot of $U_{(f+s)}$ versus T_{υ}.

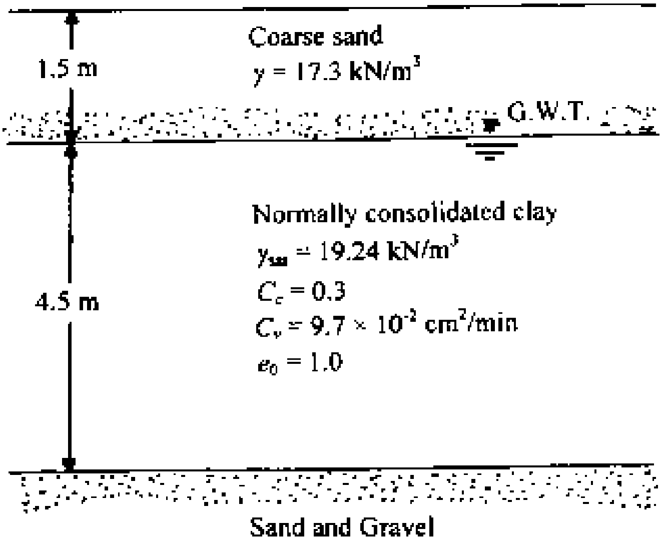


Figure 8.31 Soil profile for precompression.

From Figure 8.30, for $T_v = 0.497$ and $U_{(f+s)} \approx 0.62$,

$$\sigma_0' = 17.3\,(1.5) + 2.25(19.24 - 9.81) = 47.17\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\sigma_f = 58\,\text{kN/m}^2 \quad \text{(given)}$$

So,

$$\frac{\sigma_f}{\sigma_0'} = \frac{58}{47.17} = 1.23$$

From Figure 8.28, for $U_{(f+s)} = 0.62$ and $\sigma_f/\sigma_0' = 1.23$,

$$\sigma_s/\sigma_f = 1.17$$

So,

$$\sigma_s = 1.17\sigma_f = 1.17(58) = 67.86\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

Thus,

$$\sigma = \sigma_f + \sigma_s = 58 + 67.86 = 125.86\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

PROBLEMS

8.1 Refer to Figure 8.3. For a flexible load area, given: $B = 3\,\text{m}$, $L = 4.6\,\text{m}$, $q = 180\,\text{kN/m}^2$, $D_f = 2\,\text{m}$, $H = \infty$, $v = 0.3$, and $E = 8500\,\text{kN/m}^2$. Estimate the elastic settlement at the center of the loaded area. Use Eq. (8.14).

8.2 A plan calls for a square foundation measuring $3 \times 3\,\text{m}$, supported by a layer of sand (See Figure 8.7). Let $D_f = 1.5\,\text{m}$, $t = 0.25\,\text{m}$, $E_o = 16,000\,\text{kN/m}^2$, $k = 400\,\text{kN/m}^2/\text{m}$, $v = 0.3$, $H = 20\,\text{m}$, $E_f = 15 \times 10^6\,\text{kN/m}^2$, and $q = 150\,\text{kN/m}^2$. Calculate the elastic settlement. Use Eq. (8.28).

8.3 Refer to Figure P8.1. If $\alpha = 90$ and $H = 16\,\text{m}$, estimate the elastic settlement of the loaded area after 5 years of load application. Use the strain influence factor method.

8.4 A rectangular foundation is shown in Figure P8.2, given $B = 2\,\text{m}$, $L = 4\,\text{m}$ $q = 240\,\text{kN/m}^2$, $H = 6\,\text{m}$, and $D_f = 2\,\text{m}$.

(*a*) Assuming $E = 3800\,\text{kN/m}^2$, calculate the average elastic settlement. Use Eq. (8.24).

(*b*) If the clay is normally consolidated, calculate the consolidation settlement. Use Eq. (8.35) and $\gamma_{sat} = 17.5\,\text{kN/m}^3$, $C_c = 0.12$, and $e_0 = 1.1$.

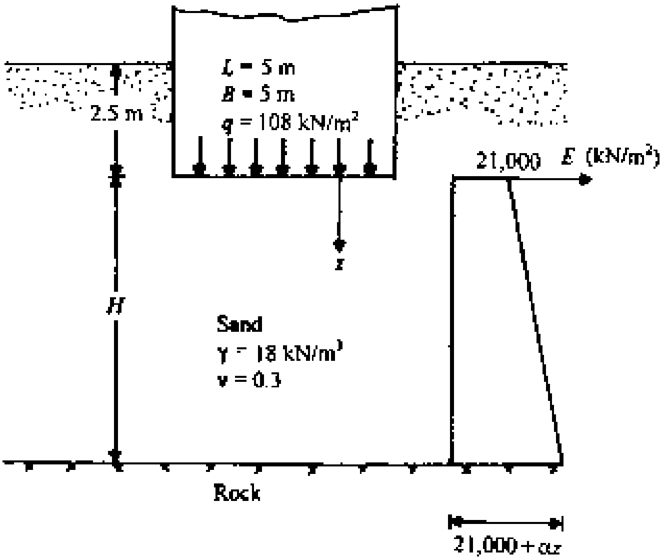


Figure P8.1

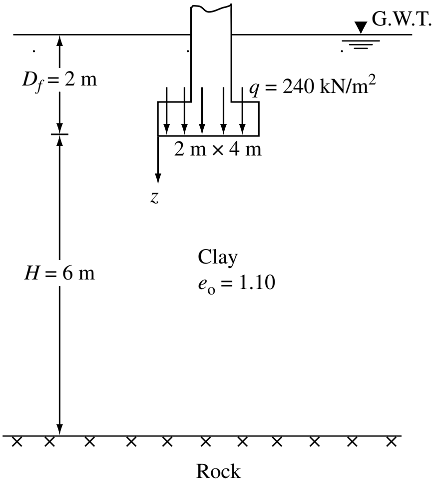


Figure P8.2

8.5 Refer to Prob. 8.4. Using the Skempton–Bjerrum modification, estimate the total settlement. Use pore water parameter $A = 0.6$.

8.6 Refer to Prob. 8.4. Assume that the clay is overconsolidated and that the overconsolidation pressure is $140\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$. Calculate the consolidation settlement given $C_r = 0.05$. Use the correction factor λ given in Figure 8.19.

8.7 A permanent surcharge of $100\,\mathrm{kN/m^2}$ is to be applied on the ground surface of the soil profile shown in Figure P8.3. It is required to eliminate all of the primary consolidation in 3 months. Estimate the total surcharge $\sigma = \sigma_s + \sigma_f$ needed to achieve the goal.

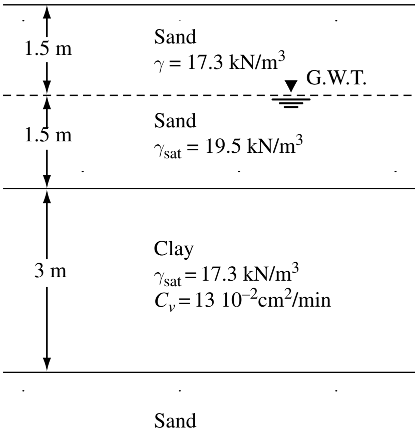


Figure P8.3

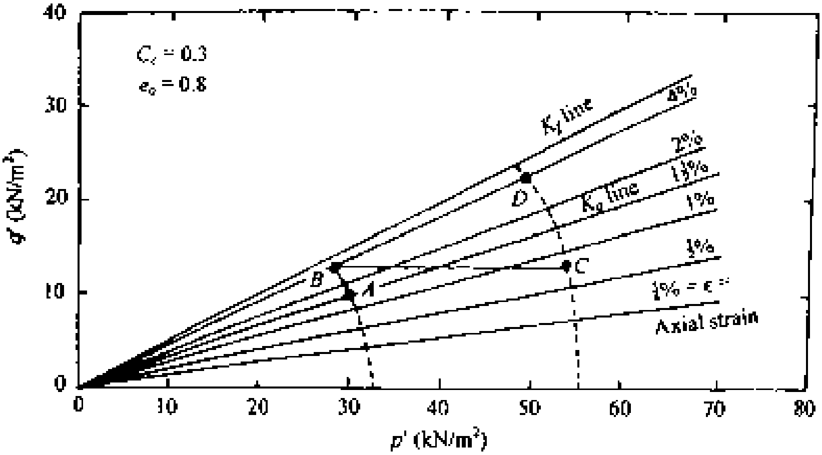


Figure P8.4

8.8 The p' versus q' diagram for a normally consolidated clay is shown in Figure P8.4. The specimen was obtained from an average depth of a clay layer of total thickness of 5 m. $C_c = 0.3$ and $e_0 = 0.8$.

(*a*) Calculate the total settlement (elastic and consolidation) for a loading following stress path *ABC*.
(*b*) Calculate the total settlement for a loading following stress path *ABD*.

8.9 Refer to Prob. 8.8. What would be the consolidation settlement according to the Skempton–Bjerrum method for the stress path *ABC*?

References

Bowles, J. E., Elastic Foundation Settlement on Sand Deposits, *J. Geotech. Eng., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 113, no. 8, pp. 846–860, 1987.

Burland, J. B., Discussion, Session A, in *Proc. Conf. In Situ Invest. Soil Rocks*, British Geotechnical Society, London, pp. 61–62, 1970.

Christian, J. T. and W. D. Carrier III, Janbu, Bjerrum and Kjaernsli's Chart Reinterpreted, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 15, no. 1, pp. 124–128, 1978.

Crawford, C. B. and J. G. Sutherland, The Empress Hotel, Victoria, British Columbia, Sixty-five Years of Foundation Settlements, *Can. Geotech. J.*, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 77–93, 1971.

D'Appolonia, D. J., H. G. Poulos, and C. C. Ladd, Initial Settlement of Structures on Clay, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 97, no. SM10, pp. 1359–1378, 1971.

Duncan, J. M. and A. L. Buchignani, *An Engineering Manual for Settlement Studies*, Department of Civil Engineering, University of California at Berkeley, 1976.

Fox, E. N., The Mean Elastic Settlement of a Uniformly Loaded Area at a Depth below the Ground Surface, *Proc., 2nd Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found Eng.*, Rotterdam, vol. 1, pp. 129–132, 1948.

Geregen, L. and B. Pramborg, Rayleigh Wave Measurement in Frictional Soil and Stiff Clay, *Report R102*, Swedish Council for Building Research, 1990.

Giroud, J. P., Settlement of Rectangular Foundations on Soil Layer, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 98, no. SMI, pp. 149–154, 1972.

Hardin, B. O. and V. P. Drnevich, Shear Modulus and Damping in Soils: Design Equations and Curves, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 98, no. SM7, pp. 667–692, 1972.

Horn, H. M. and T. W. Lambe, Settlement of Buildings on the MIT Campus, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 90, no. SM5, pp. 181–195, 1964.

Jaky, J., The Coefficient of Earth Pressure at Rest, *J. Soc. Hungarian Arch. Eng.*, pp. 355–358, 1944.

Janbu, N., L. Bjerrum, and B. Kjaernsli, Veiledning ved Losning av Fundamenteringsoppgaver, *Publ. 16*, Norwegian Geotechnical Institute, Oslo, pp. 30–32, 1956.

Johnson, S. J., Precompression for Improving Foundation Soils, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 96, no. SM1, pp. 111–144, 1970.

Lambe, T. W., An Earth Dam for Storage of Fuel Oil, in *Proc. II Pan Am. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, vol. 1, p. 257, 1963.

Lambe, T. W., Methods of Estimating Settlement, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 90, no. SM5, p. 43, 1964.

Larsson, R., and M. Mulabdic, Shear Modulus in Scandinavian Clays, *Report 40*, Swedish Geotechnical Institute, 1991.

Leonards, G. A., Estimating Consolidation Settlement of Shallow Foundations on Overconsolidated Clay, *Special Report 163*, Transportation Research Board, Washington, D.C., pp. 13–16, 1976.

Mayne, P. W. and H. G. Poulos, Approximate Displacement Influence Factors for Elastic Shallow Foundations, *J. Geot. Geoenv. Eng., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 125, no. 6, pp. 453–460, 1999.

Peck, R. B. and M. E. Uyanik, Observed and Computed Settlements of Structures in Chicago, *Bulletin 429*, University of Illinois Engineering Experiment Station, 1955.

Schmertmann, J. H., Static Cone to Compute Static Settlement over Sand, *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 96, no. SM3, pp. 1011–1043, 1970.

Schmertmann, J. H., J. P. Hartman, and P. R. Brown, Improved Strain Influence Factor Diagrams, *J. Geotech. Eng. Div., Am. Soc. Civ. Eng.*, vol. 104, no. 8, pp. 1131–1135, 1978.

Scott, R. F., *Principles of Soil Mechanics*, Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1963.

Skempton, A. W. and L. Bjerrum, A Contribution to Settlement Analysis of Foundations in Clay, *Geotechnique*, vol. 7, p. 168, 1957.

Steinbrenner, W., Tafeln zur Setzungsberechnung, *Die Strasse*, vol. 1, pp. 121–124, 1934.

Su, H. H. and R. H. Prysock, Settlement Analysis of Two Highway Embankments, in *Proc. Specialty Conf. Perform. Earth and Earth Supported Struct.*, vol. 1, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng., pp. 465–488, 1972.

Terzaghi, K. and R. B. Peck, *Soil Mechanics in Engineering Practice*, 2nd ed., Wiley, New York, 1967.

Trautmann, C. H. and F. H. Kulhawy, CUFAD—A Computer Program for Compression and Uplift Foundation Analysis and Design, *Report EL-4540-CCM*, vol. 16, Electrical Power and Research Institute, 1987.

Wroth, C. P. *In Situ* Measurement of Initial Stresses and Deformation Characteristics, in *Proc. Specialty Conf. In Situ Meas. Soil Prop.*, vol. 2, Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng., pp. 180–230, 1975.

Appendix

Calculation of stress at the interface of a three-layered flexible system (after Jones, 1962)

(*a*) $H = 0.125;\ k_1 = 0.2$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.66045	0.12438	0.62188	0.01557	0.00332	0.01659
0.2	0.90249	0.13546	0.67728	0.06027	0.01278	0.06391
0.4	0.95295	0.10428	0.52141	0.21282	0.04430	0.22150
0.8	0.99520	0.09011	0.45053	0.56395	0.10975	0.54877
1.6	1.00064	0.08777	0.43884	0.86258	0.13755	0.68777
3.2	0.99970	0.04129	0.20643	0.94143	0.10147	0.50736
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.66048	0.12285	0.61424	0.00892	0.01693	0.00846
0.2	0.90157	0.12916	0.64582	0.03480	0.06558	0.03279
0.4	0.95120	0.08115	0.40576	0.12656	0.23257	0.11629
0.8	0.99235	0.01823	0.09113	0.37307	0.62863	0.31432
1.6	0.99918	−0.04136	−0.20680	0.74038	0.98754	0.49377
3.2	1.00032	−0.03804	−0.19075	0.97137	0.82102	0.41051
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.66235	0.12032	0.60161	0.00256	0.03667	0.00183
0.2	0.90415	0.11787	0.58933	0.01011	0.14336	0.00717
0.4	0.95135	0.03474	0.17370	0.03838	0.52691	0.02635
0.8	0.98778	−0.14872	−0.74358	0.13049	1.61727	0.08086
1.6	0.99407	−0.50533	−2.52650	0.36442	3.58944	0.17947
3.2	0.99821	−0.80990	−4.05023	0.76669	5.15409	0.25770
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.66266	0.11720	0.58599	0.00057	0.05413	0.00027
0.2	0.90370	0.10495	0.52477	0.00226	0.21314	0.00107
0.4	0.94719	−0.01709	−0.08543	0.00881	0.80400	0.00402
0.8	0.99105	−0.34427	−1.72134	0.03259	2.67934	0.01340
1.6	0.99146	−1.21129	−6.05643	0.11034	7.35978	0.03680
3.2	0.99332	−2.89282	−14.46408	0.32659	16.22830	0.08114

(*b*) $H = 0.125;\ k_1 = 2.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.43055	0.71614	0.35807	0.01682	0.00350	0.01750
0.2	0.78688	1.01561	0.50780	0.06511	0.01348	0.06741
0.4	0.98760	0.83924	0.41962	0.23005	0.04669	0.23346
0.8	1.01028	0.63961	0.31981	0.60886	0.11484	0.57418
1.6	1.00647	0.65723	0.32862	0.90959	0.13726	0.68630
3.2	0.99822	0.38165	0.19093	0.94322	0.09467	0.47335
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.42950	0.70622	0.35303	0.00896	0.01716	0.00858
0.2	0.78424	0.97956	0.48989	0.03493	0.06647	0.03324
0.4	0.98044	0.70970	0.35488	0.12667	0.23531	0.11766
0.8	0.99434	0.22319	0.11164	0.36932	0.63003	0.31501
1.6	0.99364	−0.19982	−0.09995	0.72113	0.97707	0.48853
3.2	0.99922	−0.28916	−0.14461	0.96148	0.84030	0.42015
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.43022	0.69332	0.34662	0.00228	0.03467	0.00173
0.2	0.78414	0.92086	0.46048	0.00899	0.13541	0.00677
0.4	0.97493	0.46583	0.23297	0.03392	0.49523	0.02476
0.8	0.97806	−0.66535	−0.33270	0.11350	1.49612	0.07481
1.6	0.96921	−2.82859	−1.41430	0.31263	3.28512	0.16426
3.2	0.98591	−5.27906	−2.63954	0.68433	5.05952	0.25298
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.42925	0.67488	0.33744	0.00046	0.04848	0.00024
0.2	0.78267	0.85397	0.42698	0.00183	0.19043	0.00095
0.4	0.97369	0.21165	0.10582	0.00711	0.71221	0.00356
0.8	0.97295	−1.65954	−0.82977	0.02597	2.32652	0.01163
1.6	0.95546	−6.47707	−3.23855	0.08700	6.26638	0.03133
3.2	0.96377	−16.67376	−8.33691	0.26292	14.25621	0.07128

(*c*) $H = 0.125$; $k_1 = 20.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.14648	1.80805	0.09040	0.01645	0.00322	0.01611
0.2	0.39260	3.75440	0.18772	0.06407	0.01249	0.06244
0.4	0.80302	5.11847	0.25592	0.23135	0.04421	0.22105
0.8	1.06594	3.38600	0.16930	0.64741	0.11468	0.57342
1.6	1.02942	1.81603	0.09080	1.00911	0.13687	0.68436
3.2	0.99817	1.75101	0.08756	0.97317	0.07578	0.37890
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.14529	1.81178	0.09059	0.00810	0.01542	0.00771
0.2	0.38799	3.76886	0.18844	0.03170	0.06003	0.03002
0.4	0.78651	5.16717	0.25836	0.11650	0.21640	0.10820
0.8	1.02218	3.43631	0.17182	0.34941	0.60493	0.30247
1.6	0.99060	1.15211	0.05761	0.69014	0.97146	0.48573
3.2	0.99893	−0.06894	−0.00345	0.93487	0.88358	0.44179
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.14447	1.80664	0.09033	0.00182	0.02985	0.00149
0.2	0.38469	3.74573	0.18729	0.00716	0.11697	0.00585
0.4	0.77394	5.05489	0.25274	0.02710	0.43263	0.02163
0.8	0.98610	2.92533	0.14627	0.09061	1.33736	0.06687
1.6	0.93712	−1.27093	−0.06355	0.24528	2.99215	0.14961
3.2	0.96330	−7.35384	−0.36761	0.55490	5.06489	0.25324
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.14422	1.78941	0.08947	0.00033	0.04010	0.00020
0.2	0.38388	3.68097	0.18405	0.00131	0.15781	0.00079
0.4	0.77131	4.80711	0.24036	0.00505	0.59391	0.00297
0.8	0.97701	1.90825	0.09541	0.01830	1.95709	0.00979
1.6	0.91645	−5.28803	−0.26440	0.06007	5.25110	0.02626
3.2	0.92662	−1.52546	−1.07627	0.18395	12.45058	0.06225

(*d*) $H = 0.125;\ k_1 = 200.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.03694	2.87564	0.01438	0.01137	0.00201	0.01005
0.2	0.12327	7.44285	0.03721	0.04473	0.00788	0.03940
0.4	0.36329	15.41021	0.07705	0.16785	0.02913	0.14566
0.8	0.82050	19.70261	0.00851	0.53144	0.08714	0.43568
1.6	1.12440	7.02380	0.03512	1.03707	0.13705	0.68524
3.2	0.99506	2.35459	0.01177	1.00400	0.06594	0.32971
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.03481	3.02259	0.01511	0.00549	0.00969	0.00485
0.2	0.11491	8.02452	0.04012	0.02167	0.03812	0.01906
0.4	0.33218	17.64175	0.08821	0.08229	0.14286	0.07143
0.8	0.72695	27.27701	0.13639	0.27307	0.45208	0.22604
1.6	1.00203	23.38638	0.11693	0.63916	0.90861	0.45430
3.2	1.00828	11.87014	0.05935	0.92560	0.91469	0.45735
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.03336	3.17763	0.01589	0.00128	0.01980	0.00099
0.2	0.10928	8.66097	0.04330	0.00509	0.07827	0.00391
0.4	0.31094	20.12259	0.10061	0.01972	0.29887	0.01494
0.8	0.65934	36.29943	0.18150	0.07045	1.01694	0.05085
1.6	0.87931	49.40857	0.24704	0.20963	2.64313	0.13216
3.2	0.93309	57.84369	0.28923	0.49938	4.89895	0.24495
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.03307	3.26987	0.01635	0.00025	0.02809	0.00014
0.2	0.10810	9.02669	0.04513	0.00098	0.11136	0.00056
0.4	0.30639	21.56482	0.10782	0.00386	0.43035	0.00215
0.8	0.64383	41.89878	0.20949	0.01455	1.53070	0.00765
1.6	0.84110	69.63157	0.34816	0.05011	4.56707	0.02284
3.2	0.86807	120.95981	0.60481	0.15719	11.42045	0.05710

(e) $H = 0.25$; $k_1 = 0.2$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.27115	0.05598	0.27990	0.01259	0.00274	0.01370
0.2	0.66109	0.12628	0.63138	0.04892	0.01060	0.05302
0.4	0.90404	0.14219	0.71096	0.17538	0.03744	0.18722
0.8	0.95659	0.12300	0.61499	0.48699	0.09839	0.49196
1.6	0.99703	0.10534	0.52669	0.81249	0.13917	0.69586
3.2	0.99927	0.05063	0.25317	0.92951	0.11114	0.55569
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.27103	0.05477	0.27385	0.00739	0.01409	0.00704
0.2	0.66010	0.12136	0.60681	0.02893	0.05484	0.02742
0.4	0.90120	0.12390	0.61949	0.10664	0.19780	0.09890
0.8	0.94928	0.06482	0.32410	0.32617	0.56039	0.28019
1.6	0.99029	−0.00519	−0.02594	0.69047	0.96216	0.48108
3.2	1.00000	−0.02216	−0.11080	0.95608	0.87221	0.43610
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.26945	0.05192	0.25960	0.00222	0.03116	0.00156
0.2	0.66161	0.11209	0.56045	0.00877	0.12227	0.00611
0.4	0.90102	0.08622	0.43111	0.03354	0.45504	0.02275
0.8	0.94012	−0.07351	−0.36756	0.11658	1.44285	0.07214
1.6	0.97277	−0.40234	−2.01169	0.33692	3.37001	0.16850
3.2	0.99075	−0.71901	−3.59542	0.73532	5.10060	0.25503
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.27072	0.04956	0.24778	0.00051	0.04704	0.00024
0.2	0.65909	0.10066	0.50330	0.00202	0.18557	0.00093
0.4	0.89724	0.04248	0.21242	0.00791	0.70524	0.00353
0.8	0.93596	−0.24071	−1.20357	0.02961	2.40585	0.01203
1.6	0.96370	−1.00743	−5.03714	0.10193	6.82481	0.03412
3.2	0.97335	−2.54264	−12.71320	0.30707	15.45931	0.07730

(*f*) $H = 0.25;\ k_1 = 2.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.15577	0.28658	0.14329	0.01348	0.00277	0.01384
0.2	0.43310	0.72176	0.36088	0.05259	0.01075	0.05377
0.4	0.79551	1.03476	0.51738	0.19094	0.03842	0.19211
0.8	1.00871	0.88833	0.44416	0.54570	0.10337	0.51687
1.6	1.02425	0.66438	0.33219	0.90563	0.14102	0.70510
3.2	0.99617	0.41539	0.20773	0.93918	0.09804	0.49020
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.15524	0.28362	0.14181	0.00710	0.01353	0.00677
0.2	0.42809	0.70225	0.35112	0.02783	0.05278	0.02639
0.4	0.77939	0.96634	0.48317	0.10306	0.19178	0.09589
0.8	0.96703	0.66885	0.33442	0.31771	0.55211	0.27605
1.6	0.98156	0.17331	0.08665	0.66753	0.95080	0.47540
3.2	0.99840	−0.05691	−0.02846	0.93798	0.89390	0.44695
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.15436	0.27580	0.13790	0.00179	0.02728	0.00136
0.2	0.42462	0.67115	0.33557	0.00706	0.10710	0.00536
0.4	0.76647	0.84462	0.42231	0.02697	0.39919	0.01996
0.8	0.92757	0.21951	0.10976	0.09285	1.26565	0.06328
1.6	0.91393	−1.22411	−0.61205	0.26454	2.94860	0.14743
3.2	0.95243	−3.04320	−1.52160	0.60754	4.89878	0.24494
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.15414	0.26776	0.13388	0.00036	0.03814	0.00019
0.2	0.42365	0.63873	0.31937	0.00143	0.15040	0.00075
0.4	0.76296	0.71620	0.35810	0.00557	0.57046	0.00285
0.8	0.91600	−0.28250	−0.14125	0.02064	1.92636	0.00963
1.6	0.88406	−3.09856	−1.54928	0.07014	5.35936	0.02680
3.2	0.89712	−9.18214	−4.59107	0.21692	12.64318	0.06322

(g) $H = 0.25$; $k_1 = 20.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.04596	0.61450	0.03072	0.01107	0.00202	0.01011
0.2	0.15126	1.76675	0.08834	0.04357	0.00793	0.03964
0.4	0.41030	3.59650	0.17983	0.16337	0.02931	0.14653
0.8	0.85464	4.58845	0.22942	0.51644	0.08771	0.43854
1.6	1.12013	2.31165	0.11558	1.01061	0.14039	0.70194
3.2	0.99676	1.24415	0.06221	0.99168	0.07587	0.37934
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.04381	0.63215	0.03162	0.00530	0.00962	0.00481
0.2	0.14282	1.83766	0.09188	0.02091	0.03781	0.01891
0.4	0.37882	3.86779	0.19339	0.07933	0.14159	0.07079
0.8	0.75904	5.50796	0.27540	0.26278	0.44710	0.22355
1.6	0.98743	4.24281	0.21213	0.61673	0.90115	0.45058
3.2	1.00064	1.97494	0.09876	0.91258	0.93254	0.46627
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.04236	0.65003	0.03250	0.00123	0.01930	0.00096
0.2	0.13708	1.90693	0.09535	0.00488	0.07623	0.00381
0.4	0.35716	4.13976	0.20699	0.01888	0.29072	0.01454
0.8	0.68947	6.48948	0.32447	0.06741	0.98565	0.04928
1.6	0.85490	6.95639	0.34782	0.20115	2.55231	0.12762
3.2	0.90325	6.05854	0.30293	0.48647	4.76234	0.23812
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.04204	0.65732	0.03287	0.00024	0.02711	0.00014
0.2	0.13584	1.93764	0.09688	0.00095	0.10741	0.00054
0.4	0.35237	4.26004	0.21300	0.00372	0.41459	0.00207
0.8	0.67286	6.94871	0.34743	0.01399	1.46947	0.00735
1.6	0.81223	8.55770	0.42789	0.04830	4.36521	0.02183
3.2	0.82390	10.63614	0.53181	0.15278	10.93570	0.05468

(*h*) $H = 0.25$; $k_1 = 200.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.01139	0.86644	0.00433	0.00589	0.00090	0.00451
0.2	0.04180	2.71354	0.01357	0.02334	0.00357	0.01784
0.4	0.14196	6.83021	0.03415	0.09024	0.01365	0.06824
0.8	0.42603	13.19664	0.06598	0.31785	0.04624	0.23118
1.6	0.94520	13.79134	0.06896	0.83371	0.10591	0.52955
3.2	1.10738	2.72901	0.01365	1.10259	0.08608	0.43037
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00909	0.96553	0.00483	0.00259	0.00407	0.00203
0.2	0.03269	3.10763	0.01554	0.01027	0.01611	0.00806
0.4	0.10684	8.37852	0.04189	0.04000	0.06221	0.03110
0.8	0.30477	18.95534	0.09478	0.14513	0.21860	0.10930
1.6	0.66786	31.18909	0.15595	0.42940	0.58553	0.29277
3.2	0.98447	28.98500	0.14493	0.84545	0.89191	0.44595
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00776	1.08738	0.00544	0.00065	0.00861	0.00043
0.2	0.02741	3.59448	0.01797	0.00257	0.03421	0.00171
0.4	0.08634	10.30923	0.05155	0.01014	0.13365	0.00668
0.8	0.23137	26.41442	0.13207	0.03844	0.49135	0.02457
1.6	0.46835	57.46409	0.28732	0.13148	1.53833	0.07692
3.2	0.71083	99.29034	0.49645	0.37342	3.60964	0.18048
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00744	1.19099	0.00596	0.00014	0.01311	0.00007
0.2	0.02616	4.00968	0.02005	0.00056	0.05223	0.00026
0.4	0.08141	11.96405	0.05982	0.00224	0.20551	0.00103
0.8	0.21293	32.97364	0.16487	0.00871	0.77584	0.00388
1.6	0.40876	82.77997	0.41390	0.03234	2.63962	0.01320
3.2	0.56613	189.37439	0.94687	0.11049	7.60287	0.03801

(*i*) $H = 0.5$; $k_1 = 0.2$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.07943	0.01705	0.08527	0.00914	0.00206	0.01030
0.2	0.27189	0.05724	0.28621	0.03577	0.00804	0.04020
0.4	0.66375	0.13089	0.65444	0.13135	0.02924	0.14622
0.8	0.91143	0.15514	0.77571	0.38994	0.08369	0.41843
1.6	0.96334	0.13250	0.66248	0.72106	0.13729	0.68647
3.2	0.99310	0.06976	0.34879	0.89599	0.12674	0.63371
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.07906	0.01617	0.08085	0.00557	0.01074	0.00537
0.2	0.27046	0.05375	0.26377	0.02190	0.04206	0.02103
0.4	0.65847	0.11770	0.58848	0.08222	0.15534	0.07767
0.8	0.89579	0.11252	0.56258	0.26429	0.47045	0.23523
1.6	0.94217	0.04897	0.24486	0.60357	0.90072	0.45036
3.2	0.99189	0.01380	0.06900	0.91215	0.94385	0.47192
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.07862	0.01439	0.07196	0.00175	0.02415	0.00121
0.2	0.26873	0.04669	0.23345	0.00692	0.09519	0.00476
0.4	0.65188	0.09018	0.45089	0.02676	0.36008	0.01800
0.8	0.87401	0.01260	0.06347	0.09552	1.19151	0.05958
1.6	0.89568	−0.24336	−1.21680	0.28721	2.95409	0.14770
3.2	0.95392	−0.53220	−2.66100	0.66445	4.86789	0.24339
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.07820	0.01243	0.06213	0.00041	0.03682	0.00018
0.2	0.26803	0.03912	0.19558	0.00163	0.14576	0.00073
0.4	0.64904	0.06006	0.30029	0.00643	0.56051	0.00280
0.8	0.86406	−0.10447	−0.52234	0.02436	1.96771	0.00984
1.6	0.86677	−0.67154	−3.35768	0.08540	5.77669	0.02888
3.2	0.89703	−1.86126	−9.30628	0.26467	13.63423	0.06817

(j) $H = 0.5;\ k_1 = 2.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.04496	0.08398	0.04199	0.00903	0.00181	0.00906
0.2	0.15978	0.28904	0.14452	0.03551	0.00711	0.03554
0.4	0.44523	0.72313	0.36156	0.13314	0.02634	0.13172
0.8	0.83298	1.03603	0.51802	0.42199	0.07992	0.39962
1.6	1.05462	0.83475	0.41737	0.85529	0.13973	0.69863
3.2	0.99967	0.45119	0.22560	0.94506	0.10667	0.53336
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.04330	0.08250	0.04125	0.00465	0.00878	0.00439
0.2	0.15325	0.28318	0.14159	0.01836	0.03454	0.01727
0.4	0.42077	0.70119	0.35060	0.06974	0.12954	0.06477
0.8	0.75683	0.96681	0.48341	0.23256	0.41187	0.20594
1.6	0.93447	0.70726	0.35363	0.56298	0.85930	0.42965
3.2	0.98801	0.33878	0.16939	0.88655	0.96353	0.48176
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.04193	0.08044	0.04022	0.00117	0.01778	0.00089
0.2	0.14808	0.27574	0.13787	0.00464	0.07027	0.00351
0.4	0.40086	0.67174	0.33587	0.01799	0.26817	0.01341
0.8	0.69098	0.86191	0.43095	0.06476	0.91168	0.04558
1.6	0.79338	0.39588	0.19794	0.19803	2.38377	0.11919
3.2	0.85940	−0.41078	−0.20539	0.49238	4.47022	0.22351
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.04160	0.07864	0.03932	0.00024	0.02515	0.00013
0.2	0.14676	0.26853	0.13426	0.00095	0.09968	0.00050
0.4	0.39570	0.64303	0.32152	0.00374	0.38497	0.00192
0.8	0.67257	0.74947	0.37474	0.01416	1.36766	0.00684
1.6	0.74106	−0.02761	−0.01381	0.04972	4.08937	0.02045
3.2	0.75176	−1.88545	−0.94273	0.15960	10.25631	0.05128

(k) $H = 0.5$; $k_1 = 20.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.01351	0.16526	0.00826	0.00596	0.00098	0.00488
0.2	0.05079	0.58918	0.02946	0.02361	0.00386	0.01929
0.4	0.16972	1.66749	0.08337	0.09110	0.01474	0.07369
0.8	0.47191	3.23121	0.16156	0.31904	0.04967	0.24834
1.6	0.97452	3.54853	0.17743	0.82609	0.11279	0.56395
3.2	1.09911	1.27334	0.06367	1.08304	0.09527	0.47637
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.01122	0.17997	0.00900	0.00259	0.00440	0.00220
0.2	0.04172	0.64779	0.03239	0.01028	0.01744	0.00872
0.4	0.13480	1.89817	0.09491	0.03998	0.06722	0.03361
0.8	0.35175	4.09592	0.20480	0.14419	0.23476	0.11738
1.6	0.70221	6.22002	0.31100	0.42106	0.62046	0.31023
3.2	0.97420	5.41828	0.27091	0.82256	0.93831	0.46916
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00990	0.19872	0.00994	0.00063	0.00911	0.00046
0.2	0.03648	0.72264	0.03613	0.00251	0.03620	0.00181
0.4	0.11448	2.19520	0.10976	0.00988	0.14116	0.00706
0.8	0.27934	5.24726	0.26236	0.03731	0.51585	0.02579
1.6	0.50790	10.30212	0.51511	0.12654	1.59341	0.07967
3.2	0.70903	16.38520	0.81926	0.35807	3.69109	0.18455
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00960	0.21440	0.01072	0.00013	0.01355	0.00007
0.2	0.03526	0.78493	0.03925	0.00054	0.05395	0.00027
0.4	0.10970	2.44430	0.12221	0.00214	0.21195	0.00106
0.8	0.26149	6.23424	0.31172	0.00831	0.79588	0.00398
1.6	0.45078	14.11490	0.70574	0.03070	2.67578	0.01338
3.2	0.57074	29.95815	1.49791	0.10470	7.61457	0.03807

(*l*) $H = 0.5;\ k_1 = 200.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00363	0.22388	0.00112	0.00256	0.00033	0.00163
0.2	0.01414	0.81903	0.00410	0.01021	0.00130	0.00648
0.4	0.05256	2.52558	0.01263	0.04014	0.00506	0.02529
0.8	0.18107	6.11429	0.03057	0.15048	0.01844	0.09221
1.6	0.53465	10.82705	0.05414	0.48201	0.05399	0.26993
3.2	1.04537	9.34212	0.04671	1.00671	0.08624	0.43121
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00215	0.26620	0.00133	0.00094	0.00128	0.00064
0.2	0.00826	0.98772	0.00494	0.00373	0.00509	0.00254
0.4	0.02946	3.19580	0.01598	0.01474	0.01996	0.00998
0.8	0.09508	8.71973	0.04360	0.05622	0.07434	0.03717
1.6	0.27135	20.15765	0.10079	0.19358	0.23838	0.11919
3.2	0.62399	34.25229	0.17126	0.52912	0.54931	0.27466
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00149	0.31847	0.00159	0.00023	0.00257	0.00013
0.2	0.00564	1.19598	0.00598	0.00094	0.01025	0.00051
0.4	0.01911	4.02732	0.02014	0.00372	0.04047	0.00202
0.8	0.05574	12.00885	0.06004	0.01453	0.15452	0.00773
1.6	0.13946	32.77028	0.16385	0.05399	0.53836	0.02692
3.2	0.30247	77.62943	0.38815	0.18091	1.56409	0.07820
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00133	0.37065	0.00185	0.00005	0.00387	0.00002
0.2	0.00498	1.40493	0.00702	0.00022	0.01544	0.00008
0.4	0.01649	4.86215	0.02431	0.00086	0.06118	0.00031
0.8	0.04553	15.33902	0.07670	0.00340	0.23698	0.00118
1.6	0.10209	45.93954	0.22970	0.01315	0.86345	0.00432
3.2	0.18358	128.13051	0.64065	0.04854	2.80877	0.01404

(*m*) $H = 1.0;\ k_1 = 0.2$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.02090	0.00464	0.02320	0.00541	0.00128	0.00638
0.2	0.08023	0.01773	0.08865	0.02138	0.00503	0.02515
0.4	0.27493	0.05976	0.29878	0.08125	0.01903	0.09516
0.8	0.67330	0.13818	0.69092	0.36887	0.06192	0.30960
1.6	0.92595	0.15978	0.79888	0.60229	0.13002	0.65010
3.2	0.95852	0.09722	0.48612	0.82194	0.14348	0.71742
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.02045	0.00410	0.02052	0.00356	0.00687	0.00343
0.2	0.07845	0.01561	0.07805	0.01410	0.02713	0.01357
0.4	0.26816	0.05166	0.25828	0.05427	0.10351	0.05175
0.8	0.65090	0.11111	0.55555	0.18842	0.34703	0.17351
1.6	0.88171	0.10364	0.51819	0.48957	0.79986	0.39993
3.2	0.94153	0.06967	0.34835	0.81663	0.99757	0.49879
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.01981	0.00306	0.01529	0.00118	0.01591	0.00080
0.2	0.07587	0.01145	0.05726	0.00471	0.06310	0.00316
0.4	0.25817	0.03540	0.17702	0.01846	0.24396	0.01220
0.8	0.61544	0.05163	0.25817	0.06839	0.86114	0.04306
1.6	0.78884	−0.07218	−0.36091	0.21770	2.36054	0.11803
3.2	0.82936	−0.25569	−1.27847	0.53612	4.28169	0.21408
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.01952	0.00214	0.01068	0.00028	0.02412	0.00012
0.2	0.07473	0.00777	0.03883	0.00110	0.09587	0.00048
0.4	0.25368	0.02076	0.10382	0.00436	0.37417	0.00187
0.8	0.59853	−0.00538	−0.02690	0.01679	1.36930	0.00685
1.6	0.73387	−0.28050	−1.40250	0.06020	4.23805	0.02119
3.2	0.70248	−0.90965	−4.54826	0.19189	10.36507	0.05183

(*n*) $H = 1.0;\ k_1 = 2.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.01241	0.02186	0.01093	0.00490	0.00096	0.00478
0.2	0.04816	0.08396	0.04198	0.01943	0.00378	0.01890
0.4	0.17203	0.28866	0.14433	0.07496	0.01448	0.07241
0.8	0.48612	0.71684	0.35842	0.26193	0.04924	0.24620
1.6	0.91312	0.97206	0.48603	0.67611	0.11558	0.57790
3.2	1.04671	0.60091	0.30046	0.95985	0.12527	0.62637
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.01083	0.02170	0.01090	0.00241	0.00453	0.00227
0.2	0.04176	0.08337	0.04169	0.00958	0.01797	0.00899
0.4	0.14665	0.28491	0.14246	0.03724	0.06934	0.03467
0.8	0.39942	0.71341	0.35670	0.13401	0.24250	0.12125
1.6	0.71032	1.02680	0.51340	0.38690	0.63631	0.31815
3.2	0.92112	0.90482	0.45241	0.75805	0.97509	0.48754
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00963	0.02249	0.01124	0.00061	0.00920	0.00046
0.2	0.03697	0.08618	0.04309	0.00241	0.03654	0.00183
0.4	0.12805	0.29640	0.14820	0.00950	0.14241	0.00712
0.8	0.33263	0.76292	0.38146	0.03578	0.51815	0.02591
1.6	0.52721	1.25168	0.62584	0.12007	1.56503	0.07825
3.2	0.65530	1.70723	0.85361	0.33669	3.51128	0.17556
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00925	0.02339	0.01170	0.00013	0.01319	0.00007
0.2	0.03561	0.09018	0.04509	0.00051	0.05252	0.00026
0.4	0.12348	0.31470	0.15735	0.00202	0.20609	0.00103
0.8	0.31422	0.83274	0.41637	0.00783	0.76955	0.00385
1.6	0.46897	1.53521	0.76760	0.02874	2.53100	0.01265
3.2	0.51161	2.76420	1.38210	0.09751	6.99283	0.03496

(*o*) $H = 1.0;\ k_1 = 20.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00417	0.04050	0.00202	0.00271	0.00039	0.00195
0.2	0.01641	0.15675	0.00784	0.01080	0.00155	0.00777
0.4	0.06210	0.55548	0.02777	0.04241	0.00606	0.03028
0.8	0.21057	1.53667	0.07683	0.15808	0.02198	0.10991
1.6	0.58218	2.77359	0.13868	0.49705	0.06327	0.31635
3.2	1.06296	2.55195	0.12760	1.00217	0.09906	0.49525
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00263	0.04751	0.00238	0.00100	0.00160	0.00080
0.2	0.01029	0.18481	0.00924	0.00397	0.00637	0.00319
0.4	0.03810	0.66727	0.03336	0.01565	0.02498	0.01249
0.8	0.12173	1.97428	0.09871	0.05938	0.09268	0.04634
1.6	0.31575	4.37407	0.21870	0.20098	0.29253	0.14626
3.2	0.66041	6.97695	0.34885	0.53398	0.65446	0.32723
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00193	0.05737	0.00287	0.00024	0.00322	0.00016
0.2	0.00751	0.22418	0.01121	0.00098	0.01283	0.00064
0.4	0.02713	0.82430	0.04121	0.00387	0.05063	0.00253
0.8	0.08027	2.59672	0.12984	0.01507	0.19267	0.00963
1.6	0.17961	6.77014	0.33851	0.05549	0.66326	0.03316
3.2	0.34355	15.23252	0.76163	0.18344	1.88634	0.09432
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00176	0.06733	0.00337	0.00006	0.00478	0.00002
0.2	0.00683	0.26401	0.01320	0.00022	0.01908	0.00010
0.4	0.02443	0.98346	0.04917	0.00088	0.07557	0.00038
0.8	0.06983	3.23164	0.16158	0.00348	0.29194	0.00146
1.6	0.14191	9.28148	0.46407	0.01339	1.05385	0.00527
3.2	0.22655	24.85236	1.24262	0.04911	3.37605	0.01688

(*p*) $H = 1.0$; $k_1 = 200.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00117	0.05507	0.00028	0.00097	0.00010	0.00051
0.2	0.00464	0.21467	0.00107	0.00388	0.00041	0.00203
0.4	0.01814	0.78191	0.00391	0.01538	0.00160	0.00801
0.8	0.06766	2.38055	0.01190	0.05952	0.00607	0.03037
1.6	0.22994	5.57945	0.02790	0.21214	0.02028	0.10140
3.2	0.62710	9.29529	0.04648	0.60056	0.04847	0.24236
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00049	0.06883	0.00034	0.00029	0.00035	0.00017
0.2	0.00195	0.26966	0.00135	0.00116	0.00138	0.00069
0.4	0.00746	1.00131	0.00501	0.00460	0.00545	0.00273
0.8	0.02647	3.24971	0.01625	0.01797	0.02092	0.01046
1.6	0.08556	8.92442	0.04462	0.06671	0.07335	0.03668
3.2	0.25186	20.83387	0.10417	0.22047	0.21288	0.10644
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00027	0.08469	0.00042	0.00007	0.00062	0.00003
0.2	0.00104	0.33312	0.00167	0.00028	0.00248	0.00012
0.4	0.00384	1.25495	0.00627	0.00110	0.00985	0.00049
0.8	0.01236	4.26100	0.02130	0.00436	0.03825	0.00191
1.6	0.03379	12.91809	0.06459	0.01683	0.13989	0.00699
3.2	0.08859	36.04291	0.18021	0.06167	0.45544	0.02277
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00021	0.10075	0.00050	0.00002	0.00087	0.00000
0.2	0.00082	0.39741	0.00199	0.00006	0.00347	0.00002
0.4	0.00298	1.51234	0.00756	0.00025	0.01381	0.00007
0.8	0.00893	5.28939	0.02645	0.00100	0.05403	0.00027
1.6	0.02065	17.01872	0.08509	0.00392	0.20250	0.00101
3.2	0.04154	52.23615	0.26118	0.01505	0.70098	0.00350

(*q*) $H = 2.0$; $k_1 = 0.2$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00540	0.00121	0.00604	0.00242	0.00060	0.00302
0.2	0.02138	0.00477	0.02386	0.00964	0.00240	0.01202
0.4	0.08209	0.01821	0.09106	0.03770	0.00939	0.04695
0.8	0.28150	0.06106	0.30531	0.13832	0.03422	0.17112
1.6	0.68908	0.13660	0.68299	0.40830	0.09826	0.49131
3.2	0.93103	0.12899	0.64493	0.73496	0.15705	0.78523
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00502	0.00098	0.00494	0.00180	0.00339	0.00170
0.2	0.01986	0.00389	0.01953	0.00716	0.01350	0.00675
0.4	0.07630	0.01485	0.07449	0.02815	0.05288	0.02644
0.8	0.26196	0.04977	0.24875	0.10523	0.19467	0.09733
1.6	0.63535	0.10924	0.54641	0.33075	0.57811	0.28905
3.2	0.87025	0.12296	0.61462	0.68388	1.00199	0.50100
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00444	0.00056	0.00282	0.00065	0.00825	0.00041
0.2	0.01756	0.00221	0.01105	0.00260	0.03286	0.00164
0.4	0.06706	0.00819	0.04097	0.01030	0.12933	0.00647
0.8	0.22561	0.02431	0.12153	0.03956	0.48595	0.02430
1.6	0.51929	0.03070	0.15352	0.13743	1.55804	0.07790
3.2	0.65700	−0.00926	−0.04632	0.37409	3.39883	0.16994
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00414	0.00032	0.00160	0.00015	0.01234	0.00006
0.2	0.01635	0.00124	0.00621	0.00058	0.04922	0.00025
0.4	0.06231	0.00436	0.02180	0.00231	0.19450	0.00097
0.8	0.20757	0.00955	0.04774	0.00905	0.74256	0.00371
1.6	0.45550	−0.02172	−0.10861	0.03363	2.52847	0.01264
3.2	0.48642	−0.15589	−0.77944	0.11105	6.69835	0.03349

(*r*) $H = 2.0$; $k_1 = 2.0$

a_1	$\dfrac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\dfrac{(\sigma_{z_1}-\sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\dfrac{(\sigma_{z_1}-\sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\dfrac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\dfrac{(\sigma_{z_2}-\sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\dfrac{(\sigma_{z_2}-\sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00356	0.00545	0.00272	0.00216	0.00041	0.00203
0.2	0.01415	0.02155	0.01078	0.00861	0.00162	0.00809
0.4	0.05493	0.08266	0.04133	0.03386	0.00634	0.03172
0.8	0.19661	0.28226	0.14113	0.12702	0.02349	0.11744
1.6	0.55306	0.67844	0.33922	0.40376	0.07109	0.35545
3.2	0.96647	0.79393	0.39696	0.83197	0.12583	0.62913
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00250	0.00555	0.00278	0.00100	0.00188	0.00094
0.2	0.00991	0.02199	0.01099	0.00397	0.00750	0.00375
0.4	0.03832	0.08465	0.04231	0.01569	0.02950	0.01475
0.8	0.13516	0.29365	0.14683	0.05974	0.11080	0.05540
1.6	0.36644	0.75087	0.37542	0.20145	0.35515	0.17757
3.2	0.67384	1.17294	0.58647	0.51156	0.77434	0.38717
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00181	0.00652	0.00326	0.00025	0.00378	0.00019
0.2	0.00716	0.02586	0.01293	0.00099	0.01507	0.00075
0.4	0.02746	0.10017	0.05007	0.00394	0.05958	0.00298
0.8	0.09396	0.35641	0.17821	0.01535	0.22795	0.01140
1.6	0.23065	1.00785	0.50392	0.05599	0.78347	0.03917
3.2	0.37001	2.16033	1.08017	0.17843	2.13215	0.10661
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00164	0.00778	0.00389	0.00005	0.00542	0.00003
0.2	0.00647	0.03090	0.01544	0.00021	0.02163	0.00011
0.4	0.02470	0.12030	0.06014	0.00085	0.08578	0.00043
0.8	0.08326	0.43693	0.21847	0.00335	0.33214	0.00166
1.6	0.19224	1.32870	0.66434	0.01283	1.19190	0.00596
3.2	0.25526	3.40664	1.70332	0.04612	3.67558	0.01838

(*s*) $H = 2.0$; $k_1 = 20.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00134	0.00968	0.00048	0.00108	0.00014	0.00068
0.2	0.00533	0.03839	0.00192	0.00429	0.00055	0.00273
0.4	0.02100	0.14845	0.00741	0.01702	0.00216	0.01078
0.8	0.07950	0.52414	0.02621	0.06576	0.00820	0.04101
1.6	0.26613	1.41720	0.07085	0.23186	0.02740	0.13698
3.2	0.67882	2.38258	0.11913	0.63006	0.06384	0.31919
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00059	0.01219	0.00061	0.00033	0.00051	0.00025
0.2	0.00235	0.04843	0.00242	0.00130	0.00203	0.00101
0.4	0.00922	0.18857	0.00943	0.00518	0.00803	0.00401
0.8	0.03412	0.68382	0.03419	0.02023	0.03093	0.01547
1.6	0.10918	2.04134	0.10207	0.07444	0.10864	0.05432
3.2	0.29183	4.60426	0.23021	0.23852	0.30709	0.15354
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00033	0.01568	0.00078	0.00008	0.00094	0.00005
0.2	0.00130	0.06236	0.00312	0.00031	0.00374	0.00019
0.4	0.00503	0.24425	0.01221	0.00123	0.01486	0.00074
0.8	0.01782	0.90594	0.04530	0.00485	0.05789	0.00289
1.6	0.05012	2.91994	0.14600	0.01862	0.21190	0.01060
3.2	0.11331	7.95104	0.39755	0.06728	0.67732	0.03387
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00027	0.01927	0.00096	0.00002	0.00131	0.00001
0.2	0.00106	0.07675	0.00384	0.00007	0.00524	0.00003
0.4	0.00406	0.30182	0.01509	0.00028	0.02085	0.00010
0.8	0.01397	1.13555	0.05678	0.00110	0.08180	0.00041
1.6	0.03538	3.83254	0.19163	0.00431	0.30676	0.00153
3.2	0.06182	11.55403	0.57770	0.01644	1.04794	0.00524

(*t*) $H = 2.0$; $k_1 = 200.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00036	0.01350	0.00007	0.00033	0.00003	0.00015
0.2	0.00144	0.05366	0.00027	0.00130	0.00012	0.00058
0.4	0.00572	0.20911	0.00105	0.00518	0.00046	0.00232
0.8	0.02231	0.76035	0.00380	0.02038	0.00180	0.00901
1.6	0.08215	2.29642	0.01148	0.07675	0.00649	0.03244
3.2	0.26576	5.28589	0.02643	0.25484	0.01912	0.09562
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00011	0.01737	0.00009	0.00008	0.00009	0.00004
0.2	0.00045	0.06913	0.00035	0.00033	0.00036	0.00018
0.4	0.00179	0.27103	0.00136	0.00131	0.00142	0.00071
0.8	0.00685	1.00808	0.00504	0.00520	0.00553	0.00277
1.6	0.02441	3.27590	0.01638	0.02003	0.02043	0.01021
3.2	0.08061	9.02195	0.04511	0.07248	0.06638	0.03319
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00005	0.02160	0.00011	0.00002	0.00014	0.00001
0.2	0.00018	0.08604	0.00043	0.00007	0.00058	0.00003
0.4	0.00071	0.33866	0.00169	0.00030	0.00229	0.00011
0.8	0.00261	1.27835	0.00639	0.00119	0.00901	0.00045
1.6	0.00819	4.35311	0.02177	0.00467	0.03390	0.00170
3.2	0.02341	13.26873	0.06634	0.01784	0.11666	0.00583
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00003	0.02587	0.00013	0.00000	0.00019	0.00000
0.2	0.00012	0.10310	0.00052	0.00002	0.00075	0.00000
0.4	0.00047	0.40676	0.00203	0.00007	0.00300	0.00002
0.8	0.00165	1.54951	0.00775	0.00026	0.01183	0.00006
1.6	0.00445	5.43705	0.02719	0.00104	0.04515	0.00023
3.2	0.00929	17.58810	0.08794	0.00409	0.16107	0.00081

(*u*) $H = 4.0;\ k_1 = 0.2$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
$k_2 = 0.2$						
0.1	0.00139	0.00028	0.00141	0.00086	0.00023	0.00114
0.2	0.00555	0.00112	0.00562	0.00345	0.00091	0.00454
0.4	0.02198	0.00444	0.03220	0.01371	0.00360	0.01801
0.8	0.08435	0.01686	0.08428	0.05323	0.01394	0.06968
1.6	0.28870	0.05529	0.27647	0.19003	0.04909	0.24545
3.2	0.70074	0.11356	0.56778	0.51882	0.12670	0.63352
$k_2 = 2.0$						
0.1	0.00123	0.00026	0.00131	0.00071	0.00130	0.00065
0.2	0.00401	0.00104	0.00521	0.00283	0.00518	0.00259
0.4	0.01942	0.00412	0.02059	0.01126	0.02057	0.01028
0.8	0.07447	0.01574	0.07869	0.04388	0.07977	0.03989
1.6	0.25449	0.05311	0.26554	0.15904	0.28357	0.14178
3.2	0.62074	0.12524	0.62622	0.45455	0.75651	0.37825
$k_2 = 20.0$						
0.1	0.00087	0.00018	0.00090	0.00028	0.00325	0.00016
0.2	0.00346	0.00072	0.00358	0.00111	0.01298	0.00065
0.4	0.01367	0.00283	0.01417	0.00443	0.05159	0.00258
0.8	0.05207	0.01089	0.05444	0.01741	0.20134	0.01007
1.6	0.17367	0.03790	0.18949	0.06525	0.73322	0.03666
3.2	0.39955	0.10841	0.54203	0.20965	2.13666	0.10683
$k_2 = 200.0$						
0.1	0.00069	0.00019	0.00097	0.00006	0.00487	0.00002
0.2	0.00274	0.00078	0.00389	0.00024	0.01947	0.00010
0.4	0.01079	0.00309	0.01544	0.00095	0.07752	0.00039
0.8	0.04074	0.01199	0.05995	0.00378	0.30432	0.00152
1.6	0.13117	0.04352	0.21758	0.01456	1.13373	0.00567
3.2	0.26403	0.14445	0.72224	0.05161	3.59608	0.01798

(*v*) $H = 4.0;\ k_1 = 2.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00103	0.00128	0.00064	0.00078	0.00014	0.00071
0.2	0.00411	0.00511	0.00256	0.00312	0.00057	0.00284
0.4	0.01631	0.03022	0.01011	0.01241	0.00226	0.01129
0.8	0.06319	0.07722	0.03861	0.04842	0.00877	0.04384
1.6	0.22413	0.25955	0.12977	0.17617	0.03133	0.15666
3.2	0.60654	0.58704	0.29352	0.50917	0.08500	0.42501
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00057	0.00147	0.00074	0.00034	0.00065	0.00032
0.2	0.00228	0.00587	0.00293	0.00137	0.00260	0.00130
0.4	0.00905	0.02324	0.01162	0.00544	0.01032	0.00516
0.8	0.03500	0.08957	0.04479	0.02135	0.04031	0.02015
1.6	0.12354	0.31215	0.15608	0.07972	0.14735	0.07368
3.2	0.34121	0.81908	0.40954	0.25441	0.43632	0.21816
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00030	0.00201	0.00101	0.00008	0.00128	0.00006
0.2	0.00119	0.00803	0.00402	0.00034	0.00510	0.00026
0.4	0.00469	0.03191	0.01596	0.00134	0.02032	0.00102
0.8	0.01700	0.12427	0.06213	0.00532	0.07991	0.00400
1.6	0.06045	0.45100	0.22550	0.02049	0.29991	0.01500
3.2	0.14979	1.36427	0.68214	0.07294	0.97701	0.04885
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00023	0.00263	0.00131	0.00002	0.00180	0.00001
0.2	0.00091	0.01050	0.00525	0.00007	0.00720	0.00004
0.4	0.00360	0.04179	0.02000	0.00029	0.02870	0.00014
0.8	0.01360	0.16380	0.08190	0.00115	0.11334	0.00057
1.6	0.04409	0.60898	0.30449	0.00451	0.43251	0.00216
3.2	0.09323	1.98899	0.99449	0.01705	1.49306	0.00747

(*w*) $H = 4.0$; $k_1 = 20.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00042	0.00233	0.00012	0.00037	0.00004	0.00021
0.2	0.00166	0.00932	0.00047	0.00148	0.00017	0.00085
0.4	0.00663	0.03692	0.00185	0.00588	0.00068	0.00340
0.8	0.02603	0.14242	0.00712	0.02319	0.00266	0.01331
1.6	0.09718	0.49826	0.02491	0.08758	0.00983	0.04914
3.2	0.31040	1.31627	0.06581	0.28747	0.02990	0.14951
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00013	0.00312	0.00016	0.00010	0.00015	0.00007
0.2	0.00054	0.01245	0.00062	0.00039	0.00059	0.00029
0.4	0.00214	0.04944	0.00247	0.00154	0.00235	0.00117
0.8	0.00837	0.19247	0.00962	0.00610	0.00924	0.00462
1.6	0.03109	0.69749	0.03487	0.02358	0.03488	0.01744
3.2	0.10140	2.09049	0.10452	0.08444	0.11553	0.05776
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00005	0.00413	0.00021	0.00002	0.00025	0.00001
0.2	0.00021	0.01651	0.00083	0.00009	0.00099	0.00005
0.4	0.00083	0.06569	0.00328	0.00035	0.00396	0.00020
0.8	0.00321	0.25739	0.01287	0.00138	0.01565	0.00078
1.6	0.01130	0.05622	0.04781	0.00542	0.05993	0.00300
3.2	0.03258	3.10980	0.15549	0.02061	0.20906	0.01045
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00003	0.00515	0.00026	0.00000	0.00033	0.00000
0.2	0.00014	0.02056	0.00103	0.00002	0.00131	0.00001
0.4	0.00054	0.08191	0.00410	0.00008	0.00524	0.00003
0.8	0.00206	0.32231	0.01612	0.00030	0.02077	0.00010
1.6	0.00683	1.21587	0.06079	0.00120	0.08034	0.00040
3.2	0.01590	4.14395	0.20720	0.00468	0.28961	0.00145

(*x*) $H = 4.0;\ k_1 = 200.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00010	0.00334	0.00002	0.00010	0.00001	0.00004
0.2	0.00042	0.01333	0.00007	0.00039	0.00003	0.00016
0.4	0.00167	0.05295	0.00026	0.00157	0.00013	0.00065
0.8	0.00663	0.20621	0.00103	0.00625	0.00051	0.00256
1.6	0.02562	0.74824	0.00374	0.02427	0.00195	0.00975
3.2	0.09166	2.25046	0.01125	0.08799	0.00660	0.03298
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00003	0.00437	0.00002	0.00002	0.00002	0.00001
0.2	0.00011	0.01746	0.00009	0.00009	0.00009	0.00005
0.4	0.00042	0.06947	0.00035	0.00036	0.00036	0.00018
0.8	0.00168	0.27221	0.00136	0.00142	0.00144	0.00072
1.6	0.00646	1.01140	0.00506	0.00560	0.00553	0.00277
3.2	0.02332	3.28913	0.01645	0.02126	0.01951	0.00975
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00001	0.00545	0.00003	0.00000	0.00003	0.00000
0.2	0.00003	0.02178	0.00011	0.00002	0.00014	0.00001
0.4	0.00013	0.08673	0.00043	0.00008	0.00054	0.00003
0.8	0.00050	0.34131	0.00171	0.00031	0.00215	0.00011
1.6	0.00186	1.28773	0.00644	0.00124	0.00833	0.00042
3.2	0.00612	4.38974	0.02195	0.00483	0.03010	0.00150
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00000	0.00652	0.00003	0.00000	0.00004	0.00000
0.2	0.00002	0.02606	0.00013	0.00000	0.00017	0.00000
0.4	0.00007	0.10389	0.00052	0.00002	0.00068	0.00000
0.8	0.00025	0.40997	0.00205	0.00007	0.00269	0.00001
1.6	0.00086	1.56284	0.00781	0.00027	0.01049	0.00005
3.2	0.00225	5.48870	0.02744	0.00107	0.03866	0.00019

(*y*) $H = 8.0;\ k_1 = 0.2$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00035	0.00006	0.00028	0.00027	0.00007	0.00036
0.2	0.00142	0.00023	0.00113	0.00108	0.00028	0.00142
0.4	0.00566	0.00090	0.00449	0.00432	0.00113	0.00567
0.8	0.02240	0.00354	0.01769	0.01711	0.00449	0.02246
1.6	0.08589	0.01335	0.06673	0.06610	0.01725	0.08624
3.2	0.29318	0.04270	0.21350	0.23182	0.05907	0.29533
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00030	0.00008	0.00038	0.00023	0.00041	0.00021
0.2	0.00120	0.00030	0.00152	0.00091	0.00165	0.00083
0.4	0.00479	0.00121	0.00606	0.00364	0.00660	0.00330
0.8	0.01894	0.00480	0.02399	0.01446	0.02616	0.01308
1.6	0.07271	0.01841	0.09206	0.05601	0.10080	0.05040
3.2	0.24933	0.06307	0.31534	0.19828	0.35008	0.17504
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00016	0.00010	0.00049	0.00009	0.00105	0.00005
0.2	0.00065	0.00040	0.00198	0.00037	0.00421	0.00021
0.4	0.00260	0.00158	0.00790	0.00149	0.01679	0.00084
0.8	0.01026	0.00629	0.03143	0.00594	0.06664	0.00333
1.6	0.03926	0.02463	0.12314	0.02320	0.25871	0.01294
3.2	0.13335	0.09123	0.45615	0.08510	0.92478	0.04624
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00009	0.00015	0.00074	0.00002	0.00162	0.00001
0.2	0.00036	0.00059	0.00294	0.00008	0.00648	0.00003
0.4	0.00145	0.00235	0.01176	0.00032	0.02587	0.00013
0.8	0.00573	0.00938	0.04690	0.00127	0.10287	0.00051
1.6	0.02160	0.03710	0.18549	0.00503	0.40238	0.00201
3.2	0.06938	0.14226	0.71130	0.01912	1.48097	0.00740

(z) $H = 8.0$; $k_1 = 2.0$

a_1	$\dfrac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\dfrac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\dfrac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\dfrac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\dfrac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\dfrac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00028	0.00028	0.00014	0.00024	0.00004	0.00022
0.2	0.00113	0.00111	0.00056	0.00096	0.00017	0.00087
0.4	0.00451	0.00444	0.00222	0.00384	0.00069	0.00347
0.8	0.01786	0.01752	0.00876	0.01522	0.00275	0.01373
1.6	0.06895	0.06662	0.03331	0.05900	0.01060	0.05298
3.2	0.24127	0.22014	0.11007	0.20949	0.03603	0.18466
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00013	0.00039	0.00020	0.00010	0.00020	0.00010
0.2	0.00053	0.00157	0.00079	0.00041	0.00078	0.00039
0.4	0.00213	0.00628	0.00314	0.00164	0.00311	0.00156
0.8	0.00844	0.02487	0.01244	0.00653	0.01237	0.00618
1.6	0.03269	0.09597	0.04798	0.02556	0.04802	0.02401
3.2	0.11640	0.33606	0.16803	0.09405	0.17188	0.08594
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00005	0.00061	0.00030	0.00002	0.00037	0.00002
0.2	0.00019	0.00242	0.00121	0.00010	0.00149	0.00007
0.4	0.00076	0.00967	0.00484	0.00040	0.00596	0.00030
0.8	0.00300	0.03845	0.01922	0.00159	0.02369	0.00118
1.6	0.01154	0.15010	0.07505	0.00630	0.09274	0.00464
3.2	0.04003	0.54942	0.27471	0.02409	0.34233	0.01712
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00003	0.00082	0.00041	0.00001	0.00052	0.00000
0.2	0.00011	0.00328	0.00164	0.00002	0.00206	0.00001
0.4	0.00042	0.01310	0.00655	0.00008	0.00825	0.00004
0.8	0.00167	0.05216	0.02608	0.00034	0.03287	0.00016
1.6	0.00629	0.20491	0.10245	0.00135	0.12933	0.00065
3.2	0.02020	0.76769	0.38384	0.00527	0.48719	0.00244

(z_1) $H = 8.0$; $k_1 = 20.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00012	0.00056	0.00003	0.00011	0.00001	0.00006
0.2	0.00047	0.00223	0.00011	0.00044	0.00005	0.00025
0.4	0.00190	0.00889	0.00044	0.00176	0.00020	0.00099
0.8	0.00754	0.03522	0.00176	0.00701	0.00079	0.00393
1.6	0.02947	0.13569	0.00678	0.02746	0.00306	0.01528
3.2	0.10817	0.47240	0.02362	0.10145	0.01105	0.05524
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00003	0.00079	0.00004	0.00003	0.00004	0.00002
0.2	0.00013	0.00316	0.00016	0.00011	0.00016	0.00008
0.4	0.00050	0.01260	0.00063	0.00043	0.00064	0.00032
0.8	0.00200	0.05007	0.00250	0.00170	0.00253	0.00127
1.6	0.00786	0.19496	0.00975	0.00673	0.00993	0.00496
3.2	0.02944	0.70709	0.03535	0.02579	0.03678	0.01839
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00001	0.00106	0.00005	0.00001	0.00006	0.00000
0.2	0.00004	0.00425	0.00021	0.00002	0.00025	0.00001
0.4	0.00014	0.01696	0.00085	0.00009	0.00100	0.00005
0.8	0.00056	0.06751	0.00338	0.00037	0.00398	0.00020
1.6	0.00217	0.26466	0.01323	0.00147	0.01565	0.00078
3.2	0.00791	0.98450	0.04922	0.00576	0.05892	0.00295
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00000	0.00133	0.00007	0.00000	0.00008	0.00000
0.2	0.00002	0.00531	0.00027	0.00000	0.00032	0.00000
0.4	0.00006	0.02122	0.00106	0.00002	0.00128	0.00001
0.8	0.00025	0.08453	0.00423	0.00008	0.00509	0.00003
1.6	0.00096	0.33268	0.01663	0.00032	0.02009	0.00010
3.2	0.00319	1.25614	0.06281	0.00125	0.07660	0.00038

(z_2) $H = 8.0$; $k_1 = 200.0$

a_1	$\frac{\sigma_{z_1}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_1})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_1} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{\sigma_{z_2}}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_2})}{q}$	$\frac{(\sigma_{z_2} - \sigma_{r_3})}{q}$
						$k_2 = 0.2$
0.1	0.00003	0.00083	0.00000	0.00003	0.00000	0.00001
0.2	0.00011	0.00330	0.00002	0.00011	0.00001	0.00005
0.4	0.00046	0.01320	0.00007	0.00044	0.00004	0.00018
0.8	0.00182	0.05242	0.00026	0.00175	0.00014	0.00072
1.6	0.00720	0.20411	0.00102	0.00693	0.00056	0.00282
3.2	0.02751	0.74013	0.00370	0.02656	0.00212	0.01058
						$k_2 = 2.0$
0.1	0.00001	0.00109	0.00001	0.00001	0.00001	0.00000
0.2	0.00003	0.00438	0.00002	0.00002	0.00002	0.00001
0.4	0.00010	0.01748	0.00009	0.00009	0.00009	0.00005
0.8	0.00041	0.06956	0.00035	0.00038	0.00037	0.00018
1.6	0.00162	0.27262	0.00136	0.00149	0.00145	0.00072
3.2	0.00625	1.01322	0.00507	0.00584	0.00547	0.00273
						$k_2 = 20.0$
0.1	0.00000	0.00136	0.00001	0.00000	0.00001	0.00000
0.2	0.00001	0.00546	0.00003	0.00001	0.00003	0.00000
0.4	0.00002	0.02181	0.00011	0.00002	0.00013	0.00001
0.8	0.00010	0.08687	0.00043	0.00008	0.00052	0.00003
1.6	0.00039	0.34202	0.00171	0.00032	0.00204	0.00010
3.2	0.00149	1.29190	0.00646	0.00127	0.00777	0.00039
						$k_2 = 200.0$
0.1	0.00000	0.00163	0.00001	0.00000	0.00001	0.00000
0.2	0.00000	0.00654	0.00003	0.00000	0.00004	0.00000
0.4	0.00001	0.02613	0.00013	0.00000	0.00016	0.00000
0.8	0.00003	0.10417	0.00052	0.00002	0.00063	0.00000
1.6	0.00013	0.41121	0.00206	0.00007	0.00249	0.00001
3.2	0.00047	1.56843	0.00784	0.00027	0.00957	0.00005

Index